DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 391 957 CE 070 870

AUTHOR	Anderson, Gary A.
TITLE	Floral Design & Marketing.
INSTITUTION	Ohio State Univ., Columbus. Agricultural Curriculum Materials Service.
SPONS AGENCY	Ohio State Dept. of Education, Columbus. Div. of Vocational and Adult Education.
REPORT NO	ISBN-1-56502-009-X
PUB DATE	95
NOTE	970p.; Color photographs may not reproduce well.
AVAILABLE FROM	Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service, 254 Agricultural Administration Bldg., 2120 Fyffe Road, Columbus, OH 43210-1067.
PUB TYPE	Guides - Classroom Use - Instructional Materials (For Learner) (051) -- Books (010)
EDRS PRICE	MF07/PC39 Plus Postage.
DESCRIPTORS	Agricultural Education; Business Administration; *Design; Distributive Education; *Floriculture; Instructional Materials; Learning Activities; Marketing; *Ornamental Horticulture Occupations; Plant Propagation

ABSTRACT

This book is designed to survey the area of retail floriculture and make a current statement of the industry. The subject matter includes a blend of art, science, and business. It can be used in the following ways: by students pursuing individualized study; in a classroom where the instructor will reinforce, demonstrate, and expand upon the ideas; or by former students or flower shop employees who need a refresher tool and reference. The book is intended to be motivational while presenting a realistic picture of arranging and selling flowers and plants. Suggested activities are located in each chapter as hands-on exercises to provide the experience and practice necessary to master the concepts presented. Thirty-two chapters cover the following topics: introduction; elements of design; principles of design; fresh cut flowers and foliage; mechanics, supplies, and safety; corsages and boutonnieres; bud vases and rose bowls; decorating potted plants; mass arrangements; accessories, bases, and backgrounds; dried flowers; silk flowers; table settings; wedding floral design; sympathy flowers; living plant groupings; novelty arrangements; special occasions and holidays; period arrangements; contemporary arrangements; retail floriculture industry; sales and service; wrapping and packaging; pricing; organization and efficiency; store displays; conditioning and storing cut flowers; care of living plants; delivery; advertising and promotion; and keeping current. A subject index is provided. (YLB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED 391 957

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)
☑ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.
● Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
W Wardelich
TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

Floral Design & Marketing

Gary A. Anderson

CE070870

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Robert D. Sommers II, Assistant Director
Agricultural Education Service
Division of Vocational and Adult Education
Ohio Department of Education

William D. Waidelich, Director
Ohio Agricultural Education
Curriculum Materials Service
The Ohio State University

Copyright © 1995

Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service
The Ohio State University

All rights reserved

ISBN 1-56502-009-X

Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service
254 Agricultural Administration Building
The Ohio State University
2120 Fyffe Road
Columbus, Ohio 43210-1067

1995

The Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service, as a part of The Ohio State University, is an equal opportunity employer and does not discriminate against any individual for reasons of race, color, creed, religion, national origin, sex, or handicap. All instructional materials are available to all potential clientele on a non-discriminatory basis without regard to race, color, creed, religion, national origin, sex, or handicap.

Trade or brand names mentioned in this text are supplied with the understanding that no discrimination or endorsement by the Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service is implied or intended.

Contents

Chapter		
1	Introduction	1
2	Elements of Design	11
3	Principles of Design	43
4	Fresh Cut Flowers and Foliage	69
5	Mechanics, Supplies, and Safety	115
6	Corsages and Boutonnieres	135
7	Bud Vases and Rose Bowls	175
8	Decorating Potted Plants	183
9	Mass Arrangements	189
10	Line and Line-Mass Arrangements	221
11	Accessories, Bases and Backgrounds	243
12	Dried Flowers	253
13	Silk Flowers	279
14	Table Settings	285
15	Wedding Floral Design	295
16	Sympathy Flowers	325
17	Living Plant Groupings	345
18	Novelty Arrangements	369
19	Special Occasions and Holidays	375
20	Period Arrangements	399
21	Contemporary Arrangements	407
22	The Retail Floriculture Industry	415
23	Sales and Service	423
24	Wrapping and Packaging	435
25	Pricing	443
26	Organization and Efficiency	449
27	Store Displays	455
28	Conditioning and Storing Cut Flowers	461
29	Care of Living Plants	467
30	Delivery	471
31	Advertising and Promotion	475
32	Keeping Current	479

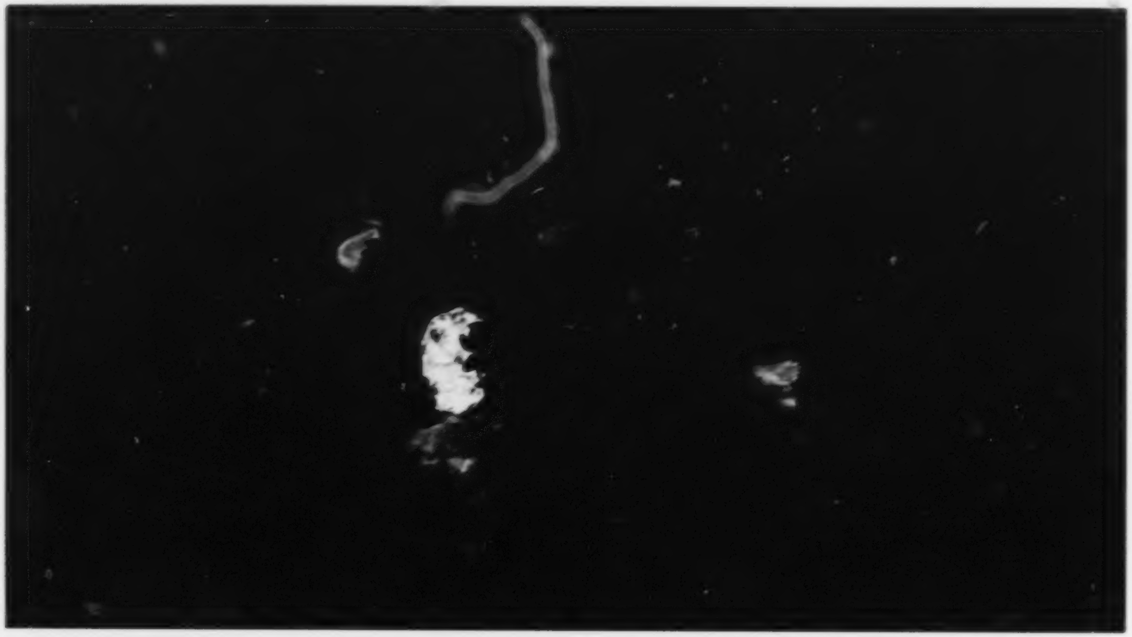
Preface

This book is designed to survey the area of retail floriculture and make a current statement of the industry. The subject matter includes an interesting blend of art, science and business. Time tested principles of flower arranging are explained and applied in exercises that will enable the beginning designer to comprehend them. Identification of floral material and supplies commonly found in flower shops is clearly made with illustrations. Information on care and handling as well as suggestions for selling flowers is treated with a straightforward approach that can be understood by those preparing for a career in flower shops.

This book can be used in many ways and at different levels as individual situations require. A great deal of knowledge can be gained from the wealth of full-color illustrations. For students pursuing an individualized study, clear directions starting at the ground level will allow them to build a working knowledge of retail floriculture. In the classroom the ideas can be reinforced, demonstrated and expanded upon by the instructor. For a former student of the subject or a flower shop employee needing a review, the book will serve as a valuable refresher tool and reference. A general index is included to help in location of the topics.

The book is intended to be motivational while presenting a realistic picture of arranging and selling flowers and plants. Suggested activities are located in each chapter to provide hands-on exercises that will provide the experience and practice necessary to master the concepts presented. It is hoped that all readers will be challenged to put forth a dedicated effort to expand their knowledge, express their creativity, strive for perfection, and develop an appreciation for the many ways flowers can be enjoyed.

Gary A. Anderson



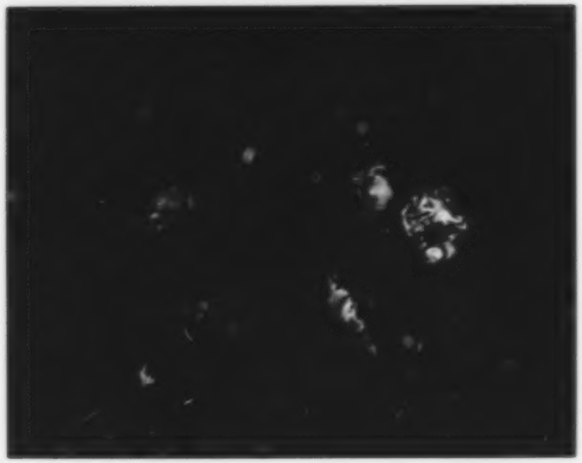
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Acknowledgments

A great number of individuals have generously contributed to the preparation of this book. The initial research to determine the need for a new retail floriculture manual was done by Mr. James P. Scott, Jr., now Team Leader - Student Services, National FFA Organization. A statewide advisory committee was appointed to provide input for the project. Members included Jim Bliek, Gene Houser, Arlene Mercer, Bob Niemeyer, James Scott, Dennis Waldman, and Karen Wellbaum.

Several members of the Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service at The Ohio State University made significant contributions to this publication. The original project was supervised by Dr. Roger D. Roediger, then Director of the Service. For this extensive revision, Dr. Roediger has also graciously and diligently guided the project. He was also responsible for much of the photography presented in this book. Editing and layout was done by Muriel N. King. Her scholarly attention to detail and creative graphic presentation have contributed greatly to the successful appeal of this publication. The cover design and color wheels were done by Amelia Boye, graphic illustrator. Special thanks are due to Dr. William D. Waidelich, currently Director of the Service, for the vision and leadership required to produce a publication of this quality. Also, I am grateful to my wife, Cheryl Anderson, for all the line drawings included.

Appreciation is extended to all individuals, organizations and businesses who in any way contributed to the arrangements, settings and photography involved. I am especially grateful to my OSU/ATI colleagues, Teresa Lanker and Ladonna Whitt, for their assistance and advice. A wide variety of styles is presented ranging from very traditional to contemporary so that the reader will gain an appreciation of the diversity of the art. I have tried to take the student into the work room, the office and the sales area of a retail flower shop. Some arrangements are shown as they would be used in the home and public places. Hopefully a total picture is created which captures the scope of the retail floriculture industry and entices interested individuals to pursue this rewarding career opportunity.



About the Author

Dr. Gary A. Anderson has taught floral design and marketing for over 25 years. Currently he is professor and chairman of the Horticultural Industries Division at The Ohio State University's Agricultural Technical Institute in Wooster.

Dr. Anderson graduated Phi Beta Kappa from the University of Michigan and holds both M.S. and Ph.D. degrees in horticulture from Michigan State University. He has served as designer, judge, and lecturer at many flower shows and horticultural events. He is the author of numerous articles for state and national publications.

Dr. Anderson has been actively involved with the Ohio Florists' Association and National Junior Horticultural Association. He has given leadership to the Ohio FFA Floriculture Judging Contest and is a recipient of the State Honorary FFA Degree.

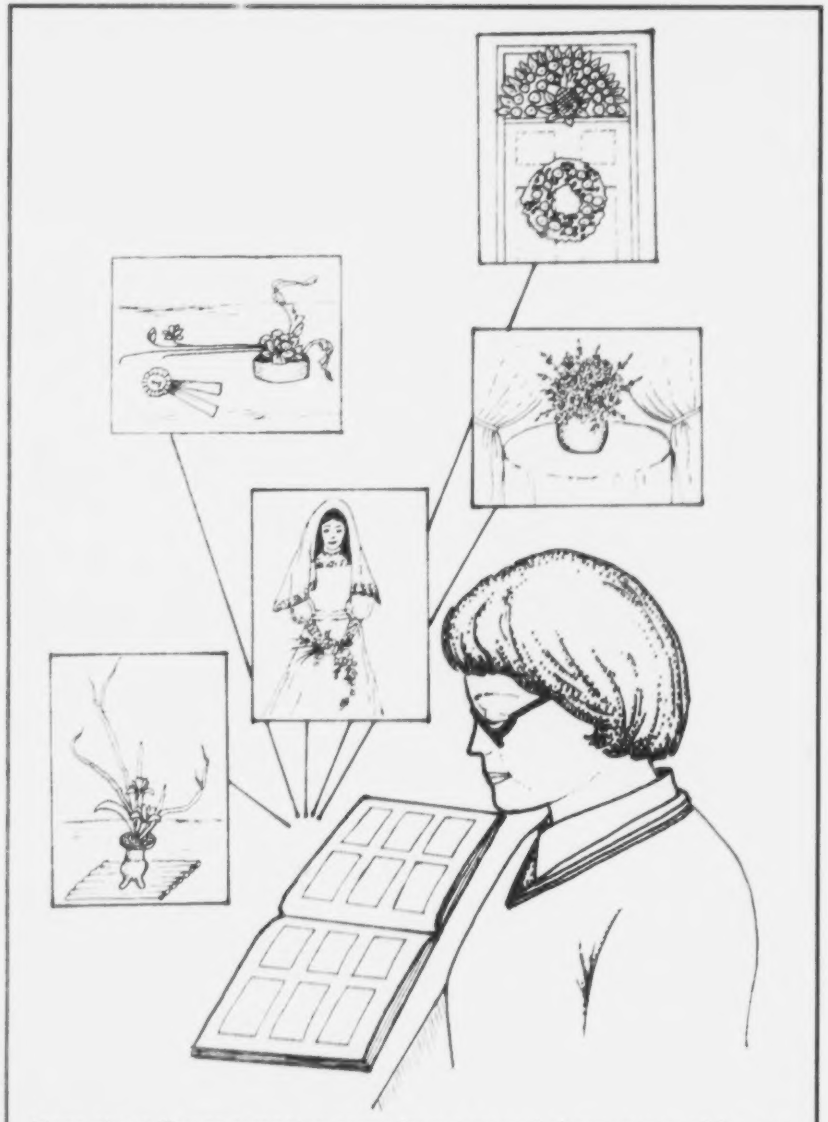
Dr. Anderson is a member of the American Society for Horticultural Science and American Horticultural Society. Traveling extensively, Dr. Anderson has shared his expertise through lectures and demonstrations, and has often contributed his ideas in writing.

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

DISCOVERING YOUR CONCEPTS OF FLORAL DESIGN



Ideas about flower arranging come from personal observations of flowers

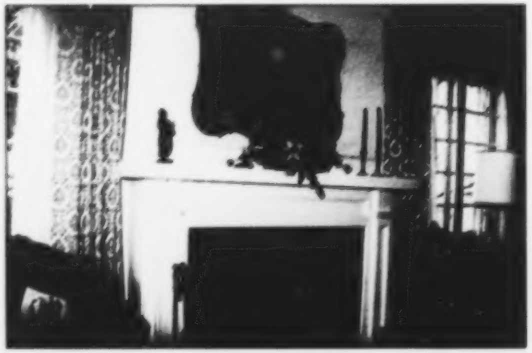
Every field of endeavor has its starting point. As you embark on your study of floral design and marketing, you begin with a set of uniquely personal ideas about design based on your background and experiences up to now. These ideas are not static, but will change over time as you become more aware of what to look for in floral designs and gain more practical skill in arranging flowers. If you are motivated to become a skilled designer, and if you are willing to practice, the reward can be an ever-increasing ability to express yourself artistically and creatively with flowers.

Let's think about what may have influenced your ideas on flower arranging. Where have you seen flowers used? What bouquet or arrangement do you remember that especially impressed you?

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Write down at least five situations in which you remember seeing flowers used. After each, write briefly what your reaction was to these flowers. Share these thoughts with the other students as your teacher leads the discussion.

Do you find that different class members react in different ways to flowers in the same situation? Do you find that some people remember seeing many more flowers than others do?



The Traditional Look

The Oriental Look

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Just like you, customers who buy and use flowers will have preconceived ideas about them, based on their different experiences. They may be shopping for floral products that are not the same as those you would buy. Therefore, people who arrange and sell flowers for others must be sensitive to the preferences of the customers. Even though many customers have no more formal training in floral design than you have today, they still have ideas about what they will or won't buy. Flower shops both large and small must keep in mind customer wishes as well as their own concepts of design.

Let's continue to explore the factors that may have influenced your personal concepts of floral design. On the next pages are some specific examples of places and occasions where flowers may be seen. How many of these can you relate to? How do you think the flowers you saw in these situations have affected your ideas on flower arranging?

The Contemporary Look

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

At Home

- centerpiece for a special dinner
- dried arrangement on the fireplace mantel
- simple vase of garden flowers on end table or desk
- crock filled with field flowers or interesting weeds on a porch table
- Christmas wreath or swag on the door
- florist arrangement delivered for a special occasion like a birthday party, anniversary or holiday
- small bouquet or loose bunch of flowers brought home "just to show I care"

At Religious Services

- weekly flowers on the altar
- lavish flower arrangements, bouquets and candelabras for a wedding
- sympathy flowers for a funeral

At Parties

- corsages and clutch bouquets at a dance or prom
- a dozen long-stemmed roses given to an honored guest
- candle centerpieces at individual small tables, or floral pieces on a buffet table or near the punch bowl

(continued)

FLOWERS USED

In the Home

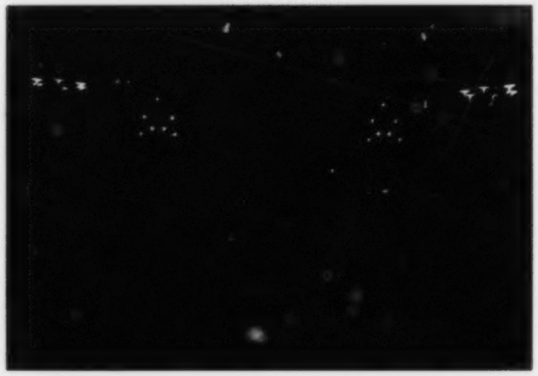
On the table

On the mantel

On the piano

In Houses of Worship

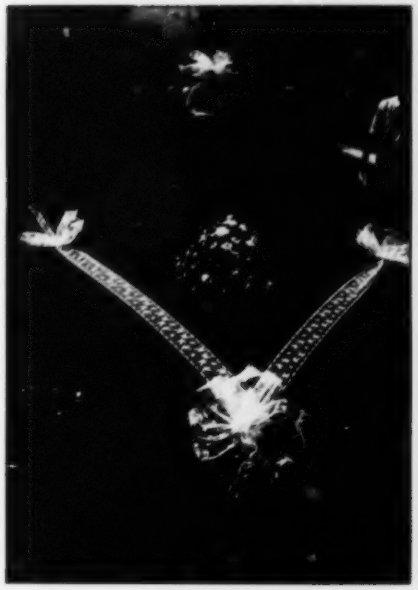
In a church


In a synagogue

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Party Flowers

Wedding Flowers



At Parties *(continued)*

- creative suspended arrangement from the ceiling, or floating arrangement in the swimming pool at a lavish party

In the Hospital

- planter, bud vase or potted plant for an adult patient
- chrysanthemum clown or poodle dog or animal planter for a sick child
- arrangements in the hospital's gift shop

In the Media

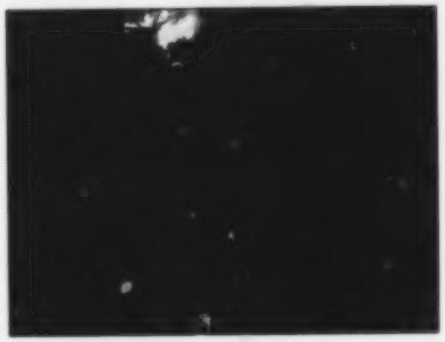
- advertisement on television for a special bouquet being promoted by a florist wire service organization
- spectacular show of flowers used on floats in the Tournament of Roses Parade
- tasteful placement of flowers on a conference table in a magazine picture showing some current event
- wedding flowers described or pictured in newspaper articles, bride's magazines or television shows

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

At Businesses

- creative seasonal window display at your area florist
- arrangement sent to the grand opening of a bank, restaurant or store
- silk or dried arrangements in a furniture store or interior design studio
- holiday corsages in the grocery produce section

Flowers in Public Buildings



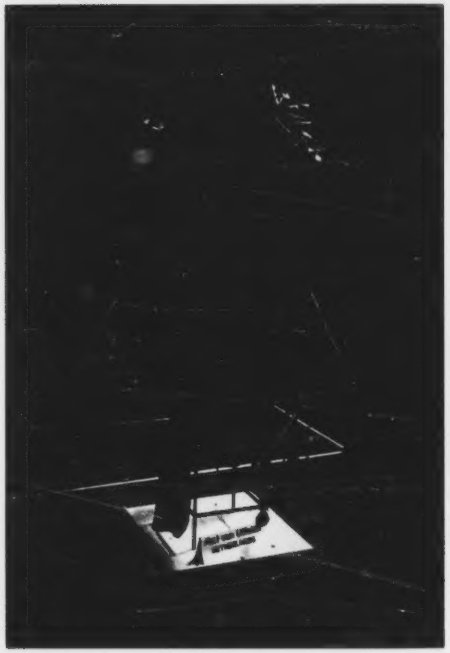
Flower Shops

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Flower Shows

At Flower Shows

- large Victorian mass arrangement entered in a state or local fair
- modern-looking interpretive arrangements at a fair flower show or show sponsored by a local garden club
- display of creative arrangements by florists at a large city home and flower show
- new European designs described by a floral commentator at a professional design show



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Professional Design Symposia

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

To demonstrate that your concept of design is based on past experiences and may be different from that of other class members, work entirely on your own to create an arrangement that is pleasing to you. Use the containers and flowers provided by your instructor.

Materials suggested for each student:

design compote
1/3 block floral foam
narrow waterproof tape
knife
1/2 bunch pompon mums
1/4 bunch leatherleaf
1/6 bunch purple statice
or assortment of available flowers
and foliage

Your instructor will have soaked the floral foam in water and will demonstrate how to cut it, place it in the container, and secure it with the waterproof tape. You will also be advised on proper and safe use of the knife.

Cut off one-third block of soaked floral foam.

Use waterproof tape to secure the floral foam to the container.

Working independently, create an arrangement of your choice. If an assortment of materials is available, or if you are allowed to cut from a garden or field area, select those flowers and foliages which you feel look good together and with the container you are using. As you work on your arrangement, start thinking about what occasion it could be used for and where it might be placed. Think about the choices you had in the selection of flowers and their placement in the arrangement. Why did you make the choices you did?

After all arrangements are completed, contribute to a class discussion by explaining to the other students what is especially pleasing to you about the arrangement you designed, and where you think your arrangement might be used. Don't feel shy or intimidated! Today there is no "right" or "wrong." You are discovering your own personal concepts of design. Just like the customer in a flower shop, you are entitled to your own opinion.

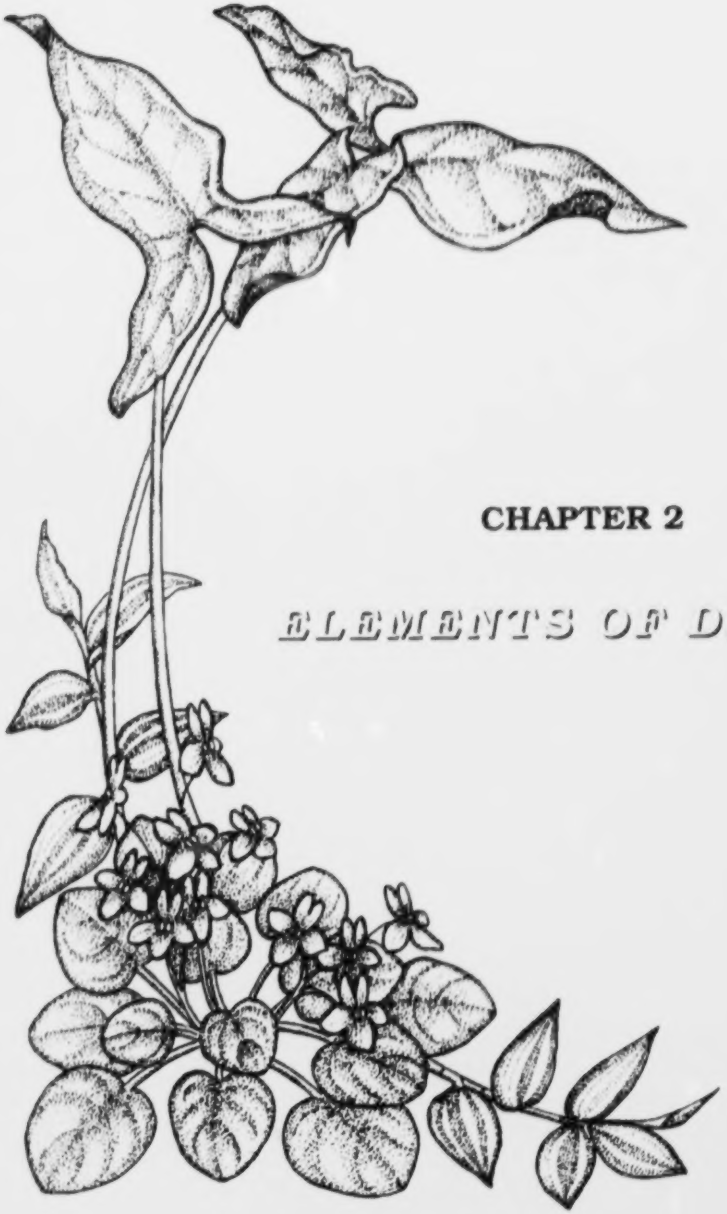
Create a Portfolio of Your Work

Photographing your designs can result in an interesting collection of pictures that can be used to record ideas, assess your progress, and show others what you can do. Begin by taking pictures of your first arrangements. When you look at these at a later date, you will likely be pleased with your progress.

After you have mastered several different styles of design, you can select representative prints of your best work and assemble them into an album. This labeled collection is called a portfolio. It can be useful in showing your design ability and may help you get a job as a floral designer.

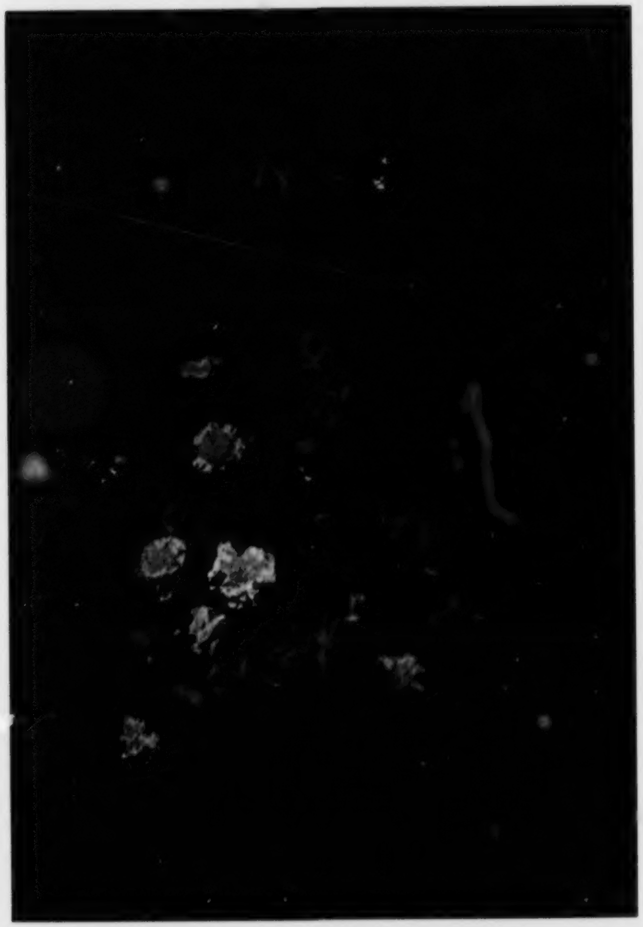
Continue Your Study of Floral Design

The information provided in Chapters 2 and 3 on the elements and principles of floral design creates a basic understanding that underlies all floral art. However, only with practice and experience can the application of these concepts be understood. Therefore, those wishing to begin making arrangements should refer to the suggested activities in Chapters 9 and 10 for instructions on the various types of basic designs.



CHAPTER 2

ELEMENTS OF DESIGN



Can you describe the elements of design (line, form, texture, and color) represented in this all-foliage design?

ELEMENTS OF DESIGN

The aspects of an arrangement that can be identified and changed by the designer are called **elements of design**. These include **line, form, texture,** and **color** – the variables that must be considered by anyone planning a successful floral composition.

Understanding the different possibilities that exist within each of these elements will be a valuable starting point for one who is learning to arrange flowers. These characteristics can be used to describe individual parts of an arrangement as well as the arrangement as a whole. With increased experience, a person can manipulate the elements of design in countless ways to create pleasing arrangements for every taste and occasion.

[redacted]

The line is a visual pathway connecting two or more points. Stems form lines that lead the eye up to the flowers. Branches may consist of a network of straight or curving lines. The silhouette of an arrangement is a line that connects the outer extremities of the entire arrangement. These are only a few specific examples of how line functions in a flower arrangement.

Spike-like flowers such as gladiolus, liatris, and delphinium, because of their linear appearance, are described as *line flowers*. Designers sometimes intentionally line up flowers to lead the eye along certain pathways. By contrast, flowers in a design sometimes line up in undesirable ways and cause an unwanted focus of attention.

Arrangements in which there is a major emphasis on the lines of the design are referred to as *line designs*. Usually they have few flowers and large numbers of empty spaces or voids.

Oriental designs are mostly of this type (Fig. 2-1). In Japanese flower arranging, which has been practiced for over 1500 years, the emphasis is on careful use of only a few flowers. Each flower in the design has a special meaning. A general term for Japanese flower arranging is **ikebana.**

Some contemporary design styles also fall into this category. During the twentieth century, Oriental concepts of flower arranging began to influence design styles in the United States and other parts of the world. Many modern arrangements are line designs. Exotic or very special flowers are most effectively featured in a design with much open space. Birds of paradise, proteas and orchids are good examples of such flowers. This type of design directs more attention to the individual flowers. In addition to using few flowers, there is often less time involved in making this kind of design because there are fewer placements. However, since line arrangements often express a high degree of creativity, there may be more time involved in planning the design and more skill required to execute it successfully.

Figure 2-1
This Oriental design represents line type design. The branches and flowers have been pruned to emphasize their structure. Note the large amount of open space.

Types of Lines

Lines can be straight, curved, or zigzag. They may also have direction – vertical, horizontal, or diagonal. These lines can describe the major line of visual flow in a design (trunk line) or individual lines created by one or more flowers, pieces of foliage, or branches in an arrangement. Different types of lines may be incorporated in one design, such as certain types of contemporary design. In traditional mass designs, the stems appear to radiate from a common point, giving the arrangement a sense of unity.

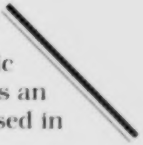
Vertical Line

A vertical line is a strong upright line (Fig. 2-2). It may be represented by a vertical line-mass design or it may be an element in a larger design. In a symmetrical mass arrangement such as the equilateral triangle, the central axis or trunk line is created by a vertical line of flowers.

Horizontal Line

This "sideways" line is often regarded as "restful" because it is associated with the position of sleep. An elongated table centerpiece may have a horizontal trunk line. Certain containers that are elongated and low create a horizontal image in side view.

Diagonal Line



The diagonal line is dynamic in that the position by itself has an unstable quality. This line is used in floral design to intersect a vertical line, resulting in a **line of opposition** (Fig. 2-2). An illustration of this is a vertical line design intersected by a diagonal sheaf of wheat.

Zigzag Line

A line that changes direction back and forth along a central axis is called a zigzag line. It is most commonly used to lead the eye in a certain direction by spacing flowers in a logical progression, alternating from left to right. The trunk line of a vertical design can be formed in zigzag fashion by working from a partially opened bud at the top of the design to a fully opened blossom at the bottom. The resulting effect is like a series of waterfalls, for the arrangement suggests that water poured on the top flower would flow progressively downward, alternating from left to right during its descent (Fig. 2-3).

Curved Line

Curved lines suggest motion. They may curve regularly and predictably as in a circle, or they may change direction many times like the branches of curly willow. Certain flower stems curve naturally; others can be bent into curves manually or with wire. Curved lines can be used to create rhythmic flow in a design. However, curved lines sometimes create problems in a design when they cut unpleasantly across other lines or lead the eye in the wrong direction.

Figure 2-2
Gladioli form a strong vertical line that thrusts upward from the tall cylindrical container. A diagonal line of flowers of the obedient plant, which cuts diagonally across the vertical line, is called the line of opposition.

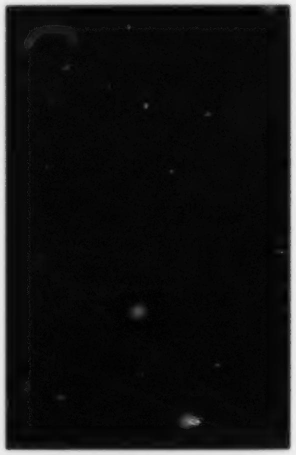


Figure 2-3
This mass arrangement clearly shows the shape of an isosceles triangle. Notice that the central axis is created by a zigzag line of zinnias.

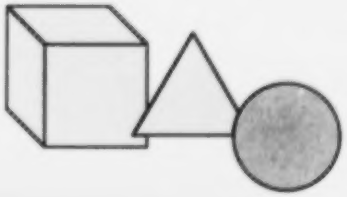
Triangular form is evident in this basket design of asters, carnations, and celosia.

Form is the three-dimensional boundary of an arrangement that identifies its shape. The basic forms are pyramid, globe, and cube. It is common practice to identify shapes of arrangements by their two-dimensional silhouette or outline. Thus, the basic design shapes are equilateral triangle, circular mound, and diamond centerpiece.

Some arrangements are designed to be viewed primarily from one side, while others, like table centerpieces, are made to be seen from all sides. Both types have depth; their form is affected by whether they are to be seen from many directions or mostly from one direction.

The form of a design is created by the flowers, foliage, branches, and any accessories. These items collectively occupy **positive space** within the design. The empty areas within the design are called **voids** or **negative space**. An arrangement that has lots of negative space appears very open and perhaps even light and airy. An arrangement with few voids is compact and appears much heavier.

As we have already noted, the form of certain arrangements is a line design. The other possible categories of form are mass and line-mass designs, which we will discuss next.



Three Types of Arrangements

LINE

MASS

LINE-MASS

Mass Arrangements

Mass arrangements contain many flowers and/or foliages. They may be one-sided or designed to be viewed from all sides. Very compact or very loose and open styles may be seen in this type of design. Many different kinds of flowers or perhaps just one kind of flower may be used.

If you were to shine a light on a mass arrangement, you would expect to see a silhouette that resembles some geometric shape with few voids. You would probably recognize a variation of either a triangle or a circle.

Triangle variations include:

- **equilateral triangle** - all sides equal,
- **isosceles triangle** - two sides equal but longer than the third side,
- **right triangle** - two sides forming a 90° angle,
- **scalene triangle** - each side of a different length, and
- **diamond** - two triangles placed base to base.

The diamond is the silhouette created when you look directly down from above on a centerpiece suitable for use on a rectangular table. This is called the diamond centerpiece. In side view it looks like a low drawn-out triangle.

Equilateral triangle

Isosceles triangle

Right triangle

Triangle Variations

Scalene triangle

Diamond

Circle Variations

Mound

Oval

Circle variations include:

- **mound** - usually half or more of a globe form and
- **oval**.

The oval is often done in a raised container that suggests an elongation of the circle design into an oval shape. However, it may also be seen when looking directly down on a centerpiece designed for an oval table or looking down on an arrangement made in an oval basket.

Period Arrangements in Relation to Form

Arrangements that were made in Europe over the past 500 or more years are now called **Period Arrangements** because they are typical of what was done with flowers in a certain period of history. Arrangements that suggest historical periods before 1900, whether done in Europe or the United States, were essentially all mass arrangements. Design styles such as Dutch, French, Georgian, Williamsburg and Victorian are often grouped together in a category called **Occidental Design.** The counterpart of this is **Oriental Design** that features a line style and originated in Japan and China. We will examine period designs of both Oriental and Occidental styles in Chapter 20.

Occidental design

Oriental design

Line-Mass Arrangements

Merging of line (Oriental) and mass (Occidental) design concepts has resulted in another group of designs known as line-mass arrangements. These have combined characteristics of the line and the mass styles. There is a definite line which is thickened or massed in with flowers and foliage. Few voids are found within the silhouette. The lines may gracefully taper off to a delicate point on each end. As in a mass arrangement, the flowers may be compactly or loosely spaced within the outline of the design.

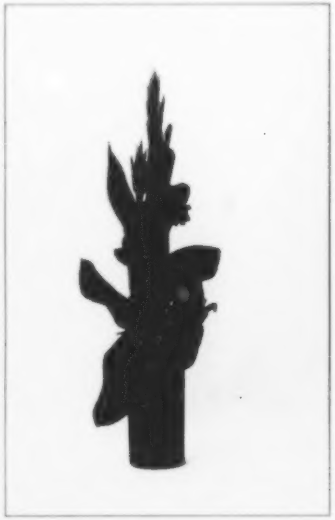
Line-mass arrangements which are based on STRAIGHT LINES include:

- **vertical,**
- **diagonal,**
- **L-shaped**, and
- **inverted-T** arrangements.

Line-mass arrangements which are based on CURVED LINES are:

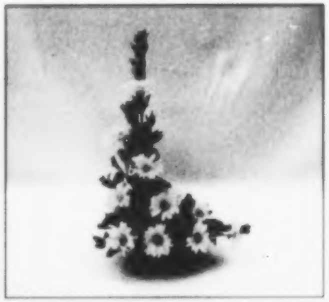
- **crescent** and
- **S-curve** or **Hogarth curve.**

Line-Mass Variations



Vertical

Diagonal



L-shaped

Based on straight lines

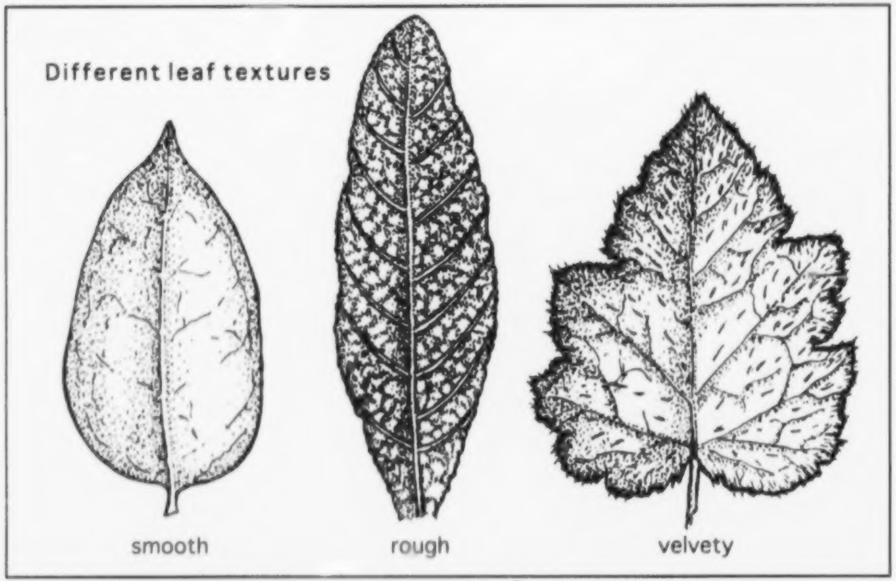
Inverted-T

Based on curved lines

Crescent

S-curve (Hogarth curve)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



The surface of this pottery container provides excellent textural contrast to the velvety zinnias and shiny rose hips.

This metallic container consists of shiny bands of copper and brass alternating with a black band of color. There is strong emphasis on texture: coarse bergenia leaves, velvety flower petals, and papery husks of blackberry lily.

[illegible]

Texture refers to the surface quality of an object. Flowers, foliage, containers, and accessories all have characteristic textures.

Some contrasting textures are suggested in the following list:

- fine or coarse
- smooth or rough
- shiny or dull
- satiny or velvety
- downy or prickly
- even or lumpy

These textural qualities can be used to provide interesting contrasts or subtle compatibility between the materials. The texture of an object can also be associated with the degree of formality that the object represents. For example, an arrangement in a Mexican theme might include coarse pottery, cacti and other succulents with prickly spines, coarse textured zinnias, and a loosely woven serape with a lumpy surface quality. Note that nothing has been mentioned about color. The texture alone creates a compatible grouping of items.

Velvety and satiny textures suggest a more formal situation. The soft, velvety texture of rose petals and shiny surface of camellia leaves are both associated with elegance. They are compatible when used together, but the contrast between the two textures adds interest to the arrangement.

Either bold or subtle textural contrasts are appropriate depending on the result the designer is trying to achieve. Textural contrasts can be achieved not only in the flowers and foliage, but also in the container, accessories and background chosen for the design. The velvety and shiny contrast between roses and camellia leaves could be further developed by placing them in a shiny silver container and displaying the arrangement on a piece of rich velvet.

Delicate texture and color is appropriate in this novelty arrangement featuring a toy rocking horse. Baby's breath is commonly added to arrangements for its soft textural effect.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Examine pieces of cloth that may be used as backgrounds for arrangements. Answer the following questions about each sample.

   What word best describes the texture of each piece?

   Does the texture suggest a formal or an informal feeling?

   What flowers, foliages or accessories would be compatible with the cloth with regard to texture?

   What flowers, foliages or accessories would provide a strong contrast to the cloth with regard to texture?

2. Answer the same questions listed above but in reference to articles of clothing worn by students in the class. Clothing texture is one factor to consider in selecting flowers, foliage and ribbon for corsages and wedding bouquets.

3. Assemble an assortment of pieces of cloth, fresh, dry and silk flowers, ribbon, and other available accessories. Group these into the following textural combinations:

   A. A strong textural contrast. (Name the two contrasting textures selected.)

   B. A subtle compatible textural grouping. (What word best describes the texture that you have developed?)

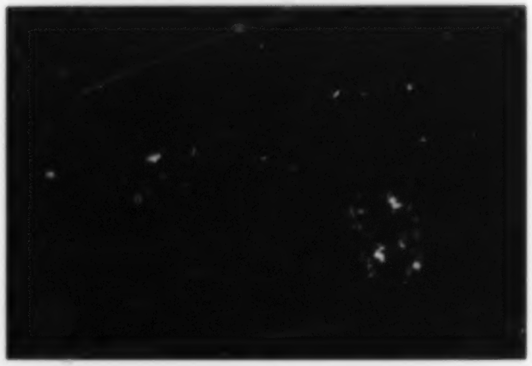
   C. A textural grouping that suggests formality. (Have you selected a contrasting or a compatible textural combination?)

   D. A textural grouping that suggests informality. (Have you selected a contrasting or a compatible textural combination?)

The **velvety texture** of roses, cockscomb, and dusty miller contrasts with the rough texture of the container.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

COOL COLORS IN NATURE



Almost everyone agrees that color is the single most important element in a flower arrangement. People react differently to color because of individual preferences and past experiences in seeing different color schemes. Their like or dislike for a particular arrangement is often based largely on color. All people do not see color in the same way. This may be due to actual physical differences in color perception between viewers. Also background colors near the arrangement may influence people in different ways.

Colors of flowers are related to their surface quality (texture). In addition, colors are affected by the lighting conditions under which the flowers are seen. Therefore, at the end of this discussion of color, we will consider many ways in which *light* affects color.

Psychology of Color

Colors are symbolic because we associate them with objects and events with which we are familiar. Colors may appear warm or cold, exciting or restful, happy or somber. Colors may even appear to move toward you (advance), move away from you (recede), or stay put (stable). This may sound strange, but interior decorators have long recognized this in selecting colors for a room. A large cement block classroom on the north side of a school may be painted yellow to make it seem smaller, warmer and more cozy. A small bedroom on the southwest corner of a home is often painted light blue or green to make it appear more spacious. More conservative people are likely to select the safe, stable colors of brown, beige and earth tones for much of their decor.

Color choices in clothing are another way we frequently express our feelings. Normally the colors we choose are dictated by fashion and our individual taste. However, special circumstances may alter these colors. Compare what you would choose to wear to a funeral with what you would wear to a Hawaiian luau. Also, contrast those people you know who tend to be daring in their choice of clothing colors with those who seldom deviate from traditional color combinations.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Write down the feelings you have when you see each of the following colors.
What things or occasions do you associate with each color?
Do you think the color advances or recedes?
Do you consider it a warm or a cool color?

RED
ORANGE
YELLOW
BLUE
GREEN
VIOLET
BLACK
WHITE
GRAY
BROWN

Share your ideas in a group discussion. Then read the following paragraphs to see if your conclusions agree with those usually associated with the color.

Warm Colors in Nature

52

53

RED

RED *Advancing, Warm*

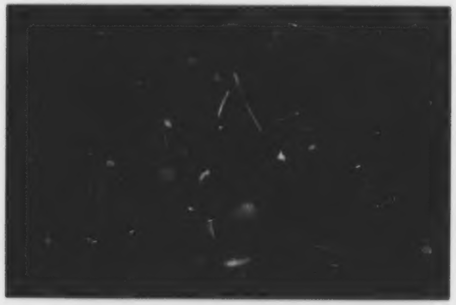
Examples of red objects are blood, the Valentine heart and the matador's cape. These all arouse strong emotions. Red is frequently used as a color choice in church carpeting because it is associated with the Holy Spirit and martyrs. However, it also helps to create a warmer feeling in an otherwise large and cold structure. Red is often used in restaurants because it is thought to stimulate the appetite. Red is used throughout the year in floral designs but is especially eye-catching in quantity at Christmas, Valentine's Day and the Fourth of July.

COLOR VARIATIONS

Brick
Burgundy
Cardinal
Carmine
Claret
Maroon
Pink
Rose
Scarlet
Strawberry

PINK

When red pigment is diluted with the addition of white, the result is **pink**. Pink is a soft, pleasing color that blends readily with many other colors. It is widely used in floral design. Though pink is in the same color family as red, it is usually considered separately.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

ORANGE *Advancing, Warm*

Orange is associated with the warmth of a crackling fire. It is most appreciated in nature in the brilliance of autumn foliage color. The Halloween pumpkin, clusters of bittersweet, and Thanksgiving squash and gourds all exhibit the color. Although orange is used most extensively in the autumn months, it is always a good companion color for the brownish earth-tone colors, which are brightened by the association.

COLOR VARIATIONS

Apricot
Bittersweet
Cameo
Coral
Fawn
Flesh
Peach
Salmon
Shrimp
Terra Cotta

ORANGE

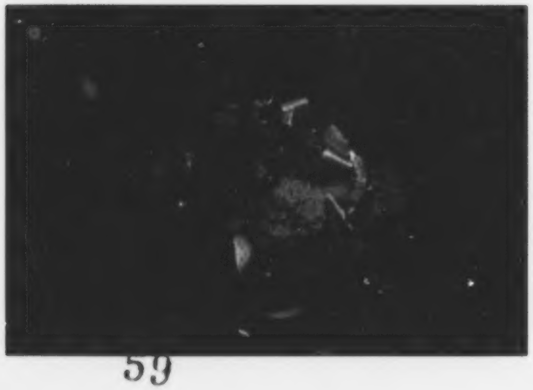
YELLOW

Advancing, Warm

Yellow is a bright cheerful color associated with rays of sunlight. Yellow is the color of the spring daffodil and the newly hatched chick. It is widely used in spring arrangements and at Easter. Yellow is used as a wall color to make a large, stark room more hospitable since it "advances" toward the viewer. It is also a good choice for hospital arrangements intended to cheer the patient.

COLOR VARIATIONS

- **Amber**
- **Buff**
- **Buttercup**
- **Gold**
- **Lemon**
- **Maize**
- **Mustard**
- **Primrose**
- **Straw**
- **Sulphur**



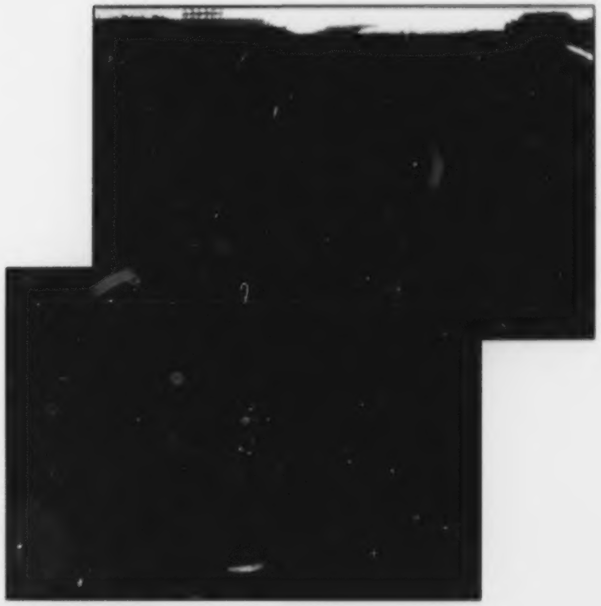
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

GREEN *Receding, Cool*

Green is the color of trees, grass and rolling hills. These associations make it easy to understand why green is considered a receding color. Since foliages and stems are green, it is part of almost all arrangements. Usually green is not a strong color; it has the effect of tying the arrangement together. Green, a symbol of living things, is greatly appreciated during the drab months of winter in northern climates. It shows up in the Christmas tree and other holiday greens, where it is livened with red accents. One can hardly imagine interiors without the pleasing effect of green foliage plants. Green receives special attention on St. Patrick's Day, when an all-foliage arrangement can feature interesting variations of just this one color.

COLOR VARIATIONS

Avocado
Emerald
Forest
Jade
Lime
Moss
Olive
Seafoam
Shamrock
Willow



60

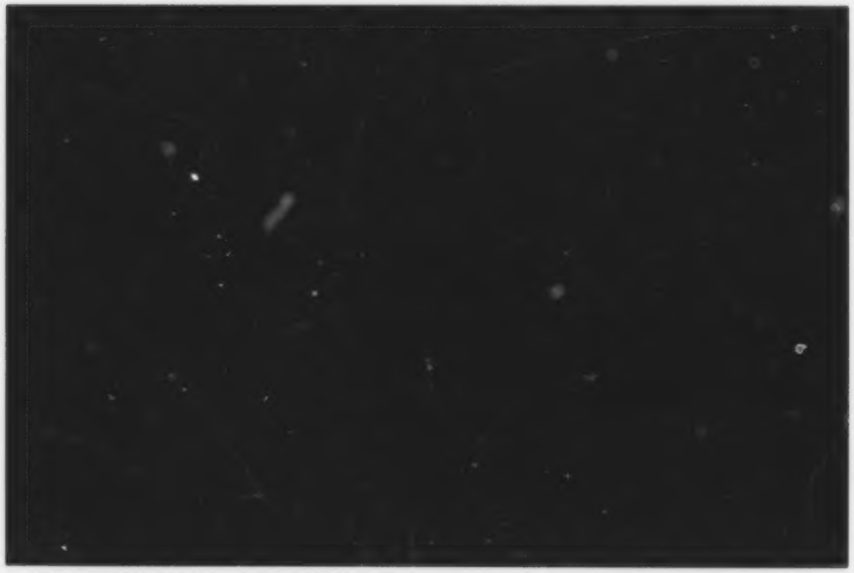
61

COLOR VARIATIONS

Aqua
Azure
Cobalt
Cornflower
Gentian
Marine
Navy
Peacock
Sky
Turquoise

BLUE *Receding, Cool*

Blue is the color of sky and water, both of which appear to go on endlessly. The tranquil quality of blue often makes it the choice for the interior color of churches, where it takes on a "heavenly" feeling. Blue is a color not heavily represented in common florist flowers available year round, though there are some good true blue flowers. Chrysanthemums, roses and snapdragons, for example, are not available in blue. Since blue is a widely selected clothing color, flowers are sometimes dyed or sprayed to produce the color. Blue can be used effectively with all other colors. Its use in a garden frequently gives unity to what would otherwise be a hodge-podge of colors.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

VIOLET *Receding, Cool*

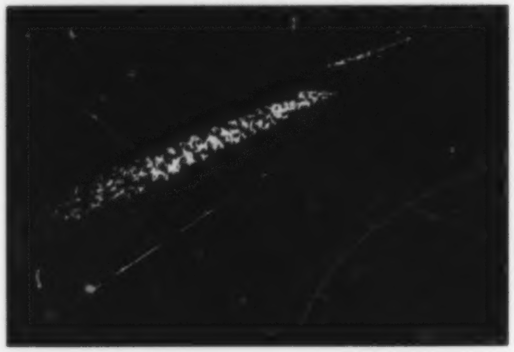
Violet is usually thought of as a restful color because of its association with the last fading rays of light at dusk. It is often used in sympathy flowers. Violet also appears in many spring flowers like crocus. It also effectively combines with yellow in spring arrangements such as those made for Easter. Darker, more vibrant violet (purple) may be associated with elegance or royalty, especially when combined with gold.

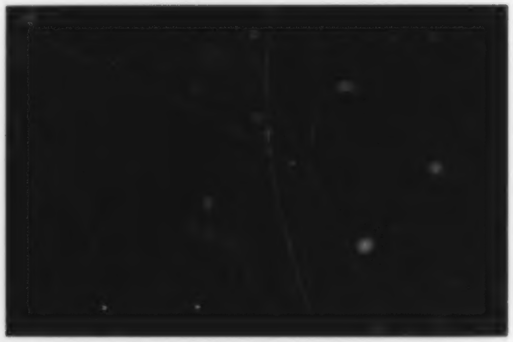
BLACK *Stable, Neutral*

Black is associated with the darkness of night and the unknown. Black represents death and to many people is a funeral color. Halloween features black in cats, bats and witches. Nevertheless, black can be a very useful color in flower arranging. A black background, vase or accessory can often provide a striking contrast to a flower color. Black may be used for its heavy quality as a base to give stability in an arrangement. Black is often used in modern arrangements for its dramatic effect.

COLOR VARIATIONS

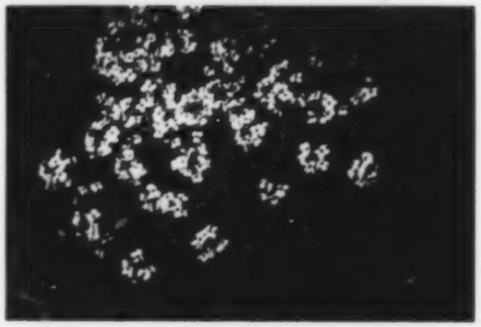
Amethyst
Grape
Lavender
Lilac
Magenta
Mauve
Mulberry
Plum
Purple
Wisteria





BEST COPY AVAILABLE

WHITE



COLOR VARIATIONS

Bone
Candlelight
Champagne
Cream
Ivory

Charcoal
Quaker
Silver
Slate
Steel

Chestnut
Cinnamon
Fawn
Mahogany
Russet

WHITE

Stable, Cool

White is usually associated with purity and innocence. It has many religious connotations and is widely used in weddings. Snow gives white its association with coolness. Although white can be used with all colors, it is a very strong color and must be given special attention. As lights dim in the evening and other colors fade, the last color to be seen is white.

GRAY

Stable, Neutral

Gray is a combination of white and black. The result is a very somber color. Gray is a widely used color choice in men's and women's clothing. There is considerable latitude in color choices to associate with gray. Gray is most frequently used in flower arranging to tone down the brilliance of other colors.

BROWN

Stable, Warm

Brown is an earthy color associated with soil and the somber November landscape. In flower arranging it is used widely in autumn arrangements. Many dried materials are available in browns and beiges. Brown is used throughout the year in interior decorating. It is a very "safe" color which can serve as a suitable background for many other colors. The heavier-appearing darker browns can be used in flower arrangements to give stability and depth to the design.

Spectrum versus Pigment Colors

If you hold a prism up to a window so that bright sunlight passes through it, a portion of a rainbow will appear. Just like a rainbow in the sky after a rain, the colors always appear in the following order: violet, blue, green, yellow, orange and red (Fig. 2-4). The reason for this phenomenon is that the clear light, sometimes called white light, coming from the sun (or even an artificial light source) is made up of wavelengths of light energy that include all these colors. See Figure 2-5. Clear light may also include other wavelengths of energy which the eye cannot see, like ultraviolet (which results in suntans) and infrared (associated with heat radiation). The wavelengths the eye can see make up the **visible light spectrum**. When clear light passes through the prism, the different wavelengths of light energy bend at different angles causing them to spread out into a rainbow (Fig. 2-6).

Knowledge of the visible light spectrum helps in understanding the color wheel (Fig. 2-7). You will also be able to visualize better how flower arrangements will look in different lighting situations. Both of these topics will be discussed later.

It is important in understanding color to learn about the **pigment theory** of color. Pigments are minerals or other chemicals that reflect light in specific ways to create a

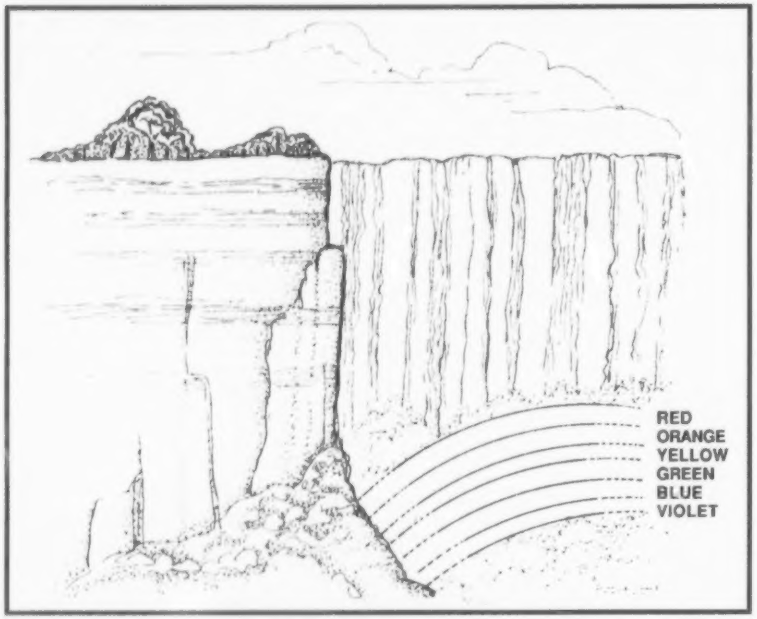

RED
ORANGE
YELLOW
GREEN
BLUE
VIOLET

Figure 2-4
Rainbow

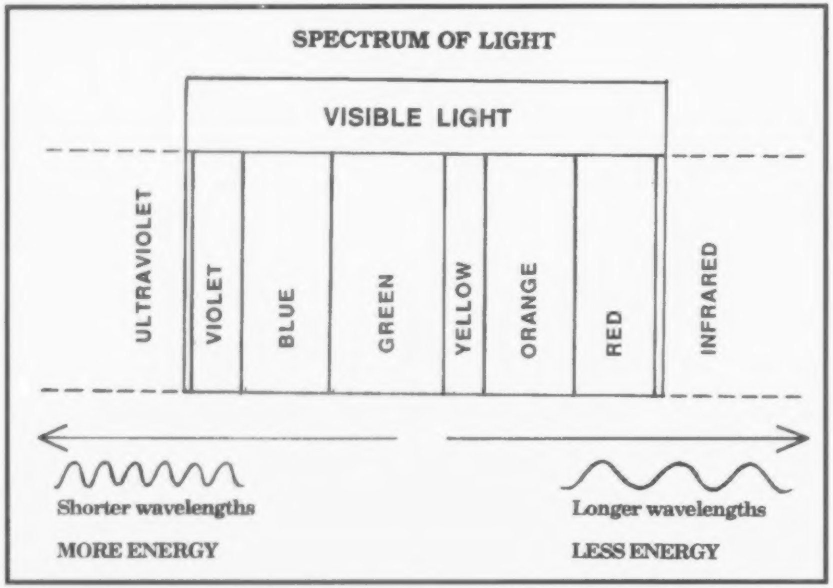

SPECTRUM OF LIGHT
VISIBLE LIGHT
ULTRAVIOLET
VIOLET
BLUE
GREEN
YELLOW
ORANGE
RED
INFRARED
Shorter wavelengths
MORE ENERGY
Longer wavelengths
LESS ENERGY

Figure 2-5
The visible light spectrum

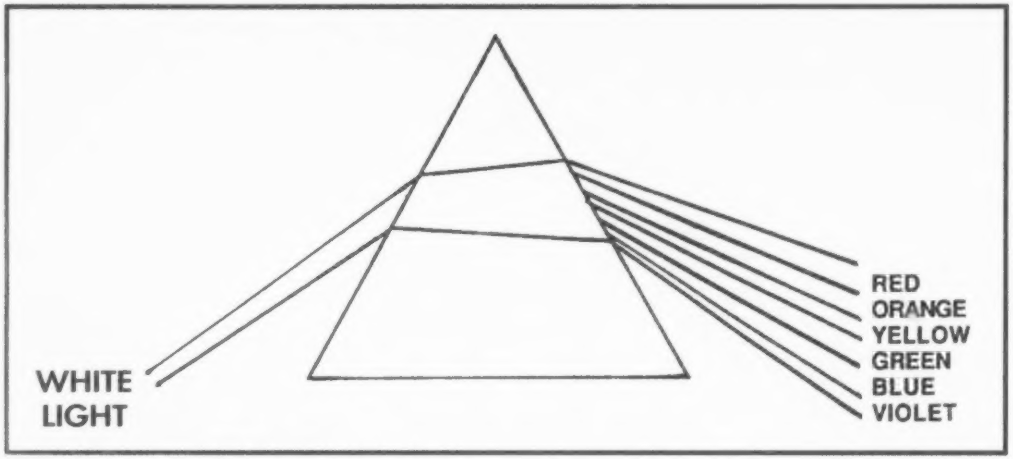


Figure 2-6 Light passing through a prism

sensation of color. Pigments absorb certain parts of the visible spectrum and reflect others which the eye detects. A yellow flower like a daffodil contains naturally-occurring yellow pigments in the petals. As clear sunlight (composed of all the visible wavelengths of light) shines on the flower, all wavelengths are absorbed except yellow. Yellow light is reflected back to the viewer's eye, so the flower is seen as yellow. The same reasoning applies to all other colors of objects we see: the color of the object is caused by the wavelengths that are being reflected from it. Spray paints contain pigments which are used to alter the natural color of the object being sprayed. Stem dyes, used mainly to color carnations, are taken up through the stem and deposited inside the flower petals. The eye perceives the wavelengths reflected by these artificial pigments as described, and the flower color is changed.

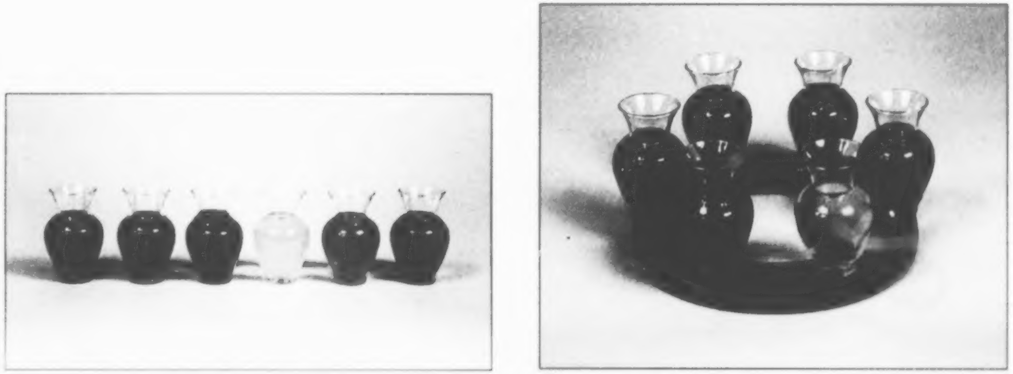


Figure 2-7 Vases of water containing food coloring are first lined up in the order of the visible light spectrum. They are then rearranged into a circle which represents the order of the primary and secondary colors on the color wheel.

THE COLOR WHEEL

A color wheel is a circle divided into pie-shaped wedges of various colors arranged in a specific order. You can make a simple color wheel using the colors of the rainbow by bending it into a circle. Having used the rainbow as an example, it is noteworthy that color wheels are actually based on pigment colors rather than spectrum wavelengths of colored light like those in a rainbow. Color wheels can be used to predict the outcome of mixing different pigment colors together. Some color wheels also show how the addition of white or black will alter a color. Floral designers, interior decorators and artists find color wheels useful in developing interesting color combinations in their work.

Red, yellow and blue are called **primary colors** because they are the three from which all other colors can be made by mixing. At first this statement may not seem possible. However, a little experimenting with red, yellow and blue paint will quickly show you that it is true. Orange, green and violet are called **secondary colors** (second order) because they can be made by mixing together two primary colors.

Primary Colors		Secondary Color
red + yellow	=	orange
yellow + blue	=	green
blue + red	=	violet

Tertiary colors (third order) are created by mixing a primary color with a secondary color next to it on the color wheel. If the tertiary colors were added to the basic color wheel, it would be a twelve-spoke color wheel.

Primary Color		Secondary Color		Tertiary Color
red	+	orange	=	red-orange
yellow	+	orange	=	yellow-orange
yellow	+	green	=	yellow-green
blue	+	green	=	blue-green
blue	+	violet	=	blue-violet
red	+	violet	=	red-violet

Color wheels can be made more complex by mixing secondary and tertiary colors into fourth-order colors or by showing light or dark versions of each color. If the latter is done, the darker color variations are placed toward the center of each pie-shaped wedge and the lighter color variations toward the outside of each wedge.

The 12-spoke color wheel

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Obtain an inexpensive set of paints. Mark first the primary colors and then the secondary colors. Use an artist's pallet or other suitable surface to create the secondary colors from the primary colors and the tertiary colors from the primary and secondary colors.

2. Use food coloring in jars or cylinders of water to show mixing of dyes to create secondary and tertiary colors. These could then be labeled and put on display.

3. Place a prism in a sunny window where sunlight can pass through the prism. It will bend the wavelengths of light at different angles, creating a rainbow on the wall, ceiling, floor or piece of white paper. Identify the spectrum colors and note their order of appearance.

(*Note:* The prism may not create a very bright rainbow on a cloudy day or with artificial light. You may have to turn and move the prism in many directions until you get a bright spectrum projected onto an area where all can view it. If the prism is propped up for a longer display, the rainbow will move or even disappear as the angle of the sun's rays changes during the day.)

These geraniums show an intense **hue** of red.

The soft pink of these gerbera daisies represents a **tint** of red.

Color Terminology

The vocabulary used for various aspects of color is somewhat detailed and is often used incorrectly by those not trained in the subject. When used correctly, the terms can aid in recognizing and understanding the many subtle variations in color.

Hue

Hue is a general name for a spoke or pie-shaped wedge of color on the color wheel. Thinking in terms of a six-spoke color wheel, the basic hues or families of color are: red, orange, yellow, green, blue and violet. Each of these hues can have many variations. The lighter and darker color variations may have specific names but are still members of that hue. Colors that are muted with gray and those that are very bright and intense are also members of that hue. Here are some examples:

Hue	Some Color Members of the Hue
RED	pink, scarlet, burgundy
ORANGE	apricot, tangerine, rust
YELLOW	primrose, lemon, gold
GREEN	mint, kelly, emerald
BLUE	powder blue, azure, navy
VIOLET	heather, purple, grape

Variations of a Hue

1. VALUE

The lightness or darkness of a hue is called its value. If you think of colors as paints, a lighter color can be created by adding white to the pure hue and darker variations by adding black. The lighter values of a hue are called **tints**. The darker values are called **shades**. The pastel colors of pink, apricot, and mint are examples of tints of their respective hues. The dark, rich colors of burgundy and navy are shades.

2. INTENSITY

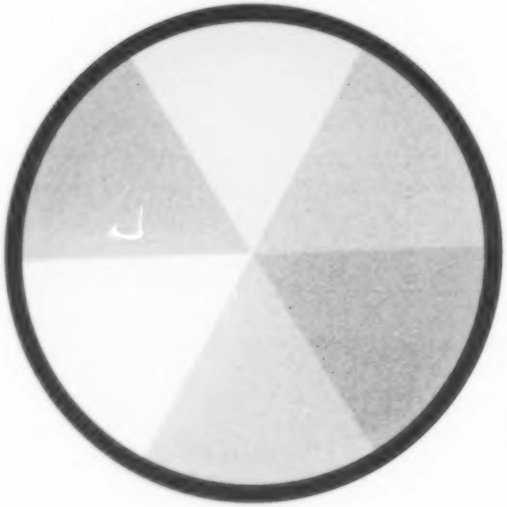
Intensity refers to the saturation level of the pigment. Surfaces on which the color pigment is very saturated appear intense in color. School bus yellow is an example of an intense hue. When less pigment is present, color is more dilute. A basket that has been whitewashed is coated with such a dilute paint. The effect is much less intense than if the basket had been sprayed with white enamel paint.

3. CHROMA

Chroma refers to the brightness or dullness of the color within a hue. It is affected by texture. Any color, including white, gray, and black, can have different chromas. Black patent leather, for example, has a hard, smooth, glossy chroma which may appear "more black" than black velvet with its softer, more dull chroma.

Plants often have many tiny hairs covering flower petals or leaves. These tiny hairs reduce the brilliance of the color and give them a soft, dull or velvety chroma. Contrast that with hard glossy surfaces like shiny ceramic containers. However, some leaves, like camellia leaves, are naturally smooth and glossy. Other leaves can sometimes be made glossy with plant shine. Both these kinds appear brighter green than do dull, rough-textured leaves.

COLOR VALUE



Tints

Shades

Example of variation of the color RED

hue: red
tint: pink
shade: burgundy
tone: dusty rose

variations in "**value**":
pink vs. burgundy

variations in **chroma**:
red velvet ribbon vs.
red satin ribbon

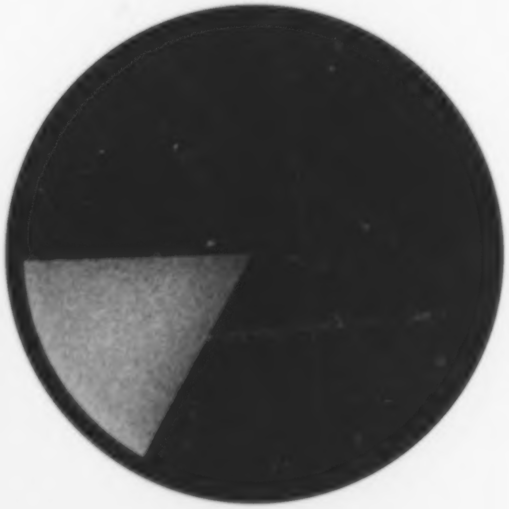
Examples of -

Bright chromas

- ☆ shiny gold ornaments
- ☆ mirrored surfaces
- ☆ satin fabric
- ☆ object sprayed with enamel paint
- ☆ florists' foil

Dull chromas

- ☆ velvet fabric
- ☆ moss
- ☆ leaves with hairs
- ☆ chenille stems
- ☆ burlap



Tones

The dusty rose colors of the flowers and vase of this asymmetrical triangle represent **tones** of the color. The use of gray line and filler foliage enhances this toned quality.

Floral designers consult color wheels to help them make effective and creative decisions with regard to color.

The full impact of chroma cannot be shown on color wheels since they are printed in just one texture.

4. TONE

Tone is a color variation of the hue resulting from addition of gray to the pigment. The effect is a softer, dulled color. The toned color is more subtle and can usually be combined more safely with a wider range of other colors. Examples of tones are dusty rose, heather, sage green and colonial blue.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Assemble a variety of objects from the classroom that are all of one color. This might include bolts of ribbon, candles, pieces of fabric, or articles of clothing. What is the name of the hue that has been chosen? Attempt to select a specific name for the color of each object. Decide if it is a tint or a shade of the hue. How would you describe its texture (surface quality)? Does it have a bright or a dull chroma? Is there a hint of gray in the color? Would you call it a tone of the hue?

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Combining Colors

Because arrangements are seldom just one color, every floral designer is confronted with making color choices from the materials available to him or her. Color combinations may be dictated by the holiday or the occasion. You can't go wrong with the traditional combinations of red and green for Christmas, yellow and violet for Easter, and red, white and blue for the Fourth of July. A customer may have a specific color request, reflecting personal preference. This takes the decision out of your hands. However, you may be given only a description of the setting in which the arrangement will be used. This leaves the choice of colors up to your educated judgment. You now need a knowledge of the range of acceptable color combinations called **color schemes**.

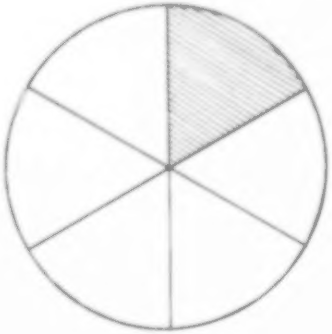
The following color schemes are frequently used in flower arranging, interior decorating, and fashion design. Sometimes the only matter of concern is the color relationships of the arrangement with its container and accessories. This would be the case when the designer is making an assortment of arrangements for sale in a shop. Other situations require color coordinating the designs with a larger setting. For example, in wedding work the bouquets, boutonnieres and corsages must harmonize with the clothing. In party work, the centerpiece must coordinate with the total table setting as well as the decor of the room. Custom designed silk or dried arrangements must effectively enhance the color scheme already existing in a room.

Following are different categories of color schemes designed to help increase your awareness of colors. No category is better or worse than the others. They are only suggestions to open up to you new possibilities for creative and pleasing color combinations.

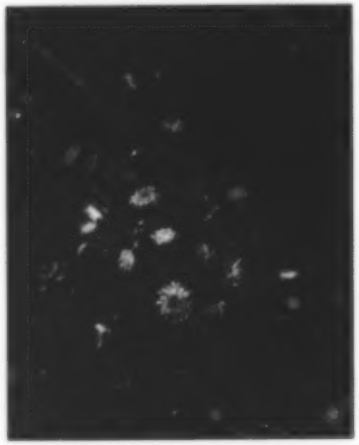
Monochromatic Color Scheme

Mono means "one". In a monochromatic design only one hue is featured. However, that hue may appear in different variations within the arrangement. Usually the more variation there is in value, chroma and tone of hue, the more interesting is the result.

An example of a monochromatic color scheme is an arrangement of pink snapdragons, rose-colored annual statice, red roses, and red huckleberry foliage. Rarely does the foliage fall into the hue being considered, but when it does, it can add a special touch and added dimension.



Monochromatic color scheme



Monochromatic white

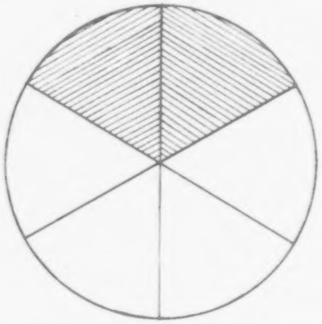
Monochromatic orange

Analogous red-orange

Analogous yellow-green

Analogous Color Scheme

An analogous color scheme includes neighboring colors on the color wheel. It is perhaps easiest to understand using a six-spoke color wheel. On such a wheel, analogous colors would be a primary and a secondary color positioned next to each other, such as yellow and orange, yellow and green, green and blue, blue and violet, violet and red, or red and orange.



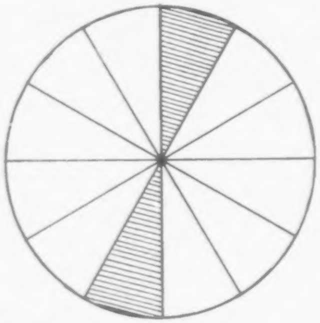
Analogous color scheme

The scheme is never to be so large as to include two primary colors. However, it certainly can include the tertiary colors between the primary and secondary colors, as well as all the different tints, shades, chromas and tones of these colors. A mass planting of mixed marigolds with its cheerful combination of yellow, gold, orange and rust is a good example of such a color scheme.

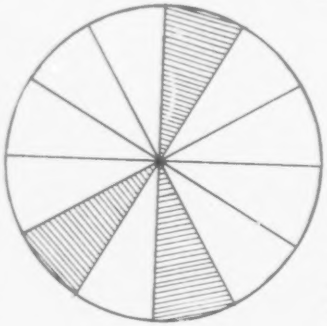
Analogous color schemes are very safe in that they are usually pleasing to most people. An example of the use of yellow, yellow-green and green is yellow lilies, green gladiolus and dark green salal foliage. If foliage with yellow variegation could be obtained to add to the arrangement, it would add interest and also help carry out the analogous color scheme.

Complementary Color Scheme

A complementary (or **contrasting**) color scheme is made by selecting colors generally across from each other on the color wheel. There are two kinds of complementary color schemes: direct complementary and split complementary. The **direct complementary scheme** involves two hues that are directly across from each other on the color wheel, such as red and green, yellow and violet, or orange and blue. If a twelve-spoke color wheel is used, combinations like blue-green and red-orange, or yellow-green and red-violet are also seen to be complementary.



Direct complementary color scheme



Split complementary color scheme

A twelve-spoke color wheel is essential to understand the second kind of complementary color scheme - the **split complementary scheme**. This involves three colors: a hue and the two colors that appear in the pie-shaped wedges *on either side* of the color that is directly opposite on the color wheel. An example would be blue with orange-yellow and orange-red. Orange is directly opposite blue on the color wheel but would not be included in the color scheme.

A complementary color scheme emphasizes differences among colors rather than similarities. The floral designer may experiment with these contrasts to produce refreshing, bold and daring color combinations.

Although white does not appear as a hue on color wheels, a commonly used contrasting color scheme combines white with any of the colors on the wheel. The blending of white mums with red carnations or white gladioli with yellow roses is pleasing to most people.

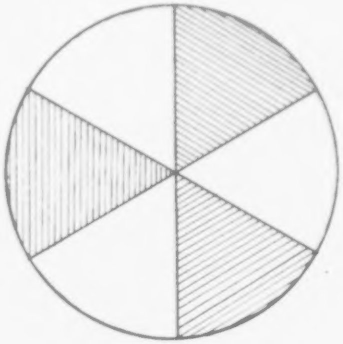
A red and white combination creates a very strong contrast. However, white can also be used with pastel colors to achieve a more subtle contrast, as in the combination of pink carnations and white baby's breath. Because white has strong eye appeal, it can dominate the arrangement if large white flowers are used in equal quantity to flowers of another color. Such domination can be avoided by the use of smaller white flowers such as baby's breath.

If white containers are used, a more harmonious arrangement can be achieved when some white flowers are included with the other colors that have been chosen. An even more subtle way to soften the contrast of white is to include some white variegated foliage along with the white flowers in such an arrangement.

The clean bright contrast of white with other colors is one more color idea that designers can add to their mental list of combinations to try.

Triad Color Scheme

The color scheme called the triad involves three hues that are equidistant from each other on the color wheel. A bold combination of the three primary colors of red, yellow and blue is an example of a triad. Another triad scheme combines orange, violet and green. The three colors do not have to be used in equal amounts. In fact, the arrangement may be more effective if one color is used in greater amounts and allowed to dominate the other colors.



Triad color scheme

Complementary color scheme - red and green

Complementary color scheme - orange and blue

Triad color scheme - red, yellow, blue

The concept of allowing one color to dominate can be applied to the other color schemes discussed as well as to the triad. Experience has also shown that using too few variations of a hue may be dull, while using too many may be confusing. The amount of each color used and the variability within each color, regardless of the color scheme chosen, is up to the individual designer. Observation and experience will make these quantity decisions more obvious.

Triad color scheme - green, orange, violet

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Collect an assortment of items (such as pieces of fabric, ribbons, candles, etc.), each of which is a single, solid color. Divide students into groups of two or three and have each group draw the name of a color scheme written on slips of paper placed in a basket. Each group will look over the items and select at least three of them to represent the color scheme that they have drawn.

Have each group explain their color scheme and why they made the choices they did. Colors can be pointed out on the color wheel as part of the discussion so that it is more clear how the choices were made.

What is the general class reaction to the representative examples of each color scheme?

2. Using the twelve-spoke color wheel, have each student list three colors that can be combined to represent a monochromatic, analogous, direct complementary, split complementary, and triad color scheme.

Color Guidelines

Color is important in helping attain most of the principles of design. It can influence balance, proportion, rhythm, dominance, contrast, harmony and establishment of the focal point. These will all be discussed in the next chapter entitled "Principles of Design." These concepts will become even more clear to you when you begin to critique your own work. Nevertheless, there are some general color guidelines that can be understood without drawing heavily upon the principles of design. Here are some suggestions that may assist you in your initial attempts to use color.

1. Repeat colors in a design.

Avoid using a color only once in a design. If the container is white and your flowers are not, use a white filler flower or use foliage with white variegation. Flowers that are bi-colored or have a different colored throat are useful in repeating a color. Don't ignore significant colors that show up in containers or figurines you may be using.

2. Don't use too many different colors.

Too many competing strong colors can lead to confusing results. Two colors can make a strong or a subtle contrast. Three well-chosen colors result in a slightly more complex color combination, but one which is usually safe. Larger numbers of colors should be used only when the colors are muted or toned down. For example, a dried arrangement made in the Williamsburg style can include many colors whose softened tones blend together in a pleasing overall effect.

3. Let one color dominate.

When using more than one color, allow one of the colors to dominate by using more of it. Equal amounts of color are difficult to work with. An example is a church arrangement in which there are one dozen white carnations and one dozen red carnations of equal size. The results are often less than interesting.

4. Use darker colored flowers deeper and lower in the arrangement.

Darker colors usually appear heavier (with more visual weight) than do lighter colors. Inserting the darker ones further into the arrangement than the lighter colored flowers will contribute to greater depth. Also, a lower placement of darker colored flowers in the arrangement will give it more stability. This general guideline does not apply if the chroma of the material is more significant than the value. For example, silver is a light color (it has a light value), but it can be very shiny (with a shiny chroma). The chroma gives it enough eye appeal that it may carry more visual weight than a darker color. This means that flowers or foliages with a dominant chroma may also have to be placed deeper or lower in the arrangement even if they are lighter in color.

5. Use sparingly colors with high eye appeal.

Flowers, accessories or containers which are very bright quickly attract the eye. They are most effectively used in small quantities and should be placed where they will attract attention to a key area in the arrangement (the focal point). A shiny brass container

Bright mixed colors of cockscomb express the feeling of late summer.

Popular Color Combinations

- ☆ Santa Fe colors of the Southwest desert - **aqua, peach, adobe**
- ☆ Accented neutrals - **earthtones, taupe, red**
- ☆ Contemporary contrast - **black and white** with any hue
- ☆ Metallic - **copper, silver, gold**
- ☆ Opalescent - **pearlized effect, pink blush and lavender**
- ☆ Whitewashed effect - **Wedgewood blue, mauve, pewter green and hyacinth**

Color Guidelines *(continued)*

may be overly dominant, while an older one with an aged patina may be more effective. Flowers that are less bright can usually be used safely in larger quantities in arrangements than can very bright flowers.

6. ***Use larger flowers of a certain color to emphasize that color.***

A larger flower has more density and more surface area than a smaller flower; therefore color appears stronger in the larger flower. One large white football mum has stronger eye appeal than several sprays of white statice or even a whole bunch of white baby's breath. Small flowers, like star flowers, may be clustered for more color impact.

7. ***Select either bold color contrasts or soft, subtle contrasts to suit the situation.***

There is really no right or wrong when comparing these two alternatives. Color combinations that match the mood of an occasion will probably be more appreciated and longer remembered. A strong orange and black color contrast makes a definite statement in a Halloween arrangement. A bright arrangement of red, yellow and blue might be suitable for an informal daytime patio luncheon, but not for an elegant evening dinner. The gentle harmony of pink, lavender and pale blue may be most pleasing at a bridal shower or in a bouquet for a new baby.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Based on the preceding discussion of color, examine several pictures of arrangements or slides of arrangements. Identify the color scheme that has been used. Critique the arrangement based on the color guidelines given.

Another possibility is to have each student react to one picture or slide and present his or her observations to the class. It is helpful to be aware of how other people react to color.

2. Invite someone from outside the class who has not received any color instruction to react to the colors used in several arrangements. This may help you begin to understand customer reactions to different color schemes used in floral designs.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Light

Lighting Affects Color

It is sometimes surprising to see how different an arrangement looks at night on a dining table from what it did on the design bench, or how different an altar vase looks up in front of a church. Much of this can be explained by the change in lighting. Both light quality (color) and light intensity (brightness) affect color.

LIGHT QUALITY

You learned earlier that clear light from the sun is actually made up of many different wavelengths which include different colors of visible light. If the windows of a room were made of red colored glass, the light in the room would be red and the objects in the room would appear reddish. This is because the glass absorbed all the wavelengths except red. The red ones passed through and were subsequently reflected from the objects in the room. Colored spotlights have a similar effect when used to illuminate an arrangement. Those flowers that are the same color as the light falling on the arrangement appear intensified in color. Light colored and white flowers appear the color of the light. Other colors are distorted and may appear dark or even black.

Incandescent versus Fluorescent Lighting

Artificial light sources that are commonly used where arrangements are viewed include both incandescent and fluorescent lamps. Although the light they give off appears clear, it is actually different in the wavelengths of light it contains and therefore changes the way flowers and other objects look under it. **Incandescent lights**, the kind most often used in homes, give off large amounts of wavelengths in the red and orange end of the spectrum. These highlight the red and orange pigments in flowers, the warm colors. The result is a desired homey feeling. Clear crisp blues, on the other hand, are dulled under incandescent lighting.

Fluorescent light is widely used because of its higher efficiency especially in commercial settings. Fluorescent light is much higher in the amount of blue wavelengths it contains. Blue flowers and blue objects are highlighted, while the red and orange tones are subdued.

Candlelight is high in orange and red wavelengths and affects flower color much like incandescent light does. However, it is usually much less bright.

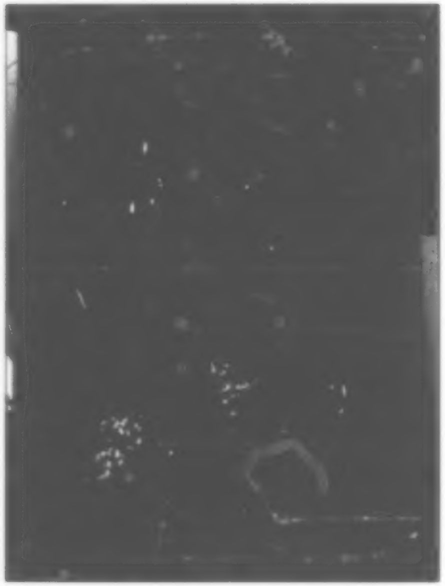
LIGHT INTENSITY

Light intensity refers to the brightness of the light. In general, all colors can be seen more easily in brighter light than in dimmer light. Problems arise when light intensity is very low.

Some colors are very difficult to see when the light is dim. Those that have been described as receding colors (violet, blue and green) are most affected. Darker colors are affected more than lighter colors. Pale yellow, light pink and white are among the last colors to remain visible as light intensity decreases.

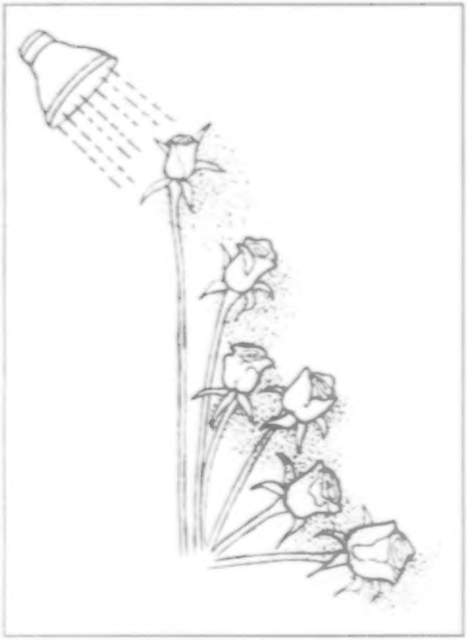
Lighting surfaces with a high chroma can produce the following effects:

- ☆ Glitzy
- ☆ Sparkly
- ☆ Shimmery
- ☆ Shiny
- ☆ Glittery



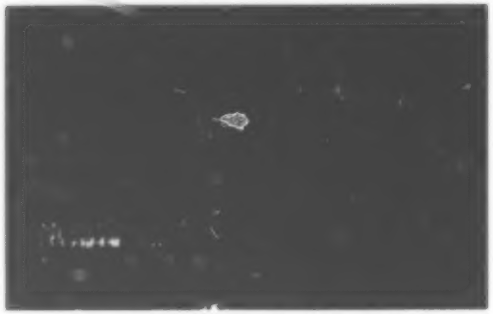
Candles increase light intensity and affect the appearance of the flower colors they illuminate.

White carries well when lights are dim.



Use spotlights of different colors and note the change in appearance of the flowers.

Certain flowers, like purple statice and dark red roses, should be avoided in low light situations. These flowers may appear to be black holes in the arrangement under these conditions.



Warm colors are enhanced by candlelight.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Assemble spotlights that are red, blue and white and flowers that are red, blue and white (for example, a red rose, blue annual statice and a white carnation). Other flowers can also be used, including silk flowers. Place each flower individually in a bud vase.

Turning off lights, make the room dark enough so that most students are having difficulty seeing the flowers clearly. In the remaining light, which of the three flowers can you see best? Does this support the statement made earlier about which colors are most easily seen in dim light? Which colors are most difficult to see? Do you feel these colors should be used in arrangements for evening events where light intensity is likely to be low?

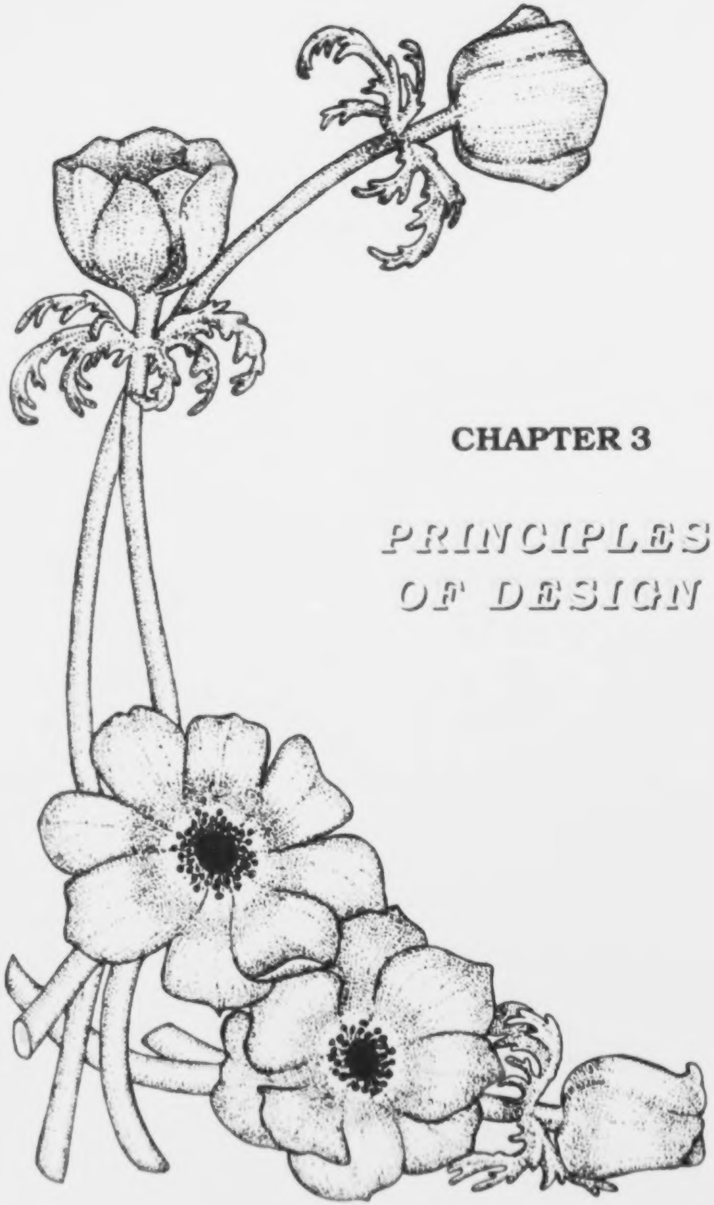
Shine the white spotlight on each of the three flowers. How much easier is it to see the flowers? What is the effect of light intensity on the ease with which flowers can be seen?

Shine the red light on the three flowers. What happens to the appearance of each flower? Shine the blue light on the three flowers. How does it affect the appearance of each flower?

What conclusion can you draw regarding the effect of light quality (color) on the objects it shines on? Remember that fluorescent light is higher in the blue wavelengths and incandescent is higher in the red. In view of what you just observed, can you explain why an arrangement of red roses might appear different under fluorescent lighting than it does under incandescent lighting?

Sometimes fluorescent lights are color-corrected to emit a higher amount of red light. These are sometimes used to light displays of African violets and also to light meat in grocery stores. How does this light change the appearance of the product? What effect does the lighting have on the marketing of the product?

2. Use one or two candles to light up the red, blue and white flowers. How is each flower affected? Can you explain the results in terms of light intensity and light quality?



CHAPTER 3

PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Black-eyed susans and cattails are combined harmoniously according to the principles of design.

PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN

Introduction

The principles of design are fundamental truths that have evolved over the centuries as the various art forms have developed. They are time-tested given statements that are universally accepted. Good art, whether it is painting, sculpture or flower arranging, is judged against these statements.

Although artists agree on the definition of the terms commonly used to identify principles of design, they do not agree on the exact listing of major art principles. Differences arise because these principles are so interrelated and must all function at one time for a successful product. Changing one flower placement in an arrangement can affect the way two or three principles are expressed in the arrangement.

Your understanding of the principles of design will grow as you continue to practice different kinds of designs and observe designs that others have made. An important long-range goal for you is to be able to use the principles of design to help you evaluate your own work as well as the work of others. You will become aware of the expression of these principles in arrangements you see in books, magazines and design shows. By seeing and understanding how skilled floral designers have been able to successfully apply the principles in their work, you can increase the number of valuable ideas you can extract from their examples and apply them in your own creative work.

The major principles of design are listed here. Within each major category are one or more minor principles of design. These are not of lesser importance but are related to more specific aspects of design than are the major headings. It is unlikely that you will consciously consider every one of these principles when you make a design. However, if you are not satisfied with the result, it is likely that one or more of these principles have not been satisfied.

PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN

- **Balance**
  - Symmetry
  - Stability
  - Depth
- **Scale**
  - Proportion
- **Rhythm**
  - Transition
- **Harmony**
  - Repetition
  - Unity
- **Emphasis**
  - Contrast
  - Dominance

[illegible]

A well-balanced design is comfortable to look at. It does not look like it will tip forward or sideways. The materials selected, the amounts of each used, and their placement in the arrangement all affect balance. All materials used in floral designs have weight-real weight that can be measured by scales, and visual weight which is measured by the eye. In order to understand balance, you need to understand the concept of visual weight.

The visual weight of an object– whether it appears heavy or light to the eye– depends on its size, color, texture and what we associate the object with. An example of how visual weight and actual weight may differ is a dark gray fiberglass rock, which could be used at the base of an arrangement. Because of its dark color, rough texture, and our perception of rocks as heavy, the rock has high visual weight. If we actually picked it up, we would discover that it is not heavy. The larger the rock, the more visual weight it would have.

Flowers or leaves that have open forms have less visual weight than those which appear more solid with smooth outlines. Lilies and iris appear lighter and more airy than most chrysanthemums and carnations. A stem of camellia leaves appears heavier than an equal amount of leatherleaf or asparagus fern.

To better understand the effect of flower placement on balance, an understanding of symmetry is important.

Symmetry

Symmetry is a design principle that deals with parts that correspond to each other on each side of an axis. Refer back to Chapter 2 where the various design shapes are listed. Within each design there can be identified a point or a line around which the flowers are placed in a predictable manner. In circular arrangements the point is in the center of the design. The flowers and foliage appear to radiate out from this point (Fig. 3-1). As you look down on these arrangements, it would be possible to cut them in half in many different ways and still have the halves looking basically alike. This is an example of **radial symmetry** (sometimes called equidimensional symmetry). An example of this is the Williamsburg kissing ball in which stems of boxwood, all of approximately the same length, are placed in a styrofoam ball (Fig. 3-2). The boxwood appears to radiate out like rays of the sun.

In both equilateral and isosceles triangle arrangements, the design can be cut into two equal halves by a line running down the middle from top to bottom. This imaginary line is called the **axis**. These design shapes are examples of **bilateral symmetry**. Unlike radial symmetry, with bilateral symmetry there is only one way the design can be

RADIAL SYMMETRY

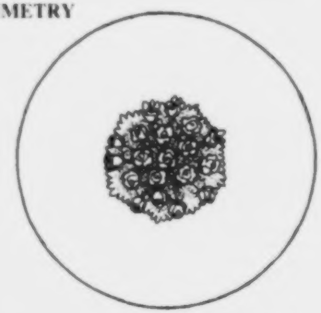


Figure 3-1
Round table centerpiece-aerial view

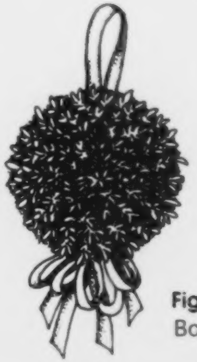
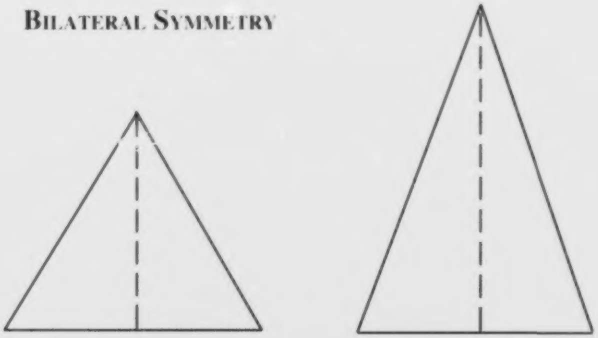


Figure 3-2
Boxwood kissing ball

BILATERAL SYMMETRY



Equilateral and isosceles triangles

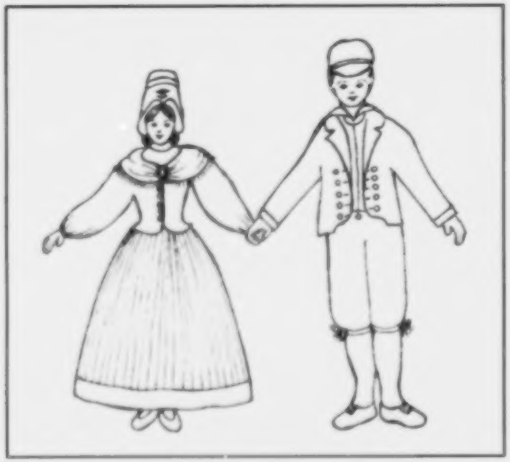


Figure 3-3
The human body - bilateral symmetry

divided into two equal parts. The human body is an example of bilateral symmetry (Fig. 3-3).

Another type of symmetry is **spiral symmetry** - a concept in three dimensions. The axis is in the middle with the flowers or foliage spiraling around it in a predictable manner. Garlands of boxwood around a pillar in a church and Christmas greens around a porch railing are examples of spiral symmetry (Fig. 3-4).

Other examples of spiral symmetry are not as simple as the garland and pillar example. Some line-mass arrangements like the S-curve can be shown to have spiral symmetry. An arrangement called the *spiral* will be described for you to make in a later chapter. Ribbon spiraling around a wreath is an example of spiral symmetry (Fig. 3-5): the axis is a circle rather than a straight line.

SPIRAL SYMMETRY

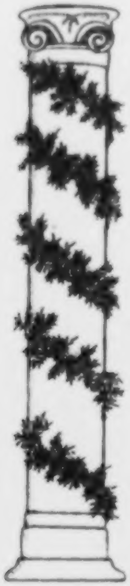


Figure 3-4
Pine roping around a porch support (axis is a straight line)

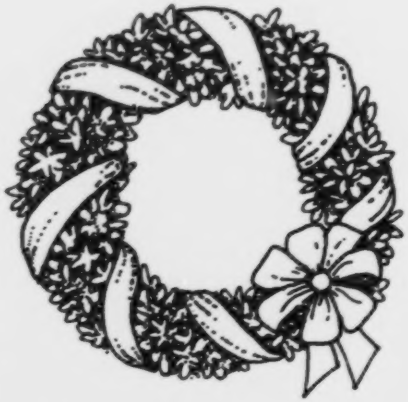
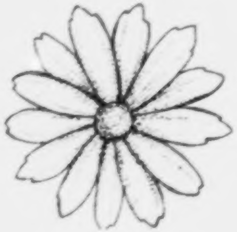


Figure 3-5
Ribbon spiraling around a wreath (axis is a circle)

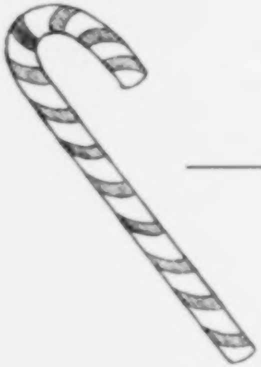
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Look at the following objects. Identify each as to **type of symmetry** shown: **radial**, **bilateral**, or **spiral**.

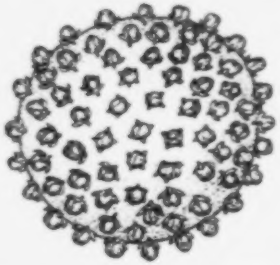
A Daisy



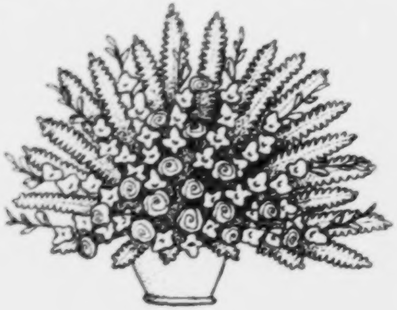
B Striped candy cane



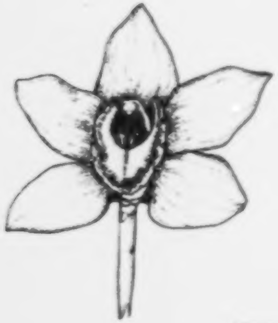
C Orange stuck full of cloves



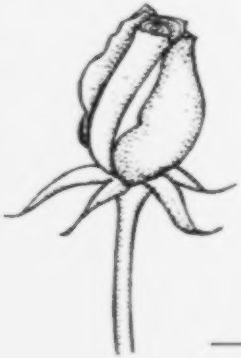
D Fan-shaped arrangement



E Cymbidium orchid



F Rose in side view



SYMMETRICAL AND ASYMMETRICAL BALANCE

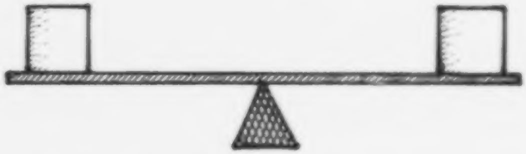


Figure 3-6 Symmetrical

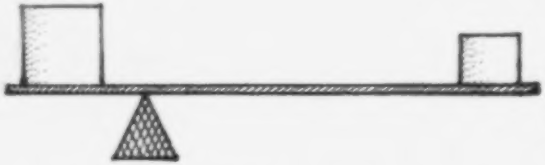


Figure 3-7 Asymmetrical

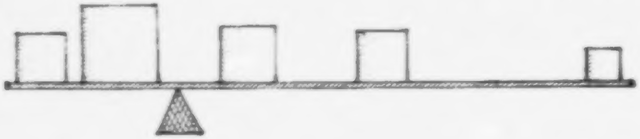


Figure 3-8 Asymmetrical

Symmetrical and Asymmetrical Balance

Good arrangements, whether symmetrical or not, must be balanced. The balance of a symmetrical arrangement is easy to see; the balance that irregular designs exhibit is less obvious. *Asymmetrical* means NOT symmetrical, not divisible into equal parts. Asymmetrical arrangements are balanced in that they do not appear to lean in any direction. However, the balance is created by using placements of unequal visual weight at varying distances from the central axis.

A common example used to explain asymmetrical balance is the see-saw. The pivot point may be at the middle of the board, or the board may be moved so the pivot point is off-center. The balance depends on two things: (1) how much weight is placed on each side and (2) how far that weight is placed from the pivot point.

If the pivot point is in the middle and equal weight is placed on each side at an equal distance from the center, the see-saw will be balanced (Fig. 3-6). This is an example of **symmetrical balance.** If lighter weight is placed on one side, it must be farther from the pivot point than the heavier weight to result in balance (Fig. 3-7). This is **asymmetrical balance.** The board also could be moved so that the pivot point is not in the middle (Fig. 3-8). If equal weight is then placed on each end, the see-saw will tilt toward the longer end. To balance the see-saw, the weight nearest the pivot point must be greater to counter the greater force of the weight farther away.

Understanding balance is important in deciding where to place flowers in a design so that it does not appear to tip sideways, forward or back. In a flower arrangement the flowers with greatest visual weight are usually placed nearest the central axis, while the smaller flowers are placed farther away. Since groupings of flowers have more visual weight than do single blossoms, groupings may be used to balance smaller flowers farther away from the focal area.

Symmetrical balance shown in an isosceles triangle design

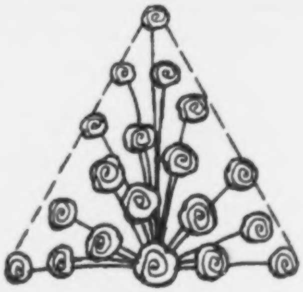
Asymmetrical balance shown in a scalene triangle design

Symmetrical balance is sometimes called formal balance; asymmetrical balance is sometimes called informal balance. Large period arrangements of the Occidental style associated with formal, classical eras in history show symmetrical balance. Mass arrangements of oval and round shapes as well as many triangular arrangements and centerpieces are symmetrical.

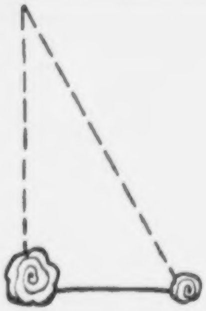
Line arrangements in the Oriental style and many contemporary arrangements have asymmetrical balance. This gives either a modern or a naturalistic effect. Garden designs also have different feelings depending on whether they are symmetrically or asymmetrically balanced. Perhaps you can identify with the difference in feeling between a naturalistic landscape and a more formal symmetrical plan.

Symmetrical and asymmetrical balance can also be found in the setting for a flower arrangement or in the placement of an accessory that is an integral part of the total design. An arrangement placed at the center of a buffet table with a candle at either end is an example of symmetrical balance (Fig. 3-9). Formal fireplace mantels or church altars are also frequently good examples of symmetrical balance.

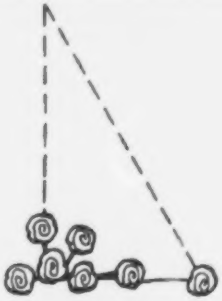
It is possible, however, to create an asymmetrical setting that is balanced. Using the buffet table again as an example, an asymmetrical arrangement and several candles grouped together can be placed off-center on the table. This grouping could then be balanced by a punch bowl at the opposite end of the table (Fig. 3-10).



Symmetrical
an equilateral triangle



Asymmetrical
a right angle triangle showing lower placement of large and small flowers



Asymmetrical
a right angle triangle showing lower placement of flowers of similar size

On the church altar

Each asymmetrically balanced arrangement is a mirror image of the other. Placed on each side of the cross, the arrangements contribute to the symmetry of the entire composition.

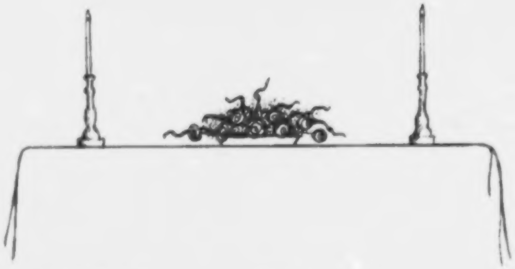


Figure 3-9 Symmetrical balance

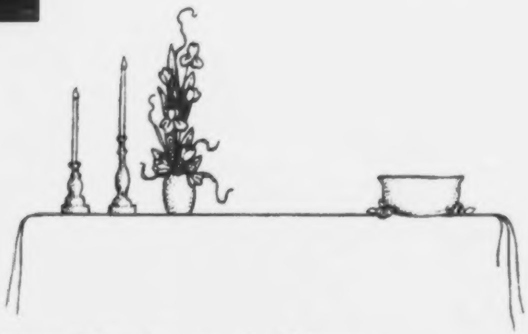
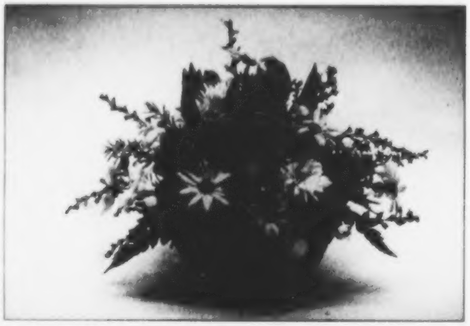


Figure 3-10 Asymmetrical balance



Openness and radiating lines of this basket arrangement result in good **depth**.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

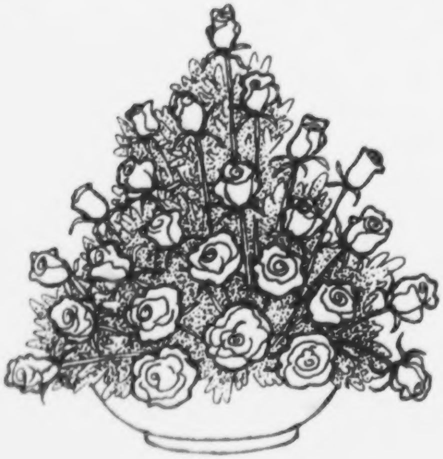
1. Make a see-saw small enough to set on a table and use it to illustrate how different weights and distances from the pivot point will change balance. For each example that is set up, relate the amount and positioning of physical weight to the positioning of similar visual weights in a flower arrangement.

2. You will be given a selection of flowers and foliages. Rank them in order from the greatest visual weight to the least visual weight. List your reasons for doing so. Remember to consider size, color, texture and form.

3. Look at pictures of several floral designs. Where is the imaginary axis or point around which the flower and foliage placements are arranged? Is the arrangement symmetrical or asymmetrical? Is the balance formal or informal?

4. Look at several pictures of floral designs that have accessories like birds, animals or figurines next to them. Cover up the accessory with a piece of paper. Does the remaining arrangement look balanced? How important is the accessory in establishing an overall balanced effect?

5. Look at several flowers of the same kind and size that are of different colors, for example, light, medium and dark pink carnations. Which color has the greatest visual weight? Which has the least? Where would you use the ones that have the greatest visual weight - closer or farther away from the central imaginary axis of a floral design?



Good **stability** with smaller flowers at the top and a broad base

In traditional arrangements, materials with higher visual weight are used lower in the arrangement to create a stable effect; they are sunken a little farther into the arrangement for depth. Both stability and depth are significant principles of design that are related to balance.

Stability

In simple terms, a stable arrangement is one that does not look top-heavy. Its visual weight is well distributed so that more of the heavier elements are placed lower in the arrangement. Usually the base of an arrangement is the broadest part.

Stability may be lost if large, showy flowers are placed high in an arrangement with nothing to balance them lower down. Constricting the arrangement near the base will also lead to lack of stability.

Depth

Using flowers with greater visual weight to draw the eye into an arrangement, especially near the base, will produce depth. This also is likely to produce a better balanced arrangement. Depth is the third dimension of an arrangement. It involves leading the eye both **into** an arrangement and **around**-behind it.

A flat arrangement lacks interest. Designs should usually be broader at the base not only in silhouette but also in side view (Fig. 3-11). Flower placements should not appear to be pasted on a solid form. They should be spaced in a pleasingly in-and-out manner to lead the eye into the arrangement. This "in-out-edness" is one aspect of depth (Fig. 3-12). It takes advantage of all the three-dimensional space in an arrangement and allows the individual flowers to be displayed to a better advantage.

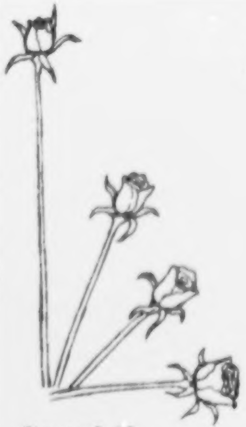


Figure 3-11
Broad base in side view

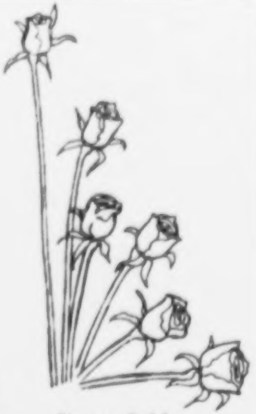


Figure 3-12
In-out-edness of placement

Changing the direction that flowers face can lead the eye across and around an arrangement. This must be done gradually (Fig. 3-13). Special attention should be given to the sides of the arrangement. Some flowers should face sideways and eventually a few should face backward. These changes in facing directions should never be abrupt. Arrangements in which the flowers all face the same way are flat. They also give you the uneasy feeling that your eye will "fall off the edge" when it reaches the sides of the design.

Variations in color and texture in an arrangement will enhance the feeling of depth (Fig. 3-14). Coarser textures and darker, duller colors appear heavy. They should be used deeper in an arrangement to draw the eye into the arrangement. The cool receding colors of blue, violet and green draw the eye back, while the warm advancing colors of red, orange and yellow stand out. The result is depth.

The lighting on an arrangement can also affect depth. Lighting from behind will create maximum depth because shadows are produced which attract the eye and add interest (Fig. 3-15). Lighting from the front will direct shadows straight back where they usually are not seen. So, strong front lighting produces a flatter appearance with less depth. Candlelight is soft and often has the added intrigue of slight flickering of the flame. The resulting change of shadow patterns adds depth and interest to the design.

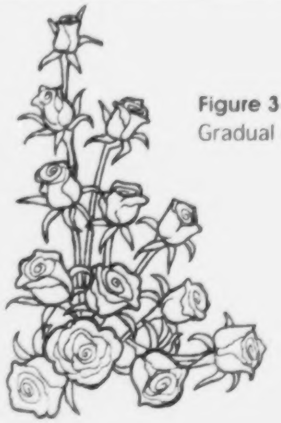


Figure 3-13
Gradual change in facing

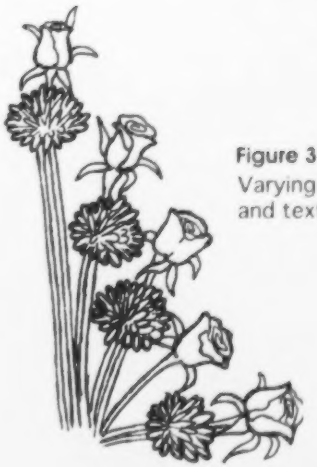


Figure 3-14
Varying color and texture

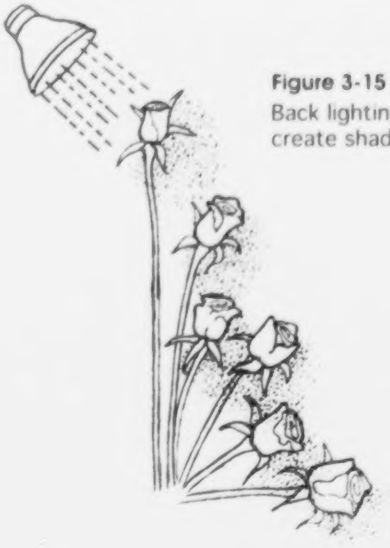


Figure 3-15
Back lighting to create shadows

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. The instructor will construct a symmetrical triangular arrangement that shows good depth. Each student should examine it for the following aspects of depth.

   A. Look for the broad base in side view. Does it gradually taper up to the tallest point?

   B. Are there spaces behind the flowers? Look to see if some flowers are sunken in.

   C. Looking from the front, examine the sides of the arrangement. Is there a gradual change in flower facing as you go toward the back? When you look at the arrangement in side view, do some flowers appear to be directly facing you?

   D. What different colors and textures are represented in the arrangement? Where are the receding colors placed? Where are the advancing colors placed?

2. Shine a spotlight directly on the arrangement from the front. Can you detect a change in the feeling of depth? Now direct the light from behind the arrangement. Do you see shadows? Under which lighting (front or back) does the arrangement seem to have more depth? Which lighting makes it appear flatter?

Arrangements in large hotel lobbies are scaled up in order to have impact on viewers.

[redacted]

Scale deals with the size relationship of an arrangement to its setting. Obviously, an arrangement for a large stage needs to be big, and an arrangement for a small coffee table needs to be petite. Flowers for a wedding held in a cathedral will be on a much grander scale than flowers for a wedding in a small country church. There is a logical and harmonious relationship between a design and its surroundings. If they have a correct size relationship, the arrangement is said to be *in scale* with its setting.

Proportion

The size relations between the different components **within** an arrangement are also important. The size of the container, the size of the bow or accessory, the number of flowers, and amount of foliage are all choices the floral designer has to make. The size and amount of each of these used is called proportion. If an arrangement is *scaled up* (made larger), the sizes of the components will all increase but the proportions between them will not. For example, the ratio of the flower surface area to the container surface area will remain the same even though more flowers and a larger container will be used in the scaled-up arrangement.

Picture a miniature arrangement (less than 4 inches in any direction) that is then enlarged twenty times. The size relationships within the enlarged design should still be as artistically pleasing to the eye as they were in the miniature arrangement. If this is not the case, the proportions in the miniature arrangement were not ideal. This example is mentioned to dispel the myth that small arrangements can rely on their dainty charm to cover up violations of the principles of design. The truth is that a lot of skill is required to execute a good design in a very small space.

Color and texture are important considerations in the decision of what amounts of each flower to use. The more any one color or texture is used, the more dominant that color or texture becomes and the greater importance it takes on.

Another important decision in creating an arrangement is the selection of the container. The size of the container sets certain limits on the size of the arrangement. A container that is taller than it is wide suggests an arrangement with some height. A common guideline in floral design is to make the height of the arrangement at least 1 1/2 times the height of the container. When a container is low and wide but is being used for an arrangement with height, the rule is that the arrangement should be at least 1 1/2 times taller than the container is wide. This type of arrangement is frequently seen in the Oriental style with water showing in part of the container. Flower placements even taller than 1 1/2 times the container are often acceptable and usually result in a stately arrangement. Shorter heights are also possible if flowers and foliage are extended down below the rim of the container.

How massive or delicate the container is also dictates the size limitations of the arrangement. A stoneware urn can be appropriately filled with a large, heavy line-mass arrangement. By contrast, a crystal vase is more suitable for an airy display of delicate flowers on long wispy stems.

The container should not be so large and heavy in appearance that it overpowers the arrangement. On the other extreme, the arrangement should not overpower the container. This has happened if the container appears lost under a heavy load of flowers and foliage.

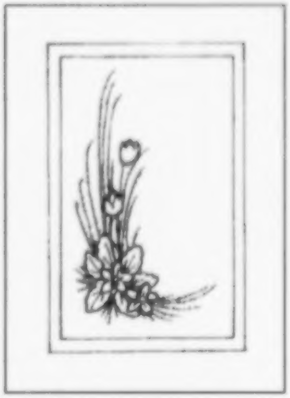
Another aspect of size relationship is that of flowers to foliage. In general, large flowers look best when combined with foliage that has larger leaves. Small fine-leaved foliage is usually more effective with smaller, more delicate flowers.

Size relationships also exist between the various flowers used in an arrangement. A very large flower next to a very small flower of the same type is usually not desirable. Even a very large flower next to a very small filler flower of a different type is often undesirable. If you must work with very small filler flowers, like star-flowers, remember that they can be clustered together and used in loose bunches for a more pleasing size relationship with large flowers.

Size relationships in this design are dictated by the size of the yellow squash container. Flowers and foliage are in good proportion to the squash.

Open spaces or **voids** are as important as flower and foliage placements in determining the use of the area within an arrangement. Open spaces often give added interest to the flowers that are featured in or near them. Also, as discussed earlier, voids are an important element of depth.

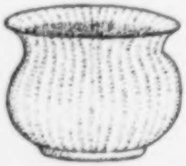
Proportion and scale become critical if an arrangement is displayed in a well-defined unit like a niche or alcove. Similarly, proportion and scale are of primary concern when creating a design of pressed flowers in a picture frame. The design must not be too large or too small; it must never crowd the frame or disappear under it. A helpful guideline for designing an arrangement in a well-defined space is this: the arrangement should occupy about two-thirds of the area, while the background should make up the remaining one-third.

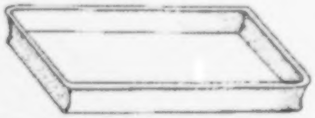


Floral picture showing good proportion and scale

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. How would you use the containers below for arrangements? Using the guidelines established for height in relationship to container size, sketch in the appropriate height of an arrangement for each of the containers.





(continued)

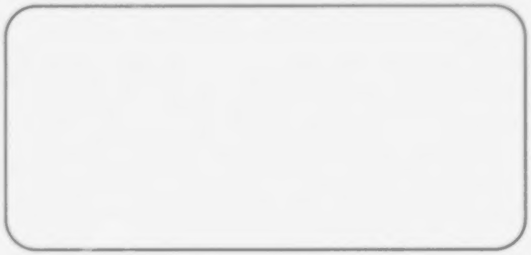
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

2. Using small pieces of dried flowers, grape vine tendrils, small shells, buttons and other miniature objects, have each student create a small arrangement less than five inches in any direction. When the arrangements are finished, try to imagine each one five times larger than it is. (The proportions are the same but the scale has been increased five times.)

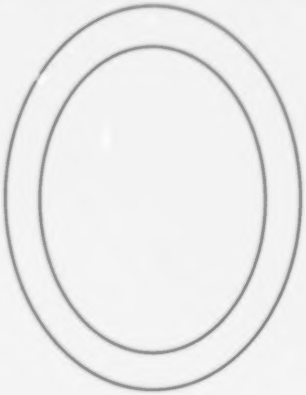
Is the arrangement still pleasing to you? If the answer is *yes*, your proportions were probably acceptable in the small arrangement. If the answer is *no*, the proportions were probably not ideal in the small arrangement.

3. Consider each of the settings below (A through D) for an arrangement. Sketch in the arrangement shape indicated. Give special attention to the scale of the arrangement (its size in relationship to the area where it is being displayed).

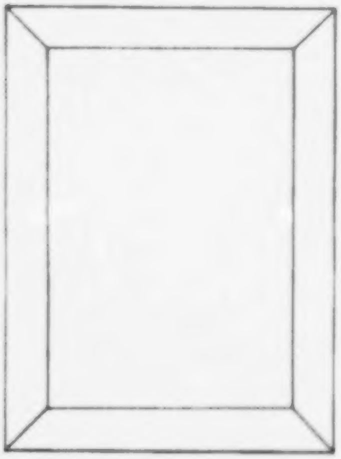
A. Diamond centerpiece on a rectangular dining room table



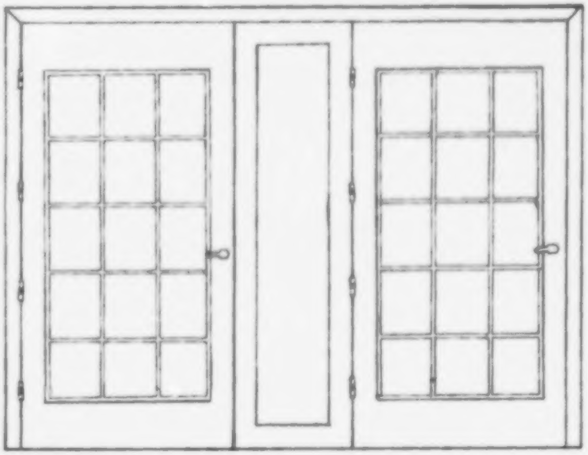
B. Crescent arrangement of pressed flowers in an oval picture frame



C. An isosceles triangle in a wall niche



D. A vertical arrangement to be placed on the floor between two doors



Swirling lines of flax encircle the vertical line of gladioli, leading the eye upward along the spiral pathway.

Crescent arrangement with a C-shaped trunk line; focal point just above rim of container

[illegible]

A well-designed arrangement has the ability to lead the eye of the viewer around and through it by the careful selection of materials and their placement. This feeling of motion in the design is the principle of rhythm. Size, shape, color and texture of the materials, as well as spacing between materials and the way they are angled, are all factors in leading the eye in some direction. As in music, the pattern that is developed is usually regular and predictable.

In line arrangements the rhythmic flow is easy to see. The eye follows the straight or curved lines of branches, flowers or foliage. Willow branches, gladiolus and eucalyptus are examples of materials that naturally form lines. Round flower forms can also be used to form a line and therefore direct the eye along it. The repetition of the same flower will attract the eye and establish some type of movement, depending on the size, spacing and facing direction of the flowers.

Major lines in line-mass and even in mass arrangements are sometimes called **trunk lines**. They lead to or pass through the **focal point** (center of interest in an arrangement). They are usually established early in the construction of a design and are made using just one type of flower. Trunk lines are useful in studying how rhythm or visual flow is created.

Many different factors affect rhythm in a design. To discuss them more easily, we will look at an example of a specific arrangement:- a vertical arrangement of roses and assorted foliages in a tall container with the

122

129

focal point at the rim. Some techniques for achieving rhythm involve spacing, size, shape, facing, depth and color. These will be considered individually in the following sections.

Spacing Rhythm

The closer together flowers are spaced, the more visual attention they receive. Therefore, the closest spacing should be at the focal point with a gradual increase in spacing as the eye travels up the vertical line. Although flowers near the focal point ought to be close, they should never press on each other and give a crowded effect. Going outward from the focal point, the distances between flowers should gradually increase in a smooth and predictable manner in order to achieve rhythm (Fig. 3-16). Flowers that are evenly spaced result in a line that does not lead the eye because there is no rhythm (Fig. 3-17). Flower spacing that is irregular and unpredictable results in jerky rhythm (Fig. 3-18).

If you had to make an arrangement with flowers of all one size, like graded carnations, you would have to depend heavily on spacing rhythm to lead the eye along the line. Size variation used along with spacing variation is best to create a rhythmic effect.

Size Rhythm

Larger flowers have more visual weight and so are used closer to the focal point. Smaller flowers of the same kind are placed farther away. A gradual change in size from large to small should occur as the eye moves away from the focal area. In general, the farther from the focal point, the smaller the flowers of any one type become. For example, rose buds are smaller than full-blown roses. A nice size rhythm along the line can be created with roses; buds should be placed at the top, then gradually more open blossoms in the middle, and finally fully opened flowers at the rim of the container.

If filler flowers are used, they are likely to be smaller than the principal flowers, but they are an entirely different element of the design. If you were to look at only the filler, it too should show size and space rhythm along the line. At times pieces of filler are bunched together near the focal point so that their size is larger than pieces used farther out in the design.

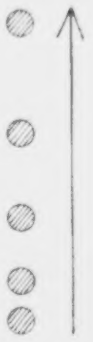


Figure 3-16
Good rhythm
Gradual increase in spacing

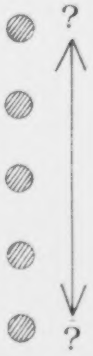


Figure 3-17
No rhythm
Even spacing

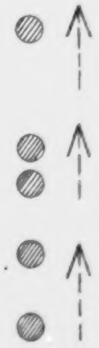


Figure 3-18
Jerky rhythm
Irregular spacing

Rhythmic flow is created along the vertical axis by the spacing and facing of the chrysanthemums.

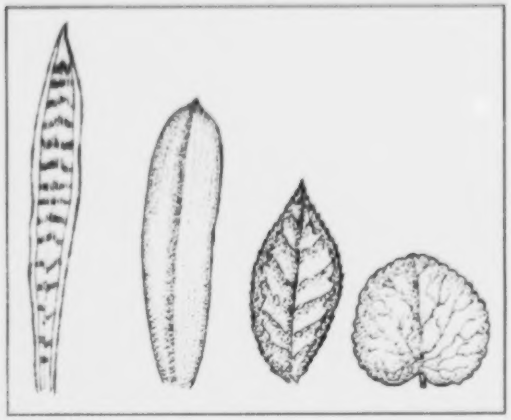


Figure 3-19
Rhythmic change in leaf shape from linear to round

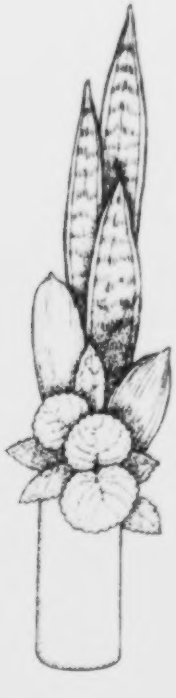


Figure 3-20
Use of shape rhythm to lead the eye to the focal point

Shape Rhythm

Changes in shape can also be regular and predictable, and therefore rhythmic. Consider again the example of the roses. Buds gradually opening to full-blown roses, with their change in shape, can be used to achieve rhythm. The narrowest pointed buds can be used farthest away from the focal point. The more rounded forms are best used nearer the focal point. These can be made to look even larger and more round by tilting them so they are viewed head on. This is related to another aspect of rhythm - facing rhythm - that is discussed next.

Foliage shapes can be changed in a vertical arrangement to help develop shape rhythm (Fig. 3-19). Long narrow leaves, like those of snake plant *(Sansevieria)* are used to establish the tallest part of the line; oval shapes are gradually worked in; and finally round shapes are used near the focal point (Fig. 3-20). The predictable change in shape helps lead the eye to the focal point, while not distracting from the vertical line.

Facing Rhythm

The suggestion has already been made that tilting a rose to face forward in an arrangement is a way to increase its eye appeal. It is especially desirable for flowers near the focal point to face the viewer in order to gain maximum attention. As the eye travels up the vertical line, there should be a gradual and predictable change until the tallest flower is facing upright (Fig. 3-21). This facing change is most evident in side view. The stem angles make a 90° change in direction. If the facing changes are abrupt, the result is an uncomfortable feeling called jerky rhythm (Fig. 3-22).

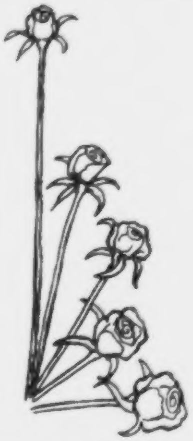


Figure 3-21
Side view of an arrangement showing good facing rhythm

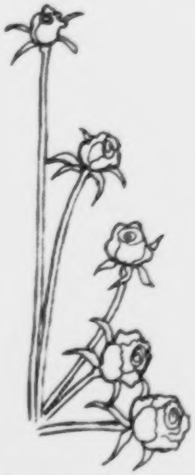


Figure 3-22
Jerky rhythm resulting from uneven spacing

Facing changes also occur as the eye travels to the sides of the arrangement. While the focal flower may face directly toward you, the side flowers will face sideways or even backwards. This change of facing leads the eye around the arrangement and creates depth. Again this facing change must be gradual or jerky rhythm will result.

Depth Rhythm

Depth in an arrangement can be achieved by an "in-and-out" placement of the flowers (Fig. 3-23). Besides the effect on depth of the facing of the flowers, there is another aspect of depth that leads the eye in and out of an arrangement. This is called depth rhythm and involves the arrangement of flowers in many designs to appear to radiate out from a common point. Depth rhythm gives unity as well as directional flow to the arrangement. In a mass arrangement like the mound, the eye is pulled inward to the focal area which exists in the heart of the design.

Color Rhythm

Color can be used very effectively to lead the eye from one part of a design to another. Usually colors with the greatest eye appeal are placed near the focal point, with a gradual change to less intense colors farther out in the design. Colors that appear heavier are used low in the design and sunken in for depth. Using too many colors can create a confusing effect where color rhythm is not obvious.

Color rhythm may be created by a change in value (such as pink to rose to dark wine) or a change in chroma (such as soft yellow to medium yellow to bright yellow). Color needs to be repeated predictably throughout a design so that it does not occur in a random or spotty fashion.

Rhythm is most effective when several or all of these aspects of rhythm work together. When the flowers to be used are all the same size and color, the designer must work harder on spacing and facing to ensure that the eye is led smoothly to the focal point.

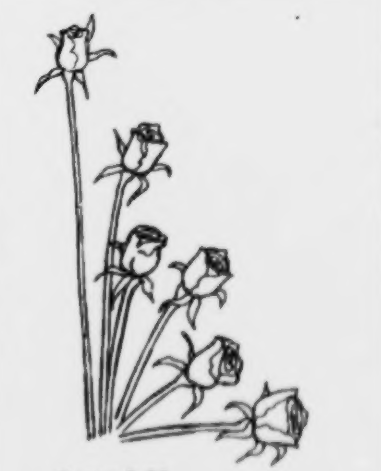


Figure 3-23
In-and-out placement of flowers to achieve depth

Depth rhythm is evident when flower placements draw the eye into the design.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Inverted-T design using snapdragons and roses

1. Use seven carnations all of one color and one size and a low container filled with a piece of floral foam. Arrange the carnations in a vertical line so that they show spacing rhythm. Measure the distance between flowers, beginning at the bottom, and write them down in order. The figures should gradually become larger. If two numbers are the same or if a number suddenly shows up that is less than the one before it, you probably have jerky rhythm. If this happens, go back and alter the placements to correct the situation.

2. Use the same flowers to check facing rhythm. Turn the container sideways. Do the stems gradually change in angle from straight up for the tallest flower to directly out sideways for the shortest? If not, change the angle of placement without changing the flower spacing. After you have done this, look at the arrangement from the front. The results should be pleasing. Can you relate all this to depth rhythm?

3. Use seven flowers of various sizes in different degrees of openness. Arrange them in order from the smallest bud to the largest fully opened bloom. Do the stem lengths allow the smallest flower to have the tallest placement in an arrangement? This is a problem that frequently confronts floral designers. You may have to start your size progression with a slightly larger flower and eliminate the bud. Another option is to extend the stem length through the use of a water pick attached to a hyacinth stake.

4. Look at a demonstration arrangement of a symmetrical triangle like the equilateral and analyze it for the various aspects of depth. You may use the arrangements on this page.

A. Identify the focal point. Is the tallest flower farther from the focal point than the side points of the triangle? In considering size rhythm should the tallest flower be larger or smaller than those at the side points?

B. Is there a gradual change in spacing as you move in toward the focal point in all directions? Is the focal area crowded? If flowers are touching, consider removing some or sinking some in for greater depth.

C. Do the flowers gradually change the direction they face as you go to the sides of the arrangement? Is the eye led behind or does it stop abruptly at the edge of the arrangement?

D. Turn the arrangement to a side view. Can you see a facing change from top to bottom? Is the lower focal area sticking out the farthest or is it overshadowed by placements above it? A pushed-in focal point usually is associated with facing changes that are not rhythmic.

E. If there is any color variation, has it been used to lead the eye to the focal point? Describe the qualities of the flower color nearest the focal point and those of the flowers farthest away. If there is a difference, are the intermediate values or chromas seen in between?

F. Analyze the arrangement for depth. Do the stems appear to radiate out from a common point? Are the flowers spaced so the eye can see into the arrangement?

TRANSITION

Transition is a principle which is essential to rhythm, but it has a wider significance in floral design. Any change in size, shape, direction or color involves transition. A **smooth transition** is created by using intermediate sizes, shapes and colors. A sharp change (as in the direction of a line, for example) results in an **abrupt transition** which has been intentionally created for its dramatic effect.

Transition is also very closely tied to **repetition** and **unity**. In a case where the major flowers of an arrangement are of a different color from that of the container, repeating the color of the container in the foliage or filler flowers will create a smoother transition. For example, a yellow vase is holding bright orange flowers. Choice of a foliage with yellow variegation will make for a smoother transition. Transition is perceived as the eye moves from one part of an arrangement to another. The result should be a total unified statement.

HARMONY

Harmony is the principle of total compatibility of all parts of an arrangement with each other. It also relates to the appropriateness of the arrangement with regard to its surroundings and the occasion. Any jarring elements or disregard of any design principles will lead to lack of harmony.

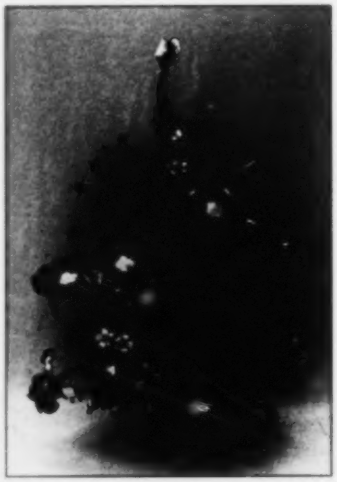
Color harmony is often given special attention. Refer to the unit on color and color combinations to review color schemes generally regarded as pleasing. Using flowers and foliages that repeat colors found in a vase or accessory will give a more unified and harmonious appearance to a floral design. Corsages which include colors that match or coordinate with the colors in the wearer's clothing will be harmonious. A silk arrangement to be used as part of the decor of a room is more likely to be harmonious with the setting if it contains some of the same colors that are found in the carpet, wallpaper or furnishings.

The style of an arrangement must also be appropriate for the setting and the occasion. Two major categories of design styles are **formal** and **informal**. A table centerpiece for a large wedding dinner would need to be formal, while a buffet piece for a back yard barbecue would most likely be informal. Design shapes and materials chosen for an arrangement influence how formal it appears.

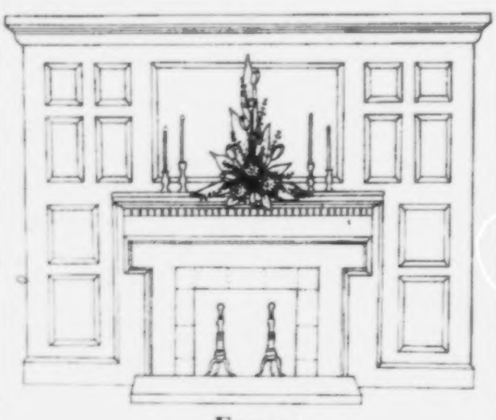
On the next page is a list of considerations that may help distinguish formal from informal settings.

Many flowers can be used in both formal and informal settings. A pompon chrysanthemum can appear totally appropriate in an informal, open arrangement for a picnic, placed on a red and white checked tablecloth. The same mum can be equally at home in a formal silver candelabra with roses and carnations, placed on a lace tablecloth. The selection of container, accessories, foliages and design style along with the flowers will determine which feeling is given. If the combination is pleasing to viewers, the result is harmony.

An early autumn arrangement of plants from the landscape shows harmony; the color of the rose hips and the blush on the hydrangea blossoms repeat the red color of the foliage.



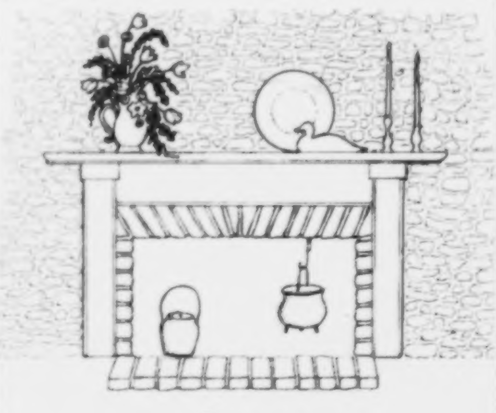
Harmonious combination of early summer flowers in this mass design



FORMAL

Combining contrasting textures in flowers, foliages and containers may be harmonious if the materials are compatible in formality. Velvety textured roses provide a nice contrast with the shiny silver of a formal container. In a corsage roses contrast appropriately with the smooth leaves of camellia or ivy. However, a coarse-textured sunflower would be inappropriate in a smooth silver or delicate crystal container because the sunflower is informal and the containers are formal. The sunflower would be more suitably used in an earthenware pottery container.

Certain flowers and foliages are harmonious because of where they grow or when they bloom. Spring flowers like tulips, daffodils, irises and pussy willows combine beautifully. It would be much less harmonious to combine these with geraniums, autumn colored chrysanthemums, or red poinsettias which represent other seasons of the year. Tropical plant materials from warm climates generally look inappropriate combined with plants from northern temperate climates. Tropical foliage like croton or philodendron harmonizes with birds of paradise, orchids and ginger, while native greens such as euonymus or juniper look best with the flowers of bulbs, perennials and annuals that grow in northern areas. Dry-climate plants like cacti and succulents look most harmonious with stoneware pottery, driftwood and other coarse-textured, earthtone accessories that suggest their natural habitat.



INFORMAL

	FORMAL	INFORMAL
Design Shape	arrangement usually symmetrically balanced	arrangement often asymmetrically balanced
Placement of Design	arrangement usually placed symmetrically in center of the setting or in balanced pairs	arrangement may be placed off-center
Flowers Used	those associated with formal occasions – roses, orchids, carnations, lilies	those associated with informal occasions – daisies and garden flowers like marigolds, zinnias, geraniums, sunflowers
Textures	smooth, shiny, or velvety	coarse, rough

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Have each person think of and then describe a situation that would require a formal floral arrangement and one that would require an informal floral arrangement. Tell for each what flowers and container you would use, what design shape you would select, and where you would put the design. Explain how each arrangement exhibits harmony with its setting and occasion. Did you remember to use color and texture to enhance harmony?

2. Describe the types of arrangements that would be suitable for the following occasions:

    A. New Year's Eve party
    B. opening of a new bank
    C. Sunday brunch for close friends
    D. Hawaiian luau
    E. pizza party
    F. National Honor Society tea

3. Describe the types of arrangements that would be suitable for the following settings:

    A. hospital room
    B. Williamsburg mantel
    C. principal's desk
    D. Easter dinner
    E. brunch for Ohio Conservation Club
    F. animal judging team banquet

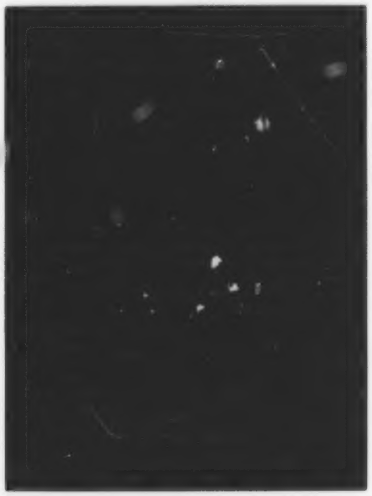
4. From the list of flowers, containers, design styles and accessories to the right, pick one from each column to make a harmonious grouping. Try to find at least four groupings.

Arrangement in a baseball glove for young boy's birthday

The country look: corn, sunflowers, squash, and zinnias, which commonly grow together in the garden

Flowers	**Containers**	**Design Styles**	**Accessories**
daisies	palm spathe	line	antique velvet-covered picture album
roses	Oriental urn	open line-mass	coconut
fuji mums	silver Victorian compote	open mass	papier-mâché mushrooms
birds-of-paradise	hollowed-out log	compact mass	long-legged bird figurines

Birds-of-paradise radiate out from a common point, resulting in a sense of unity.



The focal area or point of emphasis or accent is created by the cluster of red carnations within the lantern.

Repetition

Repeating a color, texture or shape throughout an arrangement is desirable and necessary to give the arrangement a feeling that it is tied together. Using the same flower throughout the arrangement is one way to accomplish this. The flowers, however, must be placed rhythmically (with predictable differences in spacing) to avoid monotony.

More subtle repetition may be evident when different materials having the same qualities are used. The yellow color of a container may be repeated in a yellow foliage variegation, the coarse texture of a pottery container may be repeated in the roughness of a dried leaf, or the oval shape of a container may be repeated in an oval design shape selected for the arrangement.

Accessories and backgrounds present additional opportunities for clever repetition. Table settings have the possibility of repeating colors not only within the arrangement but also in the china, napkins, napkin holders, candles and other accessories. A dried or silk arrangement for a room should contain colors and textures that are found in the wallpaper, carpeting and furniture. Wedding flowers, including not only the larger arrangements for the sanctuary but also the flowers worn by the women and men attendants, are tied together as a total statement by repeating colors throughout. Repetition is a key factor in establishing unity.

Unity

Unity is a statement of togetherness that results when all parts of the design are compatible with each other and with their surroundings. Repetition is an essential element of unity. Harmony in style and suitability for the occasion as well as harmony in color and texture are necessary to create a feeling of oneness in a design.

When stems appear to radiate out from a common point, a sense of unity is created. Some designers identify **radiation** as a separate principle. It is an important concept in floral design.

The establishment of a focal point and the selection of one dominant flower in an arrangement will unify the design. Avoid using a flower in only one part of a design and do not layer colors. Try to achieve a rhythmic transition so that the viewer's eye is led throughout the design in a predetermined manner. As you can see, the goal of unity is achieved only if several other principles of design have been well carried out.

[redacted]

(Accent or Focal Area)

A well-planned arrangement will have one material that dominates over the others and one area that has the strongest eye appeal. Therefore, that area and that dominant material are emphasized. Other materials in the arrangement may provide contrast but take a second or third place in terms of attracting the eye.

The area of emphasis in an arrangement is called the **focal point, accent,** or center of interest. In traditional flower arranging it is usually located just above the rim of the container and is where the largest flowers are placed most closely without crowding. The flowers in this area are usually placed facing directly outward and they stand out closer to the viewer than other flowers in the arrangement. A focal area that does not stand out like this, but instead is pushed in is called a **recessed focal point.** If flowers that are too small are used in this area, it is called a **weak focal point.** Recessed or weak focal points are undesirable and are considered to be serious flaws in a floral design.

Color can be used to give more emphasis to the focal point. If there is color variation in the design, the brighter colors with more eye appeal should be concentrated here. If flowers are at various stages of opening, the more fully opened blossoms should be used near the focal point.

Although the eye of the viewer is immediately attracted to the focal area, it should not stop there. A good design soon leads it through the arrangement in a rhythmic manner to the outermost points. Then a good design directs the eye of the viewer back to the focal area by a gradual increase in size and decrease in spacing of the flowers, and by predictable differences in facing, shape and color.

The focal point can be most easily identified in a line design that has few flowers. It is usually represented by the single largest flower. In Oriental and modern line designs the focal point is elevated well above the container and is surrounded by considerable space.

In an all-around mass arrangement the center of interest is represented by an imaginary point deep in the design from which all the flower placements appear to arise. The actual spot may not be seen, but it is clear from the angle of stem placement that the design is unified by this point of radiation.

In one-sided mass arrangements the focal point is usually in the center just above the rim of the container. Symmetrical triangular arrangements and fans exhibit this very well. In line-mass arrangements the focal area is also usually just above the rim of the container, but it may not be centered and there may be significant extensions of the arrangement both above and below the area. In crescent and Hogarth curve designs, approximately two-thirds of the arrangement is above the focal point and one-third is either to the side or below it.

A common flaw in establishing a focal area is to crowd the flowers together very closely. This is likely to happen if you have not left enough space between the flowers at the upper and outer extremities of the design. Crowding the point flowers at the start of design construction can result in a very crowded look by the time you work toward the focal point. A possible way to correct the flaw is simply to remove flowers from the crowded area. You could also pull some flowers out farther and sink others in deeper. (The pulled-out flowers should be completely removed and then reinserted in the floral foam so that an air pocket does not form right under the cut stem.) The latter solution will maintain the visual weight of the flowers while improving another important principle - depth.

Designers are sometimes faced with flowers which are relatively small and have little size variation to help establish a focal point. Such small flowers can be clustered into different sized bunches, with larger units used near the focal area.

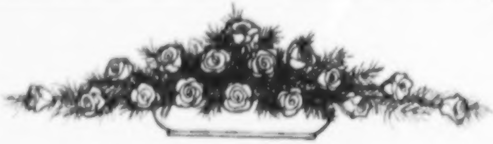
Color near the focal point is a little more complicated since eye appeal is determined by various aspects of the hue. Usually darker colors are thought to be the "heaviest" and therefore most suitable for using near the focal point. This is not always true, since the darker colors may be dull and often are hard to see in dim light. Dark flowers are usually good for sinking down into the arrangement for depth. Flowers that have a bright chroma would be natural choices for using near the focal point.

The designer must look at the materials available to work with, evaluate the lighting conditions under which the arrangement is to be viewed, and then decide which flowers will have the highest eye appeal. The designer will then use more of these flowers near the focal point.

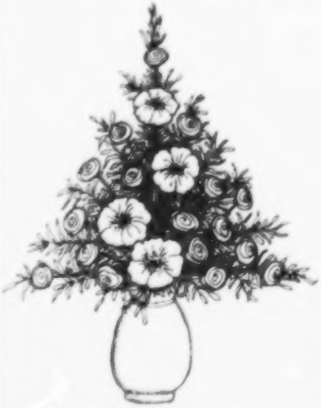
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Draw a circle around the focal point (center of interest) in each of the arrangements shown. If the focal point is not a flower or a group of flowers, but an imaginary point within the design, draw an arrow to where you think the focal point is in the arrangement.

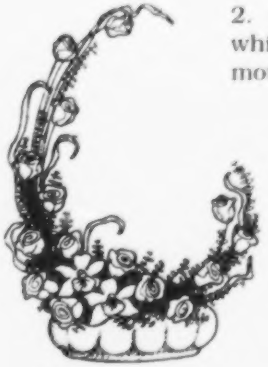
2. Look at a demonstration arrangement which was well-planned and shows a lot of motion. Or find a large picture of such a design in a book or magazine. Concentrate on how your eye travels through this arrangement. Is your eye attracted first to the focal point? Does it then travel to the outermost points and then back again to the focal point? An interesting variation on this exercise is to have someone watch your eyes as you look at the arrangement for the first time. Your eye movements will confirm whether or not you have experienced the arrangement in the manner that is encouraged by the principles of design.



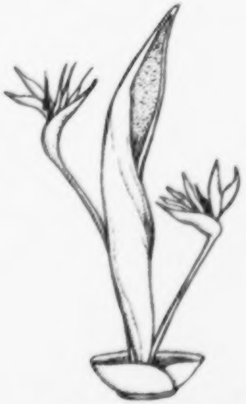
A Diamond centerpiece



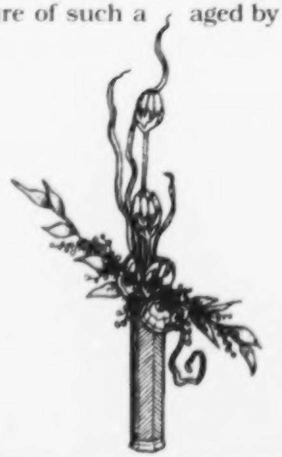
B Equilateral triangle



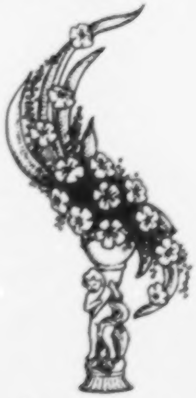
C Crescent



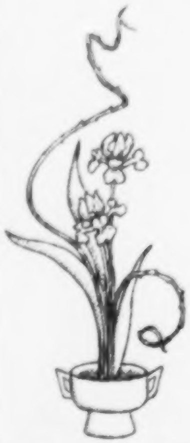
F Modern arrangement



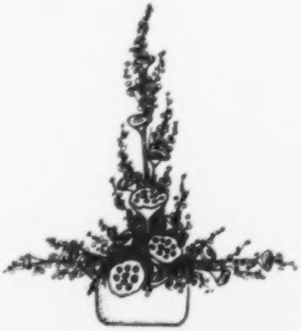
G Line arrangement



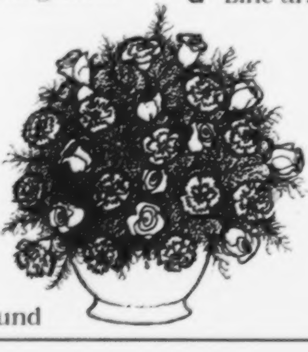
H Hogarth curve



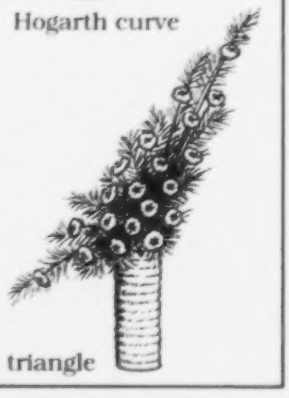
D Oriental



E Inverted-T arrangement



I Mound



J Scalene triangle

Contrast

Differences in color, texture and form are used in flower arrangements to introduce variation and interest. Often the difference will highlight the dominant material. The contrasting colors of red and green are an example. Red looks more intense next to green than it does in the absence of green.

Contrast can also add interest to materials that are not as dominant in the arrangement. For example, the linear form of yucca or snake plant leaves is emphasized by the presence of round galax leaves at their base. A rough-textured leaf looks coarser next to a smooth background than it does against a woven background. A curving branch of wisteria looks more interesting when it intersects a strong vertical line of iris leaves than it does by itself.

Contrast should be used somewhat sparingly to enhance the dominant form, color or texture in a design. When contrast is used without restraint, it leads to confusion and busyness.

Dominance

When several forms, colors or textures are used, one should be used in greater quantity than the others. Thus, one dominates and the other elements take a secondary position.

A classic example of lack of dominance can occur when an arrangement is to be made with equal numbers of red and white carnations. They are of equal size and when used in equal quantity, they compete with each other. While a skillful designer could manipulate the materials into a desirable product through placement, it would be much easier to have unequal quantities or two different types of flowers.

The flower used in largest quantity is the dominant flower and those used in lesser quantities are the secondary flowers or filler. The secondary flowers should, however, either follow the pattern of the arrangement or be introduced as a secondary line of color or form.

In line arrangements, because of their elevated position, taller flowers tend to dominate shorter flowers. If two flowers have the same stem length and are placed side by side, they will not lead the eye down the lines of the arrangement. Stem lengths should be gradually decreased as you near the focal point. This establishes dominance in height and helps create a clean-cut, distinctive pattern.

USING THE PRINCIPLES OF DESIGN

The principles of design are interwoven one with another. The designer, somewhat like a computer, is faced with hundreds of possible correct choices in the selection and placement of materials. If each member of the class made the same style arrangement, and if everyone correctly employed the principles of design, still no two would be exactly alike. There are many very good, but different, products that could be created, even if each student were given the same kinds of materials.

It is impossible to describe every possible way that the universal art principles can be

White flowers and gray foliage contrast sharply with the black background. Also, velvety texture of flowers and foliage contrasts with the shiny brass container.

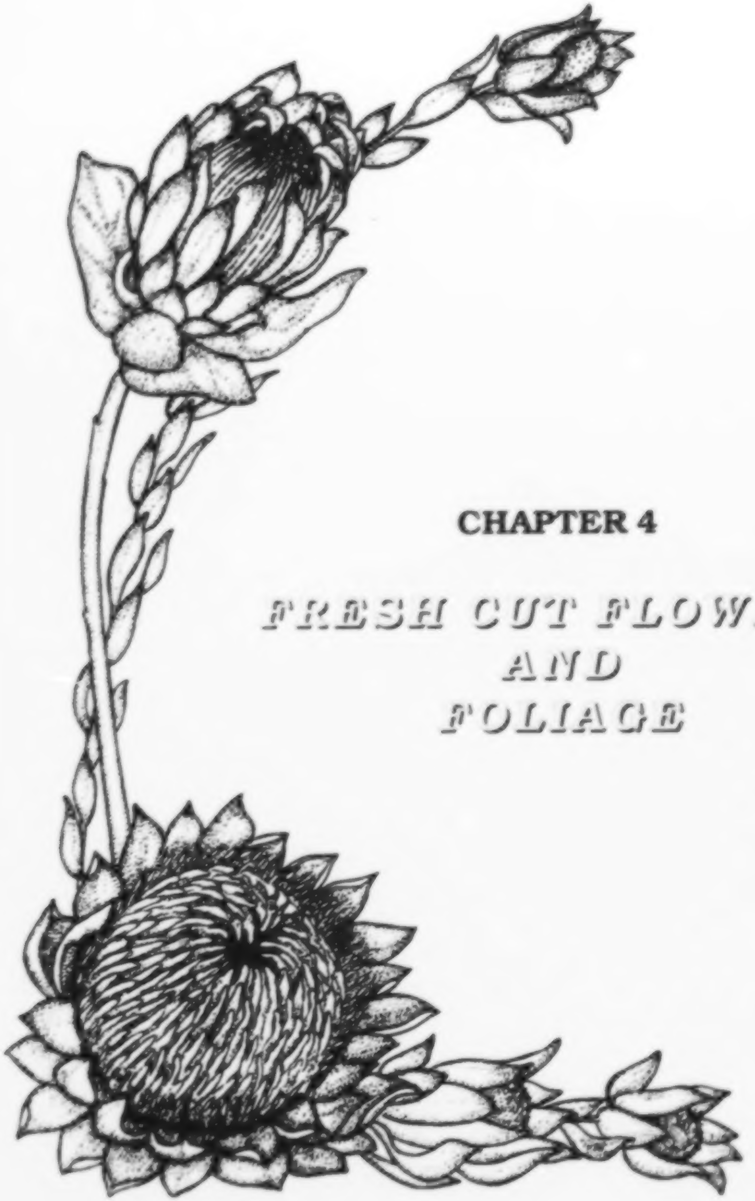
expressed in flower arranging. Even so, every good design will adhere to the principles. It should be your goal to analyze your work and the work of others based on the principles of design. Practice using the terms so that you become comfortable with their meaning. Then you should be able to apply the principles creatively in your own original work.

Guidelines

1. An arrangement should be at least one and a half times the height of a tall container or one and a half times as tall as the width of a low elongated container.
2. Use odd numbers of flowers if you are using less than ten of one kind in an arrangement. This will avoid the lining up of flowers in awkward geometric shapes.
3. Avoid crossing lines and lines that abruptly change direction.
4. Use smaller flowers farthest from the focal area and gradually increase flower size as you move toward the focal area.
5. Flowers farthest from the focal area should be farthest apart, gradually getting closer together as you move toward the focal area. Avoid equal spacing of flowers.
6. Flowers should not crowd or touch each other. Sink some flowers in for depth. Leave space around the flowers.
7. The focal point should be prominent, standing out closest to the viewer. Don't push in the focal point by overshadowing it with other flowers.
8. Filler or secondary flowers should repeat the shape of the design in a rhythmic way. If you looked at just the filler, it should reveal the design shape with closer spacing near the focal area.
9. Keep flowers from lining up in distracting patterns.
10. Gradually face backward some of the flowers near the edge of the design to increase depth.
11. Don't use too many colors. (An assortment is permitted in historical period designs.)
12. Hide mechanics used to support the flowers.

Traditional Guidelines

As the art of floral design has become more formalized through practice, teaching and writing, there has developed a group of traditional guidelines that are frequently cited by people involved in flower arranging. These guidelines may be especially beneficial to beginners in helping them avoid certain common mistakes. The advanced designer knows when and how to use exceptions to these guidelines in specialized design styles. These guidelines, listed in random order, are an important part of your floral design training.



CHAPTER 4

FRESH CUT FLOWERS
AND
FOLIAGE

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

FRESH CUT FLOWERS AND FOLIAGE

There is a vast array of cut flowers and foliage available to floral designers. Choices continue to multiply as marketing channels expand. Efficient transportation systems rapidly deliver plant materials from all parts of the world to local wholesalers.

Availability of some flowers varies with the time of year because of their natural blooming time or the production schedules that have been set based on demand for the product. For example, it is still easiest to obtain poinsettias and holly at Christmas, tulips and daffodils in winter and spring, and asters in summer and fall. Flowers may appear on the market out of season, but there is usually an increase in price as availability becomes more limited. Other plant materials like leatherleaf fern, huckleberry, chrysanthemums and carnations are available year-round. When a flower is in high demand, like roses at Valentine's Day, the price is likely to increase substantially.

It is good to have a general knowledge of the flowers and foliages available at a given time of year, how they are bunched, and what colors they commonly come in. Then one must become familiar with the local wholesalers and learn what they can supply. The wholesalers' selection of material is based on the demand in the area they serve and the volume of business they do. Therefore, the selection and price in a wholesale house that serves a large metropolitan area may be quite different from those in a wholesale house that serves a number of smaller communities.

The following listing of cut plant materials available to florists is intended to be an introduction to some of the more common flowers and foliages used in arrangements. The list is divided into two parts: **Cut Flowers** and **Cut Foliage.** The plants are listed alphabetically by genus. For those unfamiliar with scientific names, each section includes an alphabetical listing (index) of common names with the corresponding scientific names (genus and species).

The picture of each flower is accompanied by a description of the flower, the common colors it comes in, its availability, the unit in which it is bunched, and care and handling information. The foliage pictures are accompanied by information on the bunching unit, handling requirements, and common use.

With experience, you will likely encounter exceptions to the listed information. There is much variation in many of the plant materials. New cultivars are frequently introduced, and new design styles sometimes create new uses for the materials. Also there is a general lack of universally accepted grading and packing standards. For example, many things are sold by the bunch. This unit may vary greatly between suppliers and with the time of year.

This list can be used as a reference when selecting floral design materials. It can give you ideas of different alternatives to the basic materials you are used to working with. Additional cut material may be found in the identification section at the end of Chapter 17, "Living Plant Groupings." Garden books listing annual and perennial plants are another source for the identification of flowers and foliage that can be incorporated into arrangements.

If you are cutting material from the garden or from greenhouse plants, be careful to condition it properly by placing it in water with added floral preservative for a few hours before using it. Any material that is to be stored overnight or longer should be placed in a cooler to prolong its life. For further information on this subject, refer to Chapter 28, "Conditioning and Storing Cut Flowers."

Two slide series that provide complementary material to what is included in this chapter are:

- **Cut Florist Foliage and Branches**
  (catalog #2120S)
- **Fresh Cut Florist Flowers**
  (catalog #2126S)

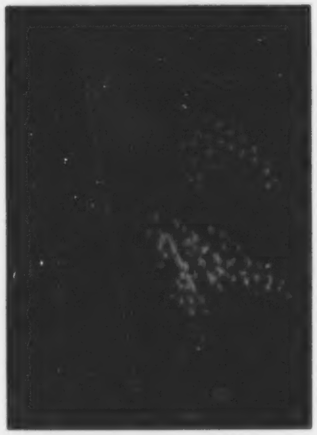
Both of these are also available from the Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service.

CUT FLOWERS

Acacia dealbata 1

ACACIA, MIMOSA

Family Leguminosae



Color: Yellow

Description: Clusters of small, soft, globular flowers on woody stems. Flowers fragrant. Leaves silvery gray and pinnately compound.

Availability: Late winter, spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Keep flowers in high humidity, wrapped in plastic until used. Recut stems and place in clean warm water. Transfer to preservative water and place in cooler. Water uptake is best at pH 3.5.

Note: Acacia dries out rapidly and sheds easily. Avoid low humidity, heat, and air movement. Buds may be forced open in the dark at room temperature by placing stems in preservative water.

Achillea filipendulina 2

YARROW

Family Compositae

Color: Yellow (Flowers of *A. millefolium* come in tones of red, pink, and white)

Description: Flat, plate-like head (corymb) on stiff, sturdy stem. Foliage fern-like. Flowers dry well, retaining color and form.

Availability: July–September

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Long-lasting. Recut stems and place in clean warm water. Transfer to preservative water and place in cooler.

Note: May be air-dried, hung upside down.

Aconitum napellus 3

MONKSHOOD

Family Ranunculaceae

Color: Blue or violet

Description: Individual flowers shaped like a helmet or hood with a beak in front. Flowers arranged on a spike-like raceme.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in warm preservative water. Flowers do not store well for long periods of time. Avoid storage at temperatures below 40°F to prevent undesirable darkening of the flowers.

Note: All parts of the plant are poisonous.

Agapanthus africanus 4

LILY-OF-THE-NILE, AFRICAN LILY

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Blue, white

Description: Large round to half-round inflorescence (umbel) at end of sturdy, upright, leafless stalk. Individual flowers somewhat tubular, up to 2 inches long.

Availability: Late spring, summer

Unit: 5 or 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in clean warm water. Transfer to preservative water and place in cooler.

Note: Handle carefully to avoid damage to flowers. Unopened flowers should open over time as flowers are enjoyed.

5

Alchemilla mollis

LADY'S MANTLE

Family Rosaceae

Color: Yellowish green (chartreuse)

Description: Small individual flowers less than 1/8 inch across, produced in inflorescence called compound cyme. Total effect is airy like baby's breath.

Availability: Early summer

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water. Plants do not store well for long periods of time.

Note: Can be air dried.

6

Allium giganteum

GIANT ONION

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Purple

Description: Large globular inflorescence (umbel) up to 4 inches in diameter. Large leafless flower stalk may be 3 to 4 feet long.

Availability: Summer

Unit: Single stems

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative solution.

Note: Dramatic flower suitable for large designs.

7

Allium sphaerocephalum

DRUMSTICK ALLIUM

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Purple shading to green at base – a two-tone effect

Description: Globular to oval inflorescence (umbel) up to 2 inches in diameter on flower stalk up to 2 feet in length. Delicate with airy appearance.

Availability: Summer–early fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative solution.

Note: Long-lasting (up to two weeks). Suitable for drying by hanging upside down.

8

Allium stipitatum

FLOWERING ONION

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: White

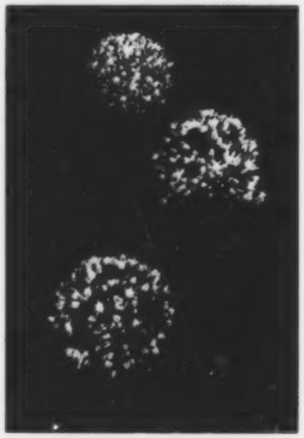
Description: Globular inflorescence (umbel) about 2 1/2 inches in diameter on end of leafless stalk. Flower stalk often about 12 inches in length.

Availability: Summer

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative solution.

Note: Long-lasting



Alpinia purpurata **9**

GINGER

Family Zingiberaceae

Color: Red and pink

Description: Flower head commonly 6 to 10 inches long, made up of thick, shiny bracts on a sturdy stem.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Single stems

Care: Tropical flower sensitive to chilling. Store at 45-50°F in humid environment. Keep in vertical position to prevent bending.

Note: Remove true flowers from between bracts, as they tend to die before the bract deteriorates.

***Alstroemeria* sp.** **10**

PERUVIAN LILY, ALSTROEMERIA

Family Alstroemeriaceae

Color: Yellow, orange, cream, pink, purple; (many bicolored with streaks and stripes)

Description: Individual flowers trumpet-shaped, about 1 1/2 inches across. Three to nine blossoms spray off the end of a single sturdy stalk. Foliage confined to main stem, not found on more delicate flower stalks.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water. Individual flowers can be conditioned for use in corsage or wedding work.

Note: Leaves sensitive to yellowing. Flower buds continue to open in arrangements. Some people's skin is sensitive after prolonged contact with the flower.

Ammi majus **11**

BISHOP'S WEED

Family Umbelliferae

Color: White

Description: Small delicate flowers arranged in an umbel. Resembles Queen Anne's Lace.

Availability: Summer

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water.

Note: Bishop's weed is more likely to be found on wholesale markets than Queen Anne's lace.

Ananas comosus **12**

ORNAMENTAL PINEAPPLE

Family Bromeliaceae

Color: Leaves green with areas of pink and cream; fruit tan with pink coloration.

Description: Small decorative fruit with rosette of variegated leaves. Usually attached to sturdy stalk below the pineapple.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Single stem

Care: No special care. Can be kept at room temperature.

Note: Ripening fruit gives off ethylene gas which causes flowers to age more quickly. Avoid storing in enclosed areas with flowers.

Anemone coronaria 13

ANEMONE

Family Ranunculaceae

Color: Purple, red, pink, white

Description: Single to semi-double flowers about 3 inches across. Centers dark, often black. Deeply cut green bracts just below flowers.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Flowers quite delicate. Store at about 40°F. Condition for several hours before using.

Note: Petals that are folded up in the cooler open quickly when moved to room temperature. Avoid buying flowers that are open flat or with limp petals.

***Anigozanthos* sp.** 14

Family Haemodoraceae

KANGAROO PAW

Color: Red, purple, green, yellow

Description: Inflorescence made up of tubular flowers that are wooly in appearance. Stiff stems also covered with short hairs.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 5 or 10/bunch

Care: Store at room temperature or in cooler above 40°F.

Note: An exotic Australian native with subtle coloration. Interesting shape and texture of flower can be easily lost when combined with other flowers.

Anthurium andraeanum 15

ANTHURIUM

Family Araceae

Color: Red, pink, white

Description: Inflorescence consists of the large spathe (a modified leaf), which is heart-shaped, waxy, and 3 to 6 inches across. It surrounds the yellow, cylindrical spadix.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Single stem

Care: Tropical flower sensitive to chilling injury. Ideally stored at 55–60°F in high humidity. If such storage is not possible, store at room temperature. Below 45°F, there is risk of color loss and dulling.

Note: Select flowers with a firm, glossy spathe. Do not store for long periods of time.

Antirrhinum major 16

SNAPDRAGON

Family Scrophulariaceae

Color: Yellow, orange, red, pink, white, lavender

Description: Spike-like inflorescence (raceme) from 6 inches to 3 feet in length. Individual flowers bilaterally symmetrical with rounded upper and lower lips.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Store in vertical position to avoid curvature of stem (from geotropic response). Lasts longest at temperatures around 35°F. Will lose color if kept long in the dark.

Note: Buy when one-third to two-thirds of the florets are open. Ethylene gas (produced by ripening fruit and decaying foliage) causes florets to drop.

17

Asclepias tuberosa
BUTTERFLY WEED
Family Asclepiadaceae

Color: Orange
Description: Clusters of small waxy flowers at the end of a stem.
Availability: Summer
Unit: Bunch
Care: Do not store for long periods of time. Store at 35–40°F for short periods.
Note: Buy when most of the flowers are open. Remove old florets that remain on the inflorescence and distract from newly opened flowers.

18

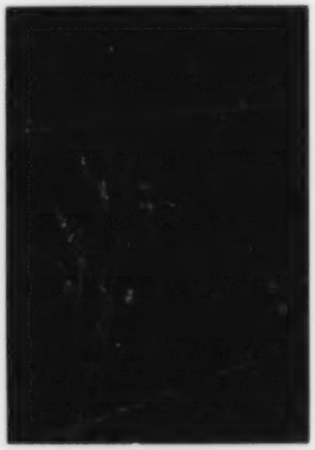
Aster ericoides
MONTE CASINO,
SEPTEMBER FLOWER
Family Compositae

Color: White
Description: Small, single, daisy-like flowers produced freely on branched stems. Stems thin but sturdy.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: Bunch
Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water.
Note: Buy stems with flowers in range of opening– from buds to fully open. Flowers sensitive to drying out. Avoid long periods out of water.

19

Astilbe x arendsii
ASTILBE
Family Saxifragaceae

Color: Pink, white, red
Description: Feathery, pyramidal inflorescence, commonly 6 to 12 inches long, made up of very small flowers. Stems thin but sturdy.
Availability: Late spring to early summer
Unit: 10/bunch
Care: Do not store for long periods. Best at 35–40°F for less than a week.
Note: Foliage often deteriorates before flowers do.



20

Banksia prionotes
BANKSIA
Family Proteaceae

Color: Yellow, orange, red
Description: Dense, cone-like flower head resembles a bottle brush. It is at the end of a woody stem 1 to 1 1/2 feet long.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: Single stem
Care: Store above 40°F in relatively high humidity. Avoid prolonged storage in an airtight environment or flowers may start to decay.
Note: May be air dried.

***Bouvardia* sp.** 21

BOUVARDIA

Family Rubiaceae

Color: Red, pink, white

Description: Small, tubular flowers that spread out into four petals. Flowers loosely clustered at end of stem. Overall cluster about 4 to 6 inches wide.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water. Store above 40°F if possible. Avoid long-term storage at lower temperatures.

Note: Flowers wilt readily. Avoid low humidity and extended time out of water. Purchase when only a few florets are open. Promote opening of more florets at room temperature.

Callistephus chinensis 23

ANNUAL ASTER

Family Compositae

Color: Purple, pink, white, blue

Description: Double, single, and semi-double flowers, 2 to 4 inches across, at the end of thin stems. 'Powder puff' cultivars have very compact petals; others are more open and spidery.

Availability: Late summer, fall

Unit: 25/bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water. Remove foliage below water level, as it is sensitive to deterioration.

Note: Flowers keep best if recently opened. Avoid flowers with mature or aging centers.

Calathea cylindrica 22

HONEYCOMB CALATHEA

Family Marantaceae

Color: Green (bracts)

Description: Dense cone-like spike of waxy bracts with yellow flowers.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Single stems

Care: Recut stems and store above 40°F. Storage time can be increased with higher humidity.

Note: Tropical plant with dramatic form and texture in interesting lime-green color.

***Calluna* sp.** 24

HEATHER

Family Ericaceae

Color: Lavender, pink, white

Description: Small bell-shaped flowers closely arranged on thin woody stems. Spike-like inflorescence, often tapered to a point, has a soft, feathery appearance.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F. Very sensitive to drying out. Cover flowers with plastic tent to raise humidity and slow flower shedding.

Note: Keep lower foliage out of water.

Carthamus tinctorius 25

SAFFLOWER

Family Compositae

Color: Orange

Description: Thistle-like flower, 1 inch across, with layers of leafy bracts under the flower. Flowers located at end of sturdy, branched stems.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water. Remove some of the foliage. Avoid conditions that will make the plant dry out.

Note: Buy with flowers open. Foliage dries before flowers do. Flowers may be dried; they retain their orange color well.

Celosia cristata 27

COCKSCOMB, CELOSIA

Family Amaranthaceae

Color: Red, pink, yellow, apricot

Description: Dense velvety head 3 to 8 inches across on a flattened stem. Leaves usually removed at time of harvest.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: 5 or 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water.

Note: Select full, colorful flowers. They dry well. Celosia also available in plumed cultivars.

Cattleya sp. 26

CATTLEYA ORCHID

Family Orchidaceae

Color: Lavender, white, yellow, crimson

Description: Large flower, 3 to 5 inches across, consists of three sepals and three petals. One petal modified into the labellum, a showy lip-shaped structure.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Individual flower

Care: Sensitive to chilling. Store above 50°F. Often shipped in water tubes. Replace water with preservative solution before the tube runs dry.

Note: Orchids are sensitive to bruising. Often cushioned in orchid grass (shredded waxed paper) during shipment.

Centaurea cyanus 28

BACHELOR'S BUTTON, CORNFLOWER

Family Compositae

Color: Blue, pink, white, purple

Description: Small thistle-like flowers about 1 inch across. Stems and flowers delicate.

Availability: Spring, summer, fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stem and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Stem and flower become limp easily. Buy with flowers just open. Flowers fade with age.

Chaenomeles speciosa 29

QUINCE

Family Rosaceae

Color: Pink, peach, scarlet

Description: Stiff, woody branches with delicate blossoms set among emerging leaves. Flowers 1/2 inch across.

Availability: Late winter, early spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and place in preservative water. Do not crush stems.

Note: Buy when full buds are just beginning to open. Can be forced in late winter like forsythia.

Chamelaucium uncinatum 30

WAX FLOWER

Family Myrtaceae

Color: Pink, white

Description: Profusion of small flowers, each about 1/2 inch across, on thin woody stem with needle-like leaves. Individual flowers waxy with five prominent, rounded petals.

Availability: Fall, winter, spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and leave at room temperature in preservative water for 6 to 8 hours before placing in cooler.

Note: Select branches heavy with large swollen buds and many open flowers. Shedding leaves are a sign that the material is not in good condition.

NOTE: Due to reclassification of genus ***Chrysanthemum,*** refer to *Dendranthema, Leucanthemum,* and *Tanacetum* for flowers previously in this genus.

Consolida regalis 31

LARKSPUR

Family Ranunculaceae

Color: Pink, white, blue, lavender

Description: Spikes of semi-double flowers each 1/4 to 1/2 inch across. Total length of spike 8 to 12 inches. Finely divided leaves.

Availability: Spring, summer

Unit: Bunch

Care: Sensitive to wilting. Recut stems under water and store in preservative water.

Note: Buy with one-third of the florets open. Sturdy stems.

Convallaria majalis 32

LILY-OF-THE-VALLEY

Family Liliaceae

Color: White

Description: Small, fragrant, bell-shaped flower on delicate 6- to 8-inch stem.

Availability: Winter, spring

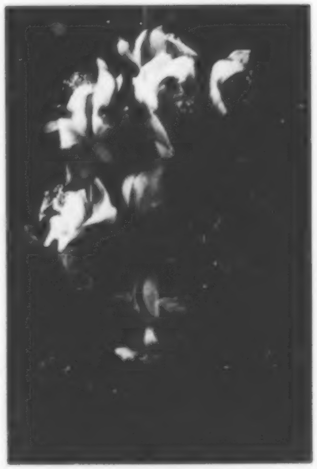
Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut and store in preservative water. Wrap in waxed paper with top and bottom open to protect the delicate flower. Store at 35°F.

Note: Flower turns brown easily. Dip in glue water or spray with clear sealer to retard discoloring.

33

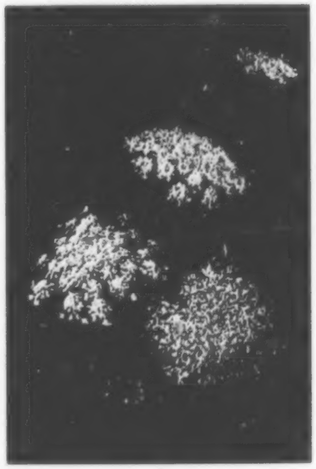
***Cymbidium* sp.**
CYMBIDIUM ORCHID
Family Orchidaceae



Color: Pink, yellow, cream, green, salmon
Description: A spray orchid with waxy flowers 2 to 3 inches across. Labellum often a different color from other petals and sepals.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: Individual flower or spray
Care: Sensitive to chilling, but not as much as cattleya orchids and other tropical types. Always store above 40°F; store at 50°F for periods longer than a week.
Note: Flowers handled carefully will last several weeks. Keep water tubes filled with preservative water.

35

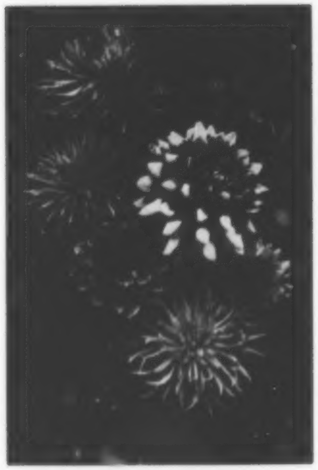
Daucus carota
QUEEN ANNE'S LACE
Family Umbelliferae



Color: White
Description: Delicate lace-like flowers arranged in flattened or slightly arched inflorescence (umbel) 3 to 4 inches across. Stems thin but sturdy.
Availability: Summer, early fall
Unit: Bunch
Care: Recut stems and store in preservative solution.
Note: Flowers may close in dark, damp environment, but will open in light, dry environment. Insert stems through poultry netting spread over buckets to keep flowers from tangling. *Ammi majus* similar in appearance; *Daucus* less available on wholesale markets.

34

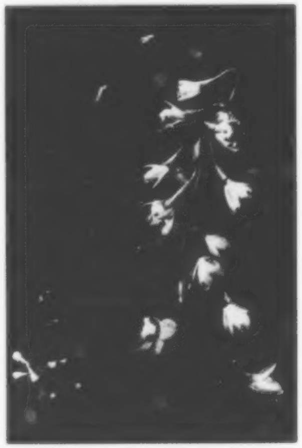
***Dahlia* sp.**
DAHLIA HYBRIDS
Family Compositae



Color: Almost every color but blue, and many bicolors
Description: Wide variety of flower types, from 1 to 12 inches across. Shown here are cactus, decorative, and pompon flower types.
Availability: Summer, fall
Unit: Bunch or individual flower
Care: Flowers sensitive to wilting. Sometimes stem is scalded after cutting, using a flame or dipping in boiling water.
Note: Flowers easily bruised and knocked from large hollow stems.

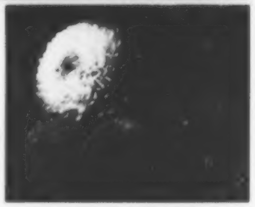
36

***Delphinium* sp.**
DELPHINIUM
Family Ranunculaceae



Color: Blue, lavender, white, pink
Description: Single and double flowers 1/4 to 1/2 inch across growing on spikes 1 to 5 feet tall. Considerable variation in density of flowers and sturdiness of stem.
Availability: Spring, summer
Unit: 10/bunch
Care: Recut under water and store in preservative solution at 35°F. Somewhat wilt-sensitive.
Note: Buy when about half the florets are open.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



Dendranthema grandiflora **37**
(*formerly* ***Chrysanthemum morifolium***)
SPRAY CHRYSANTHEMUM, MUM
Family Compositae

Color: Yellow, white, bronze, lavender, pink, orange

Description: Many different flower types at the end of branched stems. Three to seven flowers per stem. Main stems 2 to 3 feet in length. Shown here are decorative (top), single or daisy, anemone, and pompon (bottom).

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Widely used by florists because of relatively low cost, long keeping quality, and year-round availability. Shattering can be prevented with sprays or glue dip.

Dendrobium sp. **39**
DENDROBIUM ORCHID
Family Orchidaceae

Color: White, pink, lavender

Description: Sprays of 12 to 15 flowers per arching stem. Individual flower about 1 inch across. Typical orchid shape with modified labellum.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10 sprays/bunch or per stem

Care: Store at 50°F as these orchids are sensitive to chilling. May be stored at 40°F for shorter periods. Refill water tubes with preservative solution as needed.

Note: Long-lasting when properly handled. Sensitive to ethylene gas. Avoid tangles of sprays in buckets, or flowers may be damaged.

Dendranthema grandiflora **38**
(*formerly* ***Chrysanthemum morifolium***)
STANDARD CHRYSANTHEMUM, MUM
Family Compositae

Color: Yellow, white, bronze, lavender, pink, orange

Description: Many different large flower types, most over 4 inches across. Incurved, decorative, fuji, and anemone types shown. Side buds have been removed to produce one large terminal flower called a disbud.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch or by stem

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Large showy flowers available year-round. Long-lasting; good for large floral arrangements.

Dianthus caryophyllus **40**
MINI-CARNATION, SPRAY CARNATION
Family Caryophyllaceae

Color: Pink, red, white, yellow, orange, lavender, bicolor

Description: Double flowers held together by tubular green calyx. 1- to 2-inch flowers and buds on branched stems with swollen nodes; linear gray-green leaves.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water.

Note: Long-lasting. Flower buds showing color can be opened by placing in warm preservative water at room temperature for a day or two.

41

Dianthus caryophyllus
STANDARD CARNATION
Family Caryophyllaceae

Color: Pink, red, white, yellow, orange, lavender, bicolor
Description: Double flowers, 2 to 3 inches across, held together by tubular green calyx. One large flower at end of long, sturdy, flexible stem.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: 25/bunch
Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water.
Note: Watch for split calyx. Flowers sensitive to ethylene gas, which causes petals to roll up and become soft. Buds showing color can be opened by placing stem in warm preservative water at room temperature.

42

***Diosma* sp.**
DIOSMA
Family Rutaceae

Color: Pink, white
Description: Very small single flowers on woody heather-like foliage
Availability: Winter, spring
Unit: Bunch
Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.
Note: Prevent drying out by using plastic tent over the branches.

43

***Eremurus* sp.**
DESERT CANDLE, FOXTAIL LILY
Family Liliaceae

Color: Yellow, white, orange, pink
Description: Single star-shaped flowers in long spikes 3 feet or more in length.
Availability: Late spring, summer
Unit: 5 or 10/bunch or by stem
Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.
Note: Buy when one-third of the florets are open.

44

Eustoma grandiflora
LISIANTHUS
Family Gentianaceae

Color: Purple, pink, white
Description: Cup-shaped flowers about 1 1/2 inches across at the end of branched stems. Buds pointed. Three or four flowers usually open at the same time on one stem.
Availability: Late spring, summer, fall
Unit: Bunch, often with 10 stems
Care: Cut under water and store at 35°F in preservative.
Note: Watch for weak stems and limpness. Well-conditioned flowers hold well for 7 to 10 days.

Forsythia* x *intermedia 45

FORSYTHIA

Family Oleaceae

Color: Yellow

Description: Clusters of small tubular flowers along leafless stems of a large shrub. Stems can be cut to any length desired.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Store at 35°F in preservative water.

Note: Flowers can be forced by recutting stems and placing in warm preservative water. Flowers open best at about 60°F in high humidity. Buy branches with buds showing color or just opening.

Freesia* x *hybrida 46

FREESIA

Family Iridaceae

Color: Yellow, lavender, orange, white, rose

Description: Graceful arching spikes of bell-shaped flowers. Individual flowers about 1 inch across when open. Often very fragrant.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Handle carefully. Recut under water and store in preservative solution at 35°F.

Note: Buy when one flower is open. Three or four other buds should open if stalk is left out of the cooler at about 60°F. Flowers sensitive to drying air currents.

Gardenia grandiflora 47

GARDENIA

Family Rubiaceae

Color: Creamy white

Description: Large double waxy flower. Very fragrant.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 3/box

Care: Usually shipped in special box with airtight plastic wrap. Leave in box as long as possible and store at 35°F. Unwrapped flowers should be misted, wrapped, and stored in cooler immediately.

Note: Flower bruises easily and turns brown readily. Very wilt-sensitive. Short-lived in bouquets and arrangements. Must be misted while being handled.

Gerbera jamesonii 48

GERBERA DAISY

Family Compositae

Color: Red, yellow, salmon, pink, white

Description: Daisy-like flower 2 to 4 inches across on long, leafless stem. Some double forms. Singles either yellow or dark-centered.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Stem or box of 32 or 50

Care: This flower one of the most sensitive to wilting. Store upright in bucket, poking stems through poultry netting over top of bucket. Essential to recut stems and keep bucket very clean. Stem-sanitizing solution may be used before flowers are placed in preservative water. Store at 35°F for no longer than a week.

Note: If stem does not take up enough water, gerbera daisy will show the bent neck symptom.

Gladiolus x *hortulanus* 49

GLADIOLUS, GLAD

Family Iridaceae

Color: Red, yellow, white, pink, salmon, orange, lavender, green

Description: Single flowers face all one way on thick flower stem (spike) that is from 2 to 4 feet long. Lower florets open first followed by florets in sequence to the top.

Availability: Year-round; most abundant in summer

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Buy spikes with lower two or three florets opening. Store vertically to prevent bending (from geotropism). Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35-40°F.

Note: Open flowers at room temperature in warm preservative water. Upper two or three buds on stalk are sometimes removed.

Gloriosa rothschildiana 50

GLORIOSA LILY

Family Liliaceae

Color: Red and yellow

Description: Flower 3 to 4 inches across with six sharply reflexed petals. Petals twist back in interesting pattern.

Availability: Winter, spring, summer

Unit: Individual flowers

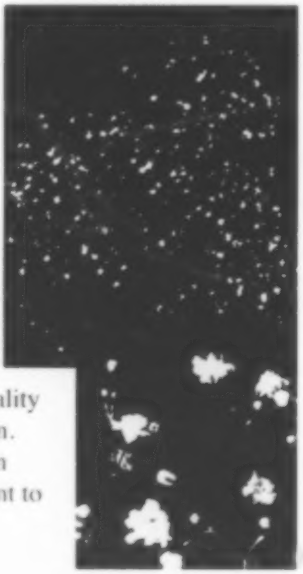
Care: Store at 35°F or even higher in high humidity. Flowers often packed in airtight bags.

Note: Handle carefully to avoid breaking off delicate petals. Keep bag from resting on the flower.

Gypsophila paniculata 51

BABY'S BREATH

Family Caryophyllaceae



Color: White, pink

Description: Loose panicles of tiny flowers produce airy effect. Flowers may be single or double.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Sensitive to drying out. Buds fail to open when plant starts to dry out. Best quality from stems bought with buds partially open. Buds can be opened at room temperature in warm preservative water under a plastic tent to increase humidity.

Helianthus annuus 52

SUNFLOWER

Family Compositae

Color: Yellow, gold, shades of reddish brown

Description: Large (2- to 8-inch) daisy-like flowers. Most single with large brown or yellow center. Commonly used in design as single flowers on stems. Some also produced in branched sprays.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: 10/bunch or individual flowers

Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water.

Note: Leaves wilt easily. Typically, many of the leaves are removed before storing.

Heliconia caribaea

HELICONIA

Family Musaceae

Color: Red, yellow, orange

Description: Stiff, shiny, boat-like bracts on a stiff stem. Flower stalk may be 2 to 6 feet long. Often accompanied by stiff upright petioles of subtending leaves.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Individual flowers

Care: Tropical flower sensitive to chilling. Store above 55°F in as much humidity as possible. Very little water uptake after the flower stalk has been cut.

Note: Avoid damaged or discolored bracts. Clean and groom inflorescence before using.

53

Heliconia psittacorum

SASSY HELICONIA

54

Spear-shaped, multicolored bracts on thin stems are useful for smaller designs. As with all heliconias, do not store below 50°F.

Heliconia stricta

DWARF JAMAICAN HELICONIA

Family Musaceae

55

A smaller heliconia (6 to 8 inches tall), similar to *H. caribaea*. Pinkish red in color. Useful for smaller designs.

Hippeastrum sp.

AMARYLLIS

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Red, pink, white, orange

Description: Large (3- to 5-inch) trumpet-shaped flowers on thick leafless stem. Flowers open across from each other. Subsequent sets of buds open and are at right angles to the set below.

Availability: Late fall, winter, spring

Unit: Individual flowers

Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water. Open buds in warm preservative water at room temperature if necessary before using.

Note: Split stem ends that roll back do not affect keeping quality. Simply remove those ends when recutting stems.

56

Hyacinthus orientalis

HYACINTH

Family Liliaceae

Color: Blue, pink, white, purple

Description: Compact spike (4 to 6 inches) of small bell-shaped flowers. Very fragrant. Stems thick and soft.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: 5/bunch

Care: Store at 35°F in preservative water. Leave wrapped in sleeves to keep stems straight. Keep in water for at least a day before using, as much sap flows out of the stems.

Note: May be stored in pots at 35°F in bud stage. Open flowers at room temperature or slightly cooler before using.

57

58

Iris hollandica

DUTCH IRIS

Family Iridaceae

Color: Blue, yellow, white

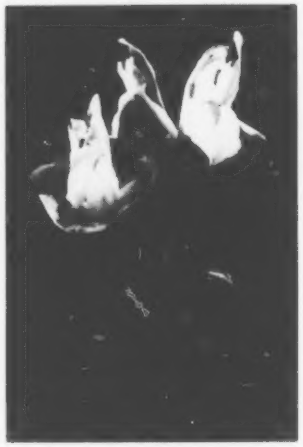
Description: Flowers 3 to 4 inches across with three petals arched upward and three standing out or curling downward. Stems about 18 inches long with linear leaves often attached low on the stem.

Availability: Year-round; peak in spring

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Buy when buds show color and before petals open. Open in warm preservative water at room temperature. Place in cooler as soon as flowers have opened.



59

Lathyrus odoratus

SWEET PEA

Family Leguminosae

Color: Pink, white, lavender, red

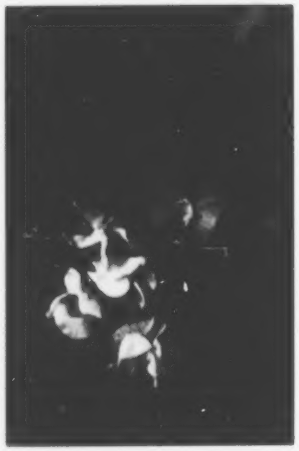
Description: Delicate ruffled flowers about 1 inch across. Fragrant. Thin leafless stems usually not over 8 inches long.

Availability: Spring, summer

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Store at 35°F in preservative water.

Note: Buy when first flowers are open. Buds can be opened by placing in warm preservative water at room temperature.



60

Leptospermum scoparium

LEPTOSPERMUM

Family Myrtaceae

Color: Pink, white, red

Description: Tiny (1/4-inch) double flowers clustered on wispy woody stems among small needle-like leaves.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems, place in preservative water, and store at 35°F.

Note: Buy when flowers are just beginning to open. Plant tends to dry and shed flowers and leaves easily.

61

Leucanthemum x superbum

(*formerly* ***Chrysanthemum maximum***)

KILLIAN DAISY, MAJESTIC DAISY

Family Compositae

Color: White

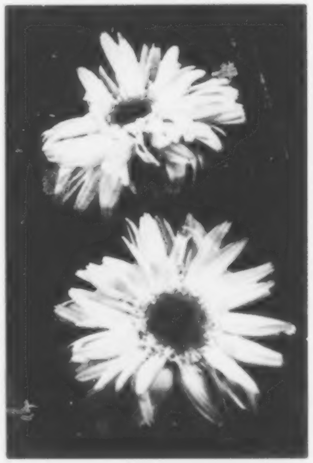
Description: Large single to semi-double flowers ranging from 2 1/2 to 31/2 inches across. Stems sturdy with relatively sparse foliage.

Availability: Fall, winter

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Useful when a large daisy-like flower placement is needed.



Leucanthemum vulgare

62

(formerly ***Chrysanthemum frutescens****)*
MARGUERITE DAISY
Family Compositae

Color: White, yellow

Description: Single flower 1 to 2 inches across with yellow center. Leaves more deeply dissected than those of standard or spray chrysanthemums.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10 or 20/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Buy with flowers open. These daisies are more sensitive to work with and not as long-lasting as mums.

Liatris spicata

63

LIATRIS
Family Compositae

Color: Lavender, white

Description: Soft, thread-like petals on stiff stalks 1 to 3 feet in length. Flowers open from top to bottom, sometimes giving a drumstick-like appearance.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems under water and store in preservative water at 35°F. Change water often.

Note: Buy when flowers are open along upper 2 inches of stalk.

Lilium longiflorum

64

EASTER LILY
Family Liliaceae

Color: White

Description: Trumpet-shaped flower 5 to 7 inches across. Fragrant. Sturdy stem with closely-spaced, linear leaves.

Availability: Spring

Unit: 10/bunch or individual pot

Care: Store at 35°F in preservative water. Remove lower foliage.

Note: Often grown as pot plant, then cut and used in arrangements. Remove anthers.

Lilium **sp.**

65

HYBRID LILIES
Family Liliaceae

'Casablanca', very choice and fragrant →

Color: Yellow, orange, white, pink

Description: Flowers 3 to 6 inches across with six petals forming a shallow cup. Petals often roll back to various degrees. Pistil and stamens prominent.

Availability: Year-round

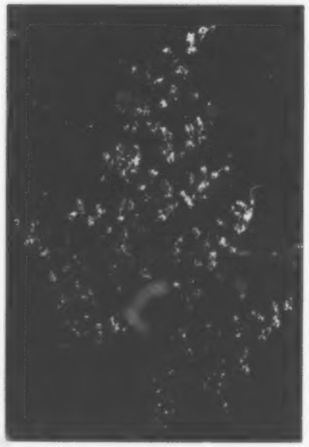
Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Remove anthers when flowers open to prevent staining of petals. Open buds in preservative water at room temperature. Return open flowers to cooler soon after opening.

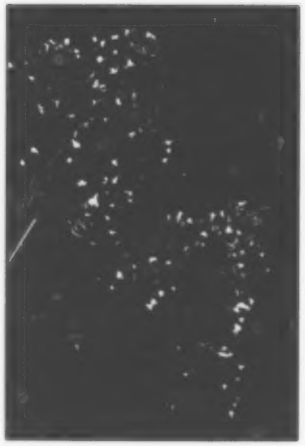
Limonium bellidifolium **66**
CASPIA
Family Plumbaginaceae

Color: Gray
Description: Similar to German statice but finer. Inflorescence longer, more upright and more delicate in appearance. Has finely divided foliage at base of flower stem.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: Bunch
Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water. Change water often.
Note: Often has an objectionable odor. May be dried.



Limonium incanum **67**
SEAFOAM STATICE
Family Plumbaginaceae

Color: Purple
Description: Similar to annual statice, but this inflorescence larger and more rounded. Branching of inflorescence gives a more cloud-like appearance.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: Bunch
Care: Store at 35°F in preservative water.
Note: Long-lasting. May be dried.



Limonium latifolium **68**
GERMAN STATICE
Family Plumbaginaceae

Color: Gray
Description: Usually seen with small gray bracts loosely arranged in inflorescence that branches and arches backward. Fresh statice has small mauve flowers within the bracts.
Availability: Fresh– summer; dry– year-round
Unit: Bunch
Care: Long-lasting. Store fresh stalks in preservative water at 35°F.
Note: Excellent for drying. This is a perennial plant, unlike the colored annual statice.

Limonium sinuatum **69**
ANNUAL STATICE
Family Plumbaginaceae

Color: Purple, yellow, rose, white
Description: Small, papery, funnel-shaped flowers facing upward on arching stem. Stem sturdy with winged flanges running down it.
Availability: Year-round
Unit: Bunch
Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water. Keeps well.
Note: Excellent for drying. Sometimes tight bunches kept in storage for a long time become soft and moldy.

Matthiola incana **70**
STOCK
Family Cruciferae

Color: Purple, white, lavender

Description: One-inch double flowers closely spaced on 1- to 2-foot sturdy stem. Some quite fragrant.

Availability: Winter, spring, summer

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems under water and place in preservative water in cooler at 35°F. Remove lower foliage. Do not mash stems.

Note: Change water frequently. Add a little bleach to water to control odors that may develop. Buy when florets are half to two-thirds open as they do not develop much after they are cut.

Narcissus **sp.** **72**
DAFFODIL, JONQUIL
Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Yellow, white, bicolors

Description: Cup-shaped flower appears to sit on "saucer" of six petals. Flowers 1 to 3 inches across at end of leafless, soft, hollow stem 8 to 12 inches long. Jonquils have multi-flowered stems.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: 10 or 25/bunch

Care: Recut stems under warm water. Condition in water for at least 6 hours, while stems exude sap and take up water. Store at 35°F.

Note: Daffodils must be conditioned by themselves. Sap that oozes from the cut end causes other flowers (especially tulips) to age faster. Flowers last longest if purchased when flower buds are puffy and angled down at a 45° angle (gooseneck stage).

Molucella laevis **71**
BELLS OF IRELAND
Family Labiatae

Color: Green (calyx)

Description: Bell-shaped calyx surrounds small white true flower. "Bells" are located in clusters in axils of leaves. Leaves are then removed when stems are harvested.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Dries well. Buy when most of the "bells" are mature. Soft, immature tips wilt easily.

Narcissus tazetta **73**
PAPER-WHITE NARCISSUS
Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: White

Description: Small, multi-flowered narcissus with very short cup. Strong fragrance.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Same as for other *Narcissus*.

Note: Buy when flowers are beginning to open. Flowers can be opened by placing in warm preservative water at room temperature. Easily forced inside from dormant bulbs in gravel and water.

Nerine bowdenii **74**

NERINE LILY, GUERNSEY LILY

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Pink

Description: Flower consists of six narrow petals twisted upward. Flowers clustered at end of leafless stalk 1 to 2 feet long.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

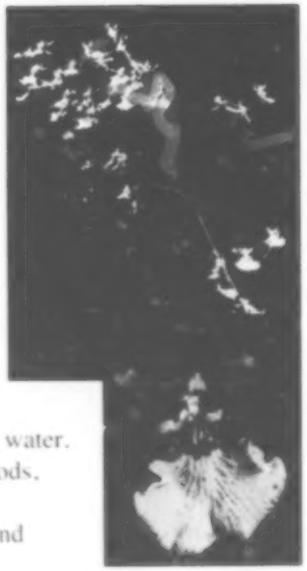
Care: Cut under water and store in preservative water at 45-50°F. Lower temperatures may stop flower development.

Note: Buy when one or two florets are open. Open additional flowers in warm preservative water. High humidity promotes opening.

Oncidium sp. **75**

ONCIDIUM ORCHID

Family Orchidaceae



Color: Yellow with brown markings

Description: Small (1/2- to 3/4-inch) orchid flowers produced in profusion on a thin branched stem 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 feet long. Stems arch under the weight of the flowers; sometimes called 'Golden Showers'.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Spray, bunch, or individual flower

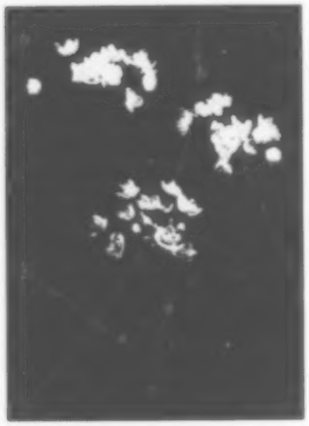
Care: Long-lasting but sensitive to chilling. Store above 50°F in preservative water. May be stored above 40°F for shorter periods, especially in made-up designs.

Note: Different cultivars vary in their size and markings.

Ornithogalum arabicum **76**

STAR-OF-BETHLEHEM

Family Liliaceae



Color: White

Description: Flower head spherical. Individual flowers have black anthers. Stem is longer and thicker than the spiky *O. thyrsoides* (#77).

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

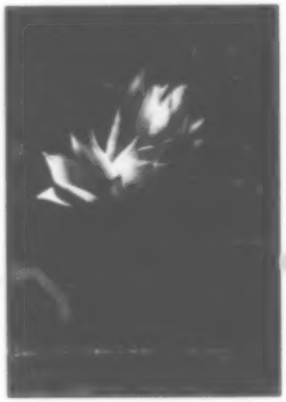
Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Stems should be firm and green.

Ornithogalum thyrsoides **77**

STAR-OF-BETHLEHEM, CHINCHERINCHEE

Family Liliaceae



Color: White

Description: Star-shaped flowers 1 inch across tightly packed on a leafless stem 1/2 to 1 1/2 feet long. Unopened buds at end of spike form sharp point.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Long-lasting. Store upright.

***Paphiopedilum* sp.** 78

LADY SLIPPER ORCHID

Family Orchidaceae

Color: Green, white, brown, yellow, and combinations of these.

Description: Interesting cupped lip. Upper petal modified and often more showy than other petals. Variations in petal markings add to unique beauty of the flower.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Individual flower

Care: Sensitive to chilling. Store at 50°F or more in water tubes.

Note: Sturdy stem longer than on most other single orchids. Flower faces at right angle to stem.

***Phalaenopsis* sp.** 79

PHALAENOPSIS ORCHID, MOTH ORCHID

Family Orchidaceae

Color: White, pink

Description: Orchid flower 3 to 4 inches across with rounded petals and sepals. Lip short and waxy. Stem short and fleshy since flowers are removed from larger sprays.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Individual flower

Care: Sensitive to chilling. Store in water tubes filled with preservative water at temperatures above 50°F.

Note: Flower wilts easily. Handle with care; even slight bruising causes discoloring. Avoid prolonged exposure to dry air.

Prunus persica 80

PEACH BLOSSOM

Family Rosaceae

Color: Soft pink

Description: Single five-petaled flower 3/4 inch across. Flowers usually grow sparsely on woody twigs.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: Bunch .

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F. Do not crush stems.

Note: Buy with buds showing color. Open in warm preservative water when needed. May be forced in early spring like forsythia.

Ranunculus asiaticus 81

RANUNCULUS

Family Ranunculaceae

Color: Pink, yellow, orange, red, white

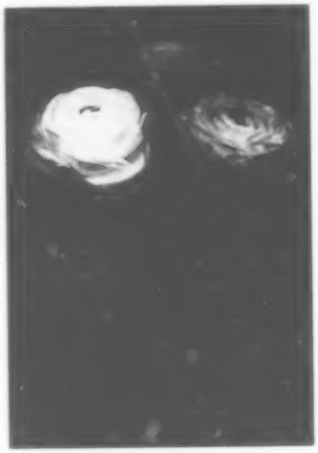
Description: Mostly double flowers from 1 to 3 inches across. Many rows of delicate petals cup around each other in a bowl-like form.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: 10 or 25/bunch

Care: Wilt-sensitive. Recut stems under water and store in preservative water at 35°F. Condition at least 6 hours before using.

Note: Limpness indicates water stress. Wrap flower bunches tightly in plastic during conditioning to straighten stems.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Rosa hybrida **82**

ROSE

Family Rosaceae

Color: Red, pink, yellow, white, orange, bicolored

Description: Larger flowers with longer stems sold as standard long-stemmed roses. Smaller flowers with shorter stems are floribundas or sweetheart roses.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10, 12, or 25/bunch

Care: Recut stems under water and store at 35°F in preservative water. Use of hydrating solution like citric acid may increase water uptake.

Note: Water stress causes bent neck; then buds will not open properly. Be careful not to damage stems when removing thorns. It is best to remove thorn tips. Outer (guard) petals sometimes removed before using in designs.

Rosa hybrida **83**

SPRAY ROSE

Family Rosaceae

Color: Red, pink, yellow, white, orange

Description: Multi-branched stems with small flowers, often in various stages of development.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 10 stems/bunch

Care: Same as for other roses

***Salix* sp.** **84**

PUSSY WILLOW

Family Salicaceae

Color: Gray

Description: Oval, fuzzy catkins emerging from bracts on a woody stem.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: Bunch

Care: Place at room temperature in preservative water until buds are as open as desired. May be stored dry at 35°F to prevent further development.

Note: Will dry nicely. Catkins become puffy and stamens emerge as development progresses.

Scabiosa caucasica **85**

PINCUSHION FLOWER,
MOURNING BRIDE

Family Dipsacaceae

Color: Blue, white, mauve

Description: Two-inch daisy-like flower with central disk resembling a pincushion. Outer ray florets are delicate and wavy. Stems long and thin.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut under water and store at 35°F in preservative water. Minimize time out of water, as plant is somewhat wilt-sensitive.

Note: Buy when central disk is still firm and before florets have emerged.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Sedum spectabile **86**

STONECROP

Family Crassulaceae

Color: Pink, lilac

Description: Tiny star-shaped flowers in large flattened inflorescence 3 to 6 inches across. Fleshy leaves on a sturdy, succulent stem.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Very long-lasting flower. Remove heavy foliage on lower end of stem.

X *Solidaster luteus* **87**

SOLIDASTER

Family Compositae

Color: Yellow

Description: Tiny (1/8-inch) daisy-like flowers on many-branched stem. Foliage mostly below flowers.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 5 or 10/bunch

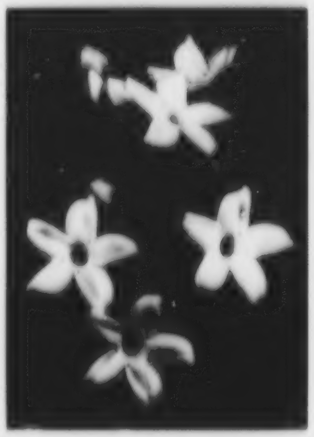
Care: Recut under water and store at 35°F in preservative water. Remove excess foliage, especially below the water level.

Note: Plant somewhat sensitive to drying out. Flowers last longer than does foliage.

Stephanotis floribunda **88**

STEPHANOTIS

Family Asclepiadaceae



Color: White

Description: Waxy, tubular flower, 1 1/2 to 2 inches across, flares out into a five-pointed star. Flowers grow in clusters. Light fragrance.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: 25/box

Care: Shipped in airtight boxes on orchid grass or sometimes in moist floral foam. Store at 35°F in high humidity. Misting may help. Submerge in water for a few hours before using. Can be submerged after wiring.

Note: Flowers turn brown easily. May last only one day in corsages and wedding bouquets.

Strelitzia reginae **89**

BIRD-OF-PARADISE

Family Strelitziaceae

Color: Orange with blue

Description: Long boat-shaped bract with linear petals coming out in succession. Overall effect is like a crest on a bird's head.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Individual flower

Care: Recut and store in preservative water above 50°F. Subject to chilling injury.

Note: Petals may be forced out manually for more showiness. To do this, soak in lukewarm water for 10 to 20 minutes, cut narrow slit in the bract if necessary, and gently ease out the petals.

Syringa vulgaris **90**

LILAC

Family Oleaceae

Color: Purple, white

Description: Individual flower about 1/4 inch, either single or double. Flowers grow in pyramidal panicles 5 to 10 inches long.

Availability: Winter, spring

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store in preservative water at 35°F. Remove all leaves except a few nearest the flowers. Stem crushing is sometimes recommended, but has not been proven to extend the life of the flower.

Note: Sensitive to wilting. Keep cool and in water as much as possible. Keep lilacs separate from other species for conditioning for 12 to 24 hours before using, as the stem exudes sap which may harm other flowers.

Tapeinochilus ananassae **92**

INDONESIAN WAX GINGER

Family Zingiberaceae

Color: Crimson

Description: Rounded cone-like inflorescence 4 to 5 inches across on top of a bamboo-like cane. Bracts fleshy and recurved.

Availability: Year-round

Unit: Individual flower

Care: Subject to chilling injury. Store above 50°F in high humidity.

Note: Dip flowers in water at room temperature and mist periodically. Don't let water collect in bracts.

Tanacetum parthenium **91**

*(formerly **Chrysanthemum parthenium**)*

FEVERFEW, MATRICARIA

Family Compositae

Color: White, yellow

Description: Small, daisy-like or double flowers in clusters at the end of branched stems.

Availability: Spring, summer

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water.

Note: Vase life shorter than that of spray or standard chrysanthemums.

Triteleia laxa **93**

BRODIAEA

Family Amaryllidaceae

Color: Blue to violet

Description: Small tubular flowers 1 to 2 inches across in clusters at the end of a leafless stalk 1 to 2 feet long.

Availability: Spring, summer, fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water.

Note: Flowers do not open all at once. Some should be open when using; others will open in time.

***Tulipa* sp.** **94**
TULIP
Family Liliaceae

Color: Yellow, red, pink, lavender, white, orange

Description: Many variations of this popular single or double flower. Flower commonly 2 to 4 inches at end of fleshy stem, usually with some leaves attached.

Availability: Winter, spring, fall

Unit: 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems under water and store at 35°F. Preservative has little effect on vase life.

Note: Store tightly wrapped to keep stems straight. Never place in same bucket as narcissus.

Vaccaria hispanica **95**
SAPONARIA
Family Caryophyllaceae

Color: Pink, white

Description: Many small (1/2-inch) flowers on many-branched, delicate stem.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F in preservative water.

Note: Buy when flowers are opening. Open additional flowers in preservative water at room temperature. Make plastic tent over flowers to raise humidity and promote opening. Flowers sensitive to ethylene.

Veronica spicata **96**
VERONICA, SPEEDWELL
Family Scrophulariaceae

Color: Purple, blue, white

Description: Delicate flowers in narrow racemes 6 to 8 inches long. May be branched with additional racemes developing lower on the stem.

Availability: Summer, fall

Unit: Bunch

Care: Recut under water and store in preservative water at 35°F.

Note: Buy when about half the flowers are open. Flowers sensitive to ethylene.

Zantedeschia aethiopica **97**
CALLA LILY
Family Araceae

Color: White (smaller lilies in yellow, pink, burgundy)

Description: Large, showy spathe wrapped around the yellow central tube-like spadix.

Availability: Year-round, peak in spring

Unit: Individual or 10/bunch

Care: Recut stems and store at 35°F. Preservative has minimal effect and may promote stem splitting.

Note: Wrap stems tightly in paper during conditioning to straighten stems. Buy flowers fully developed; they do not open readily after harvest.

INDEX OF SCIENTIFIC NAMES follows on page 95; INDEX OF COMMON NAMES on page 96.

INDEX OF SCIENTIFIC NAMES - CUT FLOWERS

1	*Acacia dealbata*	Acacia, Mimosa
2	*Achillea filipendulina*	Yarrow
3	*Aconitum napellus*	Monkshood
4	*Agapanthus africanus*	Lily-of-the-Nile, African Lily
5	*Alchemilla mollis*	Lady's Mantle
6	*Allium giganteum*	Giant Onion
7	*Allium sphaerocephalum*	Drumstick Allium
8	*Allium stipitatum*	Flowering Onion
9	*Alpinia purpurata*	Ginger
10	*Alstroemeria* species	Peruvian Lily, Alstroemeria
11	*Ammi majus*	Bishop's Weed
12	*Ananas comosus*	Ornamental Pineapple
13	*Anemone coronaria*	Anemone
14	*Anigozanthos* species	Kangaroo Paw
15	*Anthurium andraeanum*	Anthurium
16	*Antirrhinum major*	Snapdragon
17	*Asclepias tuberosa*	Butterfly Weed
18	*Aster ericoides*	Monte Casino, September Flower
19	*Astilbe* x *arendsii*	Astilbe
20	*Banksia prionotes*	Banksia
21	*Bouvardia* species	Bouvardia
22	*Calathea cylindrica*	Honeycomb Calathea
23	*Callistephus chinensis*	Annual Aster
24	*Calluna* species	Heather
25	*Carthamus tinctorius*	Safflower
26	*Cattleya* species	Cattleya Orchid
27	*Celosia cristata*	Cockscomb, Celosia
28	*Centaurea cyanus*	Bachelor's Button, Cornflower
29	*Chaenomeles speciosa*	Quince
30	*Chamelaucium uncinatum*	Wax Flower
	Chrysanthemum see 37, 38, 61, 62, 91	
31	*Consolida regalis*	Larkspur
32	*Convallaria majalis*	Lily-of-the-valley
33	*Cymbidium* species	Cymbidium Orchid
34	*Dahlia* species	Dahlia hybrids
35	*Daucus carota*	Queen Anne's Lace
36	*Delphinium* species	Delphinium
37,38	*Dendranthema grandiflora*	Spray & Standard Chrysanthemum
39	*Dendrobium* species	Dendrobium Orchid
40,41	*Dianthus caryophyllus*	Mini- (Spray) & Standard Carnation
42	*Diosma* species	Diosma
43	*Eremurus* species	Desert Candle, Foxtail Lily
44	*Eustoma grandiflora*	Lisianthus
45	*Forsythia* x *intermedia*	Forsythia
46	*Freesia* x *hybrida*	Freesia
47	*Gardenia grandiflora*	Gardenia
48	*Gerbera jamesonii*	Gerbera Daisy
49	*Gladiolus* x *hortulanus*	Gladiolus, Glad
50	*Gloriosa rothschildiana*	Gloriosa Lily
51	*Gypsophila paniculata*	Baby's Breath
52	*Helianthus annuus*	Sunflower
53	*Heliconia caribaea*	Heliconia
54	*Heliconia psittacorum*	Sassy Heliconia
55	*Heliconia stricta*	Dwarf Jamaican Heliconia
56	*Hippeastrum* species	Amaryllis
57	*Hyacinthus orientalis*	Hyacinth
58	*Iris hollandica*	Dutch Iris
59	*Lathyrus odoratus*	Sweet Pea
60	*Leptospermum scoparium*	Leptospermum
61	*Leucanthemum* x *superbum*	Killian Daisy, Majestic Daisy
62	*Leucanthemum vulgare*	Marguerite Daisy
63	*Liatris spicata*	Liatris
64	*Lilium longiflorum*	Easter Lily
65	*Lilium* species	Hybrid Lilies
66	*Limonium bellidifolium*	Caspia
67	*Limonium incanum*	Seafoam Statice
68	*Limonium latifolium*	German Statice
69	*Limonium sinuatum*	Annual Statice
70	*Matthiola incana*	Stock
71	*Molucella laevis*	Bells of Ireland
72	*Narcissus* species	Daffodil, Jonquil
73	*Narcissus tazetta*	Paper-white Narcissus
74	*Nerine bowdenii*	Nerine Lily, Guernsey Lily
75	*Oncidium* species	Oncidium Orchid
76	*Ornithogalum arabicum*	Star-of-Bethlehem
77	*Ornithogalum thyrsoides*	Star-of-Bethlehem, Chincherinchee
78	*Paphiopedilum* species	Lady Slipper Orchid
79	*Phalaenopsis* species	Phalaenopsis Orchid, Moth Orchid
80	*Prunus persica*	Peach blossom
81	*Ranunculus asiaticus*	Ranunculus
82,83	*Rosa hybrida*	Rose, Spray Rose
84	*Salix* species	Pussy Willow
85	*Scabiosa caucasica*	Pincushion Flower, Mourning Bride
86	*Sedum spectabile*	Stonecrop
87	X *Solidaster luteus*	Solidaster
88	*Stephanotis floribunda*	Stephanotis
89	*Strelitzia reginae*	Bird-of-Paradise
90	*Syringa vulgaris*	Lilac
91	*Tanacetum parthenium*	Feverfew, Matricaria
92	*Tapeinochilus ananassae*	Indonesian Wax Ginger
93	*Triteleia laxa*	Brodiaea
94	*Tulipa* species	Tulip
95	*Vaccaria hispanica*	Saponaria
96	*Veronica spicata*	Veronica, Speedwell
97	*Zantedeschia aethiopica*	Calla Lily

INDEX OF COMMON NAMES - CUT FLOWERS

Acacia 1
Allium, Drumstick 7
Alstroemeria 10
Amaryllis 56
Anemone 13
Anthurium 15
Aster, Annual 23
Astilbe 19
Baby's Breath 51
Bachelor's Button 28
Banksia 20
Bells of Ireland 71
Bird-of-paradise 89
Bishop's Weed 11
Bouvardia 21
Brodiaea 93
Butterfly Weed 17
Calathea, Honeycomb 22
Carnation 40-41
Caspia 66
Celosia 27
Chincherinchee 77
Chrysanthemum 37-38
Cockscomb 27
Cornflower 28
Daffodil 72
Dahlia hybrids 34
Daisy, Killian 61
Daisy, Majestic 61
Daisy, Marguerite 62
Delphinium 36
Desert Candle 43
Diosma 42
Feverfew 91
Forsythia 45
Freesia 46
Gardenia 47
Gerbera Daisy 48
Ginger 9
Ginger, Indonesian Wax 92
Gladiolus (Glad) 49
Heather 24
Heliconia 53
Heliconia, Dwarf Jamaican 55
Heliconia, Sassy 54
Hyacinth 57
Iris, Dutch 58
Jonquil 72
Kangaroo Paw 14
Lady's Mantle 5
Larkspur 31
Leptospermum 60
Liatris 63
Lilac 90
Lily hybrids 65
Lily, African 4
Lily, Calla 97
Lily, Easter 64
Lily, Foxtail 43
Lily, Gloriosa 50
Lily, Guernsey 74
Lily, Nerine 74
Lily, Peruvian 10
Lily-of-the-Nile 4
Lily-of-the-valley 32
Lisianthus 44
Matricaria 91
Mimosa 1
Monkshood 3
Monte Casino 18
Mourning Bride 85
Mum 37-38
Narcissus, Paper-white 73
Onion, Flowering 8
Onion, Giant 6
Orchid, Cattleya 26
Orchid, Cymbidium 33
Orchid, Dendrobium 39
Orchid, Lady Slipper 78
Orchid, Moth 79
Orchid, Oncidium 75
Orchid, Phalaenopsis 79
Peach blossom 80
Pincushion Flower 85
Pineapple, Ornamental 12
Pussy Willow 84
Queen Anne's Lace 35
Quince 29
Ranunculus 81
Rose 82-83
Safflower 25
Saponaria 95
September Flower 18
Snapdragon 16
Solidaster 87
Speedwell 96
Star-of-Bethlehem 76-77
Statice, Annual 69
Statice, German 68
Statice, Seafoam 67
Stephanotis 88
Stock 70
Stonecrop 86
Sunflower 52
Sweet Pea 59
Tulip 94
Veronica 96
Wax Flower 30
Yarrow 2

Abies alba 97

SILVER FIR

Family Pinaceae

Description: Soft, 1-inch-long needles similar to noble fir but with a distinct silver color on underside.

Origin: Central and southern Europe

Bunching unit: Boughs and tips in bales or cases by weight.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Choice Christmas green. Turn some pieces over to feature silvery underside.

Abies balsamea 98

BALSAM FIR

Family Pinaceae

Description: Needles less than 1 inch long, arranged in two lateral sets with V-shaped parting between. Top of needle dark green, underside with two gray bands.

Origin: Northern North America

Bunching unit: Bunch or case by weight

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Christmas green that is soft and has good needle retention. Cut stems have pleasant, woodsy, balsam fragrance.

Abies procera 99

NOBLE FIR

Family Pinaceae

Description: Soft needles about 1 inch long, very full on the branches. Bluish green color.

Origin: Western United States

Bunching unit: Boughs and tips in bales or cases by weight.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Choice Christmas green. Holds needles well. Has a full, rich appearance.

Asparagus asparagoides 100

SMILAX

Family Liliaceae

Description: Delicate, branching vine usually grown up a string to form a garland. Individual leaves (cladophylls) 1-2 inches long. Vine may have small, inconspicuous, very fragrant flowers.

Origin: South Africa

Bunching unit: Sold in bag or by the foot.

Special handling requirement: Very perishable; should be kept in plastic bag in the cooler.

Use: Highly prized as garland for wedding decorations – encircling cakes and punch bowls, spiralling around columns, or festooning tables and archways. Cannot be exposed to room conditions for very long without water source.

Asparagus densiflorus 'Myers' **101**
MYERS ASPARAGUS FERN
Family Liliaceae

Description: Stiff or gently arching plumes with short, dense branches. Individual needle-like cladophylls less than 1/2 inch long.

Origin: South Africa

Bunching unit: 10 per bunch. Plumes 8–16 inches long and 2–2 1/2 inches wide.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.

Use: Plumes make an interesting line material with fine texture. Use sparingly and feature unusual form.

Asparagus densiflorus 'Sprengeri' **102**
SPRENGERI
Family Liliaceae

Description: Long arching stems with soft needle-like cladophylls. Stems may be spiny. Length ranges from 6 inches to 3 feet.

Origin: South Africa

Bunching unit: Sold by the bunch of various sizes and lengths. Potted plants may be purchased and cut.

Special handling requirement: Can be kept moist in plastic bag or box for a couple of weeks. Also stores well with cut ends in water in the cooler, but eventually cladophylls begin to shed.

Use: Excellent foliage to add to arrangement because of its texture and graceful, arching stems. Gives fresh, springtime appearance to designs. Widely used in wedding bouquets and decorations. Cascades beautifully from pedestal and hanging arrangements and over balustrades.

Asparagus macowanii **103**
MING FERN
Family Liliaceae

Description: Tufts of soft needle-like foliage on thin but sturdy branches. Individual "needles" about 1/2 inch long. Stems have thorns.

Origin: South Africa

Bunching unit: Bunches of stems about 1 foot long of various sizes.

Special handling requirement: Long-lasting if stems are kept in the cooler in water. Small pieces can be kept in plastic bag.

Use: Branches may be pruned to give a stylized look in a design. Should not be crowded or used too heavily. Useful to simulate pine in Christmas arrangements. Tufts are suitable for corsage work and hold up well.

Asparagus setaceus **104**
PLUMOSUS
Family Liliaceae

Description: Long, fine, fern-like branches from plant with climbing habit. Stems wiry and sometimes with spines.

Origin: South Africa

Bunching unit: Bunch of several stems from 1 to 2 feet in length.

Special handling requirement: Store in water in the cooler. Needle-like cladophylls shed readily with age.

Use: Adds a very fine, delicate texture to arrangements or wedding bouquets. Vining pieces cascade gracefully from containers or bouquets.

Asparagus virgatus 105

TREE FERN, TIKI

Family Liliaceae

Description: Fine, fern-like plant on upright, much-branched stem.

Origin: South Africa

Bunching unit: Bunch of stems from 1 to 2 feet tall.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.

Use: Adds a very fine texture to arrangements. May be used in a bunch to simulate a tree.

Buxus sempervirens variegata 107

OREGONIA

Family Buxaceae

Description: Woody evergreen with small, elliptic leaves that are glossy green with a broad, cream-colored border.

Origin: North Africa and Asia Minor

Bunching unit: Bunches with stems 1-2 feet in length.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Christmas green with interesting variegated foliage. Useful as a line material in arrangements.

Buxus sempervirens 106

BOXWOOD

Family Buxaceae

Description: Dense, multi-branched evergreen with small, shiny green leaves from 1/2 to 1 inch in length. Leaf undersides often yellowish green.

Origin: Mediterranean region and Asia

Bunching unit: By the bunch or by weight in box or bale.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Dries out easily and becomes dull with curled leaves.

Use: Prized Christmas green, but useful at other times of year when available. Does not drop leaves even when drying out. Typical of Williamsburg Christmas decorations.

Calathea sp. 108

CALATHEA

Family Marantaceae

Description: Oval leaves with attractive markings, usually 4-8 inches long and 2-4 inches wide. Petiole usually 3-5 inches long.

Origin: Tropical America

Bunching unit: Commonly in bunches of 10.

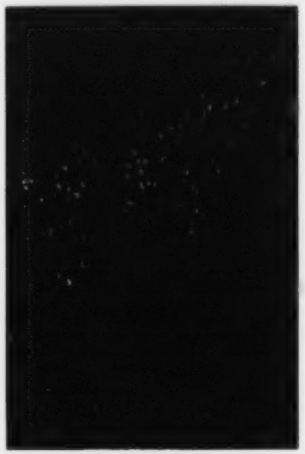
Special handling requirement: Keep moist between layers of paper in plastic bag. To prevent chilling injury, avoid temperatures that approach freezing.

Use: Attractive, exotic markings should be featured but not overused. Excellent foliage to group low in an arrangement as permitted by petiole length. May be used in wedding bouquets.

Calocedrus decurrens **109**

INCENSE CEDAR

Family Cupressaceae



Description: Short, flattened branches with scale-like leaves. Often yellowish green with clusters of tiny cones.

Origin: Western United States

Bunching unit: Bunches or cases by weight

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Specialty green used at Christmas for its interesting textural and color quality. Small cones are an added attraction.

Camellia japonica **110**

CAMELLIA

Family Theaceae

Description: Dark green glossy, elliptical leaves on woody stems. Leaf margins finely toothed.

Origin: Japan, China, Korea

Bunching unit: By the bunch with stems 1-2 feet long or individual leaves in plastic bags (usually 25 per bag).

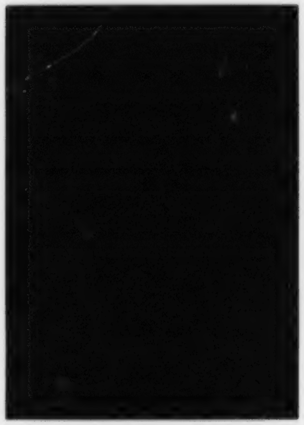
Special handling requirement: Keep cut stems in water in the cooler.

Use: Individual leaves used in corsages and wedding bouquets. Branches with leaves can be used for arrangements but usually require considerable pruning.

Celastrus scandens **111**

BITTERSWEET

Family Celastraceae



Description: Twisting vine with bunches of bright orange berries, revealed when fruit dehisces (bursts open).

Origin: Eastern United States

Bunching unit: Variable bunches of short fruited stems or long twisted sections of vine.

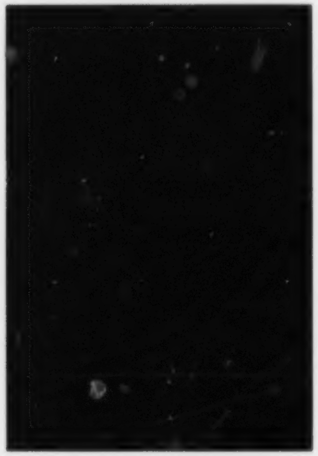
Special handling requirement: Stays fresh if kept cool and moist. Can be dried, retaining its color, but will shrivel somewhat and lose luster.

Use: Beautiful accent for autumn arrangements and wreaths. Makes a statement when used by itself in a vase or hanging. Useful dried for its bright, natural color.

Chamaecyparis lawsoniana **112**

PORT ORFORD CEDAR

Family Cupressaceae



Description: Frond-like branches about 1 foot long. Flat with scale-like leaves.

Origin: Northwestern United States

Bunching unit: Bunch usually containing 10 branches of uniform size.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Valued Christmas green. Useful in creating a mound of foliage for a large arrangement. May be cut apart for smaller designs.

Chamaedorea sp. 113

EMERALD, COMMODORE, JADE

Family Palmae

Description: Pinnate fronds with long flexible pinnae arising from midrib. Whole leaf 1-2 feet long. Fronds with narrow pinnae - 'Emerald'; fronds with wide pinnae - 'Jade'.

Origin: Mexico and Central America

Bunching unit: 25 leaves per bunch

Special handling requirement: Keep in cooler in plastic container. Avoid prolonged storage in moist, rot-producing conditions. Holds up for a day or two out of water at room temperature.

Use: Leaves are used to create a large layered mound for wedding and stage decorations. Individual leaves placed in palm bucket simulate a living plant. Used frequently in churches during Easter season.

Cocculus laurifolius 114

COCCULUS

Family Menispermaceae

Description: Leathery, shiny, dark green leaves 3-5 inches in length with three prominent veins arising from base.

Origin: Japan and China

Bunching unit: Bunch of several stems about 2 feet in length

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.

Use: Rich foliage for larger arrangements. Individual leaves used in wedding bouquets.

Codiaeum variegatum pictum 115

CROTON

Family Euphorbiaceae

Description: Colorful leathery leaves usually 4-8 inches long with much red and yellow pigmentation. Short, fleshy petiole.

Origin: Tropical and subtropical areas of both hemispheres

Bunching unit: 10 leaves per bunch

Special handling requirement: Keep on moist paper in plastic bag. To prevent chilling injury, avoid prolonged storage at cold temperatures.

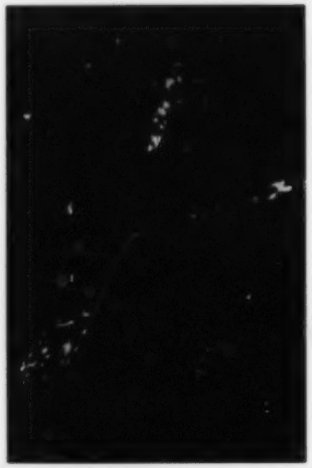
Use: Useful near the base of a design to give a tropical look. Use limited by short petiole. Sometimes used in wedding bouquets.

Codiaeum variegatum pictum 116

'Punctatum Aureum'

GOLD DUST CROTON

Family Euphorbiaceae



Description: Small, greenish, elliptical leaves spotted with yellow.

Origin: Tropical and subtropical areas of both hemispheres

Bunching unit: 10 leaves per bunch or as a potted foliage plant

Special handling requirement: Keep on moist paper in plastic bag. To prevent chilling injury, avoid prolonged storage at cold temperatures.

Use: Exotic foliage with tropical look. Used with yellow flowers to give unity to the design. May be cut from foliage plants and used on the stem when more height is needed.

117

Cordyline terminalis
TI LEAF

Family Agavaceae

Description: Leaves usually large, 1-2 feet long and 3-4 inches wide, tropical-looking and leathery. Larger leaves flexible; small leaves, 3-5 inches long, stiff. Leaf color may be deep green or pinkish red. Some forms have rose-colored margins.

Origin: India, Australia, and other tropical areas

Bunching unit: 10 leaves per bunch

Special handling requirement: Store in plastic bag in cooler. To prevent chilling injury, avoid low, near-freezing temperatures.

Use: Bold, tropical look. Leaves may be split, trimmed, or rolled into loops. Loops may be grouped to form foliage ribbon. Individual leaves limited in use by short petioles. Smaller leaves clustered on cane-like stem can be used in a vegetative design.

118

Cycas revoluta
SAGO PALM

Family Cycadaceae

Description: Stiff, palm-like leaf usually 6-12 inches long.

Origin: Japan

Bunching unit: Bunches of 5 or 10 leaves

Special handling requirement: Durable and long-lasting. Available dried.

Use: Use sparingly to accentuate the form and appearance of a tropical palm. Dried leaves, air brushed with paint, can be placed creatively in contemporary designs.

119

Cyperus alternifolius
UMBRELLA PLANT

Family Cyperaceae

Description: Umbrella of leaf-like bracts radiates out from common point at the end of a 6- to 36-inch-long leafless stem. Individual bracts may be 1/2 inch wide and 4-6 inches long. Found in large and smaller types.

Origin: Madagascar and throughout tropics and subtropics.

Bunching unit: Individually or in bunches of 5 or 10.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in or out of cooler. Store smaller types in plastic bag in cooler.

Use: Used high in arrangements where dramatic, unusual form shows well. Often used in grouping of two, one slightly higher than the other. Suggests water garden look, because of its natural, tropical, aquatic habitat.

120

Cytisus scoparius
SCOTCH BROOM

Family Leguminosae

Description: Long, narrow, linear branches without leaves. Broom-like in appearance.

Origin: Europe

Bunching unit: Bunches with stems 3-4 feet long and 3 inches across at base of bundle.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.

Use: Interesting line material. May be bent to form a gently curving line. Branches may need to be pruned to desired thickness.

Dracaena sanderana 121

RIBBON PLANT

Family Agavaceae

Description: Leathery leaves 6-8 inches long and about 1 inch wide with broad, creamy white, marginal stripes. Often used as indoor foliage plant.

Origin: Cameroun, Africa

Bunching unit: 10 leaves per bunch or as potted plant

Special handling requirement: Store in plastic bag between layers of paper.

Use: Leaves are valuable for the distinctive cream-colored stripes. Use sparingly to avoid busy look. Usually grouped and layered near base of an arrangement. Good size for wedding bouquets.

Equisetum hyemale 122

HORSETAIL, SCOURING RUSH

Family Equisetaceae

Description: Long, round, hollow, leafless stems up to 4 feet long and 1/4 to 1/2 inch wide with furrowed ridges running the length of stem segments. Silica in ridges gives surface rough quality. Plant was used to scour pots.

Origin: Widely distributed worldwide in wet places.

Bunching unit: 10 stems per bunch

Special handling requirement: None. Very long-lasting.

Use: Excellent for tall, thin lines. May be bent into interesting angular shapes. Because of its aquatic habitat, horsetail can be used to give a naturalized aquatic feeling.

Eucalyptus pulverulenta 123

EUCALYPTUS

Family Myrtaceae

Description: Linear branches of silvery gray leaves. Opposite leaves form plate-like circle around stem. Side branches may come out from main branch. Pungent aroma when cut.

Origin: Australia

Bunching unit: Bunches with stems 1 to 3 feet long

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in cooler.

Use: Useful line material. Can be bent into gentle curve because of leathery consistency. Lower leaves should be stripped off before stem is inserted into floral foam. Longer pieces may need to be staked to avoid turning in the foam. BABY EUCALYPTUS is smaller-leaved form.

Euonymus japonica 124

EUONYMUS

Family Celastraceae

Description: Small glossy green leaves about 1/2-1 inch long and slightly serrate. Opposite leaf arrangement on upright woody stem.

Origin: Japan and Asia

Bunching unit: Bunch with branches 1 to 2 feet long.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in cooler.

Use: Good line material. Branches may be cut and smaller pieces used as filler.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Euonymus japonica aureovariegata **125**

VARIEGATED EUONYMUS

Family Celastraceae

Description: Glossy green leaves about 1/2-1 inch long and slightly serrate with a golden blotch in center. Opposite leaf arrangement on upright woody stems.

Origin: Japan and Asia

Bunching unit: Bunch with branches 1 to 2 feet long.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in cooler.

Use: Good line material. Golden variegation adds special interest. Pleasing when used with yellow or gold-colored flowers.

Galax urceolata **126**

GALAX

Family Diapensiaceae

Description: Round to heart-shaped, glossy, leathery leaves 3-4 inches across. May be green or purplish bronze in the fall. Leaf edges finely serrate. Thin petiole 3-4 inches long, often with roots attached at thickened end.

Origin: Southeastern United States

Bunching unit: Usually bunches of 25

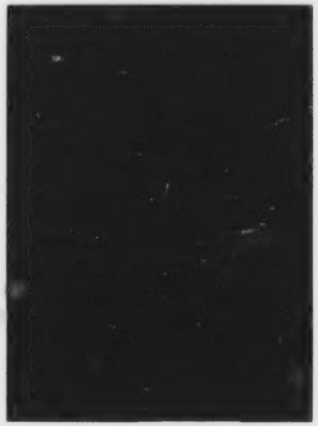
Special handling requirement: Store in cooler in plastic bag or submerged in water. To preserve in leathery condition, submerge leaves in 1:3 solution of glycerin and water for a couple of weeks.

Use: Excellent for terracing near base of an arrangement. Good contrast with finer foliages. Useful in wedding bouquets.

Gaultheria shallon **127**

SALAL, LEMON-LEAF

Family Ericaceae



Description: Large leathery, alternate leaves up to 4 inches long attached to narrow woody stems that arch gently.

Origin: Western United States

Bunching unit: Flat bunches of stems about 2 feet long

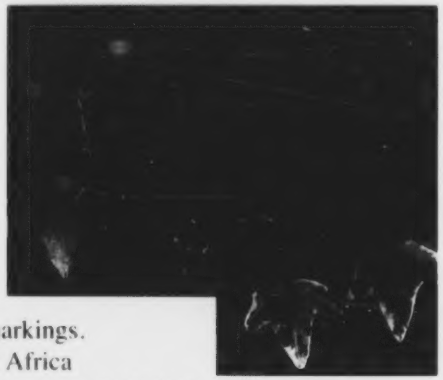
Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. May be stored in plastic bags or with cut ends in water.

Use: Long-lasting green widely used in large arrangements. Individual leaves are used in wedding bouquets. Leaves last a couple of days out of water.

Hedera helix **128**

ENGLISH IVY

Family Araliaceae



Description: Vining plant with small palmately lobed leaves. Leaf shapes vary with cultivars. Leaves usually smaller and more tender near tip of vine. Variegated ivy has interesting white or cream-colored markings.

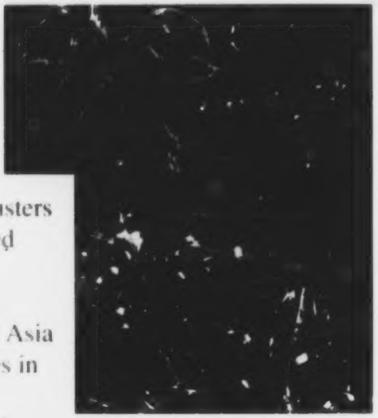
Origin: Europe, Asia, northern Africa

Bunching unit: Small bunches or as a potted plant

Special handling requirement: Submerge in cold water after cutting to harden. Store in plastic bags with moisture. Spray with sealant or dip in glue-water mixture to prevent drooping of young growth.

Use: Graceful cascading green used in raised arrangements. Tips of vine beautiful in wedding bouquets. Individual leaves used in corsages.

Ilex aquifolium 129



ENGLISH HOLLY
Family Aquifoliaceae

Description: Dark, lustrous green leaves with undulating spiny margins. Leaves 1-3 inches long and 1-2 inches wide. Sometimes clusters of red berries along stem. Variegated English holly has yellowish cream margins, very showy.

Origin: Europe, northern Africa, and Asia

Bunching unit: Pieces of various sizes in 5- or 10-pound cases

Special handling requirement: Store in plastic bags in cooler, as holly dries out easily.

Use: Choice, traditional Christmas green valued for glossy texture and red berries. In warm room, fresh appearance quickly lost when not in water.

Ilex verticillata 130

WINTERBERRY, DECIDUOUS HOLLY
Family Aquifoliaceae

Description: Slender woody stems, leafless in winter. Bear clusters of berry-like fruit - round, bright red, about 1/4 inch across.

Origin: Northern North America

Bunching unit: Bunches containing about 10 stems. Branches usually cut about 1 foot in length.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Keep in water to avoid berry drop, especially in warm room.

Use: Beautiful addition to Christmas arrangements.

Juniperus scopulorum 131

BLUE-BERRIED JUNIPER
Family Cupressaceae

Description: Sturdy and heavily branched from thick wood. Scale-like leaves. Sometimes numerous blue berries about 1/3 inch across.

Origin: Western United States

Bunching unit: In case by weight or by the bunch

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Christmas green with interesting texture. Blue berries add special interest. Foliage may be bluish green. Sometimes pruned and used as a line material.

Kalmia latifolia 132

MOUNTAIN LAUREL
Family Ericaceae

Description: Leathery leaves, 2 to 4 inches long, irregularly whorled around stem.

Origin: Eastern United States

Bunching unit: In box by weight

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Leaves dry out if kept at room temperature without water.

Use: Used for Christmas greens to make wreaths and roping. Mixes well with needled evergreens because of its size and leathery texture.

Ligustrum lucidum **133**
LIGUSTRUM
Family Oleaceae

Description: Large, shiny, leathery leaves, 3 to 5 inches long and pointed. Opposite on stem.
Origin: China and Korea
Bunching unit: Bunch with branches 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 feet long
Special handling requirement: Store in water in cooler.
Use: Rich dark green foliage used for larger arrangements. Individual leaves suitable for wedding bouquets.

Linum usitatissimum **134**
FLAX
Family Linaceae

Description: Long narrow leaves 1/2 to 1 inch wide and 1 1/2 to 3 feet long. Quite flexible when fresh. May be green or variegated.
Origin: Asia, and grown widely in temperate regions.
Bunching unit: Usually in bunches of 10
Special handling requirement: Keep in cooler either in or out of plastic bag.
Use: May be used for a bold line or bent into loops to make a foliage bow. Leaves can also be shredded with a knife to create a fine grass-like look.

Lycopodium obscurum **135**
GROUND PINE, PRINCESS PINE
Family Lycopodiaceae

Description: This clubmoss looks like a miniature, thickly branched pine tree with oversized erect cones. Branches about 10 inches high.
Origin: North America and Asia
Bunching unit: In boxes by weight
Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.
Use: As Christmas greens, used to make wreaths and roping. Interesting texture. Cone-like strobili are special attraction.

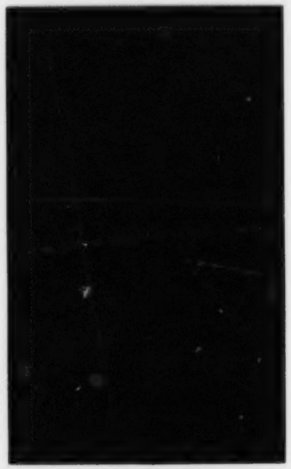
Lycopodium sp. **136**
LYCOPODIUM
Family Lycopodiaceae

Description: Upright stems and stiff forked side branches covered with scale-like leaves. Plant 12-24 inches tall, yellowish green in color.
Origin: North America, Europe, and Asia
Bunching unit: 10 stems per bunch
Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.
Use: Good, stiff line material when height and unusual texture are desired. Contrasts well with other foliage and has woodsy look. Allow unusual side branches to show.

Magnolia grandiflora 137

MAGNOLIA

Family Magnoliaceae



Description: Thick, leathery leaves, dark green and shiny above, rusty and velvety underneath. Up to 8 inches long.

Origin: Southeastern United States

Bunching unit: Some individual leaves are boxed or bunched in groups of 10. Also branches of various sizes are bunched.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Store branches in water in the cooler. Leaves preserved with glycerin are available.

Use: Large branches can be used for large arrangements to achieve a bold, refined, Old-South look. Individual leaves can be used at the base of an arrangement or as the backing for a fan-shaped design. Frequently used in Williamsburg arrangements.

Maranta leuconeura 138

PRAYER PLANT

Family Marantaceae

Description: Elliptic leaves 3 to 4 inches long. Green with blotches of darker coloration and silver-gray veins. Red-veined prayer plant, 'Kerchoviana', has red midrib and major veins.

Origin: Brazil

Bunching unit: Bunch of 10 leaves

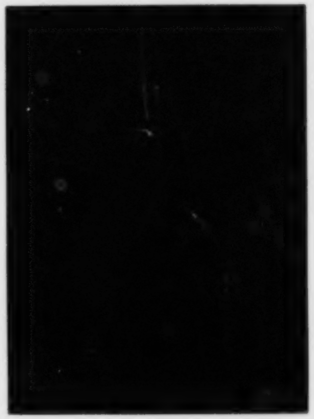
Special handling requirement: Store on paper in plastic bag in the cooler.

Use: Interesting foliage with a tropical look. Short petioles limit use to base of arrangement. Good choice for wedding bouquets. Use the red-veined cultivar sparingly to avoid a busy look.

Monstera deliciosa 139

SPLIT-LEAF PHILODENDRON

Family Araceae



Description: Large glossy leaves with perforations and irregular splits inward from the margin. Size from 6 inches to over 3 feet across.

Origin: Mexico and Central America

Bunching unit: Individually or in bunches of 5 or 10

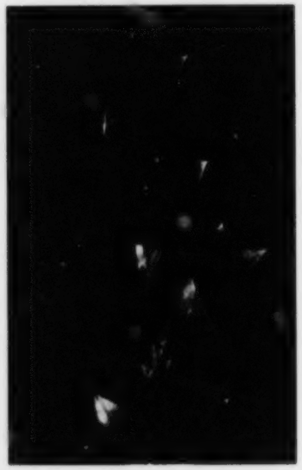
Special handling requirement: Keep in cooler in water or in plastic wrap.

Use: Large dramatic form used sparingly in contemporary design. Can also be used to suggest a more natural tropical look.

Myrtus communis 140

MYRTLE

Family Myrtaceae



Description: Straight woody stems, often branched. Shiny pointed leaves about 1 inch long.

Origin: Mediterranean region

Bunching unit: Bunches of various sized branches up to 3 feet long and about 2 inches across at base where tied.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler. Tender young foliage is first to brown or wilt.

Use: Establishes long slender lines, especially with side shoots trimmed off. Branches taper to clean-cut point with leaves of gradually decreasing size encircling the stem.

Myrtus communis 'Microphylla' 141

SMALL-LEAVED MYRTLE

Family Myrtaceae

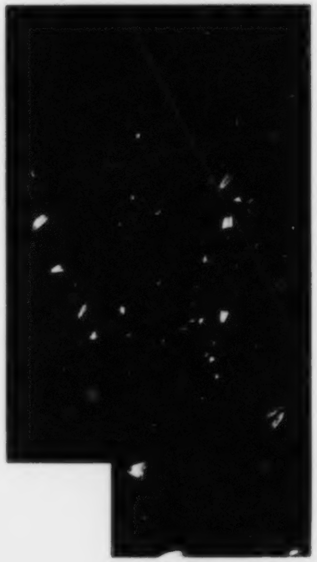
Description: Small-leaved and much-branched woody stem. Leaves less than 1/2 inch across.

Origin: Central Europe

Bunching unit: Bunches of various-sized branches about 1 foot long and 2 inches across at base where tied.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.

Use: Small dense leaves on branches add pleasing texture to a design. Pieces of branches quickly fill a design.



Nephrolepis exaltata 142

SWORD FERN

Family Polypodiaceae

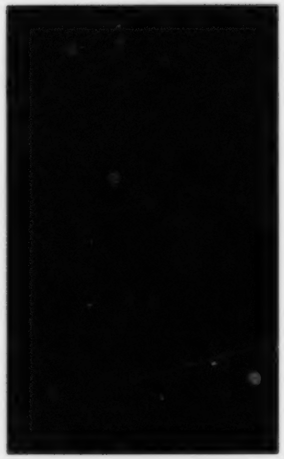
Description: Stiff fronds up to 12 inches in length

Origin: Tropics around the world

Bunching unit: Bunch of 25 fronds or growing in pots

Special handling requirement: Fronds dry out easily and curled tips result. Spray with clear sealant or dip in glue-water mixture to keep them rigid longer.

Use: Fronds are a good size for arrangements or wedding bouquets. Can be used to give fresh, natural feeling of the forest. Also in small amounts in high style designs for pleasing line and form.



Pandanus veitchii 143

SCREW PINE

Family Pandanaceae

Description: Finely serrate, long stiff leaves 2 or 3 feet in length and 3 inches wide. This species has longitudinal markings near leaf margin. Related species, *Pandanus tectorius* (Hala Screw Pine) has large green leaves.

Origin: Polynesia

Bunching unit: 5 or 10 leaves per bunch

Special handling requirement: Store in cooler.

Use: Creates a powerful vertical line. Combines well with other tropical material.

Picea glauca 144

WHITE SPRUCE

Family Pinaceae

Description: Evergreen with straight, rigid side branches. Needles short, 1/2 to 3/4 inch long, and stiff.

Origin: Northern North America

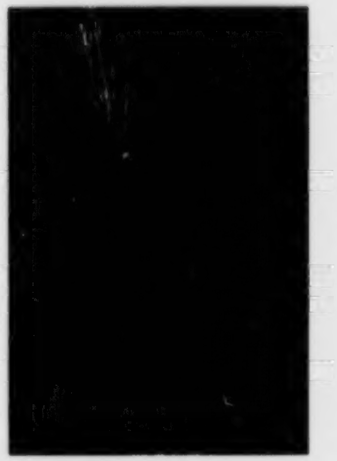
Bunching unit: Bunches of various sizes

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Needles drop quite readily in warm, dry conditions.

Use: Used in Christmas decorations, especially in outdoor situations where needle drop is less of a problem.

Pinus strobus **145**
WHITE PINE
Family Pinaceae

Description: Soft needles up to 5 inches in length, arranged in bundles of 5.
Origin: Eastern United States
Bunching unit: Boughs by the bunch, tips in bunches or crates
Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.
Use: Widely used Christmas green for arrangements, roping, and wreaths. Well pruned, it is used also as line material in arrangements. Usable throughout the year for woodsy look.



Pinus sylvestris **146**
SCOTCH PINE
Family Pinaceae

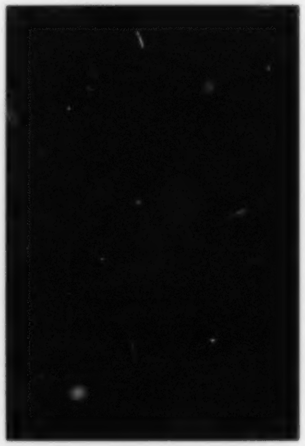
Description: Needles 2 to 3 inches long, slightly twisted; in bundles of two.
Origin: Europe and Asia
Bunching unit: Bundles of various sizes
Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.
Use: Christmas green with good needle retention. Tends to be more coarse than some other choices.

Pittosporum tobira **147**
PITTOSPORUM
Family Pittosporaceae

Description: Leaves 1 to 3 inches long, oval, leathery, and whorled around woody stem. Variegated pittosporum has white markings along leaf margins for added interest.
Origin: China and Japan
Bunching unit: Branches 1 to 1 1/2 feet long in bunches
Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler. Younger foliage is first to become limp. Leaves curl as they decline.
Use: Excellent green for filling arrangements because of whorled leaves and woody stems. Must be pruned if used as line material. Individual leaves good in corsages and wedding bouquets.

Podocarpus macrophyllus **148**
BUDDHIST PINE
Family Podocarpaceae

Description: Leaves narrow and linear, 2 to 4 inches long, dark green and glossy. Woody branches sometimes slightly curved.
Origin: Japan
Bunching unit: Bunches of various sizes often 1 to 2 feet long.
Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.
Use: Interesting foliage that holds up well, but not frequently seen. Curved pieces of stem and "weeping" branches are a special challenge to designers.



Polypodium glycyrrhiza 149

OREGON FLAT FERN

Family Polypodiaceae

Description: Serrate pinnae mostly linear, spreading slightly at base. Fronds up to 18 inches long and 6 inches wide. Entire frond is flat as if it had been pressed; stacks easily in bundles.

Origin: Northwestern United States and Canada

Bunching unit: 25 fronds per bunch

Special handling requirement: Keep bundles moist in plastic wrap in cooler. Fronds dry out easily; results are curling of frond tip and individual pinnae.

Use: Useful in creating layered circular designs; also used by themselves or enhanced with flowers. Good for large designs such as those on a stage or in a church. Fronds create woodsy look at the base of flowering branches.

Rumohra adiantiformis 151

LEATHERLEAF FERN, BAKER'S FERN

Family Polypodiaceae

Description: Flat, broadly triangular fronds, often 3-4 pinnate at base. Pinnae coarsely toothed. Entire frond 1-2 feet long, often arching slightly backward at tip.

Origin: Southern hemisphere

Bunching unit: 25 fronds per bunch in cases of 20 or 40 bunches.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Store in plastic wrap or with cut ends in water.

Use: Commonly used to cover mechanics and create layered look. Smaller pieces used in corsages and wedding bouquets.

Pseudotsuga menziesii 150

DOUGLASFIR

Family Pinaceae

Description: Needles soft, 1 to 1 1/2 inches long, dark green above with two white bands below.

Origin: Western United States

Bunching unit: Bunch or case by weight

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Good Christmas green because it is soft and holds needles well.

Ruscus hypoglossum 152

RUSCUS

Family Liliaceae

Description: Straight, sturdy stems, commonly cut 1 foot long. Dark green, leathery leaves 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 inches long and 1 inch wide. Apex of leaf pointed.

Origin: Mediterranean region

Bunching unit: Usually 10 stems per bunch

Special handling requirement: Store for long periods in cooler. May be preserved with glycerin.

Use: Long-lasting, distinctive foliage with leathery texture. Useful for a straight line with large, regularly spaced leaves. Glycerinized foliage may be rich brown, good for dried arrangements. ***Ruscus aculeatus,*** related species, is grown outdoors in southern U.S. Dried and artificially colored, it makes a durable winter decoration.

Ruscus hypoglossum 153

ITALIAN RUSCUS

Family Liliaceae

Description: Small, dark green, leathery leaves about 1 inch long and 1/2 inch wide on arching stems that are commonly 1 to 2 feet long. Stems thin, multi-branching but sturdy.

Origin: Mediterranean region

Bunching unit: Bunches variable, but usually 6-10 stems per bunch

Special handling requirement: Store for long periods in cooler.

Use: Very durable foliage with delicate texture. Resembles smilax. Can be used cascading from wedding bouquets, in corsages, or in arrangements to form gently arching line.

Salix caprea 154

PUSSY WILLOW

Family Salicaceae

Description: Straight, narrow branches with soft, silky gray catkins spaced along their length.

Origin: Europe and northern Asia

Bunching unit: 10 stems per bunch

Special handling requirement: Keep in the cooler. In warmer temperatures, stamens will emerge and then leaves develop. 'Pussy' dries out nicely when left out of water.

Use: Excellent line material in spring arrangements.

Salix matsudana 'Tortuosa' 155

CURLY WILLOW

Family Salicaceae

Description: Branches spirally twisted. Desirable when small, slightly twisted leaves start to emerge.

Origin: China and Korea

Bunching unit: Bunches about 2 to 5 feet long

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler. Small leaves can be forced out at warmer temperatures. Can be dried and used for its contorted and twisted branches.

Use: Interesting line material with much visual motion. Strong suggestion of spring when used with small leaves.

Sarracenia leucophylla 156

PITCHER PLANT

Family Sarraceniaceae

Description: Leaves tubular with wing on one side of the top that looks like a lid. White markings on "pitcher" are veined with maroon veins. Leaves 8 to 18 inches long.

Origin: Southeastern United States

Bunching unit: 5 or 10 per bunch.

Special handling requirement: Keep in water in the cooler.

Use: A curiosity because of its unusual shape. This carnivorous plant grows in moist, swampy places. Use sparingly with lots of space surrounding it to feature the interesting form.

Thuja occidentalis **157**

CEDAR, ARBORVITAE

Family Cupressaceae

Description: Flat, compressed branches with scale-like leaves. Often yellowish green in winter.

Origin: North America and east Asia

Bunching unit: Bundles of various sizes

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Can be used in Christmas arrangements where its layered branches provide depth and fill in well. Scaly texture is good contrast with needled evergreens. Used other times of year as filler in arrangements and even as mechanics to hold flowers in place.

Tsuga canadensis **158**

HEMLOCK

Family Pinaceae

Description: Slender stems with small, flat leaves usually less than 1/2 inch long. Leaves lustrous dark green above and whitish underneath.

Origin: Northern North America

Bunching unit: Bunch or case by weight

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist. Needles drop quickly when branch is out of water.

Use: Soft texture and delicate, arching branches make it easy to use for roping, swags, or grave blankets at Christmas. Indoor use limited because of poor needle retention.

Ulex europaeus **159**

GORSE

Family Leguminosae

Description: Linear woody branches with scale-like leaves. Branches usually 1 to 2 feet long.

Origin: Western Europe

Bunching unit: Bunches consist of various-sized pieces averaging about 2 inches across at base where tied.

Special handling requirement: Keep in the cooler with cut ends in water. Tightly bunched material may mold in time. Tips of branches, which are not woody, are first to become limp.

Use: Good line material with interesting scaly texture. Creates good botanical look when combined with mosses and lichens.

Vaccinium ovatum **160**

HUCKLEBERRY

Family Ericaceae

Description: Deep purple stem pieces, rather flat but much branched. Small, oval, leathery leaves about 1 inch long.

Origin: Western United States and Canada

Bunching unit: Bunch has 10-15 stems secured firmly at base with wire.

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist in plastic bag or box. Cut stems can be placed in water. Leaves drop if stems are stored too long.

Use: Widely used as green in arrangements because of glossy texture and good keeping quality. Frequent angular branching presents a challenge to the designer.

Vaccinium parvifolium 161

RED HUCKLEBERRY

Family Ericaceae

Description: Upright, branched, red stems with small reddish, oblong leaves surrounding them. Leaves about 1/2 inch long and leathery.

Origin: Western United States and Canada

Bunching unit: Bunch with pieces 1 to 3 feet long

Special handling requirement: Keep cool and moist.

Use: Adds interesting color to designs as well as leathery texture. Because it is more upright than green huckleberry, it makes better line material.

Xerophyllum tenax 162

BEARGRASS

Family Liliaceae

Description: Long, narrow, flexible leaves usually 1 foot long, but may be as long as 4 feet.

Origin: Northwestern United States and Canada

Bunching unit: Bunches commonly 1 inch in diameter at base of bundle where they are tightly secured.

Special handling requirement: Store for several weeks in the cooler. Can be air dried, but becomes brittle and dull.

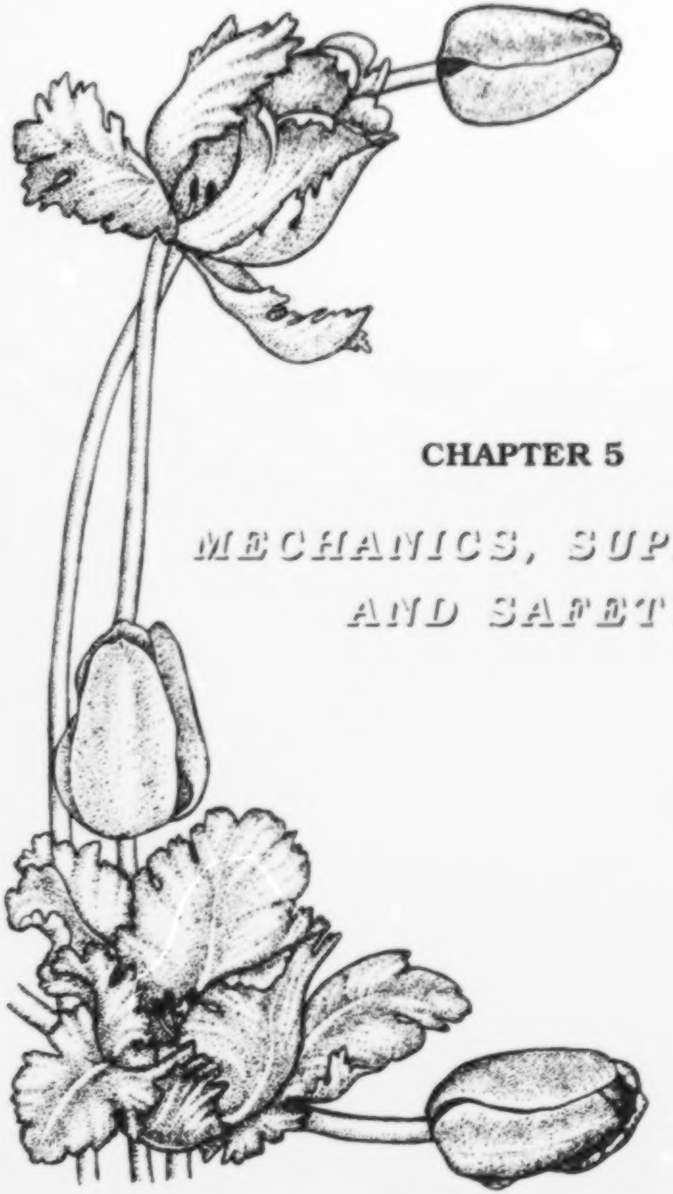
Use: Used in bundles to give flowing, natural look to arrangements. Steel pick or wooden stake at base of bunch makes insertion easier. Pieces of flexible leaves can be bent into loops and secured with wire for arrangements and corsages. Also dried and used in permanent arrangements.

INDEX OF COMMON NAMES - FOLIAGE

Arborvitae 157
Asparagus Fern, Myers 101
Baker's Fern 151
Beargrass 162
Bittersweet 111
Boxwood 106
Buddhist Pine 148
Calathea 108
Camellia 110
Cedar 157
Cedar, Incense 109
Cedar, Port Orford 112
Cocculus 114
Commodore 113
Croton 115
Croton, Gold Dust 116
Douglasfir 150
Emerald 113
Eucalyptus 123
Euonymus 124
Euonymus, Variegated 125
Fir, Balsam 98
Fir, Noble 99
Fir, Silver 97
Flax 134
Galax 126
Gorse 159
Ground Pine 135
Hemlock 158
Holly, Deciduous 130
Holly, English 129
Horsetail 122
Huckleberry 160
Huckleberry, Red 161
Ivy, English 128
Jade 113
Juniper, Blue-berried 131
Leatherleaf Fern 151
Lemon-leaf 127
Ligustrum 133
Lycopodium 136
Magnolia 137
Ming Fern 103
Mountain Laurel 132
Myrtle 140
Myrtle, Small-leaved 141
Oregon Flat Fern 149
Oregonia 107
Philodendron, Split-leaf 139
Pine, Scotch 146
Pine, White 145
Pitcher Plant 156
Pittosporum 147
Plumosus 104
Prayer Plant 138
Princess Pine 135
Ribbon Plant 121
Ruscus 152
Ruscus, Italian 153
Sago Palm 118
Salal 127
Scotch Broom 120
Scouring Rush 122
Screw Pine 143
Smilax 100
Sprengeri 102
Spruce, White 144
Sword Fern 142
Ti Leaf 117
Tiki 105
Tree Fern 105
Umbrella Plant 119
Willow, Curly 155
Willow, Pussy 154
Winterberry 130

INDEX OF SCIENTIFIC NAMES - FOLIAGE

97	*Abies alba*	Silver Fir
98	*Abies balsamea*	Balsam Fir
99	*Abies procera*	Noble Fir
100	*Asparagus asparagoides*	Smilax
101	*Asparagus densiflorus* 'Myers'	Myers Asparagus Fern
102	*Asparagus densiflorus* 'Sprengeri'	Sprengeri
103	*Asparagus macowanii*	Ming Fern
104	*Asparagus setaceus*	Plumosus
105	*Asparagus virgatus*	Tree Fern, Tiki
106	*Buxus sempervirens*	Boxwood
107	*Buxus sempervirens variegata*	Oregonia
108	*Calathea* species	Calathea
109	*Calocedrus decurrens*	Incense Cedar
110	*Camellia japonica*	Camellia
111	*Celastrus scandens*	Bittersweet
112	*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*	Port Orford Cedar
113	*Chamaedorea* species	Emerald, Commodore, Jade
114	*Cocculus laurifolius*	Cocculus
115	*Codiaeum variegatum pictum*	Croton
116	*Codiaeum variegatum pictum* 'Punctatum Aureum'	Gold Dust Croton
117	*Cordyline terminalis*	Ti Leaf
118	*Cycas revoluta*	Sago Palm
119	*Cyperus alternifolius*	Umbrella Plant
120	*Cytisus scoparius*	Scotch Broom
121	*Dracaena sanderana*	Ribbon Plant
122	*Equisetum hyemale*	Horsetail, Scouring Rush
123	*Eucalyptus pulverulenta*	Eucalyptus
124	*Euonymus japonica*	Euonymus
125	*Euonymus japonica aureovariegata*	Variegated Euonymus
126	*Galax urceolata*	Galax
127	*Gaultheria shallon*	Salal, Lemon-leaf
128	*Hedera helix*	English Ivy
129	*Ilex aquifolium*	English Holly
130	*Ilex verticillata*	Winterberry, Deciduous Holly
131	*Juniperus scopulorum*	Blue-berried Juniper
132	*Kalmia latifolia*	Mountain Laurel
133	*Ligustrum lucidum*	Ligustrum
134	*Linum usitatissimum*	Flax
135	*Lycopodium obscurum*	Ground Pine, Princess Pine
136	*Lycopodium* species	Lycopodium
137	*Magnolia grandiflora*	Magnolia
138	*Maranta leuconeura*	Prayer Plant
139	*Monstera deliciosa*	Split-leaf Philodendron
140	*Myrtus communis*	Myrtle
141	*Myrtus communis* 'Microphylla'	Small-leaved Myrtle
142	*Nephrolepis exaltata*	Sword Fern
143	*Pandanus veitchii*	Screw Pine
144	*Picea glauca*	White Spruce
145	*Pinus strobus*	White Pine
146	*Pinus sylvestris*	Scotch Pine
147	*Pittosporum tobira*	Pittosporum
148	*Podocarpus macrophyllus*	Buddhist Pine
149	*Polypodium glycyrrhiza*	Oregon Flat Fern
150	*Pseudotsuga menziesii*	Douglasfir
151	*Rumohra adiantiformis*	Leatherleaf Fern, Baker's Fern
152	*Ruscus hypoglossum*	Ruscus
153	*Ruscus hypoglossum*	Italian Ruscus
154	*Salix caprea*	Pussy Willow
155	*Salix matsudana* 'Tortuosa'	Curly Willow
156	*Sarracenia leucophylla*	Pitcher Plant
157	*Thuja occidentalis*	Cedar, Arborvitae
158	*Tsuga canadensis*	Hemlock
159	*Ulex europaeus*	Gorse
160	*Vaccinium ovatum*	Huckleberry
161	*Vaccinium parvifolium*	Red Huckleberry
162	*Xerophyllum tenax*	Beargrass

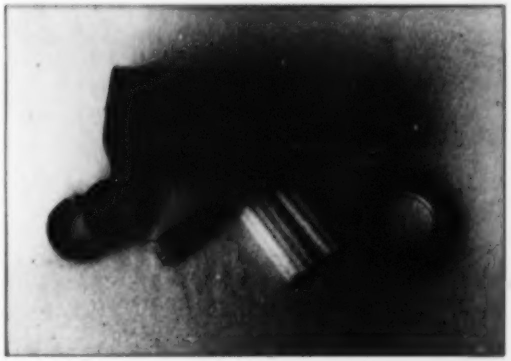


CHAPTER 5

MECHANICS, SUPPLIES, AND SAFETY

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

MECHANICS, SUPPLIES, AND SAFETY



Various types of **mechanics**

Floral foam comes in many shapes and sizes.

As a beginning designer, you need to become informed about basic techniques and tools used in commercial flower arranging. Specifically, you need to learn what supplies are available for positioning flowers in a design in a stable way so that they will not shift around. Also, you must learn how to handle tools and equipment not only efficiently but also safely so you do not injure yourself. Although arranging flowers is not a dangerous occupation, beginning designers can easily cut themselves with a knife or burn themselves on a hot glue gun. The techniques and precautions described in this chapter are intended to help you avoid these experiences.

There are many tools, pieces of equipment and supplies available to the floral designer, each with its specific use. To get started you will need only the basic supplies of a cutting tool for stems and something to hold the flowers firmly in place. Materials used to control the placement of flowers, foliage and accessories are collectively called **mechanics**. Floral foam, tape, wire and hot glue are examples. In general, the mechanics should be inconspicuous or not visible in the finished arrangement.

Floral Foam

The most widely used mechanics item for supporting flowers in arrangements produced by retail flower shops is a material called floral foam. Floral foam is a lightweight material that is capable of absorbing quite a lot of water, which it can then supply to plant stems inserted into it. A large manufacturer of floral foam is the Smithers-Oasis Company. Their products have such widespread use that the word "Oasis" is often used interchangeably with "floral foam."

Different kinds of floral foam are made to accommodate different types of plant materials. For example, Smithers-Oasis makes a product called *Springtime* for soft-stemmed bulb crops. They also make *Regular Oasis* and *Deluxe Oasis* for holding more sturdy stems and branches. For dried and silk flowers this company manufactures a product called *Sahara*. *Sahara II* is a stronger foam suitable for larger dried arrangements or heavier stems. Both Saharas are brown in color and are used dry.

Floral foam is available in various shapes and sizes. The 9" x 4" x 4" block is most common. Cylinders are also made that will fit into standard containers without cutting. It is also possible to purchase foam that is already enclosed in plastic cages for the convenience of designers who are making certain special arrangements. The Smithers-Oasis Company produces a European Designer Collection which contains caged and plastic-supported floral foam in different shapes and sizes (see page 124, S-15). Using these is simpler than preparing special mechanics from foam and chicken wire, and they are easier to attach to surfaces like walls, mirrors and candelabras.

To be effective, floral foam should be thoroughly soaked before fresh flowers are placed into it. A product known as "instant foam" absorbs water so quickly that it can first be placed dry in the container and is then ready for use as soon as water has been poured over it. Other regular types of floral foam should be soaked using the free-float method (Fig. 5-1). This is done by placing the dry foam on the water surface in a sink or bucket. As the foam absorbs water it will gradually sink. The foam should not be forced under the water. Complete saturation is usually achieved in twenty minutes or less.

A floral preservative, which will get the arrangement off to a good start, may be added to the water in which the foam is soaked. Maximum flower life can be obtained if the arrangement is then periodically watered with preservative water. This is especially important if the arrangement is being displayed where environmental conditions like warm temperatures, low light, dry air and drafts are not good for promoting long flower life.

The soaked foam is soft and can easily be cut with a knife to fit the container being used. The foam should extend an inch or more above the rim of the container so that some stems can be angled downward. If the foam is wedged into the container, it will have more stability, but it should not totally fill the container. A space should be left for adding water. This space is called a reservoir. If the container is very large, the bottom may be filled with foam scraps, styrofoam, perlite or gravel, with the floral foam then placed on top of the filler material. Sometimes the added weight in the lower part of the container is necessary to give the arrangement more stability.

After the foam has been placed in the container, its edges can be cut on an angle (beveled). This makes its shape conform more closely to the intended shape of the design. It also helps the designer achieve a smoother transition in the placement angles of stems.

For certain arrangements, such as large designs or designs to be hung on candelabras, the floral foam may be covered with foil, chicken wire or both. The foil slows evaporation of water from the surface of the foam and helps keep any attaching wires that may be used from cutting through the foam. The chicken wire will hold several blocks of foam together in a large design.

Floral Tape and Clay

Waterproof tape is commonly used to hold floral foam in place. It is placed across the soaked foam and extended down over the sides of the container (Fig. 5-2). It is important to keep the container dry, since waterproof tape will not stick to a moist surface. The more contact the tape has with the surface, the more securely it will hold. However, running it too far down the sides of the container will make it difficult to hide the tape with flowers and foliage.

Waterproof tape is available in several widths and in the colors of green, white and clear. Although the wider half-inch width

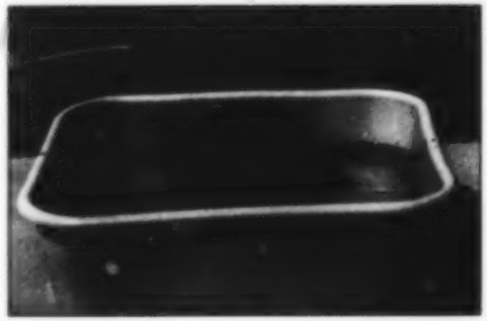


Figure 5-1
Free-float method for soaking floral foam

Floral foam covered with foil and chicken wire

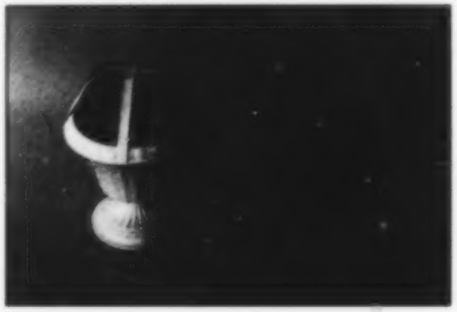
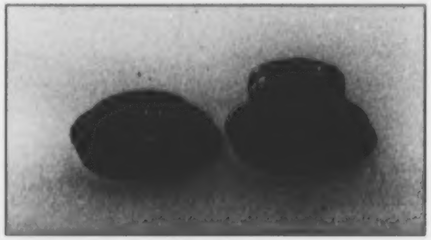


Figure 5-2
Using waterproof tape to hold floral foam in container

Figure 5-3
Materials that can be used to fasten anchor pins to a dry container

can be used in most cases, the narrower quarter-inch width has the advantage of covering less area on the foam. If only the wider tape is available, it can be split lengthwise into two narrow strips as it is pulled from the roll. It is best to use as little tape as possible to hold the foam, because it is frustrating and a hindrance to good design to keep running into tape when trying to insert stems in the foam.

Some containers do not need tape or other mechanics to hold the foam in place. Foam can often be securely wedged into small containers that have some depth. Other containers have prongs molded in the bottom upon which the foam can be secured. An example of a different style is the *O-Cage* made by Smithers-Oasis. It is a cage-like circle of molded plastic that will accommodate a #5 cylinder of *Oasis*.



O-Cage®

There are several other alternatives to waterproof tape for securing foam to a container. A shallow container can have one or more plastic four-pronged anchor pins fastened to the bottom with floral clay. One kind of clay is *Cling*, which is available as a flattened strip wound onto a spool (Fig. 5-3). It is kept from sticking to itself by a layer of waxed paper. *Oasis* double-faced tape can be used to get the same result (Fig. 5-3). Small pieces of clay or tape are placed on the bottom of the anchor pins, which are then firmly pressed onto the dry container. Floral clay will not stick to already-moist surfaces, but will hold if water is added after attachment. Soaked floral foam can then be pressed onto the anchor pins. These will hold the foam in place reasonably well, but not as securely as waterproof tape. Yet another method of binding floral foam to a container is hot melt glue (Fig. 5-4). Pieces of glue are melted in an electric frying pan. The soaked foam is dipped into the melted glue and then placed in the container.

Both waterproof tape and floral clay have the potential for fastening many things, but one should be aware that they often leave a sticky mark when removed. These products should be used with discretion when valuable surface areas are involved. Alcohol-based compounds are useful in removing the residue if the surface can tolerate these substances without damage.

Figure 5-4 Hot melt glue

Other Mechanics

Because of the widespread use of floral foam, it is easy to lose sight of other mechanics for holding flowers. In past eras arrangements were largely held in place by the criss-crossing stems of the materials themselves. Some containers were fashioned with narrow openings to make the task easier. Early mechanics for some arrangements involved filling the container with sand, gravel, rolled cedar, layers of chicken wire, shredded styrofoam, or glass marbles to help keep the stems in position.

Some contemporary arrangements are made in clear glass vases with the stems showing as part of the beauty of the arrangement. For these designs glass marbles may help give stability without being distracting. Another kind of arrangement that can be most effectively displayed in a clear glass container is the hand-tied bouquet. This is made by carefully binding the flower stems in position with a wire or cord so that the lower stems flare out in a sheaf-like manner. Hand-tied bouquets are often sold without the glass container. The recipients may have to provide it themselves. Because the stems are held in place by the cord, this arrangement can simply be lowered into a clear vase that has a large enough opening. If this bouquet is well made, the flowers will not shift around.

Other stem-holding devices include pinpoints, frogs and small plastic or metal cages (Fig. 5-5). These can be fastened to the bottom of a dry container with floral clay. Pinpoints usually have a fairly heavy metal base with many sharp needle-like pins sticking up. They come in many shapes and sizes.

Ways to hold flowers in place

A Williamsburg vase has narrow openings for the flowers.

A plastic grid may be used in a glass vase.

Criss-crossed stems of leatherleaf fern form a grid.

— Using clear glass — containers

A contemporary arrangement

Hand-tied arrangement

Figure 5-5
Metal pinpoints and glass frog

Attaching wooden stakes to eucalyptus

Figure 5-6

Figure 5-7

and some are surrounded by a cup that can hold water. Pinpoints are good for using with figurines, for a larger holder could distract from the figurine.

Frogs are round holders made of heavy glass, flat on the bottom with a convex top. The top has a number of holes into which flower stems can be placed. Frogs are less secure than pinpoints and give less flexibility in the placement of stems. Both frogs and pinpoints are generally too expensive to use in arrangements sent out by retail flower shops. However, they are useful for making arrangements at home or for taking to flower shows because they can be reused.

SPECIAL TECHNIQUES for Regulating Placements

Some flower stems turn slightly in floral foam. This is sometimes a problem with very long stems or those that have heavy flowers or leaves on stems with a relatively small diameter. These stems can be made more secure and their placement more carefully regulated if a wooden stake is attached to them before they are inserted in the floral foam (Fig. 5-6). The stake is attached to the lower stem with floral tape or waterproof tape (Fig. 5-7). The whole unit (stem with stake) is then placed firmly into the foam.

If a stem needs to be extended in length, a water tube (pick) may be placed on the cut end of the stem (Fig. 5-8). The flower with attached tube can then be taped with waterproof tape to one or more wooden stakes (Fig. 5-9). This procedure should be attempted only as a last resort because the limited water supply will shorten flower life.

In certain arrangements, the designer may want to change the curvature of a stem. This is especially important for the longest flower placements in a curved line arrangement like a crescent or Hogarth curve. Since most flowers seldom curve exactly as the designer wants, wire can be used to control the stems. Wire may also be needed to add support to long stems that are weak. In either case, the wire is inserted into the

Extending a rose stem

Figure 5-8

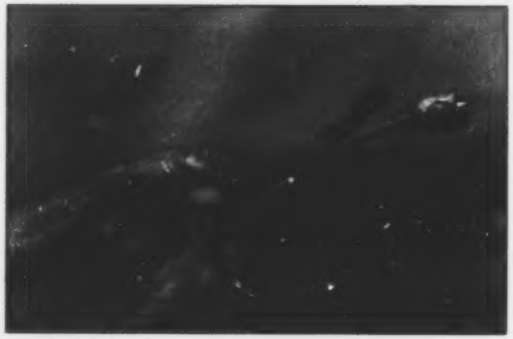


Figure 5-9

flower head (Fig. 5-10) and then spiraled down the stem (Fig. 5-11). Roses and carnations frequently have wires added to their stems. An additional benefit in the case of roses is that the flower head is held up even if the neck becomes weak (bent neck), or if the flower head is bumped and breaks. Usually #20 or #18 gauge wire is required to hold the flower stem.

Wiring has several drawbacks. First, there is the likelihood that the wire will show. Second, the flower may not look natural after its stem has been bent into a curve. Finally, there may be damage to the flower, a likely happening if too heavy a wire has been used.

Attaching a wire to a carnation

Figure 5-10

[redacted]

Hot Glue Gun

The hot glue gun is a widely used tool in floral work. Heated by electricity, it has a plug for inserting into an electrical outlet. Like all electrical equipment, it should never be used near water. Glue sticks are inserted into the gun, and melted glue oozes out of the point when the trigger is pressed.

Hot glue can be used to join many surfaces that are dry and not too porous or too smooth. The glue dries quickly and will hold indefinitely. The hot glue gun saves time and facilitates work with silk and dried materials. Attaching accessories such as ribbon, artificial birds and mosses is simple with hot glue. However, the high temperatures of the glue may cook fresh plant material. Cool-melt glue guns use a special glue stick that melts at a lower temperature. Floral adhesives like *Oasis* glue are better to use with fresh materials although they take longer to dry.

Figure 5-11

Caution!
Be extremely careful to avoid touching the hot glue until it is completely dry. If melted glue comes in contact with your skin, you will be burned. If strands of glue form, allow them to dry before removing them.

Hot glue gun

Cutting Tools

There are many specialized cutting tools for various purposes. If a person were limited to two tools, the most useful ones to have on hand would be a **sharp knife** and a pair of **floral shears** that will cut both ribbon and wire. **Ribbon shears** that cut wide ribbon and cloth evenly are also very useful. More heavy duty cutting usually takes **wire cutters** and **pruning shears**. Some shops have a counter-mounted cutter (see page 115) that is strong enough to cut through the handle of a wired and taped bridal bouquet.

A knife is the most important tool of the designer. Skilled designers have learned how to use the knife efficiently to cut stems at a slight angle so they can be easily inserted into floral foam. If you watch skilled designers at work, you will notice their economy of motion; the knife is kept in one hand, as laying it down can mean wasting time.

Whether you are an expert or a beginner, learn to handle the knife carefully and properly to avoid cutting yourself. Obtain a good quality, sharp folding knife that is easy to carry around and convenient to use. A sharp knife will cut more easily and is probably less likely to slip and cut you than is a dull knife.

The knife should be held between your thumb and forefinger. Cut toward yourself at an angle (Fig. 5-12). Aim just below the thumb so you do not slice into your own skin. With time and practice, you will develop skill at handling a knife. If you have not had experience, proceed slowly until you gain confidence.

Tools, equipment and supplies that may be found in florist shops are listed in the following pages. Some items have specialized uses while others represent alternative ways to accomplish a certain task. This listing can be used as a shopping guide to help you decide what you need for your individual situation or project.

Figure 5-12 Making a correct cut

Ribbon shears

254

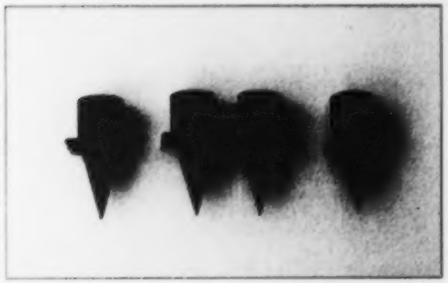
Wire cutters

Pruning shears

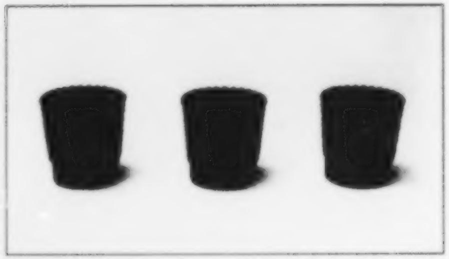
255

[redacted]

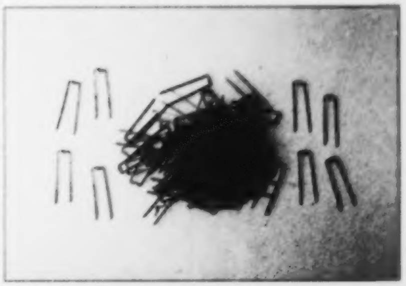
CANDLES

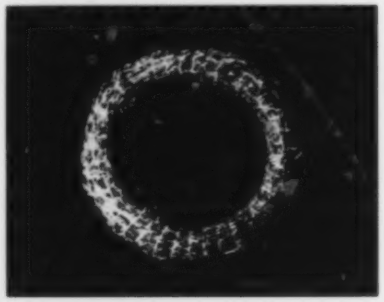

Candle holders **S-1**

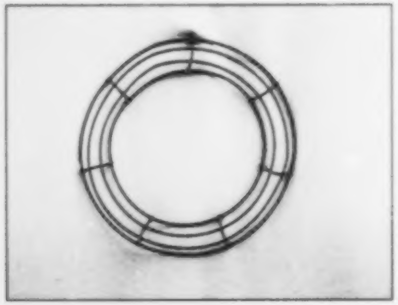
Candles **S-2**


Votive lights **S-3**

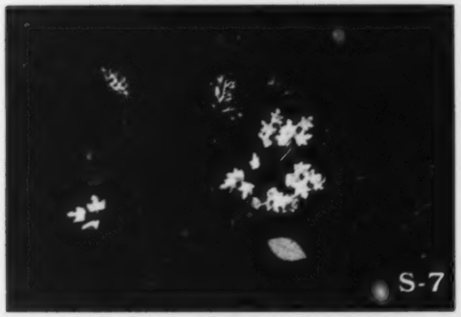
CHRISTMAS SUPPLIES


Greening pins **S-4**


Straw wreath rings **S-5**


Wire wreath rings **S-6**

CORSAGE SUPPLIES


S-7

Artificial leaves and corsage accessories

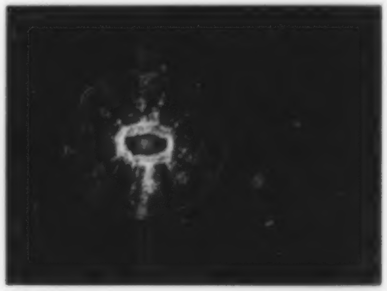
Corsage boxes and bags **S-8**

Corsage pins **S-9**

(continued)

CORSAGE SUPPLIES *(continued)*

Floral tape **S-10**



Wristlets **S-11**

FLORAL FOAM

Floral foam **S-12**
for fresh flower arrangements

Floral foam **S-13**
for dried and silk flower arrangements

Floral preservative **S-14**

Oasis European Designer Collection **S-15**

Styrofoam (sheets and shapes) **S-16**

258

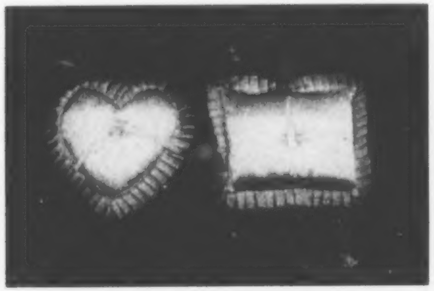
259

FUNERAL SUPPLIES

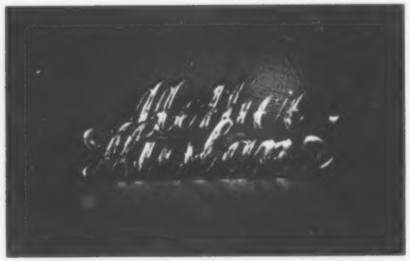
Casket saddle **S-17**

Funeral baskets and vases **S-18**

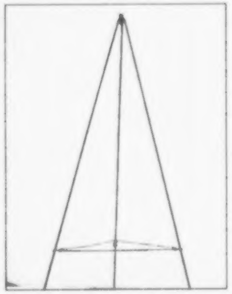
Rosary **S-19**



Satin pillows, hearts **S-20**



Script **S-21**

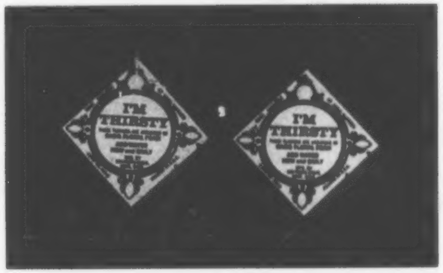


Wire easel **S-22**

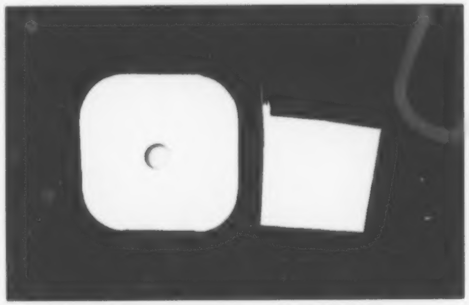
Symbols **S-23**

PACKAGING ITEMS

Card holders **S-24**



Care tags **S-25**



Delivery boxes **S-26**

(continued)

PACKAGING ITEMS *(continued)*

Sweetest Day

Enclosure cards **S-27**

Flower boxes **S-28**

Plant sleeves **S-29**

PAINT AND GLUE

Floral adhesive **S-30**

Glue sticks **S-31**

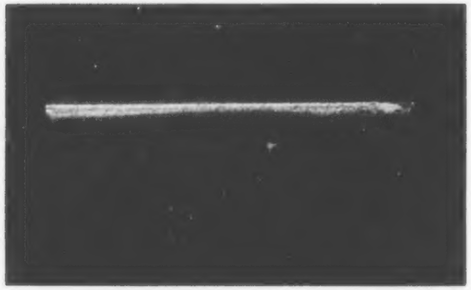
green glo
PLANT POLISH

Plant polish **S-32**

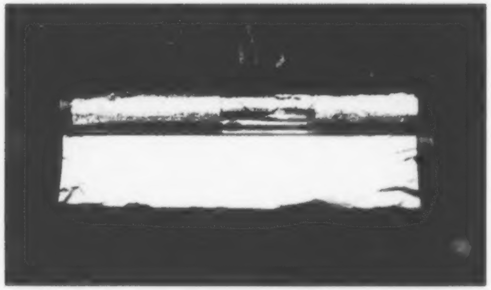
floral spray
design master

Spray paint **S-33**

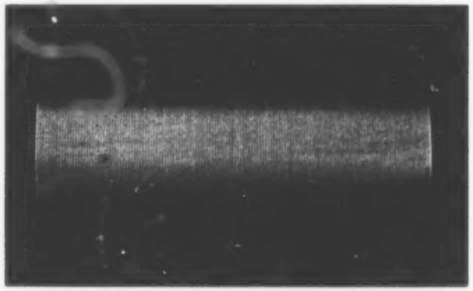
PAPER AND FOIL



Cellophane **S-34**

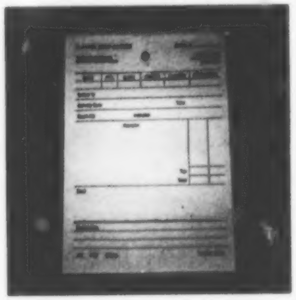


Foil **S-35**

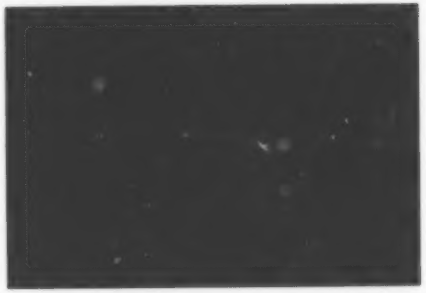


Paper on roll **S-36**

PAPER AND FOIL *(continued)*

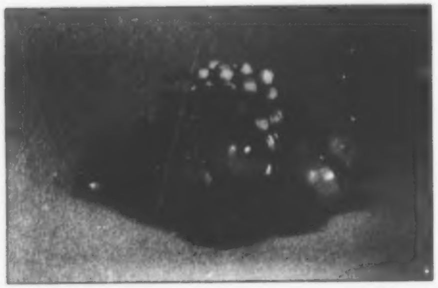


Order forms **S-37**

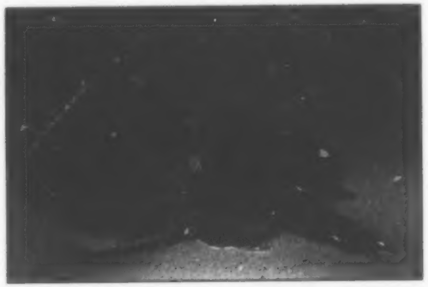


Waxed paper **S-38**

PERMANENT FLOWERS & ACCESSORIES



Artificial fruit **S-39**



Feathers **S-40**

Silk flowers **S-41**

Birds **S-42**

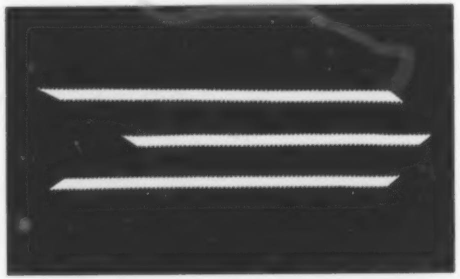
50
HAPPY MOTHER'S DAY

Picked novelties **S-43**

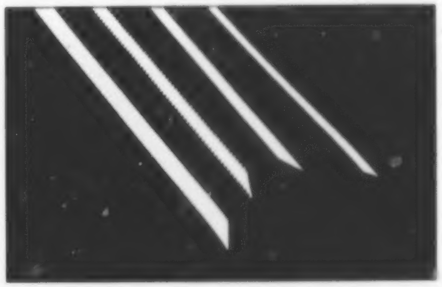
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

RIBBON

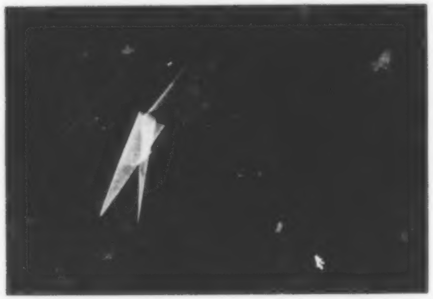
Lace ribbon **S-44**



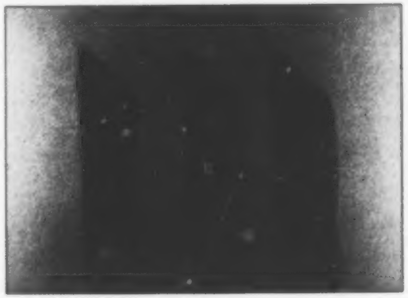
Picot ribbon **S-45**



Satin ribbon **S-46**



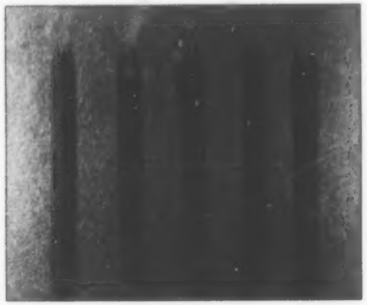
Tulle **S-47**



Velvet ribbon **S-48**

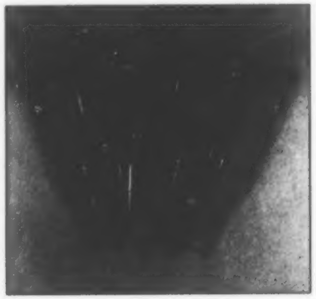
Velvet tubing **S-49**

STAKES AND PICKS



Hyacinth stakes **S-50**

Steel picks **S-51**



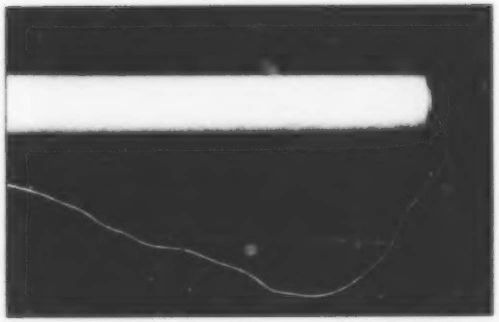
Water picks **S-52**

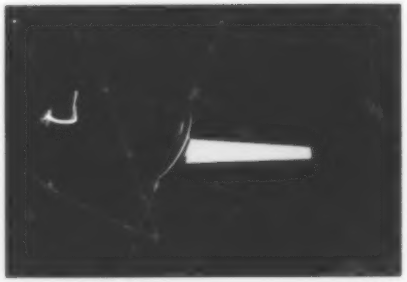
Wooden picks **S-53**

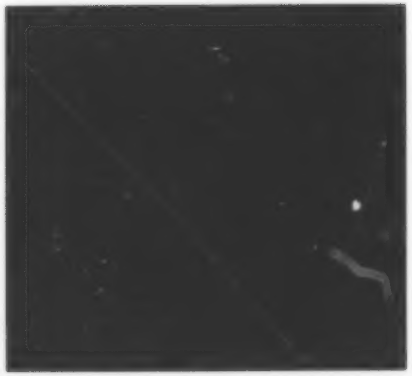
266

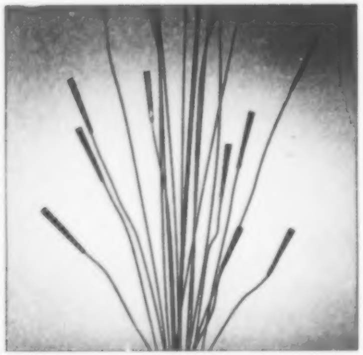
267

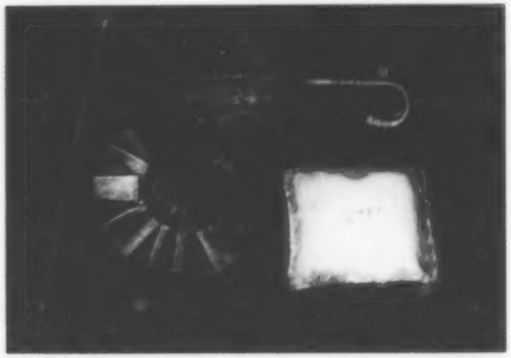
WEDDING SUPPLIES


Aisle runner **S-54**


Bouquet holder **S-55**


Designer bouquet stand **S-56**


Palm buckets **S-57**


Parasol, pillows, lace fan **S-58**

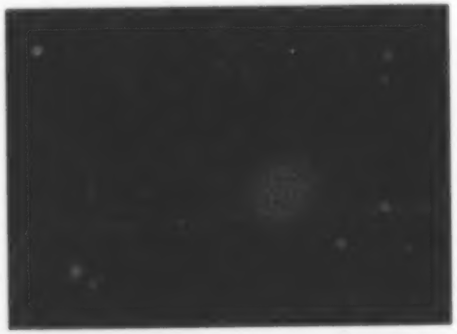
Wedding order form **S-59**

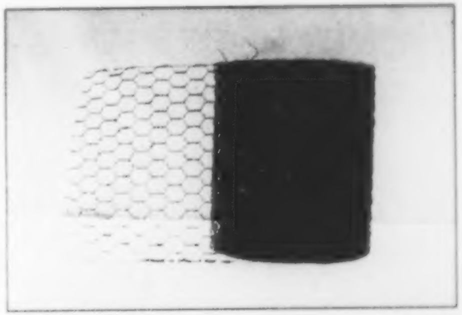
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

WIRE, CORD, TAPE

Chenille stems **S-60**

Twistems **S-61**

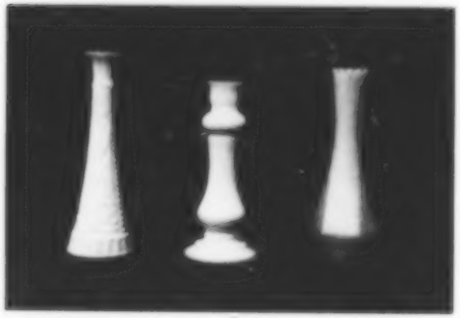

Waterproof tape **S-62**


Chicken wire **S-63**

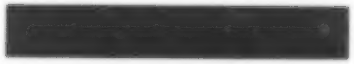
Florist cord **S-64**

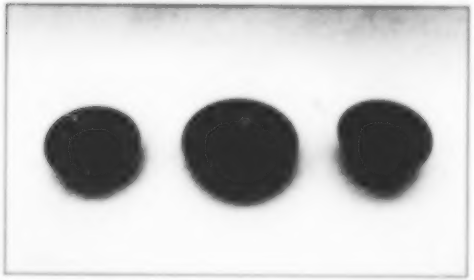
Paddle wire **S-65**

Straight wire **S-66**

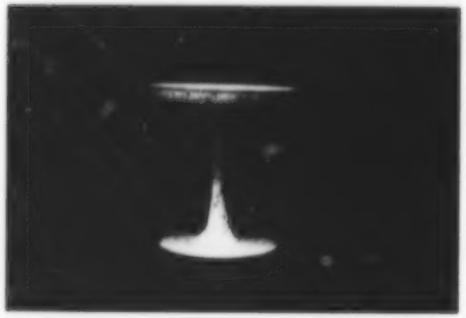


Bud vases C-1





Centerpiece bowls C-2

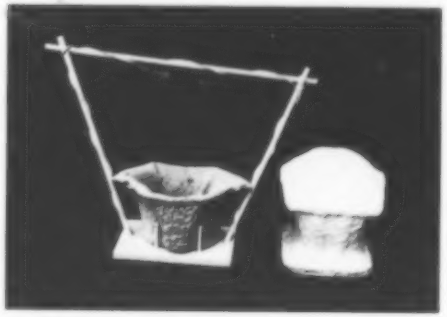


Compote C-3

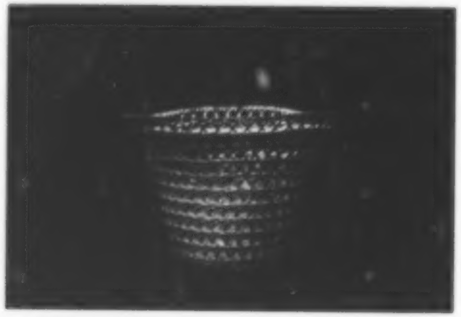
Fireside basket C-4

Lomey container C-5

Novelty planters C-6



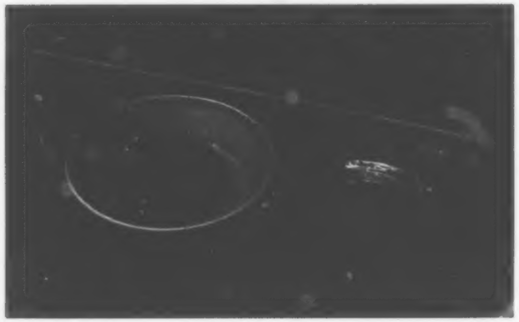
Papier mache baskets C-7



Pot cover C-8

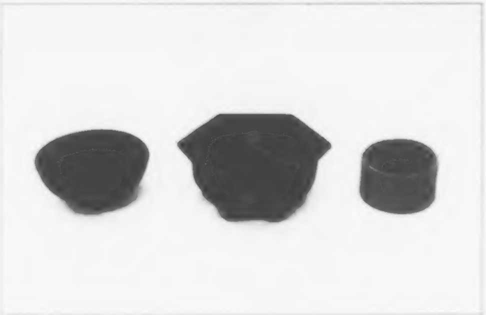
(continued)

CONTAINERS *(continued)*



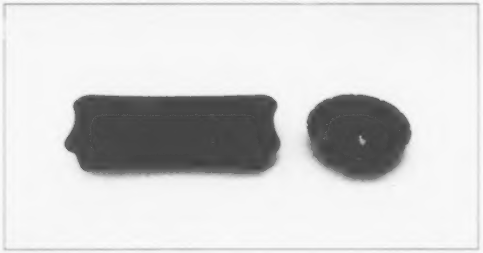
Pot saucers **C-9**

Plastic liners **C-10**

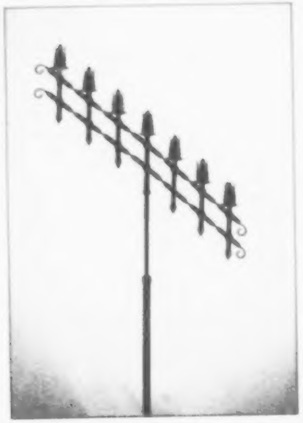


Planters **C-11**

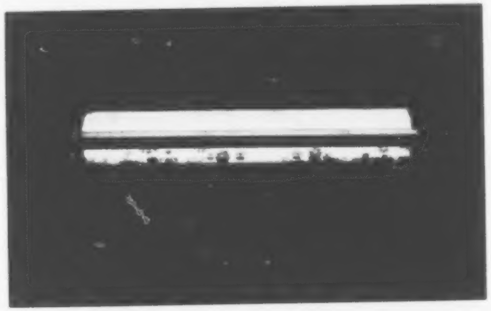
Rose vase **C-12**



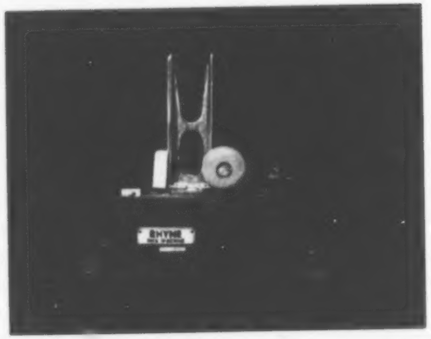
Vlchek containers **C-13**



Candelabra **E-1**

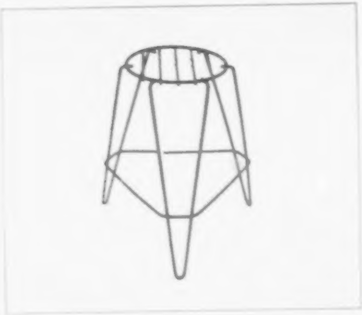


Paper cutter **E-2**



Pick machine **E-3**

Ribbon rack **E-4**

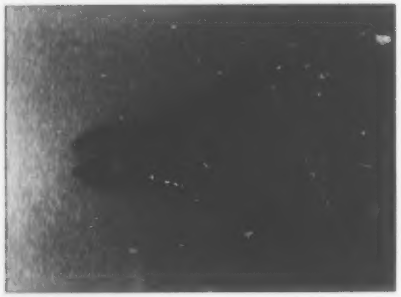


Plant stand **E-5**

Storage buckets **E-6**

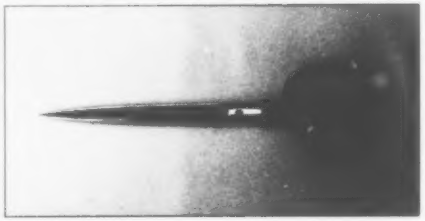
Wire holder **E-7**

TOOLS

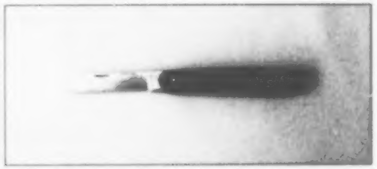


Wire cutters T-1

Floral shears T-2



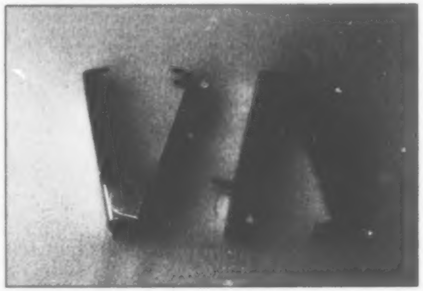
Ribbon shears T-3



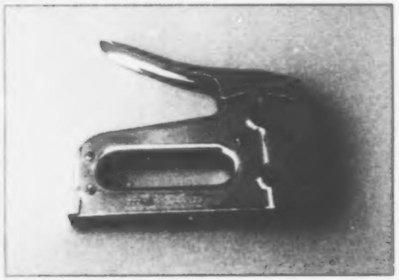
Knife T-4

Woody pruners T-5

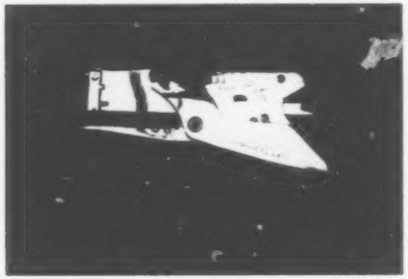
Hot glue gun T-6



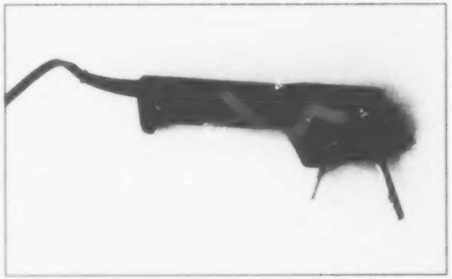
Stem stripper T-7



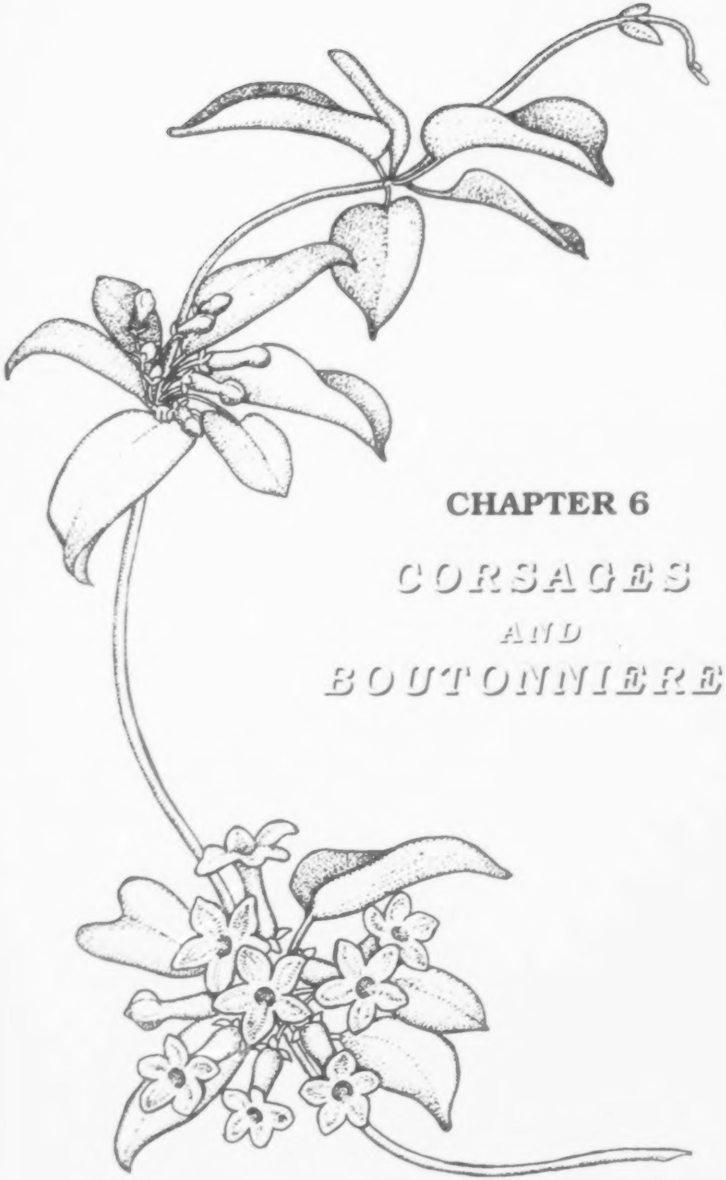
Staple gun T-8



Stapler T-9



Styrofoam cutter T-10



CHAPTER 6

CORSAGES AND BOUTONNIERES

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

CORSAGES AND BOUTONNIERES

A corsage

A boutonniere

Flowers worn on the person by either men or women are often called body flowers. The flowers designed for women are referred to as **corsages**. Those worn by men, usually pinned on a lapel, are called **boutonnieres.**

Corsages are most commonly worn on the left shoulder; however, they may be modified for attachment to the **wrist, hair, waist, neck**, or **ankle**. Sometimes a woman prefers to carry the flowers in a small clutch bouquet or attach them to her **purse**. She also may choose to wear coordinating flowers in two or more places. For example, a wrist corsage of roses and baby's breath may be effectively complemented by a small cluster of baby's breath and a single rose in her hair.

When a woman has a dress style or type of fabric that will not support a shoulder corsage, the florist has the opportunity to suggest a creative alternative. Even with the shoulder corsage there are many choices of styles, ranging from the single flower backed by a few leaves to a multi-parted falcon shoulder piece that extends down the arm and back. Different choices of ribbons and accessories can give the corsage a sweet romantic flavor or a sleek contemporary flair.

Individual preferences of the wearer, formality of the occasion, and clothing to be worn will all influence the style, size and materials chosen to make a corsage. The present trend is toward smaller, more stylized corsages. Some women have been discouraged from wearing flowers after an experience with a heavy corsage that weighted down their clothing and interfered with their activities. Florists should make an effort to determine customer preferences in this matter. Then the florists can design corsages that women will enjoy wearing and will want to continue to order.

(continued page 138)

Flowers at the wrist

Flowers in the hair

Flowers at the waist

Shoulder Corsages

Flowers at the ankle

Flowers on a purse

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Figure 6-1

A corsage should never be heavy or bulky. Natural stems are removed from flowers or foliage pieces and replaced by wires that are as light as possible yet sturdy enough to control the position of the flower. Floratape, a stretchy, non-sticky tape, usually 1/4 inch in width, is used to bind the wire to flowers or foliage and also to bind taped materials together into a unit. Tape should completely cover the wires, but must be used sparingly so as not to add unnecessary bulk and weight.

WEARING A CORSAGE

Shoulder corsages are worn on the left shoulder. They should be pinned relatively high and may curve slightly over the shoulder (Fig. 6-1). This will allow them to show to maximum advantage and be partially visible from behind. Since the shoulder is curved, the back of the corsage should conform to this curve instead of being perfectly flat.

While the direction a corsage is worn is the wearer's choice, it is usually designed to be worn upright, so most of the flowers are in a position similar to that in which they grew. If the corsage is designed to have taped stems showing, the stems should be at the bottom. At one time, wearing corsages upside down with the bow at the top was in vogue, but this is generally not done at present.

At least two corsage pins should be included with each corsage. If attached to the clothing at two points, the corsage will not rock or pivot. It is important to avoid a bulky knob of wires on the back of the corsage that will hold it out from the wearer or cause it to rotate. Corsage pins have white pearl heads to make them look attractive and keep them from slipping through the stems. Boutonniere pins are smaller and have black heads. Usually one pin will hold a normal-size boutonniere in place.

Corsages and boutonnieres can be packaged in lightweight **cardboard** boxes, **plastic** boxes, or **cellophane** bags (as shown below). When cellophane bags are used, the pins may serve double duty. They seal the bag and then can be used to pin the flowers on the wearer. When boxes are used, the pins are placed directly on the back of the corsage or boutonniere so they are readily available.

Using a lightweight cardboard box to hold the corsage

A clear plastic box tied with satin ribbon. Some pieces of foliage are hot-glued to the ribbon for added interest.

Corsage in cellophane bag can be placed in tissue-lined box for presentation.

WORK AREA for CORSAGE MAKING

It is important to have the materials used for corsage making well organized and within arm's reach. Since corsages are small and held in the hand when constructed, the designer does not have to stand while making them. A work area should be set up at a desk or table with a stool of suitable height. A swivel chair on rolling castors might be preferred to help the designer move easily to nearby supplies.

The work surface on which flowers and foliage are laid may be cushioned with several layers of moist newspaper covered by a layer of damp paper towels. These will protect the delicate plant materials from bruising and moisture loss. This area can be kept damp by misting the surface periodically. Care should be taken to work quickly and return flowers to the cooler as soon as possible. Misting flowers with a fine spray of water also helps keep them fresh and crisp.

As flowers are wired and taped they can be placed in narrow-necked containers like bud vases for storage in the cooler until the corsage is assembled. Each container should be loosely filled - not so full that flowers push on each other or become tangled. Wired and taped flowers are first misted with water. Then a plastic bag is often put around the flowers to help retain moisture (Fig. 6-2). Hyacinth stakes extend beyond the flowers to keep the bag from resting on the delicate blossoms. A wire or twistem can be used to secure the plastic around the neck of the container.

Figure 6-2
Preparing flowers for storage for corsage making

With these precautions and techniques, flowers can be wired and taped several hours or more in advance of making up corsages, and should remain in good condition. The often time-consuming job of wiring and taping can be started the day or night before a big design project, such as a wedding, is completed. In a classroom setting, the wiring and taping can be done in one lab in preparation for assembly of the corsage in another lab.

THE PARTS OF A CORSAGE

THE BOW

Corsages usually are accented with a bow. Depending on the style of corsage, the bow may be incorporated in the middle or it may be toward the bottom. The bow should always be integrated as part of the total corsage design, not appearing to be stuck on top as an afterthought. The bow color can either harmonize with the flower color or provide a striking contrast.

Work area for corsage making with supplies in easy reach

Parts of a corsage
✓ *Bow*
✓ *Accessories*
✓ *Foliage*
✓ *Flowers*
✓ *Wire*
✓ *Tape*
✓ *Ribbon*

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

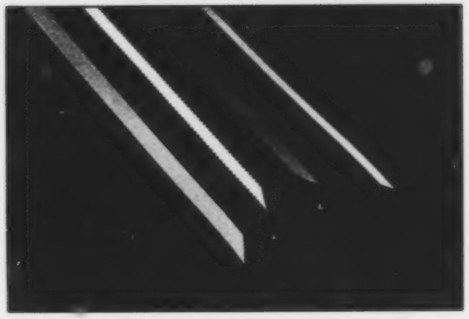


Figure 6-3
Satin and velvet ribbon used to make corsage bows. Second from left: picot.

Figure 6-4
Tropical look with bird of paradise petals

Number 3 satin ribbon, 5/8 inch wide, is frequently used, but narrower ribbon used alone or in combination with the wider ribbon can also give an interesting effect. Ribbon may be velvet, lace, cotton, burlap or metallic (lamé). It is available printed with dots, plaid, stripes, gingham and hundreds of other patterns. The edges of some ribbons contain little loops called *picots* (Fig. 6-3). Bows may also be made from satin or velvet tubing.

Some corsages do not have a bow at all; other materials may be used to give the effect of a bow. For example, a line of contrasting flowers may be used in the area where a bow might otherwise be found (Fig. 6-4), such as a grouping of purple statice in a corsage of pink roses. Interesting foliage may give a bow-like appearance, as when variegated spider plant leaves are looped to simulate ribbon.

ACCESSORIES

Ribbon can be used in an expanded way so that it becomes more of an accessory. Examples include using separate loops of ribbon or streamers throughout the corsage, combining two or more colors or widths of ribbon, or adding loops of braided ribbon.

A traditional addition to a corsage is tufts of nylon net (Fig. 6-5). Squares of net tulle are cut, gathered in the center, wrapped with a wire, and secured by floratape. Not only are the net tufts decorative, but they also perform a function in orchid corsages of helping support the delicate petals.

Many commercial accessories already on wires are available for corsage work. Examples include hearts, shamrocks, small animals, tiny cones and clusters of little pearls. Distinctive corsages with a contemporary feeling sometimes utilize small shiny ornaments made from bits of mirrors.

Dried materials such as pods, nuts and colored starflowers are interesting additions to corsages. Small bits of moss create a naturalistic feeling while tendrils extend the line in a graceful way. If a wire cannot be easily attached to these materials by a traditional method, they can be glued on with liquid or hot glue.

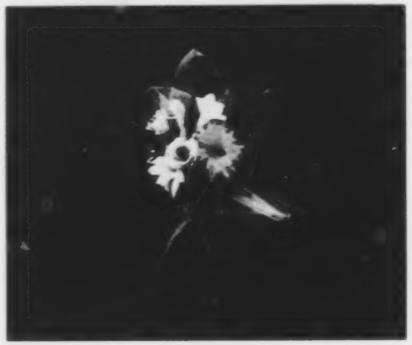


Figure 6-5
Hair piece with loops of net tulle

FOLIAGE

Foliage used in corsages must be of a type that does not wilt easily. It also must be of a relatively small size and with a shape that will work into most corsage designs.

Commonly used foliages include camellia, ivy, leatherleaf fern and sprengeri. Leaves may be sprayed or dipped into a plant shine product to make them look polished and help them retain moisture. Other commercially available non-shiny moisture barriers are available (see page 154). Fern tips are sometimes dipped in a mixture of glue and water (equal parts of each) to retard wilting.

Artificial leaves are often used to save time and eliminate any chance of wilting (Fig. 6-6). Some silk leaves are very realistic, closely resembling rose leaves and ivy. In addition to traditional green, artificial leaves come in many colors, with different shapes and textures. Silver, gold and pearlized versions are definitely for special effects. Artificial leaves may add to the cost of a corsage, but may be worth the convenience and labor saved.

FLOWERS

Flowers used in corsages should be able to hold up well out of water in the finished corsage. Favorite for their lasting quality are carnations, chrysanthemums and statice. Roses and orchids are also frequently used because of their widespread appeal. If properly handled, these and many other flowers can last reasonably well.

Proper conditioning, beginning after harvest and continued by wholesale and retail florists, is essential if the flowers are to hold well. (For details, refer to Chapter 28, "Conditioning and Storing Cut Flowers.") Basically, flowers should be kept at least overnight in a cooler to harden off, and floral preservatives should be used.

Once a flower is wired and taped, it cannot take up additional water like flowers in floral foam or vases of water. The lasting quality of the flower therefore depends to a great extent on the storage conditions in addition to the freshness and inherent keeping qualities of the flower. Some corsage orchids are placed in small plastic water tubes containing sponges. These can be worked into corsages, but because of the added bulk, they are practical only for single-flower corsages in which one relatively large and special flower is used. Small moist pieces of cotton are sometimes placed at the base of the cut stem of a flower or in the throat of certain blossoms to prolong freshness.

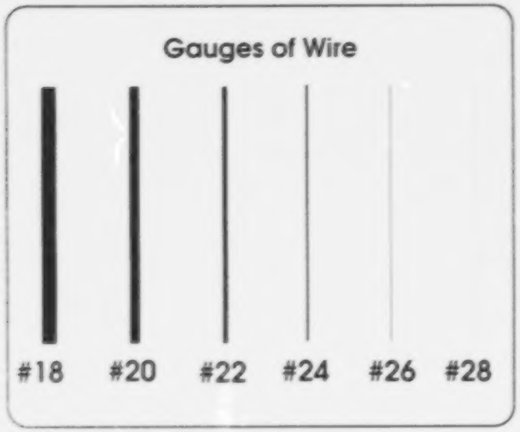
Some flowers can be taken apart and reassembled into smaller, larger, or different-looking contrived flowers. Carnations are a good choice for this technique. They can be broken apart into smaller units of various sizes. Two large carnations used full-size in a corsage would be very chunky. Splitting them into units of various sizes gives the designer a chance to develop size rhythm and create a more pleasing design. Gladiolus florets can be wired or glued together to form a large double flower called a glamellia. Making these contrived floral novelties takes additional time but results in a different product that can be sized to the specific project.

WIRE

Green enamel-coated wire of various sizes is used for corsage work. It will not rust and is rather inconspicuous in most situations. This **florist wire** is commonly sold in boxes containing straight pieces 18 inches long. Wire on wooden paddles, called **paddle wire,** can be used, but since it comes off the paddle

Figure 6-6
Artificial leaves used in corsages

Wired and taped flowers that have been well conditioned will hold up during a special event.



Wire gauge numbers increase as wire diameters decrease: an inverse relationship.

Spools of floratape

slightly wavy, it is not as easy to use for wiring flowers and foliage.

Wire comes in different even-number diameters called **gauges.** Thin wires have higher gauge numbers and thick wires have lower gauge numbers. Florists commonly have on hand wire ranging from #18 to #28, specifically, #18, #20, #22, #24, #26 and #28 wire. Most corsage work requires only the thinner wires no larger than #22. A beginner or someone doing a small project could get by with #24 and #28. If you were limited to one gauge, #26 would be a good choice.

Less damage to flowers occurs when delicate flowers are wired with fine wire for the initial attachment. Then a heavier wire is usually added beside the fine wire for more support, but without piercing the flower. The goal in corsage work is this:

❀ **Use the lightest possible wire that will still give adequate support and control of the flowers and foliage.**

Using a wire that is heavier than necessary will add undesirable weight and may damage the flower when attached. If a wire is not heavy enough, the flower will sag under its own weight and will not stay in position. A flower will also exert greater force on a long wire than on a short wire of the same gauge. For this reason, a carnation on a short wire in a corsage may be adequately supported by #26 wire, while the same flower in a bridal bouquet on an 8-inch wire of the same gauge will droop.

Wires 6 to 9 inches long are adequate for most corsage work. Using longer pieces is wasteful, since much of the length will be cut off. The actual length of wire used will be determined by the wiring technique. With some techniques only a single length of wire is used, while with others the wire is doubled on itself, resulting in a wired stem length only half the length of the original wire.

To increase the efficiency of corsage making, 18-inch florist wires can be precut into thirds or halves and stored upright in vials or short bud vases that are clearly labeled with the gauge number of the wire. It is both convenient and efficient to pull from a marked upright container, a wire of known gauge and length. Keep the gauges separate and correctly labeled, since considerable time can be lost and wire wasted when wires of different gauges are mixed together.

TAPE

Floratape is a stretchy, non-sticky tape that is widely used for corsage work. The tape covers stems, binds wires to flower stems, and binds wired and taped flowers together when used in making a formal corsage. The tape must be stretched while it is being applied so that it adheres securely.

Floratape comes wound on plastic spools. The most common width is 1/2 inch. Floratape 1 inch wide can also be purchased for use in larger projects such as bridal bouquets.

Green is the floratape color most frequently used, as it is least conspicuous among naturally green stems and leaves. There is a choice between foliage green and moss green. White tape can be used with white flowers, especially in wedding work. Lavender tape is sometimes used with orchids of that color. Brown tape is good to use with dried flowers. Many other colors are available for use in special effect arrangements.

A clear stretchy tape called parafilm accomplishes the same thing as floratape but is much less frequently used. It has a waxy consistency and seals cut stem surfaces when stretched over them.

RIBBON

Ribbon width is identified by number. Number 3 satin ribbon (5/8 inch wide) is often used for corsage bows. This is usually the widest ribbon used for corsages. Number 1 ribbon (1/4 inch wide) and #2 ribbon (7/16 inch wide) are also good possibilities. Even satin ribbon as narrow as 1/32 inch can make an interesting bow; however, many more loops are necessary when narrower ribbon is used. Bows of larger ribbon are used to decorate potted plants and in large arrangements such as those for weddings and funerals. Number 9 and #40 ribbon are widths that florists usually have. See Figure 6-7 for ribbon numbers of ribbon widths shown at one-half actual size.

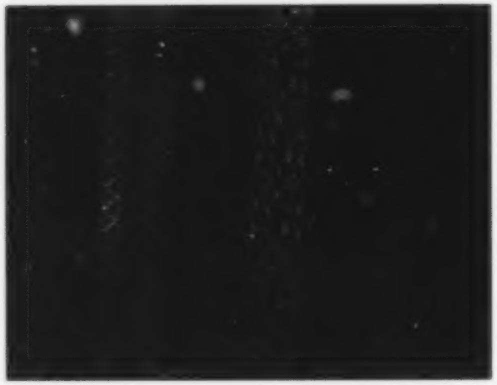
Florist ribbon is made in many fabrics including satin, velvet, burlap and cotton. Most are single faced; that is, they have different front and back sides. The front side is usually considered the most desirable, and bows are made to feature this side. There are a few occasions where the dull textural quality of the "wrong side" of common satin florist ribbon may enhance certain flowers better than does the satin side. Consider using the ribbon this way once in a while for a different effect.

Ribbon is wound on cardboard spools called **bolts.** Bolts of ribbon can be efficiently stored on ribbon racks that keep the bolts neat and afford a view of the entire ribbon selection at a glance. Adding or removing bolts of ribbon from such a rack is as easy as taking books off a library shelf. If large amounts of one kind of ribbon are frequently needed, however, it may be more efficient to put the bolt on a stationary bar or spindle. Then the ribbon can be reeled off as needed without having to remove the bolt from a rack, or wind it back up and return it.

TOOLS

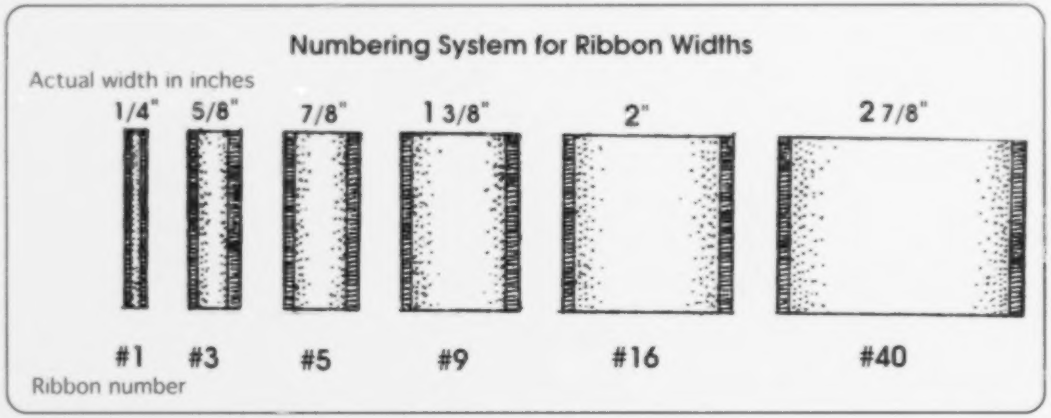
Scissors

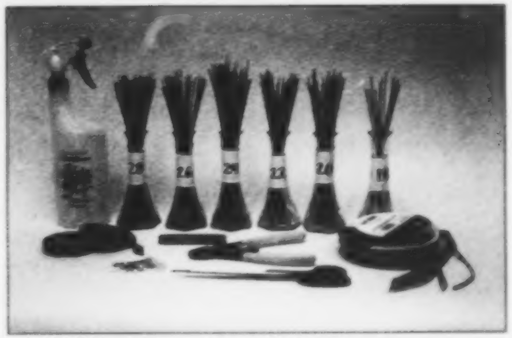
Every floral designer needs a good pair of scissors that makes a clean cut. Scissors with long blades, called ribbon shears, are useful for making straight cuts on wider ribbons or for cutting fabric. Florist shears with serrate edges can cut ribbon as well as



Lace ribbon used to make corsage bows

Figure 6-7





Corsage-making supplies

light-weight wires, but they are not as good for making straight, clean cuts on ribbon wider than #3.

Wire Cutters

Hand-held wire cutters should be able to cut individual wires as fine as #28 as well as heavier wires and groups of wires. Sturdy counter-mounted wire cutters are best for cutting through large masses of wires like those encountered when making bridal bouquets or some styles of larger corsages.

Knife

Use a good quality, sharp florists' knife.

OTHER SUPPLIES

Corsage Pins

Long pins with white pearl heads are used for corsages. They are usually sold in boxes containing a gross (144 pins). A selection of different lengths and head sizes is available. Boutonniere pins are smaller and usually have a black head.

Mist Bottle

It is a good idea to mist plant materials periodically during wiring and taping. Also the completed corsage should be misted before it is placed in a bag or box. Use plastic bottles with a mist insert, filling them with water. Also use them to dampen the moist paper towels covering the work area.

Corsage Bags or Boxes

Cellophane bags are available in different sizes. They make inexpensive packages for one or more corsages. They should be opened fully and have the corners squared off before a corsage is placed inside, so that the cellophane does not press on the flowers. The open end can also be squared off neatly and secured with two corsage pins.

Light-weight cardboard boxes made especially for corsages may be used instead. They can be lined with sheets of waxed paper to retain moisture, and shredded waxed paper to cushion the corsage.

Taping flowers and wire with floratape requires skill that must be developed with practice. The key to good taping is learning to maintain proper tension on the tape while turning the wire or flower at the same time. You must also learn to overlap the tape just enough to catch the base of the previous turn, covering the wire and stem without developing an overlapping thickness of tape.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Taping a #18 Florist Wire

(for a right-handed person)

Follow the steps listed here for taping down the length of a #18 florist wire. Read over the suggested procedure, then watch your teacher demonstrate the technique. Continue taping over the same wire until you acquire some confidence. You will have many opportunities to perfect this skill and develop more speed when you practice the different methods of wiring flowers and foliage.

1. Pick up the wire in your left hand.

2. Place a roll of floratape over two fingers farthest from the thumb on your right hand. Pull out enough tape to hold between your thumb and forefinger.

3. Place the end of the tape under the wire at the top of the length.

4. Begin rotating the wire clockwise between thumb and forefinger of your left hand.

5. Pull firmly and uniformly downward and outward on the tape (at about a 45° angle) as it is taken up by the turning action of the wire.

NOTE the following two points:

- The **tension** you maintain on the tape is as important to the success of the taping job as the tension on a sewing machine is to producing quality sewing. Pulling too hard could break the tape, but pulling too lightly will result in loose tape that will not stay on the wire.

- The **angle** at which you hold the tape determines the amount of overlap you will have. If you hold the tape straight out at a 90° angle to the wire, it will keep going over the previous turn, becoming very thick and requiring many turns to get down the wire. Try for the minimum amount of overlap that will hold securely, since this saves time as well as tape.

6. Let the spool turn freely on your two smallest fingers when the tape is pulled from it, just as the spool of thread turns on a sewing machine.

7. Keep turning the wire and maintaining tension on the tape until you have reached the bottom, ending by pulling sharply on the tape to break it.

8. Check results by rubbing your finger down the taped wire. A smooth, tight taping job is a sign of good work.

9. Repeat the process over the same wire several times until you feel comfortable with it.

Hold the tape between thumb and forefinger as you tape the florist wire.

PREPARING FLOWERS AND FOLIAGE FOR WIRING AND TAPING

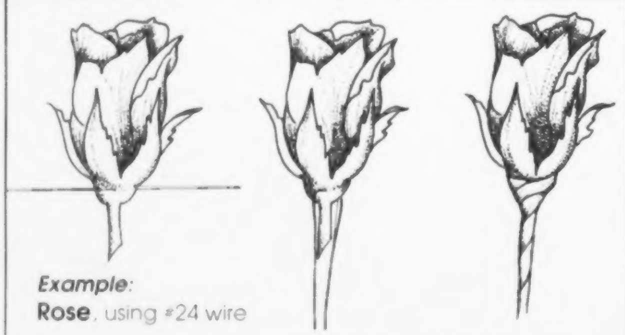
Use conditioned flowers that have been hardened off in a cooler for several hours. Select quality flowers of the color and size appropriate for the corsage being made. Since corsages are viewed at close range, it is important that flowers be totally free from blemishes and spray residue. Using a sharp knife, cut the flower stem to within about a half inch of the flower. Leave the same amount of stem on the foliage if possible.

BASIC WIRING METHODS

Pierce Method

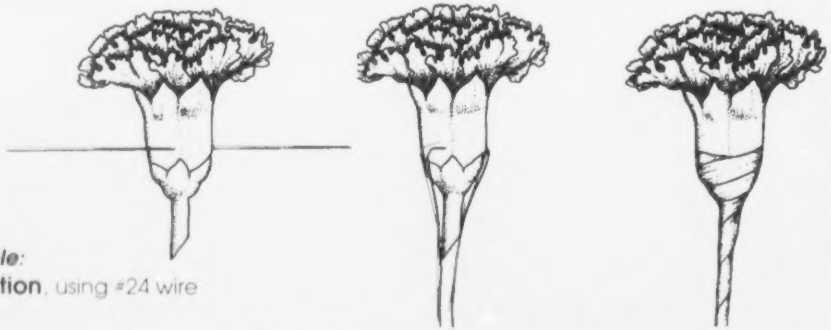
Depending on the structure of the flower, a wire is inserted through the flower stem, calyx or ovary just below the petals at a 90° angle to the stem. The wire is pushed through to the midpoint of its length, then both ends are bent down parallel to the flower stem and taped. If additional support from a second wire is needed, the second wire can be pierced through just above or below the first wire at a 90° angle to the first wire. Then all four wire segments are bent down parallel to the stem. (See the examples on this page.)

PIERCE METHOD



Example:
Rose, using #24 wire

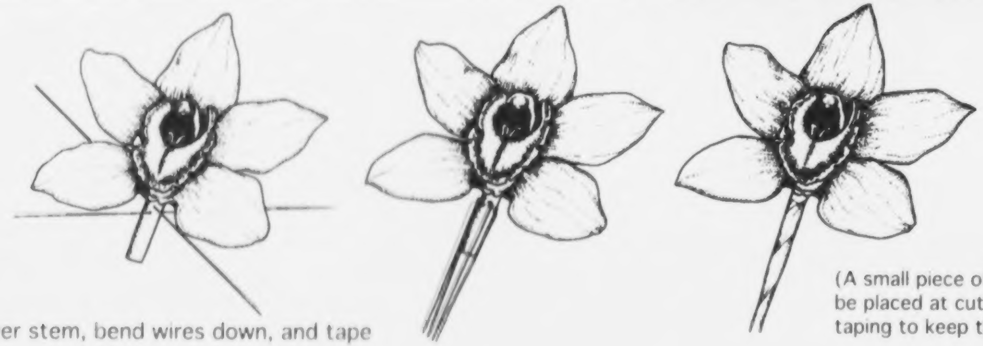
Pierce ovary, bend wire down, and tape



Example:
Carnation, using #24 wire

Pierce calyx, bend wire down, and tape

Taping the carnation



Example:
Cymbidium orchid, using two #26 wires

Pierce flower stem, bend wires down, and tape

(A small piece of moist cotton may be placed at cut end of stem before taping to keep the flower fresh.)

Hook Method

Daisy-type flowers can be wired by pushing a wire up through the flower head near the flower stalk so that several inches of wire appear above the center of the flower. Then make a small hook in the end of the wire and pull gently downward on the other end of the wire until the hook just sinks into the disk florets. The hook will scarcely be noticed unless it was made too big. Tape the wire to the flower stalk and continue on down the wire.

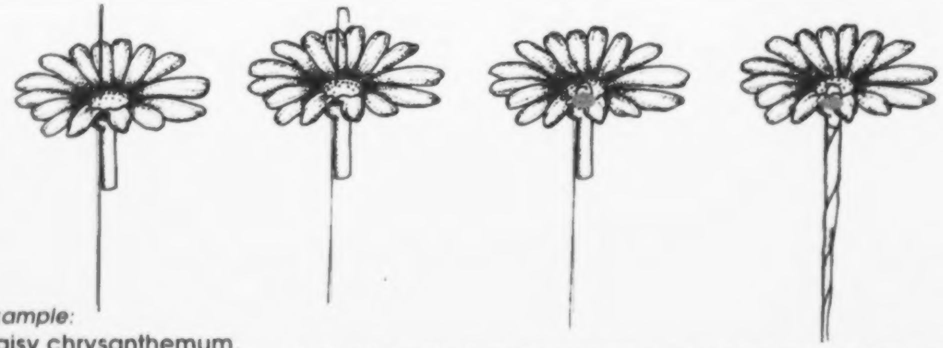
Some people like to begin by pushing the wire up through the cut end of the stem instead of beside the stem. Although this method will also work, the first method described may allow for more secure taping of wire to stem. (See example to the right.)

Insert Method

Flowers with sturdy stems can be wired very simply by pushing a wire up the stem and into the flower. If the stem bends so that the flower faces outward, as is the case with daffodils, you may not be able to push the wire up as far without having it come out the top of the bend. Chenille pipe stems can be used instead of florist wire to insert into the calyx of carnations or into the ovary of a rose for a quick wiring method.

Inserting wires into or beside the stem without making a hook is not as secure as other methods. The flowers can pull loose if not tightly taped to the wire. (See examples to the right.)

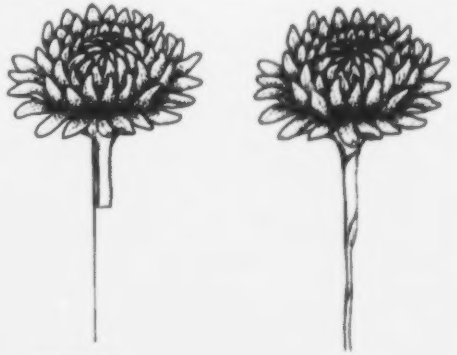
HOOK METHOD



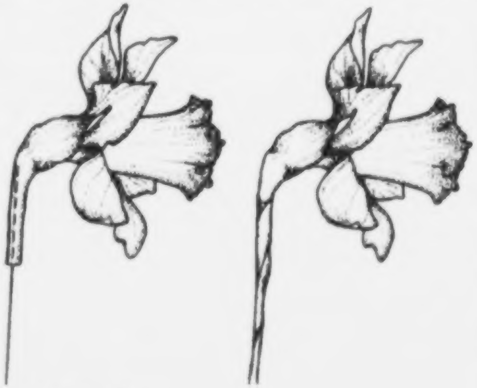
Example:
Daisy chrysanthemum, using #24 wire

Push wire up through flower center near stem, make a hook, gently pull hook down into center, and tape

INSERT METHOD

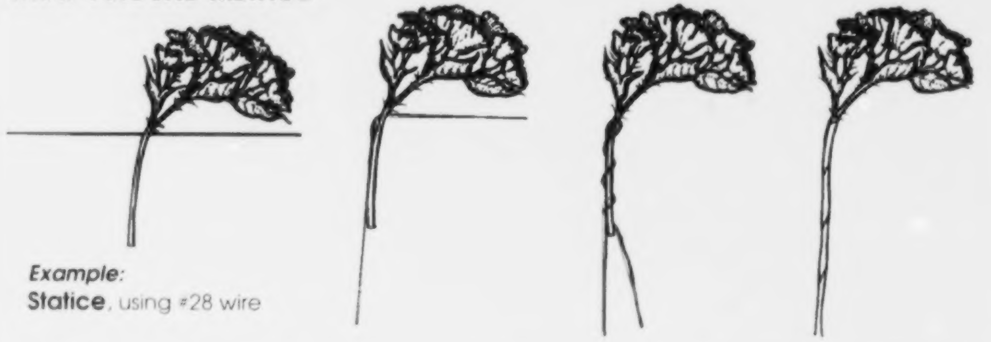


Example:
Pompon chrysanthemum, using #24 wire



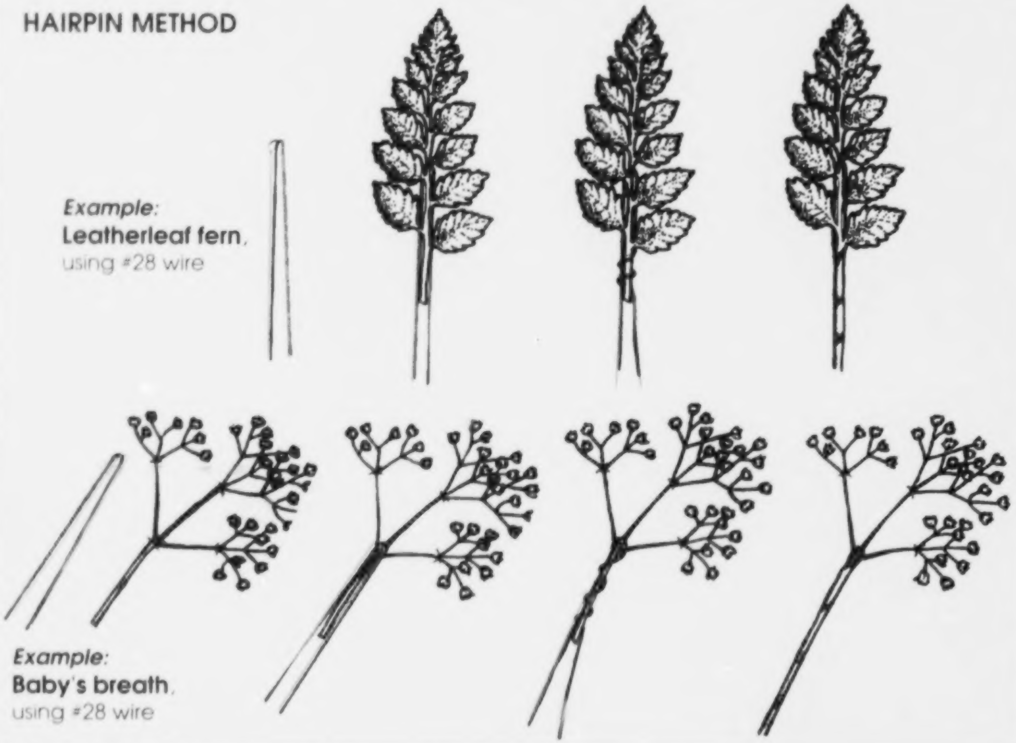
Example:
Daffodil, using #22 wire

WRAP-AROUND METHOD



Example:
Statice, using #28 wire

HAIRPIN METHOD



Example:
Leatherleaf fern,
using #28 wire

Example:
Baby's breath,
using #28 wire

Wrap-around Method

Small delicate flowers can be wired by wrapping a thin wire around the flower stem and blossom. Place the middle of the wire just under the flower, bring half the wire down parallel with the flower stem, and wrap the other half around the stem and wire with a few twists. Tape the two wires and stem together. This method is good for flowers that grow in a cluster (such as statice or baby's breath). It is also used to bunch several flowers together, wiring them as a group. (See example to the left.)

Hairpin Method

If the material is very delicate and likely to break when the wire is bent around it, the wire may be bent in half first. Then the hairpin-shaped wire can be passed through the lower leaflets or florets and wrapped around to secure the lower part of the stem.

When wiring leatherleaf fern, it is often helpful to press firmly on the bend of wire against the foliage piece with one hand while wrapping one half of the wire around the remaining wire and stem with the other hand. The bottom two leaflets will keep the wire from slipping down. Finish by securely taping wires and stem together. (See examples to the left.)

Stitch Method (for Foliage)

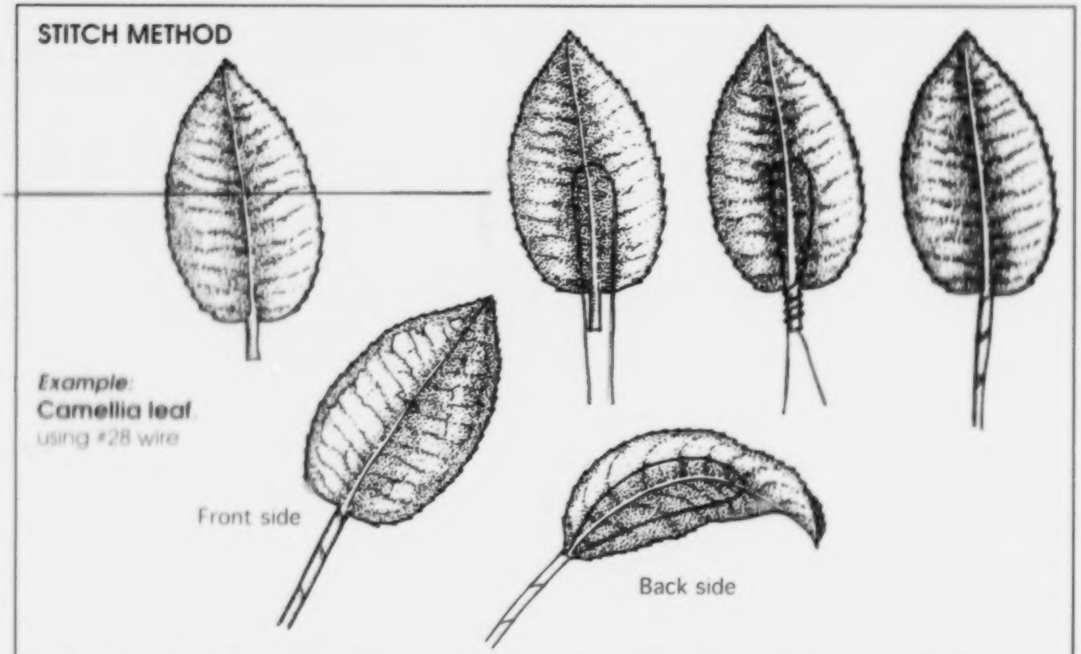
Turn the leaf over to the underside. Using a thin wire like a sewing needle, take a small stitch under the midrib about halfway up the leaf. Pull the wire through to its midpoint. Bend both halves of wire down parallel to the petiole. Wrap one half of the wire around the other half and the petiole with just a few twists to hold them together. Tape the wires and petiole and continue taping on down the wires.

If the petiole is about 1/4 to 1/2 inch long, there will be good attachment. If there is no petiole, the leaf may rock loosely on the wire. Some types of leaves can be cut away at the base, leaving a section of midrib showing that can be taped over to help attach the leaf to the wire.

This method works best on leaves that are somewhat leathery. If the leaf is too delicate, the wire may tear through. Using too heavy a wire may also cause this.

A nice feature of this method is that once wired, the position of the leaf can be controlled. Not only can the leaf be bent sideways at the base, but it can also be arched or curved backward by rolling the leaf over your finger. This shaping potential with wire can help improve the overall design of the finished corsage.

STITCH METHOD



Working on back side of the leaf, take a stitch under the midrib about halfway up. Bend the wires down. Wrap one wire around the other with a few twists. Tape. Only a small stitch should show on the front. The leaf can be curved and the wire will keep it in that position.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Practice each of the wiring techniques that have been described and work on your taping skill by wiring and taping as many of the flowers or foliages in the table to the right as are available. Have your instructor check each one and determine if you need more practice on that flower or leaf.

Flower or Foliage	Wiring Method	Wire Gauge
carnation	pierce	#24
daisy mum	hook	#24
pompon mum	insert	#24
statice	wrap-around	#28
baby's breath	hairpin	#28
rose	pierce	#24
leatherleaf	hairpin	#28
camellia	stitch	#28
sprengeri	wrap-around	#28
ivy	stitch	#28

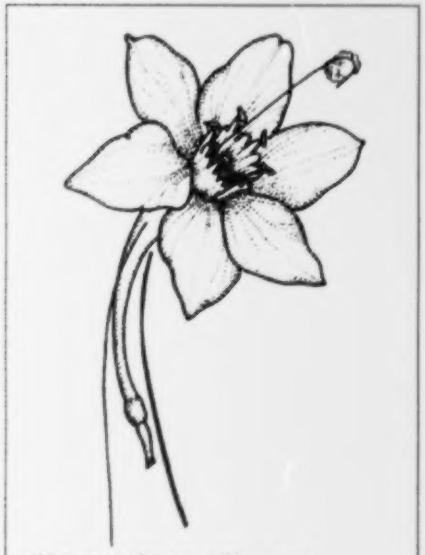
SPECIALIZED WIRING TECHNIQUES

Corsage made with stephanotis, roses, and ivy leaves

Some flowers require special wiring procedures because of their shape, size or fragile nature. Combinations of basic techniques and different wire sizes can be used to hold these unusual flowers in place.

Small pieces of moist cotton may be added to the base of the flower stalk or pushed down into the flower throat to prolong freshness. Spraying flowers with a clear spray like *John Henry Cherish* will also help keep flowers looking fresh longer.

Following are directions for wiring some of the special or delicate flowers that require additional wiring procedures.



Wiring an Amazon lily using the hook method

Amazon Lily (Eucharist Lily)

The Amazon lily is a white flower about 3 inches across. It is related to the daffodil and has a similar short cup. The flower is relatively expensive and has been traditionally prized for corsages or bouquets, especially at weddings.

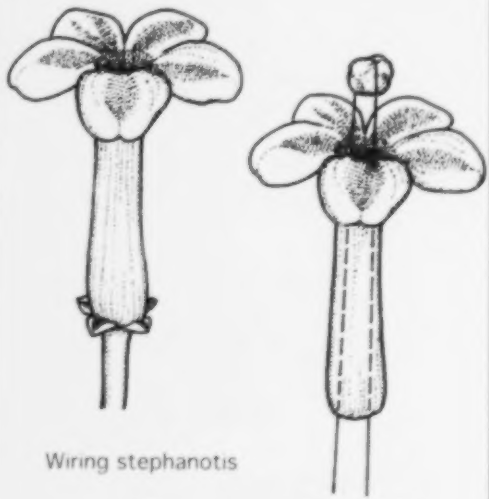
Use a #26 wire and the hook method. A small piece of moist cotton is usually inserted under the hook and pulled gently down into the shallow cup of the flower. The moist cotton helps keep the flower fresh and cushions the wire so it will not pull through the flower. The white cotton is not conspicuous in the finished product.

After this initial wiring one or more heavier wires can be laid alongside the #26 wire and taped to it for added wire strength.

Stephanotis

The delicate flowers of stephanotis easily separate from the calyx and flower stalk. So the first step is to gently break off the flower at the base of its tube. A wire will be attached directly to the flower tube. Bend a #26 wire like a hairpin and insert down through the tube from the top (Fig. 6-8). The wire ends are angled downward through the lower part of the tube.

Place a moist piece of cotton under the loop of the 'hairpin'. Gently pull the wire loop down into the flower tube until the cotton disappears. Tape over the wire and up slightly over the base of the flower tube.



Wiring stephanotis

Figure 6-8

A quicker method is to use stephanotis picks (Fig. 6-9). These are pretaped wires with a piece of cotton on the end. Soak the cotton ends in water. Separate the blossom from its calyx and insert the cotton from below through the hole at the bottom of the flower tube. This must be done gently, as the flower tubes split easily. Longer or heavier wires may be taped to the flower after the pick has been inserted.

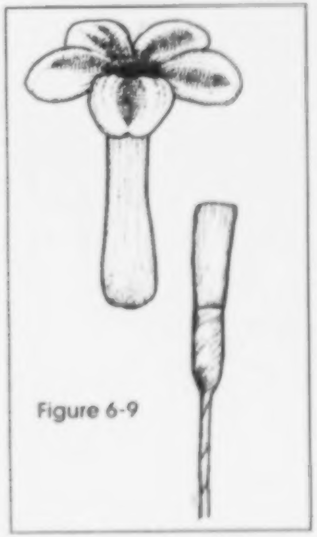


Figure 6-9

Hyacinth Florets

Wire individual hyacinth florets as described for stephanotis. Stephanotis picks are too large for the hyacinth flower tube and will usually split it.

Chains of hyacinth florets may be made by using the hook method for wiring the first floret, then pushing more up the wire from the bottom. The chains may be bent into loops if desired for a different effect that simulates ribbon.

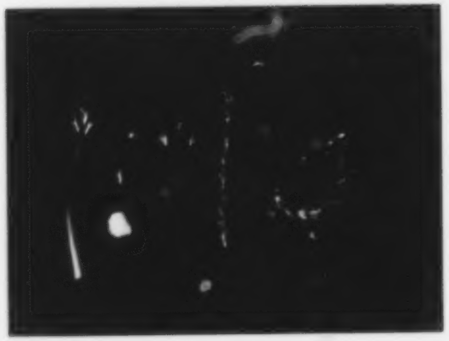
Cattleya Orchid

The cattleya orchid is large, often measuring 4 or 5 inches across. Because of its large fragile petals, at least two wires should be attached (Fig. 6-10). A heavier wire (such as a #22), usually taped and bent into a hook or into several loops, is used for support. A finer wire is then used to attach the flower to the heavier wire without damage.

The heavier wire is usually wrapped with white, lavender, or another color of floratape to cushion it and make it less conspicuous. The floratape should be the same color as the orchid. If moderate support is wanted, a hook can be bent into the end of the taped wire and placed behind the uppermost petal (Fig. 6-11). A fine wire will then be used to attach the orchid to the heavier taped wire. Several additional loops of taped wire can be added to support the wing-like petals if they seem floppy or in danger of becoming limp.

An additional step that some florists take is to place a piece of moist cotton at the base of the flower stem. This provides a limited amount of water to prolong freshness. Small, soft plastic water tubes with sponge inserts can be used instead for a larger water supply. However, they are bulky and are not usually necessary for the naturally long-lasting orchid.

An easy method of wiring a cattleya orchid with moderate support is to wrap a #22 wire with floratape. Then bend the end


Hyacinth florets

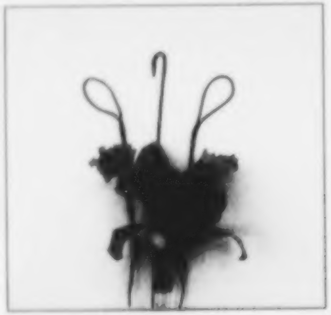


Figure 6-10

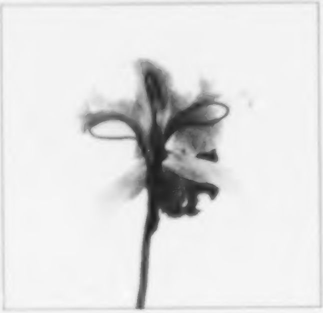


Figure 6-11

Wiring a cattleya orchid for support

Cattleya orchid showing details of flower structure

Cattleya Orchid *(continued)*

over to form a hook and place the hook behind the uppermost petal with the straight end of the wire coming down parallel with the flower stem. Pierce the flower stem just below the petals with a #26 wire just enough to secure the wire. Wrap this wire around the flower stem and larger taped wire.

A variation is to insert an untaped #24 wire up into the cut flower stem until it enters the flower. Then pierce a #24 wire to its midpoint through the flower stem, bending one side down and wrapping stem and wires together with the other side. This method really does not support the petals, however. They may need to be made more secure by backing them with tulle or with foliage worked into the corsage design.

If taped loops of wire are desired for additional support, they should be bent into loops a little smaller than the petals and then taped on to the wires that have already been attached by one of the previous methods. If a water tube is going to be used, various methods can be used to fasten the orchid to the tube. Because of the bulk and weight of the tube, it is unlikely that wire loops will be added. An unwrapped wire can simply be pierced through the upper stem to its midpoint. Then both halves can be bent down and taped to the tube.

Phalaenopsis Orchid

These delicate flowers require special care in the attachment of a wire so that it will not cut through the flower. Tape a #26 wire with white floratape and bend it into a hairpin shape (Fig. 6-12). Working from the front of the orchid, slip the ends of the 'hairpin' through the natural openings in the throat of the orchid. Then gently draw the hairpin down until the U-bend rests securely between the arched column and fringed lip petal. Finish by taping the wires and stem together.

Phalaenopsis petals easily become limp. A moist piece of cotton at the base of the flower stem may prolong freshness. Taped loops of #26 wire can also be added behind the two largest petals to provide additional support (Fig. 6-13).

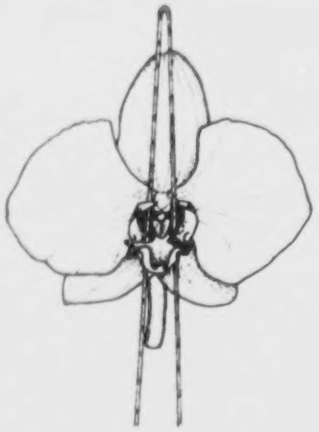


Figure 6-12 Wiring a phalaenopsis

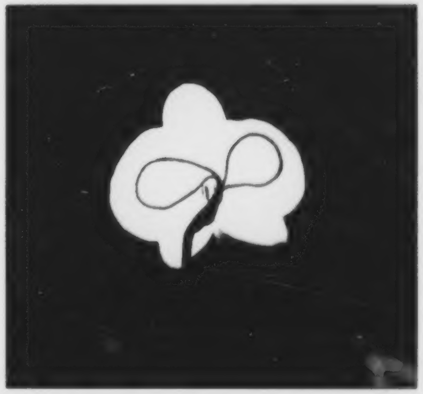


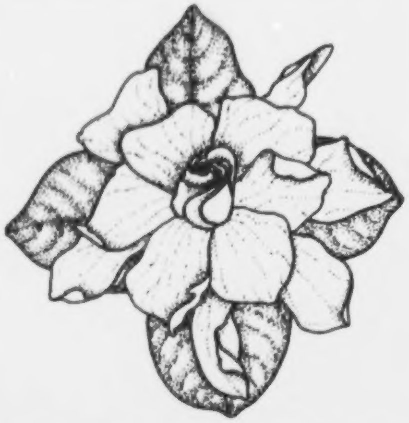
Figure 6-13 Back view of phalaenopsis

Gardenia

Gardenias are very fragile and easily turn yellowish. Try to minimize this by keeping the work area and petal surface misted. Also work as quickly as possible so the flowers are not exposed to room temperature for a long period of time.

Gardenias are usually packaged and shipped with plastic or cardboard collars. These may be left on the finished corsage for continued support. A collar can also be made from a round piece of cardboard with criss-crossed slits in the center and several gardenia leaves stapled to the outside (Fig. 6-14).

If you are working with a gardenia that has no collar, first remove the bulky green calyx. Pierce two #26 wires through the flower tube at right angles to each other. Bend them down, wrapping one of the wires around the other three and the stem. Tape the stem and add a gardenia collar made as described above.


A gardenia backed by leaves for support

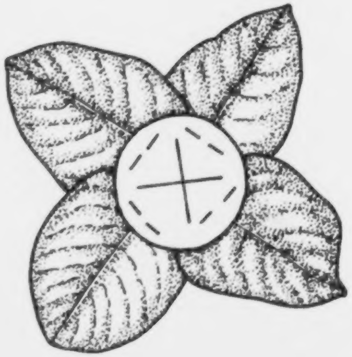


Figure 6-14
Back view of a cardboard collar

Football Mum

Its size and number of petals make a football mum heavy. The wiring method used must be able to support this weight. First cut the flower stem to a length of 2 inches. Note that this is about one inch longer than the stem left on smaller chrysanthemums.

Insert a #18 wire up through the bottom of the hollow stem until it is firmly anchored in the head of the flower. Pierce a #24 wire through the stem just below the flower head (Fig. 6-15). Pull the wire halfway through and bend the ends down parallel to the stem. Tape the wires and stem into a single unit.

Figure 6-15 Wiring a football mum

oasis
Floral Adhesive

Floral adhesive

Plant shine products

petal proofer
clear life
glitter glue

Aerosol products - adhesives and surface sealers

SPECIAL TREATMENTS FOR WIRED AND TAPED FLOWERS

Various products are available for specialized care:– to prolong freshness, prevent petal shattering, add a glossy shine, or repair damage in flowers and foliages that have been wired and taped for corsages. Sometimes homemade preparations work just as well. No matter how careful you are, occasions will arise when you will need to apply one of these treatments to protect or repair the plant materials.

Glue/Water Dip

A mixture of half white glue and half water can be used as a dip for delicate flowers which turn yellow easily (lily of the valley) or foliage tips which wilt easily (fern leaves). The mixture dries quickly to form a transparent barrier to water loss.

Aerosol and Pump Sprays

Commercially available sprays like *Stay Fresh* or *Cherish* form an invisible covering over the plant material which prevents contact with the air and retards water loss.

Plant Shine Products

Plant shine compounds like *Green-Glo* are available as dips, mists or aerosols. They can be applied to foliage to reduce water loss. This clear, shiny coating also makes the leaves glossy. This may enhance some plant material but may be undesirable in situations where a more textured look is wanted.

Water Mist

Clear water in a misting bottle may be sprayed on flowers and foliage while they are being worked on. The fine mist will reduce water loss and provide a slight cooling from the evaporation. Misting the finished corsage before it is bagged or boxed will help it remain fresh and crisp. Most corsage ribbons will not be damaged by a light mist.

Floral Adhesives

The petals of some flowers shatter easily. A floral adhesive like *Oasis Glue* may be brushed on the back of petals near their point of attachment to hold them on. The glue can also be used to reattach a petal that has fallen off, as is often the case with lily petals.

Mum Mist and other spray adhesives can be applied to the back of mums and other flowers to help hold the petals on. Some people drip a little candle wax at the base of the petals to accomplish the same thing. In anemones the hardened wax will also retard the opening of the petals into a reflexed position.

Paints

A light coat of white floral spray paint over a slightly browned or yellowed gardenia or white orchid may restore a fresher look. Other colors of floral spray paint may be used on fresh materials to produce a color that is not available naturally or to slightly alter a flower color for a special effect.

BOWS

Many corsages include a bow. The bow should be blended into the design so that it enhances the flowers and does not stand out by itself. Thus a corsage bow is less full than a bow designed to be featured by itself, such as a bow on a package. The loops may vary in length but are generally about 2 inches long. The loops are held together by a fine wire which is often concealed by a small loop of the ribbon. Streamers may be made by one of the following ways:

- leaving a length of ribbon at the beginning and end of the bow-making process,
- making one of the loops much larger and then cutting it to form two streamers, or
- adding a strip of ribbon to the bow before it is wired.

Single-faced #3 satin ribbon is most commonly used for corsage bows. The shiny side is usually placed outward. This requires twisting the ribbon over after each loop is made. Bows made from narrower width ribbon are also very appropriate. Wider ribbon can be cut lengthwise to produce ribbon of a more desirable width.

Corsage ribbon is available in a wide range of colors and fabrics, such as velvet, lace, burlap, cotton and metallic. The texture and character of the ribbon is also affected by the print (plaid, polka-dot, striped or figured) or plain surface of the ribbon.

The bow on this wrist corsage provides textural and color contrast to the flowers.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

MAKING A CORSAGE BOW WITH STREAMERS

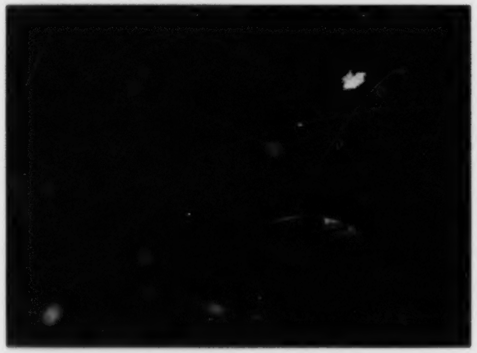
Make several bows according to the following directions until you feel reasonably confident and satisfied with the product.

To Make a Bow
(directions for a right-handed person)

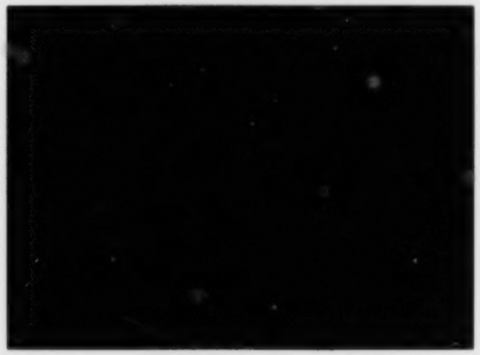
1. Cut a piece of #3 satin ribbon to a length of 5 inches. Set this strip of ribbon aside for later use. Cut another piece of #3 ribbon 1 1/2 yards long. Cut a 9-inch piece of #28 florist wire.

2. Wrap the end of the ribbon around your left thumb to form a loose loop over the thumb with the shiny side up. The remainder of the ribbon will be coming toward you with the dull side up. Hold loop between thumb and forefinger.

(continued)



Measure and cut the ribbon



Make a loose ribbon loop

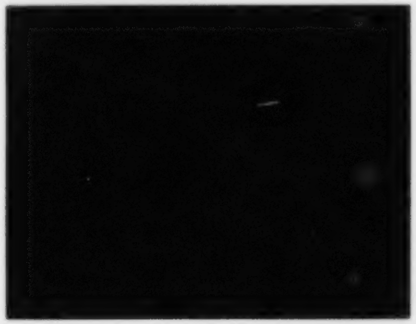
(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

To Make a Bow *(continued)*

3. Pinch the ribbon together under your thumb using thumb and forefinger so that the length of ribbon coming toward you narrows into a crease where it comes off the loop.

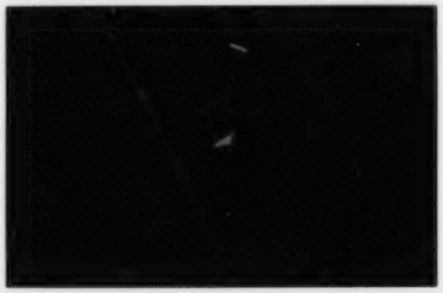
4. Make a sharp twist in the ribbon so that the shiny side is up. Use forefinger to hold ribbon in this position.



5. Form a 2-inch loop by bringing the ribbon back to and under the thumb.

6. Lift your thumb enough to let the ribbon in under it. The ribbon length is now going away from you with the dull side up.

7. Again pinch the ribbon under your thumb and twist it so the shiny side is up. Make another 2-inch loop on the opposite side from the first loop. Open thumb and forefinger just enough to hold this loop as you did the first one.



8. Continue making loops on opposite sides by first twisting the ribbon so that the shiny side is up, holding all loops between thumb and forefinger. Loops can vary in size (the smaller ones should be made first), and you can twist them as they are made so that they fan out slightly.

9. Pick up the 5-inch piece of ribbon you cut at the beginning of the exercise. Hold it in the middle and feed it under your thumb and index finger with shiny side facing forward. This piece of ribbon forms the streamers.

10. Without letting go of any of the loops, slide the #28 wire under your thumb and over all the gathered bases of the loops. Pull wire to its midpoint and then bend it so the two halves come together.

11. You may need to turn your right hand over for the next step so you can see what you are doing. Pinch the wires together tightly, close to the ribbon, and twist sharply several times so that the loops are firmly held. If the wire is not tight enough, the loops will come undone. A tight wire will cause the loops to stand up giving a fullness to the bow. About four loops on one side and five on the other will make a very good corsage bow.

(continued)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

To Make Additional Streamers

1. Cut a piece of ribbon twice as long as the desired length of the streamers.

2. Bend and tuck the ribbon piece in the middle so that the two halves come down at a 45° angle to each other, with a triangular point at the tuck and the shiny side toward you on both halves.

3. Wrap a #28 wire tightly around the tuck about 1/4 inch from the point and twist the wire tightly.

4. Cut ends of streamers with ribbon shears at a sharp angle.

5. The streamers can be added separately to the corsage by taping them in, or they can first be attached to the bow with floratape.

Adding streamers to the bow

To Make Net Tufts

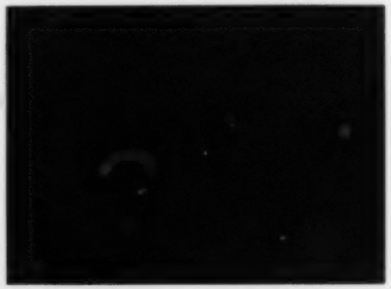
1. Cut two squares of waterproof netting (tulle) from a 6-inch-wide bolt of netting. Lay one on top of the other.

2. Pinch both layers of netting together in the center.

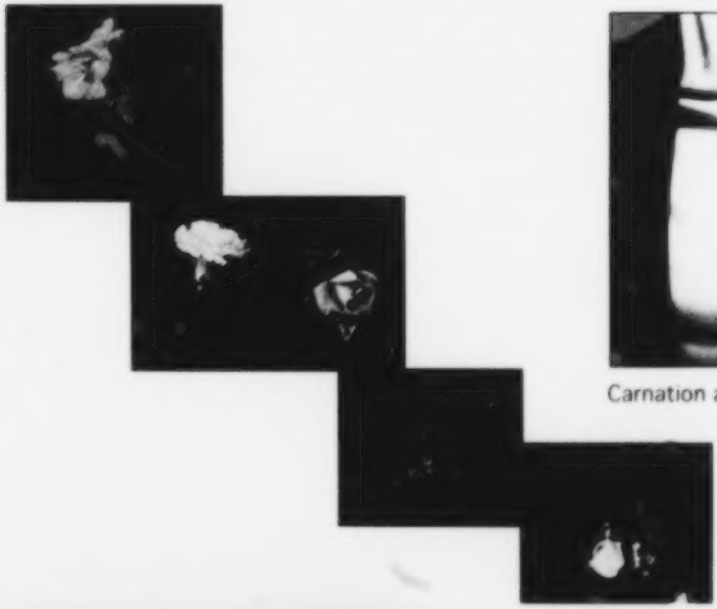
3. Then gather the net pieces together so that all four corners stand up to create the puff.

4. Twist a #28 wire around the pinched center and secure the puff.

5. Tape the wire tightly around the base of the tulle and down the stem.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE



Carnation and ivy leaves

Creative boutonniere

Rose, stephanotis, and camellia

[illegible]

Traditionally boutonnieres have been single flowers worn in the buttonhole of a man's lapel. The simplest form of a boutonniere is a flower, such as a rose, carnation or orchid, broken off the flower stem and pinned on with a small black-headed pin.

Flowers for boutonnieres may be wired and taped to provide a more finished look to the stem and to give some control over the position of the flower. One or more small pieces of foliage may be added for interest. If the foliage is wired, its position can be more carefully regulated.

Boutonnieres may consist of more than one blossom, such as three stephanotis or even a small collection of different flowers. There has been a recent trend toward more complex boutonnieres. Even though they are much smaller than a corsage, they still give a designer the opportunity to be more creative.

Flowers chosen for boutonnieres should coordinate with the color of the man's clothing and reflect the appropriate formality for the event. Wedding boutonnieres should be coordinated with the other flowers, usually by having the boutonnieres consist of one or more flowers used in the bouquets.

Boutonnieres are usually pinned on the **left** lapel of a man's jacket (to your right as you face the wearer).

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Constructing Boutonnieres

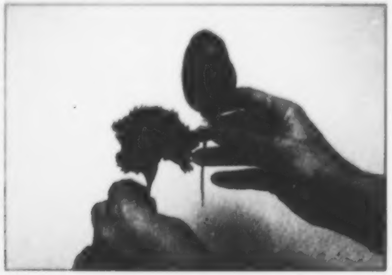
Single Flower Boutonniere

Materials:
1 standard carnation
3 salal leaves
#24 and #28 florist wire
floral tape

1. Wire and tape the carnation with #24 wire using the pierce method.

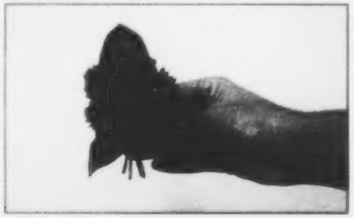
2. Wire and tape the salal leaves with #28 wire using the stitch method.

3. Line the carnation up in front of a single salal leaf.



4. Add two additional leaves under the flower so that the foliage creates a triangular outline around the flower.

5. Curve the lower leaves outward to help conceal the mechanics.



Composite Flower Boutonniere

Materials:
1 standard carnation
1 sweetheart rose
3 pieces leatherleaf fern
#24 and #28 florist wire
floral tape

1. Wire and tape both carnation and rose with #24 wire using the pierce method. Wire the three leatherleaf fern pieces with #28 wire using the stitch method.

2. Insert the wire from the rose through the center of the carnation. Pull the wires from the rose down until the flower rests among the carnation petals. Tape the bundle of wires together. (**A**)

3. Add a piece of leatherleaf as shown and tape into position. (**B**)

4. Complete the boutonniere by adding two additional pieces of leatherleaf as shown. Cut wire bundle about 1 1/2 inches long and tape over the cut end. (**C**)

(continued)

Finished boutonniere pinned on lapel

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

Ribbon-Wrapped Stem

A decorative finish for a single-stemmed boutonniere involves wrapping it with satin ribbon.

Materials:
single-flowered boutonniere
6-inch piece of #3 satin ribbon

1. Position a piece of #3 ribbon on a downward angle at the middle of the stem. Wrap the ribbon around the stem down to the end, overlapping enough to conceal the tape. (**A**)

2. Wrap the ribbon once more to create a tube extending beyond the stem end.

3. Bend the ribbon tube up against the stem and begin wrapping the ribbon upward. Catch the ribbon tube in the wrapping process to create a smooth finish over the stem end. (**B**)

4. Continue wrapping the ribbon to the top of the stem. Then make a large loop of ribbon around the stem and pull the cut end of the ribbon through the loop to form a knot. (**C**)

5. Trim the end of the ribbon to 1/2 inch in length.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

Creative Boutonnieres

1. Construct one or more boutonnieres that are different from the ones already suggested. Consider the following variations:

   A. Use 3 or more flowers of the same type or a collection of mixed flowers.

   B. Use different flowers like stephanotis, tulip, dendrobium orchids, or hyacinth florets.

   C. Use unusual foliage such as small spider plant leaves, ming fern, or succulents.

   D. Finish off the boutonniere in different ways like spreading out individual taped wires as if they were stems or bending the taped wire bundle into a curl by wrapping it around a pencil.

2. Pin the boutonniere on a person's left shoulder and discuss your reaction to the following questions:

   - What jacket and what occasion would the boutonniere be suitable for?
   - Is the boutonniere larger or smaller than you think appropriate?

A creative boutonniere made from a single tulip with petals reflexed backward. A piece of Boston sword fern backs the flower, lightly decorated with loops of thin gold wire.

A three-flower boutonniere made from stephanotis blossoms and ivy leaves. Classic boutonniere suitable for a formal wedding.

An unusual boutonniere made from several different succulents.

Single gardenia enhanced with rolled rose petals

[redacted]

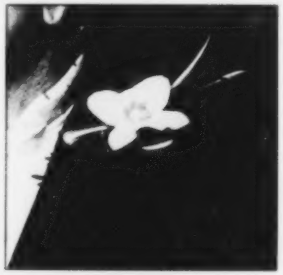
SINGLE-FLOWER CORSAGES

Single-flower corsages are designed to feature one special flower, such as an orchid or gardenia. If a standard carnation is chosen, the corsage will be relatively small, but if the featured flower is a cattleya orchid, the corsage will be quite large.

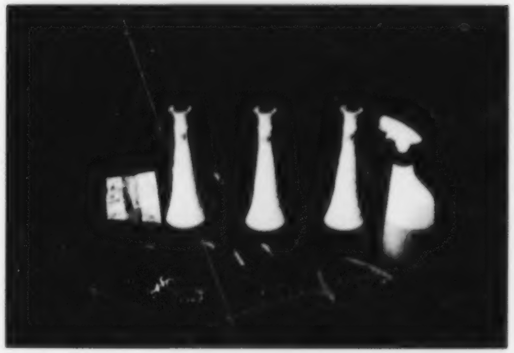
Single-flower corsages can be enhanced by foliage, ribbon, tulle or other accessories. The ribbon is normally placed at the base of the flower and should not be out of scale by being overly dominant or too small. Tufts of netting (tulle) are sometimes used behind flowers to set them off with a delicate background. The tulle will also give some support to large petals, such as those found on orchids.

The bottom of the corsage should be wrapped with tape and cut off to a length that is relatively short and inconspicuous. Tape over the cut end so there are no exposed wires to snag clothing.

Easter corsage featuring a single narcissus



Single Amazon lily



CORSAGE KIT

Supplies for making corsages should be assembled in one place so they are readily available while the corsages are being constructed. They consist of the following:

#24, #26, and #28 florist wire
floratape
corsage pins
corsage bags or boxes
mist bottle filled with water
scissors
wire cutters
sharp knife

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Single-Flower Corsages

A. Make a **single carnation corsage** using the following procedure.

Materials:

1 standard carnation
3 small pieces of leatherleaf fern
1 1/2 yards of #3 satin ribbon
corsage kit

1. Wire and tape a standard carnation using #24 wire and the pierce method.

2. Wire three small pieces of leatherleaf using the modified wrap-around method.

3. Make one bow from the #3 satin ribbon. Loops should be about 2 inches long.

4. Place the smallest piece of leatherleaf behind the carnation so that it extends about 1 inch above the flower.

5. Use floratape to bind the foliage and flower together. Use only a couple of turns of the floratape as each new piece is added.

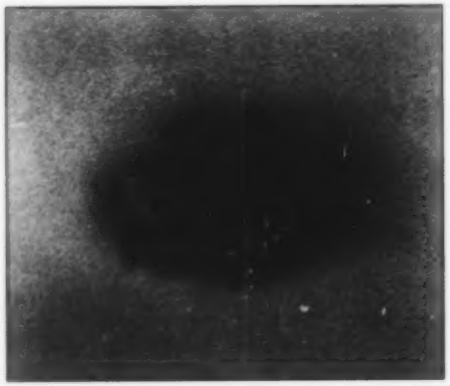
6. Add the bow in front of the flower and just underneath it, securing the wire to the other stems with a few turns of floratape.

7. Add the second piece of leatherleaf between the loops of the bow and off to one side of the flower.

8. Add the third piece of leatherleaf between the ribbon loops on the other side.

9. Cut all the wires off about 1 1/2 inches below the flower and tape over the cut end.

10. Bend ribbon loops and foliage pieces, arranging them into a pleasing design.

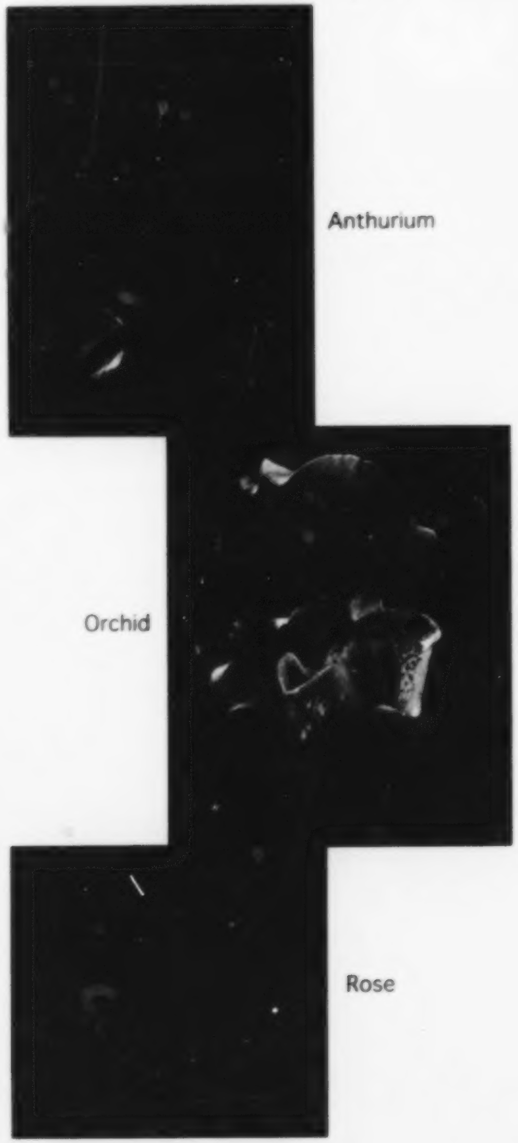


11. Mist the corsage lightly with water.

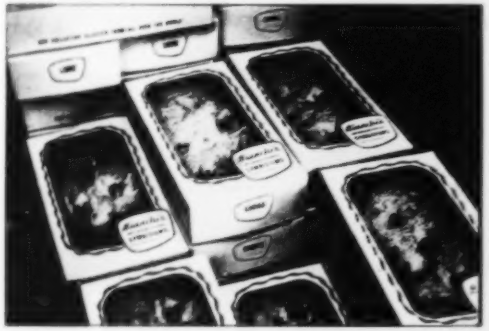
12. Add two corsage pins, place in corsage bag or box, and store in cooler.

(continued)

Other Flowers Suitable for Single-Flower Corsages



Cymbidium orchids growing in a commercial greenhouse



Individual cymbidium blossoms cushioned on orchid grass to avoid bruising during shipment

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Make a corsage containing a **single cymbidium orchid** using the following directions.

Materials:

1 cymbidium orchid
5 pieces of sprengeri
1 1/2 yards of picot ribbon
corsage kit

1. Wire and tape a cymbidium orchid using two #26 wires pierced through the flower stalk at right angles just below the flower. (If other flowers like cattleya orchids, phalaenopsis orchids, Amazon lilies or gardenias are used, select a wiring technique appropriate to those flowers. See the specialized wiring techniques described earlier.)

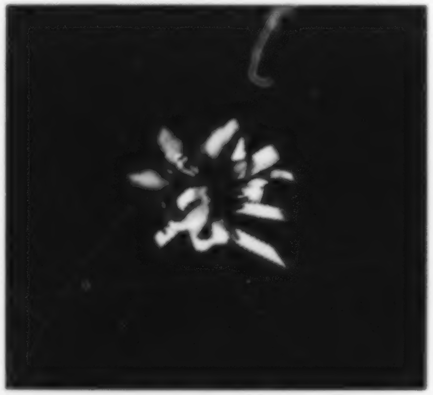
2. Wire five pieces of sprengeri using #28 wire and the wrap-around method. These should be of various sizes that are in scale with the flower.

3. Make a bow with two streamers from 1 1/2 yards of picot ribbon.

4. Place one of the small pieces of sprengeri behind the orchid and tape. Add a second piece slightly below the first and a little to the right, then tape.

5. Add the bow by taping it below the flower.

6. Add the remaining three pieces of sprengeri below the flower, arching forward through the bow.



7. Adjust the flower and foliage pieces if necessary.

8. Mist, add pins, and package.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

C. Make one or more single-flower corsages using **specialty** flowers. Consider the following three examples.

1. A phalaenopsis orchid is featured in this corsage, creating an elegant look. The narrow ribbon bow does not overwhelm the delicate detailing of the orchid. (See directions on page 152 for wiring a phalaenopsis orchid.)

2. The cattleya orchid, with its large, showy blossom, has been a favorite for many years. Because of its size, it requires minimal decoration. Puffs of tulle and a printed cotton ribbon are used here to enhance the flower's frilly appearance. (See directions on page 151 for wiring a cattleya orchid.)

3. The decorated football mum corsage is sold predominantly for high school and college football games. It is highly decorated with symbols and colors representative of the school's football team. (See directions on page 153 for wiring a football mum.)

TWO-FLOWER CORSAGE

A very popular and relatively simple corsage style is one that features two flowers. Because of their size, roses and carnations work well for this type of corsage. The smaller flower is usually positioned slightly above the larger one. The larger flower usually faces slightly forward and establishes the focal area of the corsage.

This two-rose corsage was made with a Christmas theme. Shiny holly leaves and berries along with a metallic ribbon bow give good textural contrast with the velvety rose petals.

SINGLE-SPRAY CORSAGE

Single-spray corsages contain more than one flower arranged in a triangular design with the bow incorporated into the lower area. There is a gradual progression in size from smaller flowers at the top to larger ones at the base.

The lower part of the corsage is considered to be the focal area. There should be closer spacing of materials in this area than higher up, but never let them appear crowded. The bow is also located here. While it enhances the focal area, it should not be the focal point. A larger flower placed over the bow is the center of interest.

The bottom area can be finished off with foliage that comes forward or arches slightly downward. The flowers gradually face sideways as you go to either side of the corsage. Leaves wired by the hairpin method can be rolled away from the focal area to cover mechanics and give a rhythmic feeling to the piece.

Depth is created in a single-spray corsage by the gradual thickening of the corsage toward the focal area. Leaving some space around the flowers contributes to depth, as does the in-and-out placement of the filler flowers.

The corsage should be relatively flat on the back or arched slightly to conform to the shape of the shoulder. All wiring and taping must be securely done so the placements stay in position and give a well constructed look.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Single-Spray Corsage

Materials:

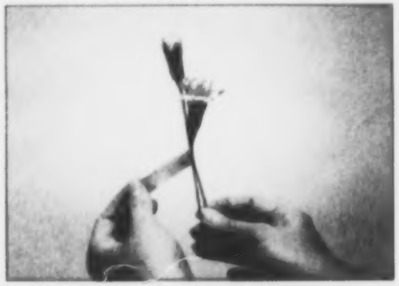
5 miniature carnations of varying sizes
9 stems of annual statice
7 ivy leaves of assorted sizes
1 corsage bow
corsage kit

1. Wire and tape the following:

- the carnations using the pierce method
- the stems of annual statice using the hairpin method
- the ivy leaves by the hairpin method

2. Make the bow.

3. Position the two smallest carnations as shown with the smaller flower slightly above the larger one. Tape the two flowers together with floral tape, starting just below the larger flower.



4. Add the third and fourth flowers to create a zigzag, stair-step pattern. Notice the second flower is angled slightly to the right, the third to the left, and the fourth to the right.

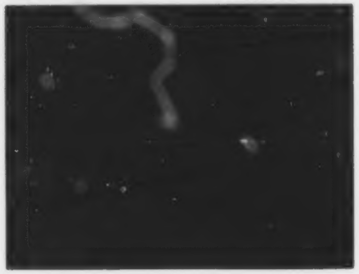
5. Bend the largest flower forward at a 90° angle before attaching it to the corsage. Place this flower underneath the third and fourth flowers, facing directly forward. This large flower represents the heart of the focal area.

6. Add pieces of statice between the carnation placements along the triangular outline. Smaller pieces should be used at the tip of the corsage, larger ones at the focal area.

7. Add ivy leaves as a backing to reinforce the triangular shape and conceal the taped wires. The foliage also provides a contrasting color and texture to the flowers.

7.

8. To complete the corsage, add a bow under the largest flower. Bend the bow forward and join its wire to the stem of the corsage. Notice that the bow enhances the focal point but does not overwhelm it.



9. Trim the stem of the finished corsage to 2 inches in length. Cover the cut end with floral tape. Insert two corsage pins into the stem where they are handy to pin the corsage on the wearer. This view from the back shows the triangular shape and the neat construction of a well-made corsage.

A double-spray corsage in a Valentines Day theme is bent into a crescent shape.

DOUBLE-SPRAY CORSAGE

A double-spray corsage is slightly larger than a single-spray corsage and consists of two parts with the focal area near the middle. It is sometimes called a double-ended corsage. The final product may be bent into a crescent or S-curve if desired.

Special precautions must be taken to avoid making the corsage too large. Another potential problem is the development of a large stem of wires. This will hold the corsage away from the wearer, causing it to rock on the shoulder.

Since more placements are involved than in a single spray corsage, the designer has more opportunity to develop a stylish piece with rhythmic flow. It is important to select relatively small materials which have good size variation.

In the following exercise a special technique will be introduced which allows the designer to create tailored size placements from ordinary larger materials. A standard carnation can be taken apart (feathered) into various sized segments for individual wiring and taping. Enough feathered carnation segments can be obtained from two standard carnations to make a double-spray corsage.

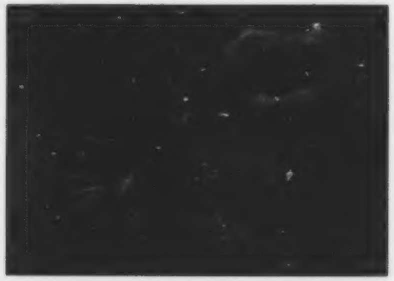
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Double-Spray Corsage Using Feathered Carnations

Materials:

2 standard carnations
1 stem of boxwood
1 stem of baby's breath
1 corsage bow
corsage kit

1.

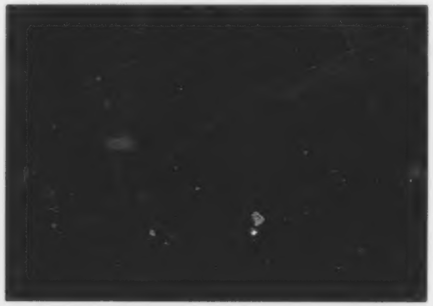


1. Split the two carnations into nine parts of various sizes. Pull the flowers apart, grasping the petals firmly but gently. A knife may be helpful in splitting the calyx.

2. Wrap a few turns of floral tape around the petal bundle at the area where the petals narrow.

3. Use a fine #28 wire. Wrap it over the tape around the bundle two or three times before bending it down to form the stem. The tape prevents the wire from cutting through the petals.

(continued)



(continued)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Double-Spray Corsage *(continued)*

4. Tape over the base of the flower and down the wire stem. Be sure to tape high enough to support the petals in an upright fashion.

5. Wire and tape the following materials for the double-spray corsage:

- 9 feathered carnation pieces
- 9 small pieces of baby's breath
- 8 small pieces of boxwood
- 1 corsage bow

6. Starting with the smallest piece of boxwood, carnation and baby's breath, place the boxwood behind the carnation so the tip extends slightly beyond the flower. Then position the baby's breath just below and slightly to the right of the carnation. Tape these three pieces together as shown with two or three turns of the floral tape.

6.

7. Repeat this sequence, adding slightly larger pieces of boxwood, carnation, and baby's breath in stair-step fashion. Add one more piece of boxwood before taping. Notice the linear grouping of alternating materials that is created.

Set this piece aside and make another identical linear grouping.

8. Bend the second linear grouping backward as shown. Align the stems of the two groupings to allow 1 1/2 inches of space between the bottom flowers. Tape the stems tightly together.

9. Add the corsage bow in the 1 1/2-inch space with the attached wire joining the corsage stem. Sink the bow in snugly to the point where the stems join together. Tape the bow in place.

10. Add the remaining flowers to the central area of the corsage over the bow. These placements together with the bow create a focal area. Some of the flowers are angled slightly to the sides instead of forward to give the corsage depth. Notice how the flowers join the two linear groupings and create one continuous flowing line.

11. Add boxwood and baby's breath between the central flowers and loops of the bow. Because all parts of the corsage have been wired and taped, the finished product can be bent into various shapes. In the example shown, the corsage is curved to form an S.

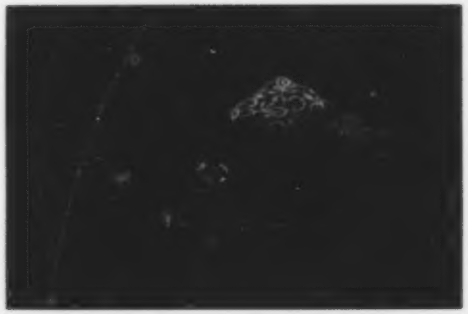
Wristlet of miniature gardenias and spider plant

WRISTLETS

Small corsages can be adapted for wearing on the wrist. A corsage can be converted to a wristlet by attaching it to a commercially available wrist band. One type is a white elastic band attached to a flat metal mechanism with bendable prongs. These four prongs are bent around the corsage stem in two locations to secure the design to the elastic band.

Another way of creating a wristlet is to make a "bracelet" by cutting a plastic ring (on which floral tape was wound) and wrapping it with satin ribbon. The ribbon can be secured using hot glue. A bow can be glued to the ring and used as the base for gluing on flowers and foliage. A product like Oasis Floral Adhesive will not damage the fresh plant material.

Attaching corsage to elastic wrist band


Wristlet of dendrobium orchids and roses

Cymbidium orchid wristlet accessorized with pearls. Flowers are attached to round lace doily; wristlet is attached with plastic straps.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Wristlet

Materials:

nylon tulle
floral adhesive
assortment of small flowers and foliage
#28 wire

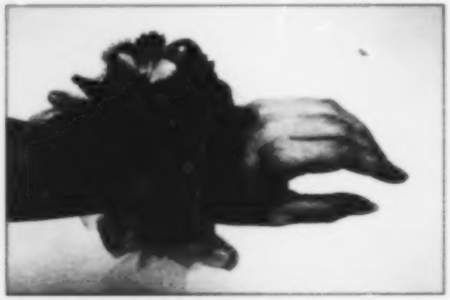
1. Cut a one-yard piece of nylon tulle off the bolt and set it aside. Then, working directly from the roll of tulle, gather the tulle into a puff in a manner similar to making a bow.

Make 10 to 12 small loops of tulle on each side to create a full puff. Use the one-yard segment of tulle to tie the puff in the center as a ribbon bow would be wired. The resulting two streamers will be used to tie the wristlet around the arm.

2. Glue fresh flowers into the puff using Oasis Floral Adhesive. Apply a small amount of adhesive to the stem of each flower before positioning it between the layers of tulle. Notice how the fingers of the right hand are used to separate the tulle as the flower is inserted.

3. Add small flowers and foliages throughout the puff in the same manner to create a rounded shape. Use lightweight materials in the design to prevent rocking of the wristlet on the arm.

4. The finished corsage is tied around the wrist using the long tulle streamers. This creates a small bow on the underside of the arm. The completed wristlet is soft, lightweight, and comfortable to wear.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

FALCON CORSAGE

A special large corsage may be created to sit on top of the shoulder. It is made from three cascading parts which trail down the back, arm and front. Because of its resemblance to the claws of a falcon, it is called a falcon corsage.

Holding such a large floral piece in place takes several corsage pins. However, it is well balanced and quite stable. A falcon corsage is highly visible from the back of the wearer.

A potpourri corsage

POTPOURRI CORSAGE

A potpourri corsage can be made from a few small blossoms and assorted foliages. They are arranged in a rounded shape with the taped wires spread out to simulate the natural stems of a mixed bouquet. The overall size should be kept relatively small.

Baby's breath, small pieces of statice, chrysanthemum buds, shattered carnations and rolled rose petals are possible components of the potpourri. Small pieces of sprengeri or plumosus will contribute to the delicate, informal look.

In a corsage of this style, the wired flower and foliage stems radiate out from a common point like a miniature bouquet. Taping them together will be limited to a narrow area just under the point where the wires converge. This taped area will be concealed by the lower flowers in the corsage. Individual taped wires are allowed to fan out below the corsage as part of the design.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Potpourri Corsage

Materials:

2 miniature carnations
1 full-blown rose
1 large piece of baby's breath
1 stem of statice
1 large piece of sprengeri
corsage kit
#28 wire

1. Remove some petals from the rose. Roll them up, using two or three petals together to make a miniature rose bud. Wrap a #28 wire around the base of the petals (wrap-around method) and tape securely. Make five of these rose petal buds.

2. Wire and tape the following:

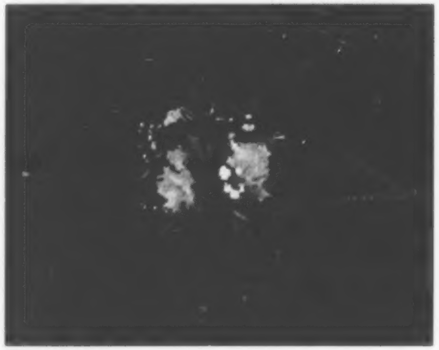
- three miniature carnations (pierce method)
- five small pieces of baby's breath (modified wrap-around method)
- five pieces of statice (wrap-around method)
- five pieces of sprengeri (wrap-around method)

3. Gather the three carnations together, joining them at a common point so that they can be spread out equally from each other. Start taping the stems together just below where the wires are joined and stop one inch further down. This will leave the lower ends of the wires free so that they can be fanned out.

4. Add rolled rose buds, distributing them uniformly to create a generally rounded shape. Some placements should be bent down from the point of common attachment to create a full form and help hide the taped area.

5. Add sprengeri, statice and baby's breath. Distribute each uniformly and tape them in at the same point as the other stems after each two or three placements are added.

6. Adjust individual placements to create a one-sided bouquet that is somewhat flat on the back. This corsage will not have a bow.



Top view of the corsage

7. Clip off the wires about 1 1/2 inches below the taped area and fan them out to look like the natural stems of the potpourri of flowers and foliage.

Fresh flowers can be attached to shoes using techniques similar to those of corsage construction. The short, taped stem of the corsage is bent backward to create a clamp and is then attached by it to the toe or heel of the shoe.

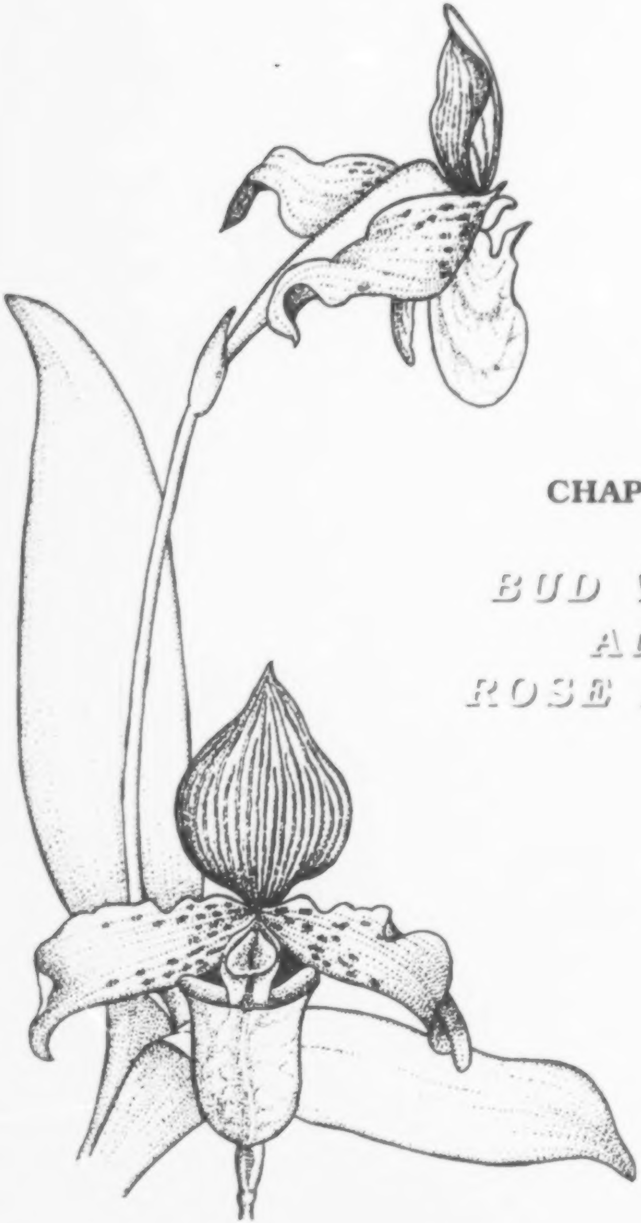
A fully open rose is used with petite sprigs of lily-of-the-valley for a soft, romantic look. The taped stems are spread slightly apart to resemble natural flower stems.

A purse corsage is an attractive way to display flowers.

A slide series that provides complementary material to what is covered in this chapter is:

- **Corsages and Boutonnieres** (catalog #2212S)

Also available from Ohio Agricultural Education Curriculum Materials Service.

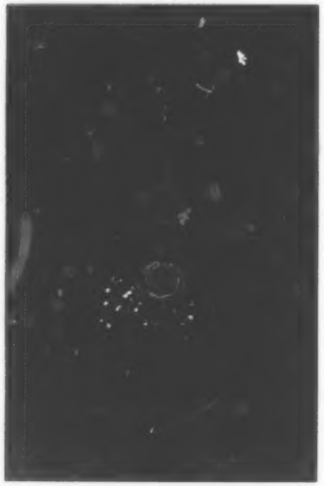


CHAPTER 7

BUD VASES AND ROSE BOWLS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Single rose in a bud vase



Two roses and baby's breath in a bud vase with yucca foliage forming a strong vertical line. Galax leaves at rim of vase.

BUD VASES AND ROSE BOWLS

Bud vases and rose bowls are used to display one or a few flowers in a simple but tasteful way. Customers looking for a relatively inexpensive floral piece that is in water and ready to display often select bud vases and rose bowls. They take up little space, making them suitable on office desks and in hospital rooms. They also can be used individually or in small groupings on food tables for a simple floral accent.

BUD VASES

A bud vase is a tall narrow container with a small neck which can hold one blossom or a small grouping of flowers and foliage. A typical example is a single rose in a bud vase with a piece of ivy and a bow. The plant material is held in place by the narrow neck of the container. Two or more flowers can also be placed comfortably in a bud vase.

Bud vases are made of many different materials, including glass and plastic. Vases may be clear or opaque, plain or patterned, coarse textured or metallic. When flower and foliage stems show, they form a visual extension of the plant material above the vase. The type of container chosen should be harmonious with the color and type of flowers used.

Flowers for Bud Vases

Many flowers are suitable for bud vases. They must be in good proportion to the size of the vase. Also, the stem should be long enough to insert deeply into the vase while still holding the flower well above the rim of the container. Flowers with thick stems may not fit well into very narrow-necked bud vases, especially if several flowers are involved or foliage is added.

Flowers with very delicate stems, like sweet peas, can be displayed effectively in small vases with narrow necks. The stems support each other and create the appearance of a fresh-cut bouquet. Mixed bunches of flowers as well as displays of one type of flower can be arranged in vases of many sizes.

Flowers frequently used in bud vases include:

- Baby's breath
- Carnations
- Daffodils
- Dendrobium orchids
- Iris
- Pompon mums
- Roses
- Statice

A delicate, fragrant bouquet of sweet peas

Foliage for Bud Vases

One or more pieces of foliage will complement the beauty of the flowers and help hold them in place. Foliage with small leaves in an alternating or spiral leaf attachment is preferable to foliage with a definite front and back like leatherleaf fern. Leaves should not be overly large or heavy in appearance.

The foliage choice can have a significant effect on the overall impact of a bud vase. For instance, adding an old or damaged piece of leatherleaf fern to a bud vase containing flowers that are fresh and nice will seriously detract from them.

Here are a few suggestions of the more interesting foliages and how to use some of them.

Boxwood
Eucalyptus
Galax
Huckleberry
Lycopodium
Myrtle
Plumosus
Ruscus
Scotch broom
Sprengeri

1. Select a narrow vertical section of myrtle.

2. Use sprengeri or plumosus for a soft arching effect.

3. Place galax leaves near the rim of the vase, providing a horizontal line of opposition and adding depth to the design.

Accessories

Bows and other accessories are optional but are used often. Use a long piece of wire to fasten the bow when you make it. Do not twist the wire around the neck of the vase; instead, insert it into the bud vase with the flower stems. A bow may enhance the color scheme or may even help establish the theme for a particular occasion. The bow should be approximately the same size as a corsage bow. It should have at last two streamers 3 to 4 inches in length. Cut the ends of the streamers at a sharp angle for a more graceful look.

Accessories like glittered branches, artificial fruit, hearts, shamrocks and butterflies can be added. A heavy wire or wooden stake may be attached to the accessories if they are not on stems long enough to position them where they are wanted.

A vase of delicate Japanese anemones accented with a narrow bow made from wired ribbon.

The combination of small anthurium, Chinese evergreen foliage, and lichen pieces gives a clean, distinctive look.

Apricot roses and pieces of cockscomb create color harmony. The foliage includes euonymus and ivy.

Cosmos, celosia, and ornamental grass are segmented to highlight their individual artistic qualities.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Bud Vases

1. Make a rose bud vase using two roses and several pieces of baby's breath or feverfew. Cut the first rose so it is one-and-a-half times the height of the bud vase. Remove thorns and foliage on the lower half of the stem. Insert it in the bud vase. Cut the second rose so it stands about 2 inches above the rim of the bud vase. Leave one or two rose leaves on the second rose. Finish the bud vase by adding two or three pieces of baby's breath or feverfew below the second rose.

2. Make a bud vase with a bow using two carnations and two pieces of sprengeri. Place the carnations one above the other as shown below. The taller flower should be twice as high as the vase. Insert two pieces of sprengeri, arching out away from the rim of the vase. Make a bow with #3 corsage ribbon. Use a full length of wire. Make 4-inch-long streamers. These may be wired separately from the bow. Insert the wired streamers in the bud vase.

3. Make a creative bud vase for one or more of the following situations or occasions:

- new baby
- modern office
- Mexican restaurant
- Secretary's Day
- Boss's Day
- Sweetest Day

Rose bowls are round clear glass bowls that can be used to feature a single rose blossom or other special flowers. A small amount of foliage may be used around the base of the flower. A ribbon may be tied around the neck of the container and fastened with a bow.

The blossom should not be submerged in or floating on water. The short stem of the flower can be inserted into a small piece of soaked floral foam with small pieces of foliage radiating out from it. This can be done outside the bowl; then the whole unit can be lowered into the container. A four-pronged anchor pin could first be fastened to the bottom of the container with floral clay. Double-faced mounting tape can provide even greater stability if desired. The floral foam is then pushed down onto the anchor pin. Glass marbles or small pebbles can be used instead of an anchor pin to help hold the foam in place. These would be added after the foam unit is inside the bowl. A small amount of water can then be added to the bowl to supplement what is in the floral foam and keep the flower fresh longer.

Another way to position the flower is to use glass marbles instead of floral foam. Put a shallow layer of glass marbles in the bottom of the rose bowl. Arrange small pieces of the foliage first. Then position the flower by pushing its stem down through the foliage and marbles. Lastly, add some water to keep the flower fresh, but not above the level of the marbles.

Some rose bowls have a neck with a slightly flared rim. This is a convenient place to tie a #3 satin ribbon with an attached bow to give a finished look.

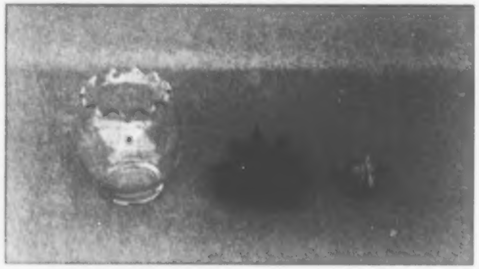
Other flowers that may be featured in a clear glass bowl include orchids, begonias, lilies and carnations.

Simple floral piece created with roses at the base of a candle in a crystal goblet. Scented geranium leaves and ivy included.

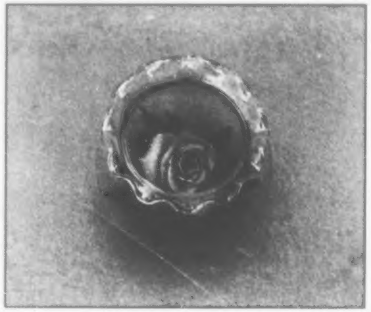
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Rose Bowls

1. Make up a rose bowl using a rose and leatherleaf.



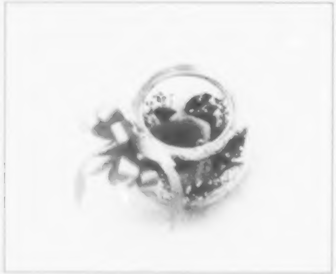
Arrange a flat radiating circle of foliage in a small piece of floral foam. The overall size must be small enough to fit into the bowl without crowding. Cut the rose stem about 1 1/2 inches long and place it upright in the center of the floral foam. Place about 1/2 inch of water in the bottom of the rose bowl. Lower the foam with the flower and foliage into the bowl.



2. Make a rose bowl using a rose, huckleberry and baby's breath. Select a rose bowl with a neck that will hold a ribbon. Use glass marbles for support.

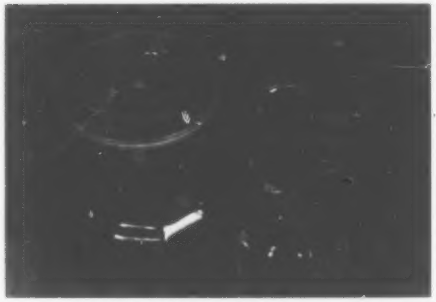
Place glass marbles in the container to a depth of one inch. Arrange small pieces of huckleberry in a low flat plane so that the ends are anchored in the marbles and the tips radiate out from the center. Cut the rose stem to 1 1/2 inches and place in the middle with the stem pushed down in the marbles.

Add three pieces of baby's breath to create a cloud effect. It should not look crowded or hide the rose. Tie a piece of #3 satin ribbon around the rim of the container. Make a small bow from the same ribbon and fasten it with wire onto the ribbon that is tied around the rim of the bowl. Short streamers may also be used.



LARGE VASES OF FLOWERS

Flowers can be displayed in a pleasing manner by arranging them in a vase. The method used to hold the flowers in place depends on the type and quantity of flowers as well as the size and shape of the vase. If the container is tall enough, with a medium-sized opening, the criss-crossed stems of flowers and foliage alone may be enough to hold the flowers in place. Some containers are designed with a plastic grid that fits securely over the rim of the vase. Or the vase opening can be criss-crossed with strips of clear waterproof bowl tape spaced about 1/2 inch apart.



Plastic grid over rim

Both mixed bouquets and groupings of a single type of flower can be displayed in vases. If foliage is used, it is usually placed first to create a framework that helps hold the other flowers. With no foliage, the first placements are the larger flowers with thicker stems that will hold the more delicate flowers.

The overall shape may be either round or oval. Good balance and symmetry are important. Flowers should be placed at different depths to draw the eye into the design.

Mixed bouquet

PLEASE
The Bell
Service

Figure 7-1

A Dozen Roses in a Vase

A dozen long-stemmed roses are commonly displayed in a vase. Florists may sell them arranged in the vase (Fig. 7-1) or customers may have to arrange the cut roses in their own container after receiving them in a box or package.

Figure 7-2 shows a vase of roses with several pieces of plumosus and a #9 satin bow. The foliage was placed in first. The stems are criss-crossed to form a grid that helps hold the flowers in place. The flowers are spaced in a globular form with the stems appearing to radiate out from a point within the vase. The bow is added near the rim of the container to give depth and unity to the design.

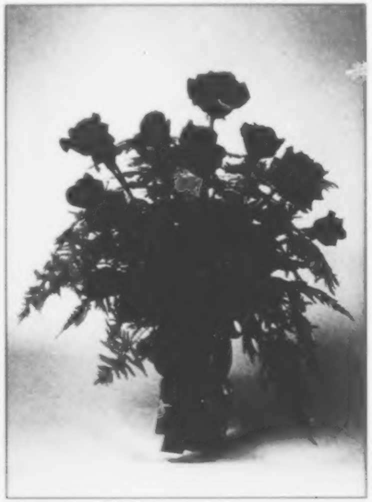


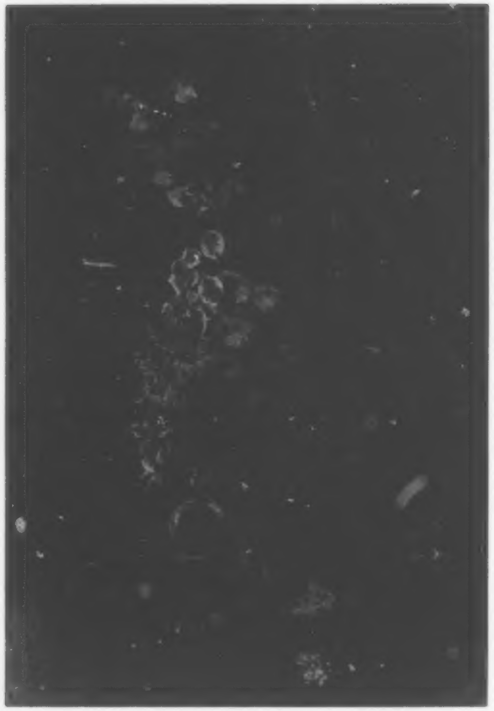
Figure 7-2

Hand-Tied Bouquets

Mixed bouquets of flowers can be created by gathering the flowers and foliage together in the hand and tying them with florist cord or raffia (Fig. 7-3). The flowers and foliage are added one piece at a time so the stems all spiral in one direction. Once the basic round or oval shape is established, stems may be inserted diagonally through the bouquet from the top as long as the lower portion of the stem follows in the direction of the spiraling stems.

The stems are tied together at the point where they are held. Then the stem ends are cut evenly across. If the sheaf-like bouquet is trimmed evenly, it will stand alone on a flat surface. The hand-tied bouquet must be stored with the stem ends in water.

A hand-tied bouquet makes a great hostess gift. It is exciting to give and receive. Also, there is no added cost for a container. After presentation, the bouquet can be placed immediately into a vase of water (Fig. 7-4). Thus, the flowers can be displayed and enjoyed more quickly with no effort or skill needed to arrange them.

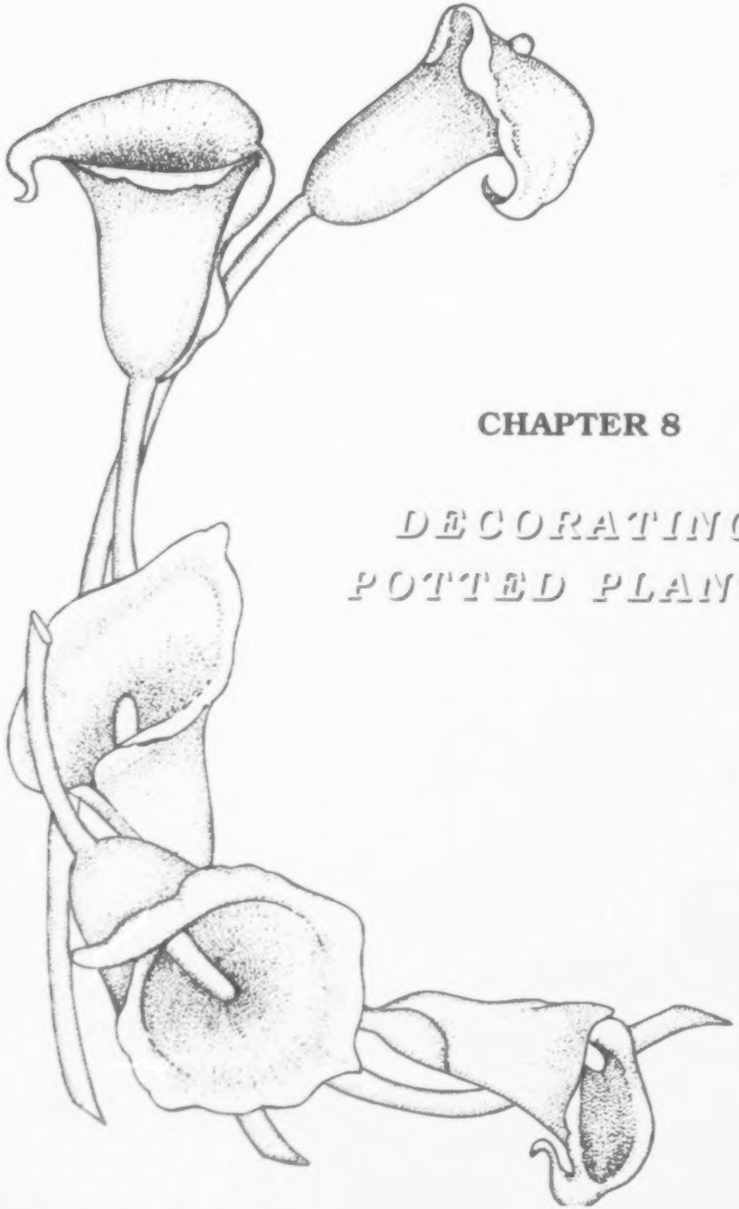


The classical look of oncidium orchids displayed in a decorative vase

Figure 7-3

Figure 7-4

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



CHAPTER 8

DECORATING POTTED PLANTS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

DECORATING POTTED PLANTS

Foliage plant growing in a clean clay pot

Cyclamen in full bloom displayed in a decorative container, which does not detract from the beauty of the plant.

Flowering and foliage plants that are sold as gifts may be made more attractive by wrapping the pot with foil or setting the pot in a decorative container. A bow or various accessories may be added if desired. The wrap, ribbon and accessories can develop the theme of a special holiday or occasion.

Gift plants are often produced in 4- or 6-inch plastic pots. However, these utilitarian containers do not provide the finished look that most people expect when buying or displaying one of these specimen plants. Without foil, clay pots are more acceptable for display, though less frequently used. They should be clean and in good condition.

It is a good idea to advise customers to place a saucer under the potted plant. The decorative foil covering cannot always be relied upon to keep moisture from seeping through, damaging wood table tops or moistening the cloth or paper table covering. Clear or green plastic pot saucers are inexpensive and will detract little from the plant or its decorations.

Sometimes unglazed clay saucers are sold to match clay or terra-cotta containers. These are porous and will allow some moisture to seep through. In order to protect table surfaces, therefore, clay saucers must be set on some kind of waterproof saucer. Non-porous plastic saucers that closely match real terra-cotta in color and texture are an acceptable alternative.

FOILING POTS

The most common and economical method of covering a pot is to use aluminum florist foil. Foil is available in different thicknesses and a wide range of colors. Some foil is embossed with a textured design. A foil known as polyfoil is lined with plastic to make it more waterproof. Heavier foils are more expensive but are less likely to be punctured and to let water through.

Foil color should harmonize with the flower and foliage colors. The foil should not have a color or texture stronger than that of the flowers or it will command more attention than the plant.

Plants to be foiled should be well watered and allowed to drain, and should have their flowers and leaves groomed. Spent blooms and damaged leaves should be removed. Leaves should be wiped clean of dust and spray residue. Using plant shine products or oily compounds to make the leaves glossier is not recommended since these products clog stomates and may interfere with the long-term health and beauty of the plant.

Plants that will not stand upright can be staked with an inconspicuous wooden or metal stake and twistems. Bushy plants may require three or more short stakes around the outside connected by green string. Hyacinth stakes are good for this purpose. They are wooden stakes, stained green and pointed at one end. Their name comes from their frequent use to support bulb crops like hyacinths, tulips and daffodils. Green colored bamboo stakes can be used for taller plants. Metal rods with a hook at the end are good for supporting individual flower stalks, such as sprays of orchids. Wooden and fiber poles are sometimes used to support large climbing foliage plants.

After the plants are watered and groomed, they are ready to be foiled. To begin, cut a square of foil large enough to cover the pot being decorated. The foil should come up over the edge of the pot. Tall plants with less interesting lower stems, like Easter lilies and tulips, should have the foil extended higher up the stem than is done with shorter bushy plants.

Fold over all edges of the foil 1/2 inch for a finished look (Fig. 8-1). Press edges down neatly. Center the plant on the foil and bring corners up around the pot one at a time. Using both hands, one on either side of each point, take tucks in the foil as it is brought up around the pot. This will result in a neat pleated appearance around the pot, rather than a rough, crumpled look. The four pointed corners can be flared out slightly for a graceful finish.

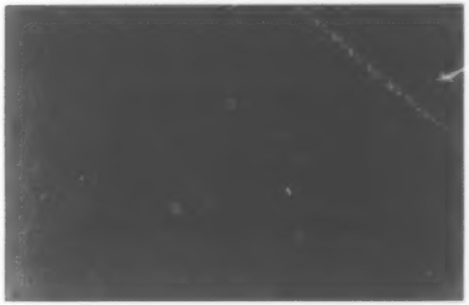


Figure 8-1 Edges of the foil folded over

THE BOW

A bow can be added at the rim of the pot to further dress up the potted plant. Size #9 ribbon is commonly used for 6-inch pot bows. The bow must be in good proportion to the size of the pot and plant.

The bow and streamers are wired to a 4-inch wooden stake. The stake is then pushed into the soil on the best side of the potted plant. If you wish to encircle the pot with a separate piece of ribbon, do this before the bow is added. Cut a piece of ribbon a little longer than you need. Bring it loosely around the pot and tie it in a double knot. Secure the ribbon from slipping down by inserting the stake with its attached bow and streamers under the knot and into the soil.

Bows can be made from all kinds of ribbon including satin, cotton and burlap. Printed or patterned ribbon may suggest a particular theme or holiday. For variety, two ribbons of different colors or widths may be worked into a single bow.

A colorful bow on a gift basket of meat, cheese and a potted kalanchoe

An Easter lily plant with decorative foil and bow

A monochromatic color scheme created when a spathiphyllum is wrapped in dark green foil and decorated with a light green bow.

An Italianate jardiniere with festoons of fruit holds a dumbcane.

Terra-cotta jardiniere with begonia

ACCESSORIES

Various accessories such as artificial birds or fruit or dried materials can be added as an accent to the bow. A mini-sheaf of wheat or cattails placed diagonally across the bow will add an interesting line of opposition. Twisted branches, bamboo or driftwood inserted into the pot will lend more height to the plant or extend its boundaries in other interesting ways.

Accessories are usually attached to a wooden stake which is inserted into the soil. Bamboo and branches can also be inserted directly into the soil. Birds, butterflies and silk flowers may be hot-glued to the branches if desired.

Many plants have bushy lower leaves that cover up the soil in the pot. Plants without these may look more attractive if sheet moss, Spanish moss, lichens or wood chips are added to cover the soil and give a more finished look.

OTHER POT COVERINGS

Other materials besides foil can be used to wrap pots. Burlap, crepe paper and cellophane give different effects but do not cling to the pot as readily as foil. When a fabric like burlap is being used, the pot should first be covered by plastic or foil so that moisture will not dampen the cloth.

Several layers of newspaper or cardboard, cut the same size as the bottom of the pot, will serve as a blotter if placed directly under the pot. The paper will absorb excess water and better keep it from running through the foil or plastic.

A **jardiniere** (jar-duh-neer´) is a decorative container into which a potted plant can be set. Jardinieres may be made from pottery, china, metal or plastic. They do not have drainage holes so will retain any water that comes through the pot. Often fine gravel, perlite, shredded styrofoam, or simply an overturned saucer is put in the bottom of the jardiniere to keep the plant from sitting in drainage water and becoming waterlogged. Another advantage of adding these materials is that they raise the pot so that its rim is even with the rim of the jardiniere. However, the rim of the pot should not be raised so that it is visible above the rim of the jardiniere. The pot should be slightly smaller than the jardiniere so that there is no pressure put on it (especially if the jardiniere is an expensive

Jardiniere with spathiphyllum

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

ceramic container). Jardinieres are easy to use and save time, but add significantly to the cost of the plant.

Wicker baskets are suitable containers for plants if they come with a plastic liner. Trying to line a basket yourself with layers of foil or plastic is time-consuming and may not be totally effective as a moisture barrier.

Pot covers are available in many patterns of stiffened fabric that has been pleated and shaped to conform to the size of the pot. A plastic liner is required to prevent moisture from seeping through the fabric.

Primula malacoides in a wicker basket

Foiling a Poinsettia

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. Decorate a potted plant that has been grown in a 6-inch plastic pot.

1. Clean the pot and groom the plant so that it is free of spent blooms, damaged leaves, and spray residue. Water the plant and let the excess water drain through.

2. Cut a square of foil that will extend up over the edge of the pot. Turn the edges in about 1/2 inch and press firmly down to form a smooth edge.

3. Bring each corner of foil up to the side of the pot by taking a tuck in the foil on each side of the corner. Develop a pleated look around the pot. Flare the points out gently.

4. Make a bow from #9 satin ribbon. The bow should have loops 2 1/2 to 3 inches long so that the finished bow is a little less wide than the diameter of the pot. Make two 3-inch streamers. Attach the bow and streamers to a 4-inch wooden stake. Wrap a length of #9 satin ribbon around the pot and tie it off. Insert the stake with attached bow and streamers into the soil at the rim of the pot so that it holds up the ribbon that has been tied around the pot. The bow should be placed on the best side of the plant.

(continued)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Decorate one or more potted plants to carry out one of the themes suggested below. Using bows and accessories, be as creative as possible.

- autumn harvest buffet
- Easter breakfast
- contemporary office
- Mexican theme
- Oriental look
- young child's birthday

A pink poinsettia and rex begonia look very festive in a metallic jardiniere, accessorized with a colorful jester.

Hyacinths with Spanish moss at the base, a satin bow and duck accessory

A rabbit sitting by a log basket of potted spring plants

A wooden troll used as an accessory to a basket of begonias and foliage plants

CHAPTER 9

MASS ARRANGEMENTS

MASS ARRANGEMENTS

Figure 9-1 Equilateral triangle

A mass arrangement contains many flowers organized into a geometric form or shape. It may be one-sided or an all-around design. Different styles can be expressed depending on whether the mass arrangement is large or small; whether it has much depth or is very compact; and whether it consists of one type of flower or a mixture of flowers.

There are two groups of such arrangements: 1) those based on the triangle and 2) those based on the circle. Following are the basic design shapes that fall into each category. (See additional examples in Chapter 2.)

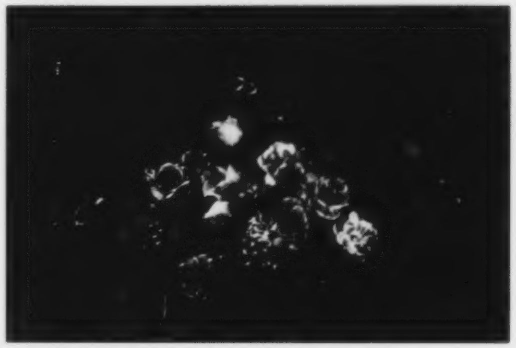


Figure 9-5 Diamond centerpiece

Triangle Variations

Equilateral triangle (Figure 9-1)
Isosceles triangle (Figure 9-2)
Right triangle (Figure 9-3)
Scalene triangle (Figure 9-4)
Diamond centerpiece (Figure 9-5)

Figure 9-2 Isosceles triangle

Figure 9-3 Right triangle

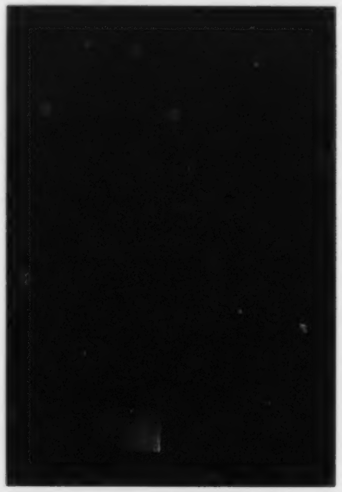


Figure 9-4 Scalene triangle

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Circle Variations

Mound (Figure 9-6)
Oval (Figure 9-7)
Fan (Figure 9-8)

Containers such as low bowls, pedestal containers and baskets are used for mass arrangements. They come in different shapes, sizes and materials. The shape or form of the arrangement is modified to fit the chosen container. For example, the lower flower and foliage placements in a taller container will be brought down over the rim; flowers in a basket with a handle will be placed so they do not crowd the handle.

Although the mass arrangement had its origin centuries ago in early Western cultures, it still is the most commonly seen style in traditional flower arranging. The round mound design is frequently created for table centerpieces, wire service specials, and wedding bouquets. In many areas triangles and fans remain traditional favorites for sympathy flowers and church decorations.

A contemporary trend in mass arrangements is to create very open designs with much depth. More open space means fewer flowers. But these flowers often have interesting forms which receive more attention because of the open space around them.

Observe some of the variations that exist in mass arrangements by looking at the accompanying examples. Notice how some are very compact, while others appear more light and airy. Some have a definite rigid silhouette, while others have been arranged more casually.

Figure 9-6 Mound

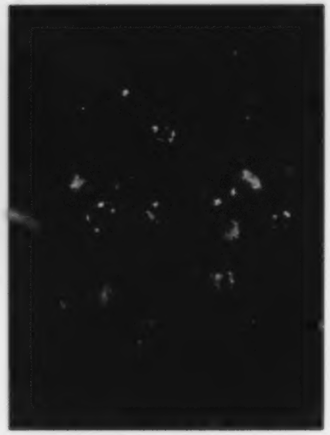


Figure 9-7 Oval

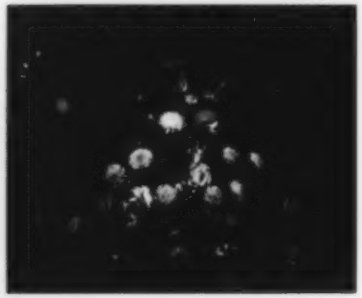
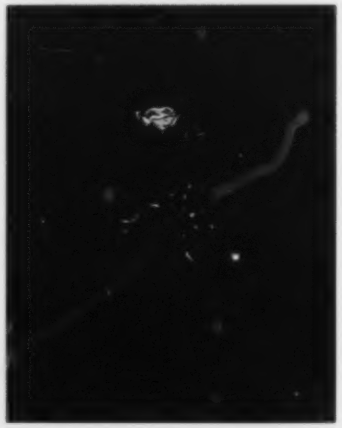


Figure 9-8 Fan

Globular Form



COMPACT FORM

Tight concentric rings of flowers are characteristic of this style known as Biedermeir. This form of flower arrangement was done in Germany centuries ago.

OPEN FORM

Mixed garden flowers are placed in a white wicker basket. Flowers are at different depths and do not crowd each other.

Globular Form Hand-held Bouquets

NOSEGAY

A small, compact nosegay of mixed herbs and garden flowers rests on a round lace doily.

HAND-TIED

This casual hand-tied grouping of flowers has an irregular outline. The natural stems extend beyond the point where the flowers are tied together.

BRIDAL

A tear-drop bridal bouquet made in a bouquet holder has an oval shape. The flowers are closely spaced, but not crowded.

Triangular Shape

BLENDED COLORS

Warm lines of orange and yellow flowers and foliage are mixed to create a tapestry of interwoven colors within the triangular outline.

COLOR GROUPING

Triangular wedges of different colored flowers are easily identifiable within the larger triangular silhouette of the entire design.

Suggested Activities

Following is a discussion of the basic shapes of mass arrangements. A suggested activity accompanies each one as an introduction to the style and as a means to develop skill in flower arranging. The arrangements can easily be varied by using different containers, flowers, foliages and accessories from those suggested in the exercise.

DELICATE

The round shape of this small arrangement of miniature carnations is softened by the cloud of baby's breath surrounding it.

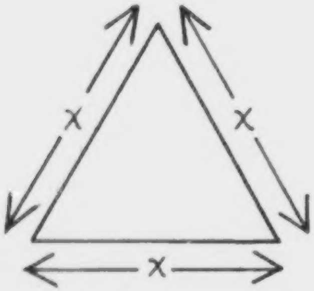
BOLD

The strong color and bold shape of sunflowers and zinnias grouped in a terra cotta urn make a dramatic effect.

TRIANGLE VARIATIONS

Equilateral Triangle

The silhouette of an equilateral triangle design is a triangle with all sides equal. It may be constructed in a low container or in one raised up on a pedestal. The center of interest of this symmetrical design is the **focal area** (Fig. 9-9), which is low in the arrangement, directly under the tallest point, and near the rim of the container. Larger flowers with closer spacing are used in this area. As you move up and away from the focal area, the flowers gradually become smaller with larger spaces between them.



Equilateral triangle

An equilateral triangle should have depth, which is apparent when you look at the arrangement in side view (Fig. 9-10). You can see a right triangle with the focal area near its base where there is the greatest distance between front and back. As you look directly down on the arrangement from above (overhead view), the design shows yet another triangular pattern because of the forward

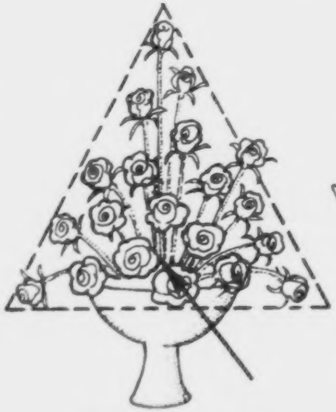


Figure 9-9 Focal area

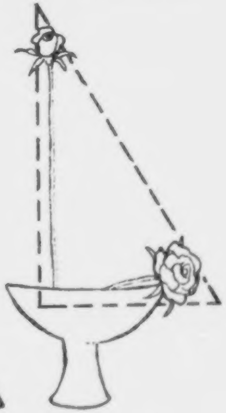


Figure 9-10 Side view

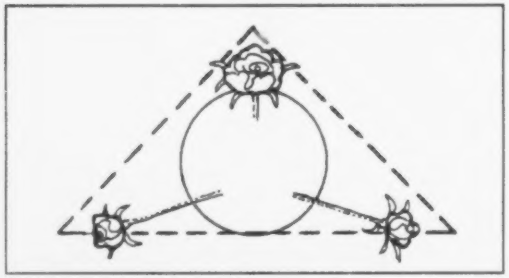


Figure 9-11 Overhead view

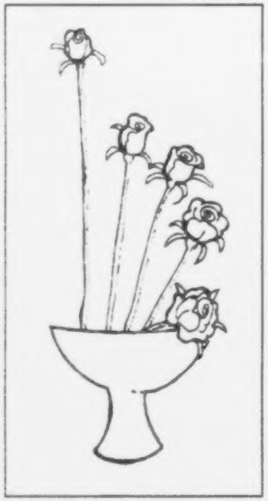


Figure 9-12
Flaw: Recessed focal area

placement of flowers in the focal area (Fig. 9-11). If the larger flowers near the focal area are pushed in, the arrangement lacks depth and is said to have a **recessed focal area** (Fig. 9-12).

Another way of creating depth in an arrangement is to leave some space around the individual flowers. Some flowers should be sunken in, while other flowers are brought out. This must be done with care to keep the overall triangular pattern intact and avoid creating a shaggy look. Depth resulting from the in-and-out placement of flowers (Fig. 9-13) is much better than the flat rigid appearance of flowers placed all at the same level. The flowers should not look as if they were glued to a styrofoam form.

Gradual change in the facing of flowers is important in the creation of an interesting and rhythmic arrangement. Flowers in the focal area face directly forward. As the eye travels up the design, the flowers are gradually faced upward (Fig. 9-14). The tallest flower will face directly upward. This is a 90° angle change in facing between the larger flowers at the focal area and the tallest flower on top (Fig. 9-15).

As you move sideways away from the focal area, there is another gradual change in facing to the side and even to the back. The edges of the arrangement should not end abruptly with sideways placements. Some flowers should begin to angle backward for greater fullness and depth.

Flowers or foliage . . . ***which should come first?*** The order in which materials are added depends on the type of flowers used, how open or tight the arrangement is, and whether the arrangement is being completed in one operation or at different times. During busy holidays or when work is being done on large projects, it is possible to "green in" arrangements several days in advance of the final placement of flowers. By using well soaked foam, floral preservatives, plant shine on foliages, and proper refrigeration, greens can outlast most flowers.

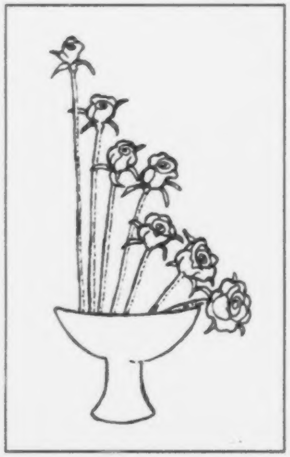


Figure 9-13 In-and-out placement for depth

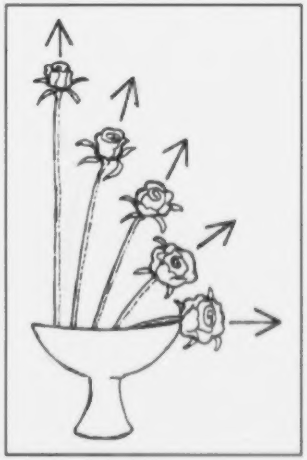


Figure 9-14
Gradual facing upward

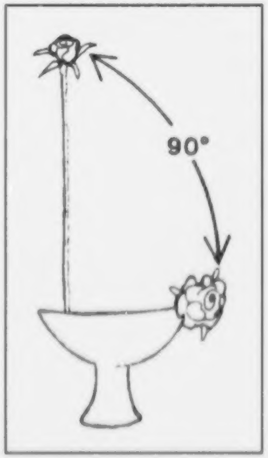


Figure 9-15 Change in facing

A. Equilateral Triangle - Sticks

For your first practice in making an equilateral design, use sticks to help you judge the precise length and angle of individual placements. Without foliage in the way, you will be able to see just where the placements are put into the foam and the angle at which they are inserted.

Stems should radiate out from the foam without crossing each other (Fig. 9-16). They should be inserted throughout the foam, utilizing the entire block, even in one-sided arrangements. If stems are placed in just the forward half of the foam, the arrangement will look as if it is perched at the front edge of the container. Another potential problem to avoid is placing too many stems in one part of the foam, causing it to split.

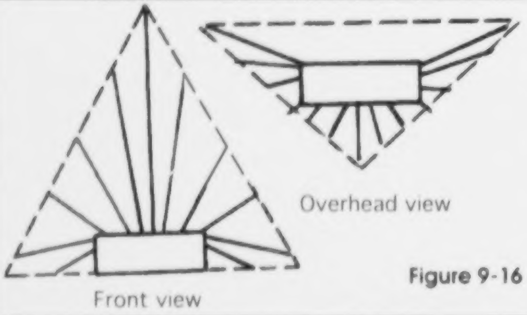


Figure 9-16

Use this exercise to visualize clearly the order, angle and length of placements as well as the size, silhouette and depth of the design. This skeleton arrangement will help you master some basic skills before you begin working with flowers and foliage.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Materials:
low pedestal container
floral foam or styrofoam
sticks or hyacinth stakes

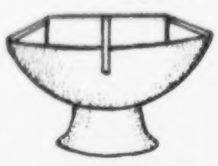
1. Place a piece of foam or styrofoam in the low pedestal container so that the foam sticks up about one inch above the rim of the container (Fig. 9-17). Secure it with narrow waterproof tape attached to the rim and criss-crossed over the foam.

2. Establish the height (placement 1) (Fig. 9-18). Cut one stick two times the height of the container plus about 2 inches. (The end of the stick will be pushed about 2 inches into the foam.) Place directly upright at the back of the foam and centered from where the edges of the triangle will be located.

3. Establish the width (placements 2 and 3) (Fig. 9-19). Cut two sticks of equal length that will form the lower points of the triangle. They will extend 2 to 3 inches beyond the rim of the container. The distance between the ends of these two sticks should be equal to the distance between the end of either of them and the highest point of the triangle. Thus all three sides of the equilateral triangle are of equal length. These sticks should be inserted into the side of the foam toward the back and should be angled slightly downward and backward.

(continued)

Figure 9-17



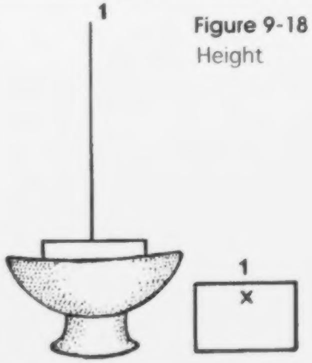


Figure 9-18
Height

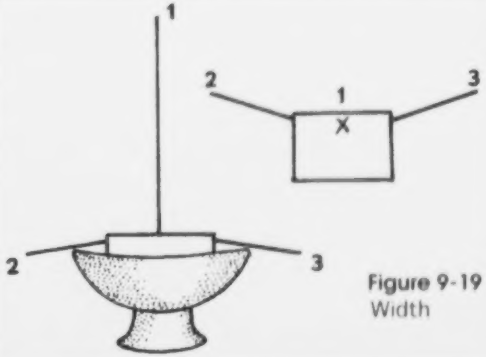


Figure 9-19
Width

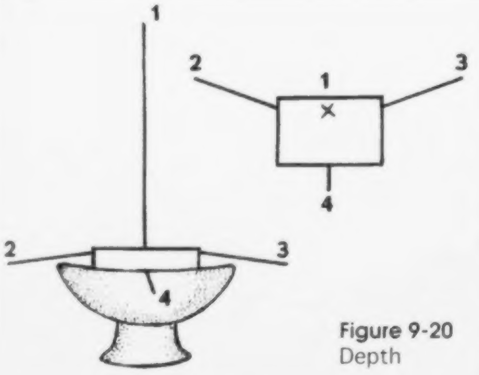
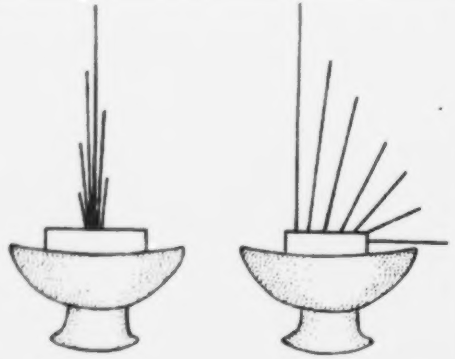


Figure 9-20 Depth



Front view

Side view

Figure 9-21 Trunk line

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Equilateral Triangle - Sticks *(continued)*

4. Establish the depth (placement 4) (Fig 9-20). Cut another stick shorter than the previous two. Insert it in the front and center of the foam at the rim of the container. Bring it directly out toward you so that it is about 1 1/2 inches beyond the rim of the container.

5. Establish the main vertical line by staggering about five placements down the center of the triangle, connecting the tallest placement with the lowest forward-facing one (Fig. 9-21). As you work down, alternate from left to right with each placement being shorter than the one above it and angled slightly more forward. There will be a 90° change in angle of placement. The stick length also becomes shorter so that in side view a right triangle is formed. This line of placements down the vertical axis is called a **trunk line**.

6. Establish the silhouette (Fig. 9-22). Use three sticks on each side to connect the tallest point with the lower points of the triangle. It is important to sharply decrease the length of the side placements so that the triangular shape does not give way to a fan shape. In side view these placements should be staggered forward or backward, looking much like the trunk line did from the front. This gives depth to the arrangement and avoids the feeling of dropping off the edge when going beyond the placements forming the silhouette. Even though this arrangement has symmetrical balance, it is better not to identically match placements across from each other. The same number of placements on each side is not necessary as long as the basic triangular shape is evident.

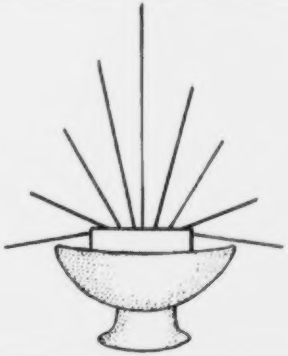


Figure 9-22 Silhouette

7. Establish the base (Fig. 9-23). Use two or three short sticks to bridge the gap between the forward-facing focal stick and the lower points of the triangle. In overhead view these should form a triangular shape. They should not all be lined up in the same plane at the rim of the container. They should be alternated slightly up and down to achieve depth and to tie the arrangement to the container.

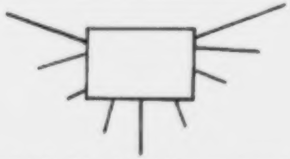


Figure 9-23 The base in overhead view

8. Fill in the design. On each side of the arrangement are two areas to be filled in. Gradual changes in spacing, facing and stem length should smoothly bridge the area between the trunk line and edges of the design.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Equilateral Triangle - Sticks *(continued)*

9. Check the design.

- Are the three sides of the triangle equal in length?
- Is there an overall triangular appearance to the design?
- Are there any crossing lines?
- Do sticks appear to radiate out from a common point within the foam?
- Have you used the whole piece of foam for placements?
- Is the overall size of the arrangement in good relationship to the size of the container?

B. Equilateral Triangle - Flowers and Foliage

Use flowers and foliage to create an equilateral triangle. The order and positioning of placements will be similar to that outlined in detail for the sticks.

The foliage will be placed first because of its linear nature. Doing this also illustrates how an arrangement can be greened in several days before finishing the design. Both foliage and flowers will exhibit a triangular design, with one superimposed on the other in the finished product.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Equilateral Triangle - Flowers & Foliage

Materials:
low pedestal container
floral foam
waterproof tape
carnations (12-14)
myrtle (1/8 bunch)

1. Place soaked foam in the container and tape with waterproof tape.

2. Establish height of the arrangement with a fairly straight piece of myrtle that has been selected and trimmed. Do not use bushy pieces or pieces that sharply angle in one direction. The height should be about one and one half to two times the height of the container.

3. Establish width with shorter pieces that are angled slightly downward and back.

4. Establish depth with a short piece coming straight out toward you just above the rim of the container.

(continued)

Soaked foam in container

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Equilateral Triangle - Flowers & Foliage *(continued)*

Triangle of foliage

Trunk line of flowers complete

5. Create a triangular shape with pieces of myrtle radiating out as if from a central point. There should be no crossing lines. Fill in so that the foam is not visible. Keep a light airy feeling. The foliage is only a background for the flowers. Sink some shorter pieces of myrtle in deep to cover the foam without creating a bulky appearance.

6. Repeat the above steps using carnations. Establish height, width, depth and trunk line: then fill out the remaining area. The longer linear pieces of myrtle will extend slightly beyond the flowers at the points. Most of the other myrtle pieces should be behind the flower placements.

If the flowers are the same size, the focal area will be created by closer spacing and forward facing of flowers in that area. If the flowers vary in size, use smaller flowers toward the points of the triangle and gradually larger flowers toward the focal area.

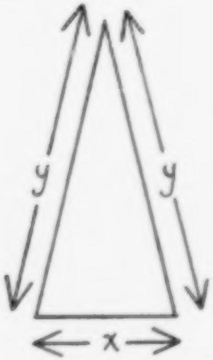
Do not crowd the flowers. Sink some in for depth rather than having them all at the same level. Avoid both irregular groupings of flowers and the appearance of a line-up in the arrangement. Remember to change the facing from forward to sideways or upward as you move away from the focal area.

7. Check the arrangement, using the same guidelines as you did for the stick arrangement. (Apply the questions in Section 9 on the previous page, to this activity.)

Completed equilateral triangle

Isosceles Triangle

An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length and one side that is shorter. As an arrangement form, it is a variation of the equilateral triangle. The highest point of this triangle is taller than in an equilateral triangle and the lower points are closer to the focal area.



Isosceles triangle

This one-sided symmetrical arrangement emphasizes an upward vertical thrust and usually appears more stylized than does an equilateral design. The isosceles triangle may be constructed in a low container or in one that has a pedestal.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Isosceles Triangle with Filler

You will be constructing an isosceles triangle design by placing the flowers in first, then the foliage, and finally the filler. Each material (flowers, foliage and filler) should individually form an isosceles triangle with a developed focal area. For example, a look at the filler by itself should give you this triangular shape with smaller pieces and greater spacing as your eye moves away from the focal area. Flowers should be placed at different depths so that even in the focal area, where there is the greatest concentration of flowers, there will not be crowding. Stems of flowers and foliage should appear to radiate out from a point within the design behind the focal area.

Materials:

pedestal container
floral foam
waterproof tape
pompon mums (1 bunch)
annual statice (1/6 bunch)
leatherleaf fern

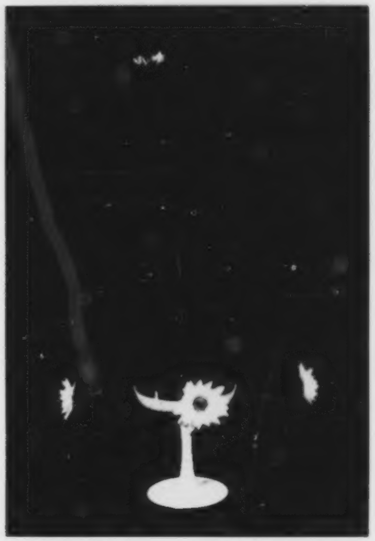
1. Place soaked floral foam in the container so that it sticks up about an inch above the rim. If necessary, secure it with crossed waterproof tape. This container was designed with plastic prongs in the base of the bowl that hold a pre-cut cylinder of floral foam.

2. Begin the design with pompon chrysanthemums. First separate the stems in the bunch and examine them. You will need to break down the stems by cutting some flowers or flower clusters off, using a sharp knife. Leave smaller flowers on long stems to use in the outermost parts of the arrangement; reserve larger flowers on shorter stems for use closer to the focal area. As you cut each stem, remember that a stem cut too long can easily be cut shorter, but lengthening a stem cut too short is not so easy.

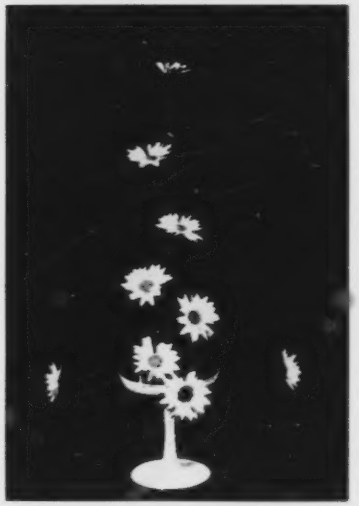
(continued)

Soaked foam in container

(continued)



Height, width, depth and focal area



Trunk line

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Isosceles Triangle with Filler *(continued)*

3. **Establish height** of the arrangement. Select a small mum on a long stem at least two and a half times the height of the pedestal container. Place this with the flower facing directly upward near the back of the foam where the center of the triangle will be.

4. **Establish width** by placing fairly small flowers into the side of the foam, angled down and back so that the lower points extend 1 1/2 inches beyond the rim of the container. At this point stand back and check your three placements. Make sure they establish an isosceles triangle. If the lower placements have been extended too far, the design will look more equilateral, and the resulting triangle may be too large for the container.

5. **Establish depth and focal area** by placing one of the larger flowers in the center of the arrangement just above the rim of the container. This flower should face directly forward or even very slightly downward and extend out 1 1/2 inches over the rim.

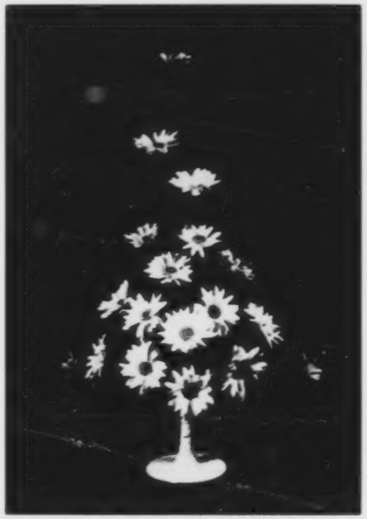
6. **Establish the trunk line** of the arrangement, staggering flowers downward from the highest flower to the focal flower. Gradually increase flower size and decrease spacing as you progress downward. Also gradually tilt the stems so that there is a transition from upward facing flowers near the top to forward facing flowers in the focal area.

7. **Establish the silhouette.** Keep the outline sharp so that it is triangular, not fan-shaped. Alternate placements forward and backward to avoid a rigid appearance and to establish depth. As you work, always remember to continue size and space rhythm by using larger flowers and closer spacing near the focal area, and smaller flowers with farther spacing away from the focal area.

8. **Establish the base** by joining lower points to the front flower. Stems should not form a collar but should alternate slightly up and down. Viewed from overhead, they should form a triangular shape.

9. Fill in the remaining area so that the eye is rhythmically led to the focal area with no large gaps or irregular crowding of flowers.

(continued)



Filling in with flowers

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Isosceles Triangle with Filler *(continued)*

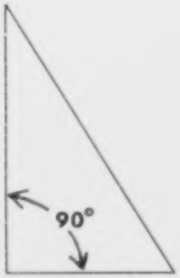
10. Fill in with foliage so that mechanics are covered but flowers are not crowded. The foliage should appear to radiate out from a common point behind the focal area. Avoid using large pieces of leatherleaf that stick out beyond the flowers. Do not use more than you need to cover the foam.

11. Add statice to enhance depth and bridge gaps between the mums. Remember to sink some statice in deeper and bring some out farther for greatest depth. Make sure you have used some statice throughout the arrangement, not just in one spot. This filler material should repeat the triangular design, exhibiting size and space rhythm similar to that established by the mums. The completed arrangement is shown here.

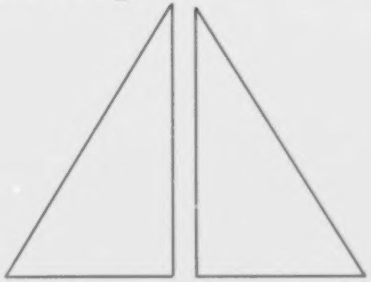
Right Triangle

A right triangle arrangement is a one-sided mass arrangement that is basically one half of an equilateral or isosceles triangle. There is a 90° difference in angle between the vertical and horizontal sides of the arrangement.

Right triangle arrangements can be designed either right- or left-sided. Thus they can be used in complementary pairs, as on a mantel, stage or church altar. This design form may also be used beside a painting or some other object to help visually balance the total setting.



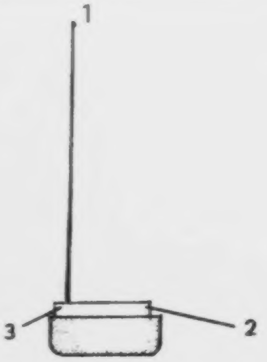
Right triangle



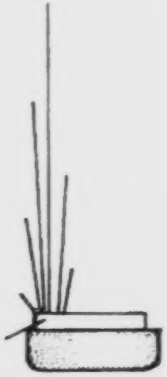
Complementary pair of right triangles

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Right Triangle in a Low Container



First 3 placements



Trunk line

Materials:

- low container
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- snapdragons (10-14 stems)
- miniature carnations (1/2 bunch or 14-16 flowers)
- huckleberry

1. Place foam in the low container and tape.

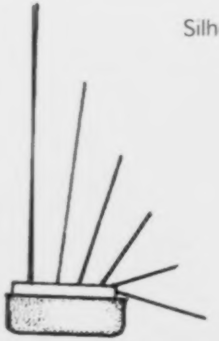
2. Establish height by placing the tallest snapdragon (about 12 inches long) in the back left corner of the foam (placement **1**). It should point directly upward.

3. Establish the lower right point of the triangle with a snapdragon about 5 inches long (placement **2**). Place it toward the back in the right side of the foam, angling it slightly downward and backward. The tip may be pinched out of the snapdragon to prevent its curling upward. This can be done to any of the stems that will be placed at an angle.

4. Establish the lower left point with a snapdragon that is about 3 inches long (placement **3**). Place it toward the front of the foam and angle it slightly forward. This should be a larger flower than placements 1 and 2 since it is closer to the focal area and plays an important role in the balance of the design.

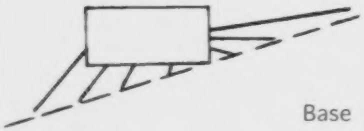
5. Establish the trunk line with snapdragons. Alternate placements from left to right. Connect the tallest point with the lower left point by gradually spacing flowers closer together and angling them forward. Do not let the flowers extend too far out on the left or you will lose the neat triangular form. The focal area is at the base of this trunk line.

6. Establish the silhouette by joining the upper point with the lower right point. Make sure the triangular outline is maintained.



Silhouette

7. Establish the base by connecting the two lower points of the triangle. Keep this line fairly straight.



Base

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

8. Fill in the arrangement lightly with snapdragons. Leave room for miniature carnations and foliage.

9. Add foliage by sinking it down into the arrangement to cover the mechanics.

10. Add the carnations. Divide and cut the stems as you did before to get an assortment of stem lengths and flower sizes. Place carnations first at the points of the triangle, then establish the trunk line, followed by the silhouette and base. Finally fill in the central area so that there is a rhythmic progression toward the focal area at the base of the trunk line. Place flowers in and out for depth. Use larger flowers or more flowers spaced closer together near the focal area. The completed right triangle arrangement is shown here.

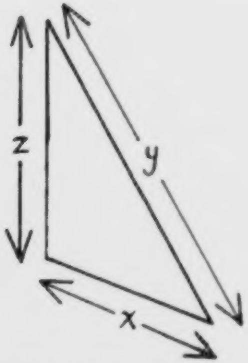
Right Triangle *(continued)*

Scalene (Asymmetrical) Triangle

A scalene triangle is composed of three sides of different lengths and three different angles. The design form is a one-sided mass arrangement with the tallest point off-center from the focal area.

The balance is asymmetrical and therefore more informal in appearance than the equilateral or isosceles triangle. The finished arrangement must not look as though it will tip sideways even though the tallest point is angled outward.

Scalene triangle arrangements are often done in raised containers, allowing a side of the design to be slanted downward. In the following exercise this design will be made in a fireside basket turned sideways. The design shape will allow the handle to show, since the upper edge of the triangle will cut down at a diagonal under the handle.

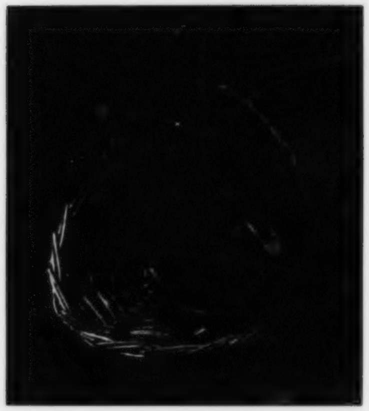


Scalene triangle

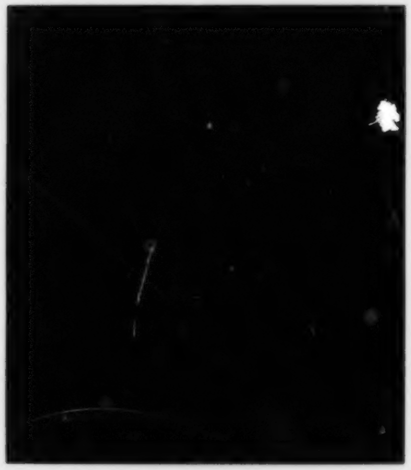
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Scalene Triangle with Bow in a Fireside Basket



Anchor foam to basket



Scalene triangle of myrtle

Materials:

- fireside basket
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- snapdragons (10-12)
- carnations (10-14)
- myrtle
- #9 satin ribbon (3 yards)
- #24 wire
- 3-inch wooden stake
- low plastic container
- chenille stems

1. Place soaked foam in a small plastic container and tape it in with waterproof tape. The foam should be about an inch higher than the rim.

2. Place container of foam in the center of a wicker fireside basket. Run chenille stems (two twisted together if necessary) under the basket and thread through wicker on each side of the container. Bring ends up and twist together firmly on top of the foam. Repeat with a second chenille stem at right angles to the first so the container is firmly anchored.

3. Create a scalene triangle of myrtle in the fireside basket. Note that the upper point slopes sharply to the left. The lower right point extends horizontally a couple of inches beyond the rim of the basket. The lower left point extends forward slightly beyond the rim of the basket as in a right triangle design. When the points are connected, three sides of different lengths are formed. Note especially the long, dramatic, diagonal line of the upper side, extending down comfortably under the handle.

4. Begin creating the scalene shape by inserting three snapdragons in the design so that the tips follow the points of the foliage-formed triangle. Select either the myrtle or the snapdragon to form the outer point – whichever tapers to a more graceful point.

5. Make a bow from #9 satin ribbon. Make five or six loops on a side, each loop about 3 inches long. Attach the bow to a 3-inch wooden stake using the wire that is holding the bow together. Insert stake in foam just to the left of the handle near the edge of the basket.

6. Establish depth with a short section of snapdragon spike coming out toward you from the central area of the bow. This could be a section of the spike that does not include the tip (which might otherwise be

(continued)

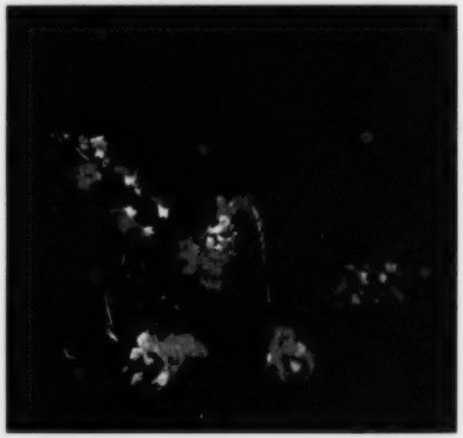
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

discarded). When using these lower pieces, cut the stem at a sharp angle just above the upper floret to make the cut stem less conspicuous.

7. Fill in the design sparingly with a few more snapdragon spikes.

8. Repeat the scalene triangle with the carnations. Use them to bridge the gaps between the snapdragon spikes. Place them at different depths to avoid a flat look. Space the larger flowers more closely near the bow since this is the center of interest. Incorporate the bow into the design by working flowers and foliages through it, but do not hide it. As in a corsage, the bow should enhance the focal area but should not be the focal point.

Scalene Triangle with Bow *(continued)*



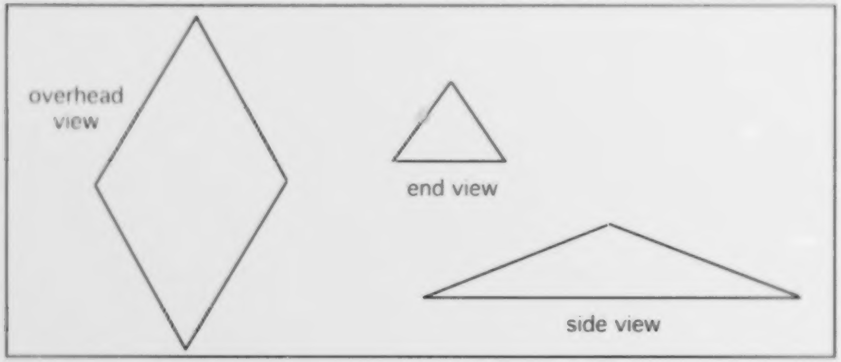
Adding the bow

Completing the scalene triangle with carnations

Diamond Centerpiece

The diamond centerpiece is a low elongated arrangement that emphasizes a horizontal line. It is considered a variation of the triangle: viewed from above, the outline looks like two triangles, base to base. In side view the diamond centerpiece looks like a short isosceles triangle with a very drawn-out base. From either end this design looks like a small equilateral triangle.

This design shape is low and thus well suited for use as a centerpiece on an oval or rectangular dining table. The arrangement, which is finished off on all sides, is made in a low container that often is largely concealed by the flowers and foliage. Even when the container is visible, some flowers or foliage should be angled downward to soften the rim of the container and hide mechanics. Plant materials should be firmly anchored in the foam so that they do not rest on the table.



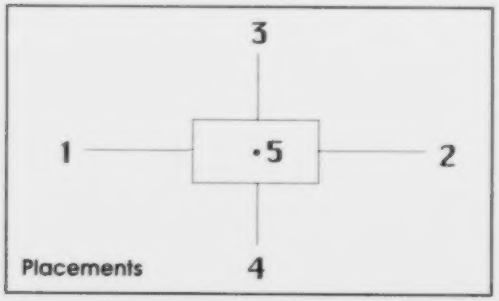
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Diamond Centerpiece

Materials:
low rectangular container
floral foam
waterproof tape
heather or leptospermum
roses
annual statice
myrtle
leatherleaf

1. Place foam in container and attach with waterproof tape. Foam should be about one inch above the rim of the container.

2. Establish the **horizontal line** (placements **1** and **2**). Select two pieces of myrtle that are fairly straight. The total length of the arrangement will be the sum of the lengths of these two pieces of foliage plus the length of the foam. Overall length of the design can vary; for this exercise cut each piece 6 inches long. Insert one piece at each end of the foam, as low as possible. These pieces should come straight out or angle slightly downward without touching the table. The two pieces should form one elongated horizontal line with the foam between.



3. Establish the **width** (placements **3** and **4**). Cut two pieces of myrtle about 3 inches long and insert in the wider sides of the foam opposite each other. Place them low and angled downward. Together these placements determine the width of the arrangement. The four placements establish the four points of a diamond shape when viewed from the top (overhead view).

4. Establish the **height** (placement **5**). Select two pieces of myrtle about 5 inches long. Place them back to back and insert them directly upward in the middle of the foam. The five placements now form the major points of the diamond centerpiece. A low drawn-out triangle can be visualized in side view.

5. Lightly establish the **diamond shape** with myrtle (Fig. 9-24). Keep the overall shape smaller than the size you plan for the final arrangement, since the flowers should eventually stand out above the foliage. Radiate lines of foliage outward in the foam without crossing stems.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Diamond Centerpiece *(continued)*

Figure 9-24

6. Continue to green in the arrangement by adding short pieces of leatherleaf between the myrtle (Fig. 9-25). The main functions of the leatherleaf are to cover the floral foam and to add interesting textural contrast and depth to the design. It is important to sink the leatherleaf in deeply so it will not crowd future flower placements.

Figure 9-25

7. Establish the diamond shape with leptospermum (Fig. 9-26). The first five leptospermum placements should repeat the first five foliage placements, establishing height, width and depth.

8. Join lower points to the tallest point by staggering about three placements from side to side much as you did when you established the trunk line in the previous triangular arrangements. Flowers should form the triangular silhouette with enough in-and-out variation in placements to establish depth and relieve stiffness.

Figure 9-26

9. Establish the **base**. Lower placements should join the four points and conform to a general diamond shape from an overhead view. Some of these flowers should be angled downward over the side of the container. Vary depth of placement slightly to create interest and to avoid forming a heavy collar of plant material around the rim of the container.

10. Lightly fill in the four quadrants so that there are no large gaps and the diamond form is evident. The center of interest is actually within the arrangement:- the area from which all stems appear to radiate. Flowers near this area should be the larger ones and have the closest spacing. Those flowers forming the width of the arrangement or those sunken in close to this area are closest to the center of interest.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Diamond Centerpiece *(continued)*

11. Use roses to repeat the diamond shape. Use the same order of placement suggested for the heather—length, width, height, trunk lines, base and fill-in. Use larger flowers near the heart of the design. Gradually create a transition to smaller flowers with greater spacing out on the points of the diamond. Insert roses at different depths, leaving space around each flower to show off its individual beauty.

12. Lightly fill the arrangement with statice. Statice placements should also repeat the diamond shape. Use this filler to create depth and to fill conspicuous gaps. The statice should never crowd other flowers. Extend some pieces beyond the triangular silhouette and sink some in deeper than this imaginary line. Larger pieces or clusters of smaller pieces may be used near the center of interest.

Completed diamond centerpiece

13. Check the arrangement:

- Is the diamond shape evident? Did you avoid rounded outlines and an arrangement that appears oval?
- Have you created depth in the arrangement?
- Are the flowers too crowded?
- Are the larger flowers used near the center of interest?
- Are the mechanics covered?
- Are all placements firmly implanted in the foam?
- Are any pieces of plant material resting on the table?

[illegible]

Circular Mound Arrangement

The rounded circular arrangement known as a mound is based on the form of a sphere or globe. It is designed to be viewed from all sides (Fig. 9-27). It may feature just one flower or several kinds of flowers. The design may be fairly compact (typical of Victorian arrangements) or light and airy with considerable depth.

The focal area is in the center (heart) of these designs. This is the spot from which the flower and foliage placements seem to arise. Since all the flowers are about the same distance from this focal area, their various sizes are somewhat evenly distributed throughout the arrangement. In other words, size rhythm (placing larger flowers near the focal area and smaller flowers farther away from the focal area) is not a dominant feature of this type of flower arrangement.

When more than one kind of flower is used, each type should be evenly distributed over the circular form. This can best be accomplished by arranging all of one kind of flower at one time rather than switching back and forth between kinds of flowers. Start with the larger flowers and finish with the smaller filler flowers.

The globe shape should extend down over the rim of the container to avoid a sharp dividing line between arrangement and container. This is done by angling some of the stems downward, a technique referred to as "breaking the rim" or "softening the edge" of the container.

Mass and filler flowers like mums, carnations, roses, statice and baby's breath are commonly used in a round mound bouquet. Avoid using large flowers in a small arrangement because of the difficulty in making a smooth transition from flower to flower while following the circular outline of the design. Flowers with interesting forms, like iris and daffodils, are appropriate if the arrangement is open enough to show off their individual shapes. Spike flowers are less suitable because they can create a porcupine effect.

Fine filler materials may be used in mound designs. Baby's breath creates a cloud effect over stronger placements, which may give the design a lighter appearance. German statice can be massed in a small spherical form closer to the focal area with other flowers extending through and above it, thus repeating the circular pattern at two levels in the arrangement.

Circular mound arrangements are frequently made in flower shops. They are offered by wire service organizations as relatively inexpensive standard bouquets that can be produced fairly consistently in flower shops throughout the country. The mound is also the basic form of many promotional arrangements for holidays and special occasions.

Circular mound designs may be arranged in low containers with or without a short pedestal. If the container is taller than it is wide, an oval arrangement would be more appropriate than a circular one. This style of arrangement best fits containers that are round in shape or that have a globe form.

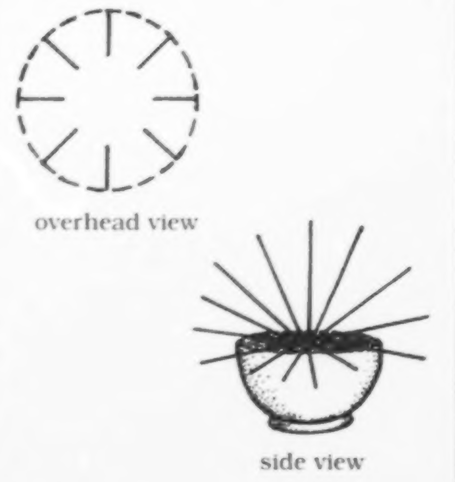
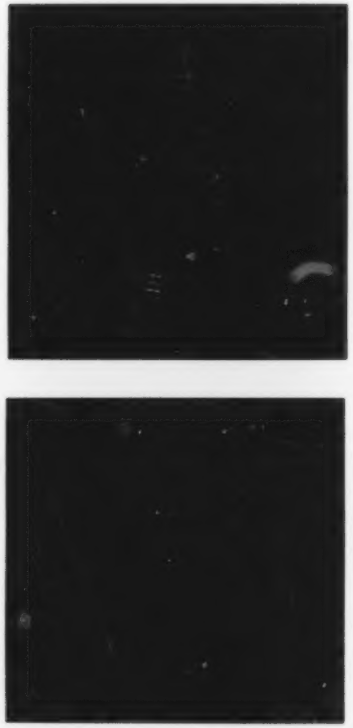


Figure 9-27
Basics of circular mound arrangement

Circular mound arrangement

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Circular Mound Arrangement



Forming a globe with leatherleaf

Materials:

- low pedestal container
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- pompon chrysanthemums
- miniature carnations
- annual statice or baby's breath
- leatherleaf

1. Place foam in container with upper surface an inch above the rim. Tape with waterproof tape.

2. Use leatherleaf to establish the form of a globe. This form should be smaller than the planned finished size of the arrangement since the foliage is meant to cover the mechanics and form a background to the flowers.

The leatherleaf should be placed so that it radiates out from the central area much as it would growing on a living plant (Fig. 9-28). Keep the top side of the frond up. These pieces should be slanted so they arch up and out, giving a layered appearance. Do not create a dense mound. Use the nicer end tips in more conspicuous places, but sink the remaining cut pieces in for depth. There is no reason to waste pieces of foliage as long as it is in good condition.

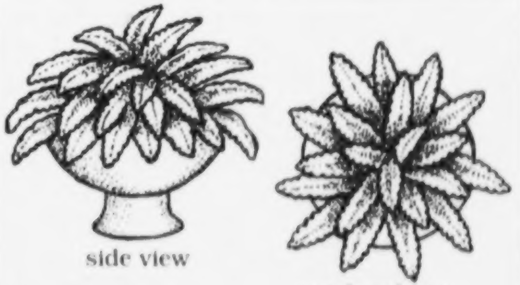
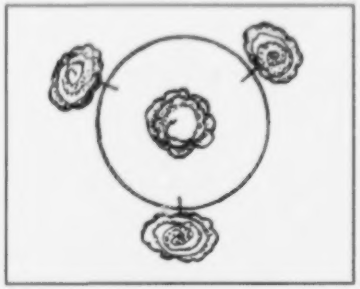


Figure 9-28

3. Use pompon mums to repeat the rounded form. These should stand out beyond the leatherleaf.

Begin by placing three mums equidistant from each other so they are angled outward just above the rim of the container.



Place a fourth mum directly upward, centered in the foam to establish the height. Check these four points to see that they are equidistant from the heart of the design. They are the guide posts around which the rest of the bouquet will be built.

Place three more mums, each at a point equidistant from the top flower and two of the bottom flowers. Each placement must further establish the circular pattern.

(continued)

430

431

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Add enough mums to smooth out the overall form, but leave enough space for the addition of carnations and statice.

4. Use miniature carnations to enhance the circular form. Distribute carnations between mums. Vary depth slightly to avoid crowding. If buds are used, they should be evenly distributed, perhaps in clusters of three.

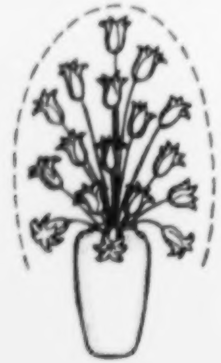
Circular Mound Arrangement *(continued)*

5. Use statice to further refine the globe form. Create depth by sinking some in and extending some out beyond the mum and carnation placements. Usually the larger, heavier-looking pieces are sunken in, while smaller pieces are extended slightly beyond other flowers.

6. Check the design:

- Is there an overall form of a globe? Did you successfully avoid a flattened look on top or a bulge on one side?
- Is each kind of floral material evenly distributed?
- Does the arrangement have depth? Do any flowers appear crowded? Can you see down into the design?
- Are the mechanics covered?
- Does the design come down over the rim of the container?

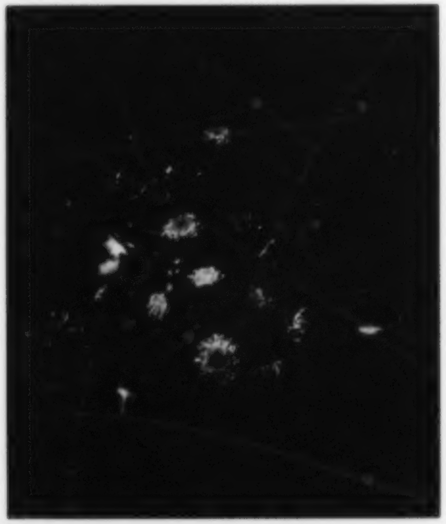
Oval Arrangement



An oval arrangement is appropriate when a taller design with curving lines is desired. The additional height presents an opportunity to create an open arrangement which can feature a wide range of plant material with interesting forms. Arching branches and flower stems can complement the oval silhouette and lead the eye deep into the arrangement.

One example is an all-white oval design featuring open styling. The arrangement shows considerable depth with empty space around individual flower placements.

Containers may be oval in shape or have pedestals that are tall enough to make the height of the container greater than its width. The higher the container, the taller the arrangement that is required to balance it. A delicate container on a narrow pedestal would best be filled with a light, open arrangement. Large flowers are more suited to a sturdy container that is heavier in appearance.



Oval design showing depth with empty spaces

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

All-Around Open Oval

Materials:
upright oval container or container with a pedestal
floral foam
waterproof tape
mixture of flowers and foliage including some form flowers

1. Place foam in container and tape with waterproof tape.

2. Select interesting form flowers that have high eye appeal. Insert these in the foam in a position where they will show to maximum advantage. They must be within the oval shape you have envisioned for the container. Stems should not cross but instead radiate out from the center of the foam or from a central axis directly up from this point. Place all of one kind of flower before deciding on the positioning of the next kind.

3. Add arching branches or interesting foliage clusters (Fig. 9-29), positioning them as carefully as you would a flower placement. Do not crowd any of the materials. The space around the placements is as important as the flowers and foliages themselves. If they are not too rigid, spike flowers may be used to lead the eye down into the design.

4. Use filler flowers last to smooth out the design and refine the oval shape (Fig. 9-30). If any foam is still exposed, sink short foliage clusters deep into the arrangement to cover it.

5. Check the design:
   - Is the oval shape evident?
   - Is the arrangement balanced?
   - Is the arrangement free of bulges or projections on any side?
   - Does the arrangement have a light airy feeling?
   - Is the eye led down into the design?
   - Do flowers and foliage pieces appear to radiate out from a common point?

Figure 9-29

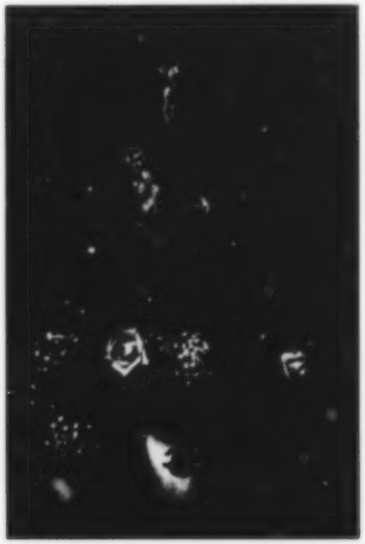
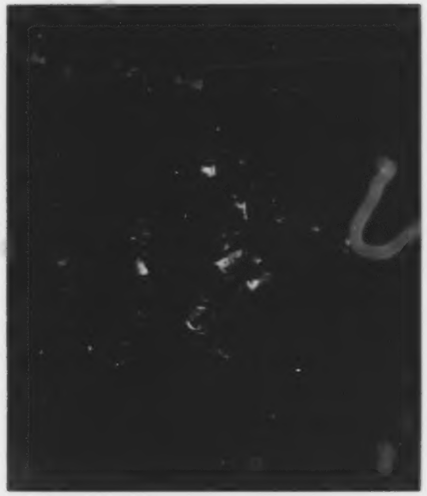


Figure 9-30



Fan Arrangement

The fan is a one-sided mass arrangement based on a circular design shape. The construction of a fan arrangement is similar to that of an equilateral triangle. The major difference is the establishment of a rounded silhouette instead of the sharp linear connection of points that is characteristic of triangle designs.

Fan arrangements had their origin in European period designs. The Williamsburg style of fan arrangement, sometimes made in a five-fingered vase, is known to those interested in that period. In more recent times fan-shaped arrangements in papier-maché or metal baskets have been produced as traditional funeral tributes.

Spike flowers such as gladioli may be used to form the outline of a fan. Mass flowers like carnations and chrysanthemums are frequently used to complete the design. A bow may be used to strengthen the focal area. The focal area is low in the design and is the point from which the flowers appear to radiate.

Some fan arrangements appear very flat. They lack depth and would be improved by greater development of the focal area. Another common flaw is weakness of the silhouette part of the design. This may result if too few spike flowers are used, leaving large pie-shaped gaps in the outline. Another problem of the silhouette is having all the outline flowers in the same plane, once again resulting in a flat, rigid appearance.

There should be good integration of the spike flowers with the mass and filler flowers. If gladioli are used, shorter pieces of the spike can be inserted near the focal area and throughout other parts of the arrangement as well as the outline. This is especially important if the spike and mass flowers are of contrasting colors.

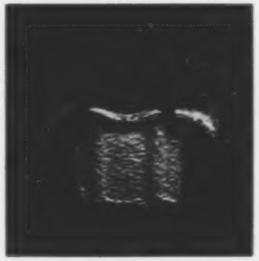
If a bow is used, it should be incorporated into the arrangement. The bow color may harmonize with the flowers or complement them. The entire arrangement should appear to fit down over the container. This is accomplished by angling flowers and foliage downward over the rim of the container.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Fan Arrangement

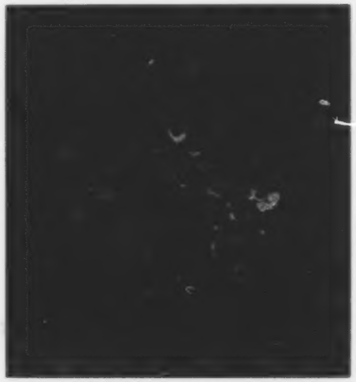
Materials:
- container to hold one block of foam
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- gladioli
- pompon mums
- salal
- #9 satin ribbon
- #28 wire
- wooden pick

1. Place foam in container and fasten with waterproof tape.



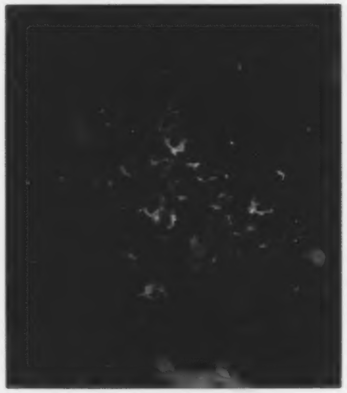
2. Use gladioli to create the fan silhouette. Establish height and then width. The lower placements should be angled down over the side of the container and slightly backward.

3. Make a #9 satin bow with 3-inch loops and two streamers. Attach the bow to a wooden stake and insert into front center of the foam. Angle the bow slightly forward and a little over the rim of the container.



4. Use a short piece of gladiolus spike to establish the depth. Bring it straight out toward you through loops of the bow. Use slightly longer gladiolus pieces to create the lower outline of the arrangement, consisting of placements projecting outward over the rim of the container. Tilt these pieces slightly up and down to avoid a rigid feeling, but conform to a curved outline in an overhead view.

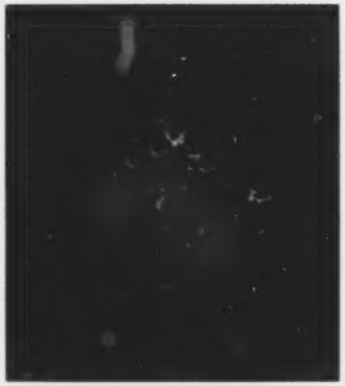
5. Use gladiolus spikes of intermediate length as a bridge between the upper and lower outline flowers. Remember to change the facing from forward to upright gradually. These placements will establish a framework for the mums.



6. Add salal leaves to cover the foam. Keep them sunken in. Avoid a heavy crowded look by using no more leaves than are necessary.

7. Repeat the fan shape with pompon mums. Use clusters of pompons at the end of a single stem as if they were one larger

(continued)



(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Fan Arrangement *(continued)*

flower, giving each stem a single placement. This is necessary to get sufficient stem length and to have good size relation with the larger gladioli. Large stems of mums should probably have some of the flowers removed so that the overall size of the cluster is reduced. Sometimes the main stem can be cut, creating two usable clusters.

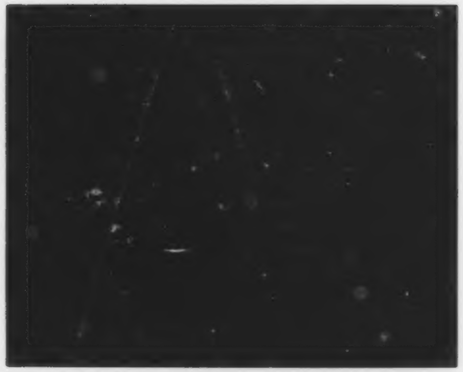
8. Check the arrangement:
    - Is the overall fan shape evident?
    - Is the outline tied together and not too rigid?
    - Have the spike flowers been integrated with the mass flowers?
    - Does the arrangement have depth?
    - Is the focal area well established?
    - Is the bow coordinated with the arrangement? Is it tied in with the rest of the arrangement (not too conspicuous)?

Basket Arrangements

Baskets are frequently selected as containers for flower arrangements. Since many baskets have handles, this situation deserves special attention. A handle should not be crowded or buried by flowers. Sometimes an arrangement in a container involving a handle may be short enough to come under the handle. Or it may be asymmetrically designed so the taller placements come to one side of the handle. Sometimes an arrangement is created with so much open space that the handle appears threaded through the arrangement.

Many baskets come with plastic liners; these are handy if the arrangement is to be made of fresh flowers. If there is no liner, a small plastic container filled with foam can be attached to the basket with chenille stems or hot glue.

If the basket is to be viewed from one side, a wedge of styrofoam can be wired to the bottom of the basket to tilt it forward. This is sometimes done to large fireside baskets. An arrangement designed in an angled basket will show better if it is displayed on a stage or as a funeral tribute.



Low arrangement fitting under the handle

Asymmetrical design to one side of the handle

Handle going through the arrangement

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. Fireside Basket

Materials:

- fireside basket
- low plastic container
- chenille stems
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- pompon mums
- leatherleaf
- glycerinized autumn leaves
- colored wheat

1. Place foam in plastic container and tape with waterproof tape. Anchor container to the basket with criss-crossed chenille stems worked through the wicker.

2. Green in the arrangement creating a low oval mound of leatherleaf that conforms to the shape of the basket. Maintain a light layered look to the greens. They should radiate out from the center of the foam in a natural way.

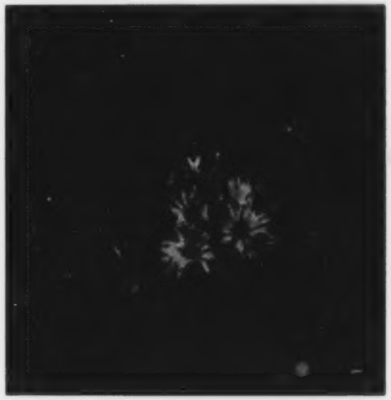
3. Use mums to establish the lower horizontal line. Extend these about 2 inches beyond the edge of the basket, angling them slightly downward over the rim.

4. Establish the width. Place mums at each side of the basket, extending them just beyond its rim near the point where the handle is attached. These flowers may be angled slightly upward since the edges of a fireside basket are rolled up.

5. Establish the height of the design with a mum placed directly in the center of the foam. The mum should be at least one inch below the handle of the basket.

6. Fill in with more mums at various depths. The overall shape should appear oval from an overhead view. In side view you will see a low arching form under the handle. The shape should conform to that of the basket. The basket should not be hidden by flowers even though some placements extend beyond its boundaries.

7. Add small clusters of autumn leaves to repeat the design shape. These may be used at different depths but should not crowd or hide the mums.



8. Fill in all parts of the arrangement with pieces of colored wheat. These must be sunken in deep enough so that they do not give the design a bristling appearance. Wheat that has long awns provides an airy extension of the design.

9. Check the design: *(See next page)*

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

Fireside Basket *(continued)*

- Is the basket featured well rather than buried?
- Is the handle clearly visible rather than crowded?
- Does the overall shape of the arrangement conform to the shape of the basket?
- Are materials uniformly distributed throughout the arrangement?
- Does the arrangement have good depth?
- Does the arrangement appear neat and well-ordered rather than shaggy?

B. Custom Basket Design

Materials:
selection of baskets of different shapes and materials
assortment of flowers and foliage
floral foam
chenille stems
waterproof tape

1. Study the designs on this page and the next made in different baskets (Figures **A–H**).

2. Select your own basket and create a design that suits the size, shape, color, and overall 'feeling' of the basket.

3. Check your design with the criteria at the top of this page (for the fireside basket).

EXAMPLES OF BASKET DESIGNS

This delicate pastel design fits well under the handle. Flowers are loosely placed and tied together with clouds of baby's breath. The design appears oval when viewed from above.

A dark lacquered basket with high handle is filled with mixed garden flowers in an upright oval design.

EXAMPLES OF BASKET DESIGNS *(continued)*

The pink and lavender coloration of this basket is repeated in the colors of the asters. Note that just one kind of flower was used– in various sizes and colors.

Tulips and daisies combined are lavishly displayed in a pastel basket. The open, relaxed look is enhanced by ivy cascading gently over the rim of the basket.

This basket was turned on its side for special effect. A container filled with floral foam is attached to the lower side of the basket. Flowers and foliage appear to spill freely from the basket.

Many flowers in a variety of shapes and colors overflowing the basket give a full garden look to this arrangement. This look is also known as *milli-fleur,* or "a thousand flowers."

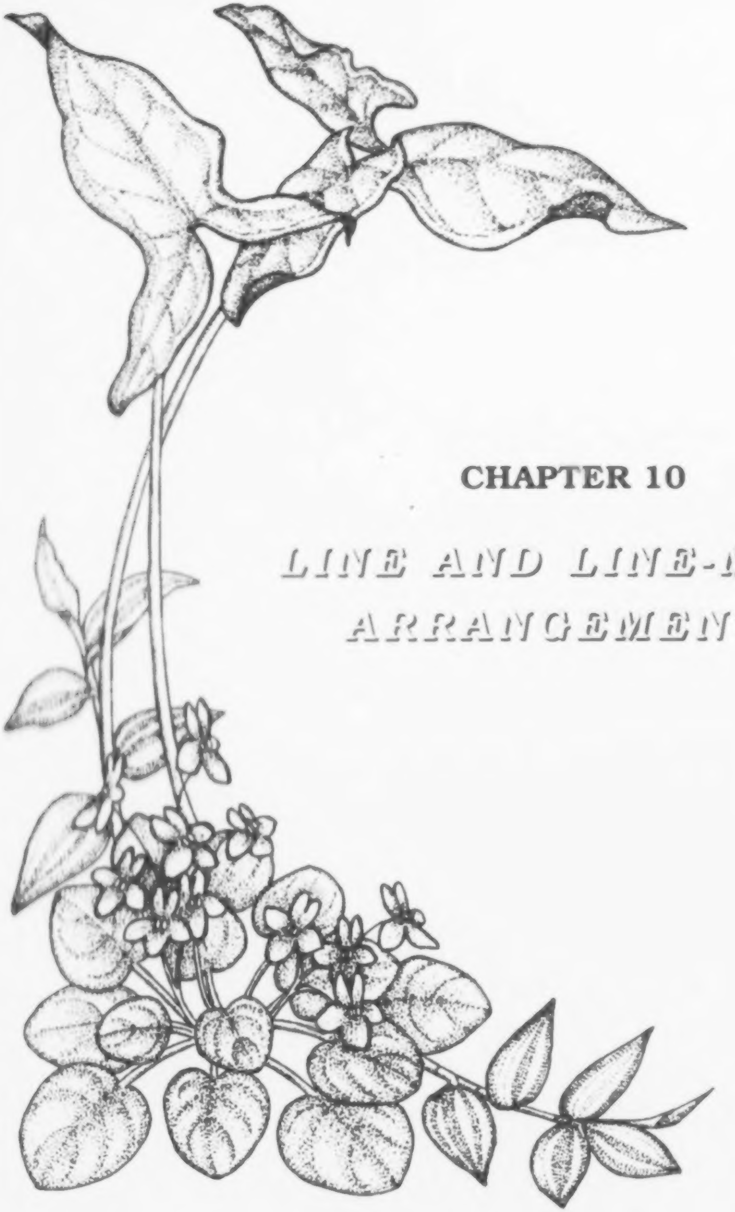
The flowers in this basket appear to be bunched, lying on their side with stems showing. Actually, flowers are inserted in one side of the foam and bare stems in the other side to give a connected appearance. The bow visually ties them together and helps to reinforce this look.

The rim and handle of this basket are decorated with flowers and foliage that were hot glued in place. The corsage-like grouping with bow forms a point of emphasis where it is attached at the base of the handle.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

450

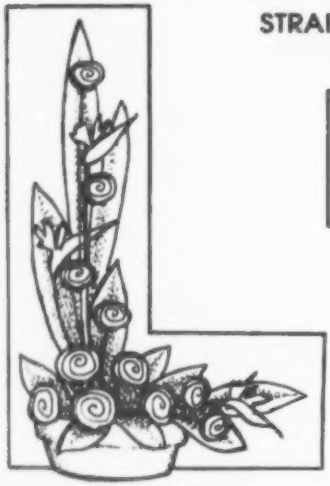
451



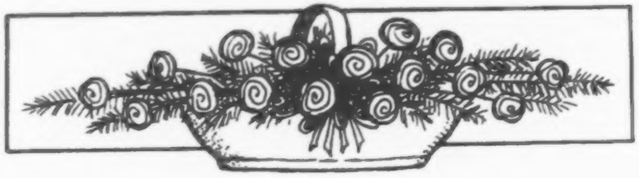
CHAPTER 10

LINE AND LINE-MASS ARRANGEMENTS

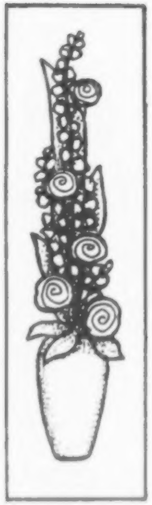
STRAIGHT-LINE VARIATIONS



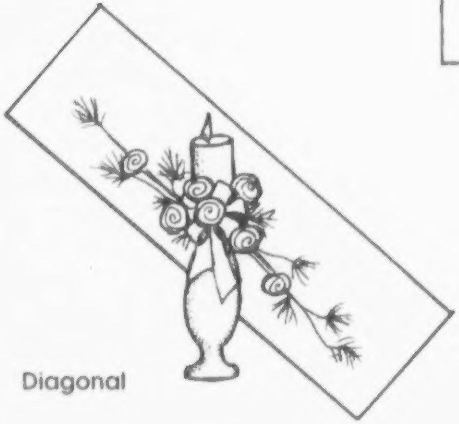
L-Pattern



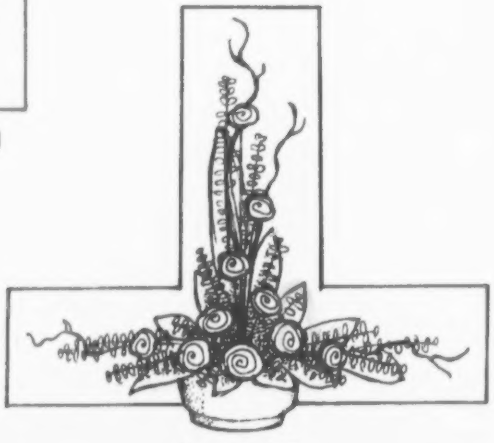
Horizontal



Vertical



Diagonal



Inverted-T

LINE AND LINE-MASS ARRANGEMENTS

Basic designs that lead the eye of the viewer along an obvious trunk line are called line or line-mass arrangements. The major line may be straight or curved. Line-mass arrangements contain more flowers than do line arrangements, and the flowers are usually closer together. Some arrangements fall clearly into one category or the other, but other arrangements are intermediate between the two.

The basic design shapes of line or line-mass arrangements that fall under straight and curved line categories are as follows:

Straight Line Variations

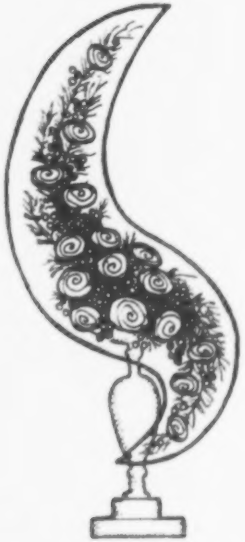
- Vertical
- Horizontal
- L-pattern
- Inverted-T
- Diagonal

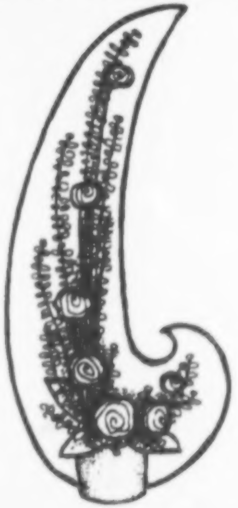
Curved Line Variations

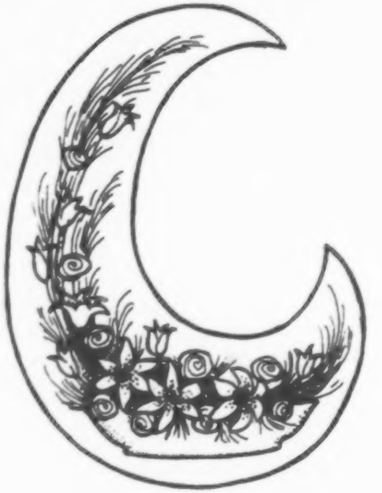
- Spiral
- Crescent
- Hogarth Curve

The basic design shapes described in this unit are considered to be traditional American designs.

CURVED-LINE VARIATIONS


Hogarth Curve


Spiral

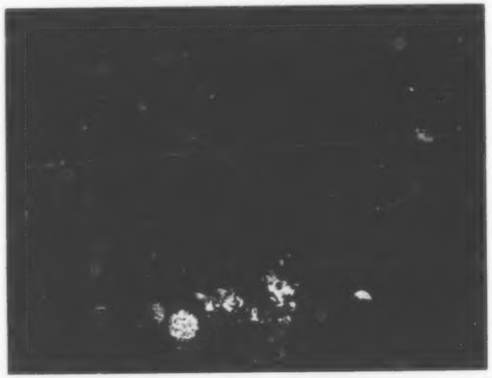

Crescent

Other styles of line and line-mass arrangements are found in Oriental and contemporary designs, some of which are discussed in Chapters 20 and 21 on period and contemporary arrangements.

A common horizontal arrangement is the diamond centerpiece, which was considered in Chapter 9, massed in, as a triangle variation. If this arrangement is stretched out with less visual weight in the central area, it is considered a horizontal line-mass arrangement.

An arrangement may consist of lines of flowers and foliage that meet or cross. A horizontal line and a vertical line are combined to form the L-pattern and inverted-T design. When a straight or curved

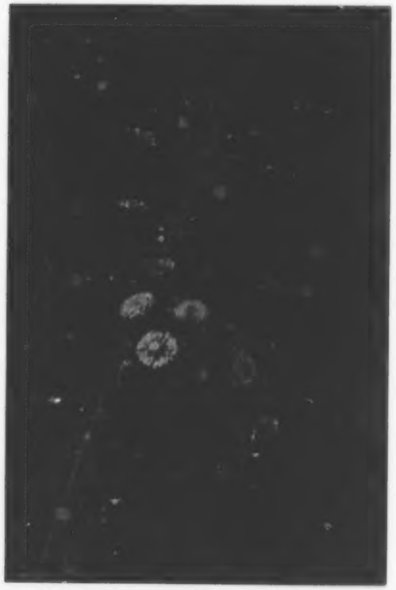
Oriental line arrangement


Contemporary line arrangement

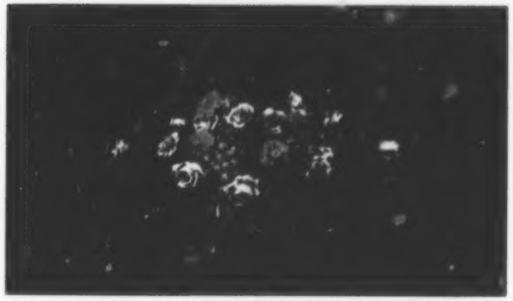
A line of opposition
The vertical line of the container is carried upward by the cattails. The diagonal line of yellow squash and black-eyed susans cuts sharply across.

diagonal line crosses a strong vertical line, the crossing line is called the **line of opposition**.

Curved lines are usually graceful and flowing. The predictable curves of a spiral, crescent or Hogarth curve arrangement are pleasing to the eye. These designs may be produced as long, drawn-out line arrangements or as heavier line-mass designs with more flowers near the focal area.



The Hogarth curve exhibits an S-shaped trunk line that curves gracefully and predictably.



The major trunk line of this basket arrangement is a horizontal line that passes gracefully under the grapevine handle.

STRAIGHT LINE VARIATIONS

VERTICAL ARRANGEMENTS

A vertical line emphasizes a straight upward thrust. These dynamic arrangements are usually designed in tall, narrow containers, which the design repeats - tall and thin (Fig. 10-1). The result is that the eye of the viewer is directed up and down the arrangement. Appropriate materials for establishing the vertical line include narrow straight pieces of foliage and flowers, such as gladioli, liatris, Scotch broom and eucalyptus. Mass flowers can be added, but they need to be stepped down rhythmically toward the focal area, which is normally at the rim of the container.

Figure 10-1

A common flaw in a vertical arrangement is to overdevelop the focal area. It should not extend significantly beyond the width of the container. Although the mechanics must be covered, this should be done with short tufts of foliage or moss to avoid excess visual weight in this area.

The rhythmic placement of flowers down the vertical line is very obvious and important (Fig. 10-2). Flowers near the top should be smaller and spaced farther apart; then, as the eye approaches the focal area, the flowers should become larger and closer together. Since there may not be many flower placements, it is especially important to create a smooth rhythmic progression. This line of flowers is similar to the trunk line of triangular arrangements, but the transition from upward- to forward-facing occurs over a much narrower depth from front to back. Flower stems must be carefully tilted, with upper placements facing mostly upward and lower placements making most of the facing transition to forward so the arrangement does not lose its slender profile in side view.

Vertical arrangements can become quite interesting when more exotic materials such as sansevieria leaves, bamboo sticks or horsetails are used to create the line. There is also an opportunity to develop shape rhythm if suitable materials are available from the greenhouse or garden. You may be able to find leaves that will gradually grade from linear to oval and eventually round shapes. If incorporated into the design, this gradual change in shape will help lead the eye to the focal area.

Vertical arrangements of suitable size may be used on church altars, in front of lecterns, or in front of narrow sections of wall. Since the base is narrow, little surface space is taken up. A small vertical design would be very appropriate for a hospital room with its limited surface space.

Figure 10-2

Zinnias are rhythmically placed to lead the eye toward the focal area.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Vertical Arrangement

Materials:
tall narrow container
floral foam
waterproof tape
myrtle, huckleberry or Scotch broom
daisy mums
annual statice

1. Place foam in the container and secure with waterproof tape. The foam should rise above rim of container, but not very much or it will be difficult to cover.

2. Establish a straight vertical line with a long, narrow piece of foliage that is two times the height of the container. This should be inserted toward the back of the foam. Slightly off to the left, place a second piece of foliage about half the length of the first. Keep the vertical line straight and narrow.

3. Establish the trunk line by first placing a small flower in front of the foliage a few inches down from its tip. Then slightly stagger the remaining mums down the vertical line. Gradually increase the size of the flowers and place them closer together as you approach the rim of the container. There should be a transition in facing of the flowers from upright at the top to forward at the focal area. Do not extend flowers too far forward (especially the upper placements) so that the arrangement retains a slender profile in side view.

Trunk line

4. Use statice between mum placements as a filler to create additional depth. Some statice placements should be angled toward the back to help lead the eye around the arrangement. This will give it more depth and avoid a flat appearance. Be careful not to extend the width with these placements.

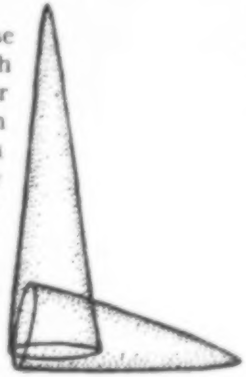
5. Add foliage pieces sparingly throughout the line and in small tufts near the focal area to cover the foam. Avoid extending the width of the arrangement and adding too much bulk at the focal area.

5.

6. Check the arrangement.
    - Is this a tall narrow arrangement with an upward thrust?
    - Does the arrangement have enough height for the container?
    - Is the arrangement too wide or bulky at the focal area?
    - Do the placements form parallel lines rather than being united in one main axis?
    - Is there a rhythmic transition down the line to the focal area?
    - Is the arrangement also slender in side view without disturbing bulges?
    - Does the arrangement have depth rather than appearing flat?

L-PATTERN

The L-pattern is a line-mass arrangement that is very similar to a right triangle arrangement except that it is not filled in between the two major points. The result is a silhouette that resembles the letter L. The focal area is at the point where the vertical and horizontal lines meet.



The two lines increase in mass as they approach the focal area from the outer points. The vertical portion may be thought of as an elongated cone, while the horizontal section resembles a shorter, stouter cone. The angle formed above the point where the two sections meet should be kept somewhat angular; it is important to preserve the void in this area. Do not fill it in like a right triangle arrangement.

The L-pattern has asymmetrical balance. Larger flowers with closer spacing at the base of the arrangement in the focal area will have enough visual weight to balance the smaller extended placements of the horizontal line. This horizontal line may go off to the right or to the left forming a backwards L. Complementary pairs of L-pattern arrangements may be used on a church altar or mantel.

The L-pattern is lighter and more stylized in appearance than its right triangle counterpart. The arrangement may be very thin and delicate or it may be more massive. The same flowers must be used throughout the design in a similar way for a unified effect. In other words, the horizontal and vertical parts of the arrangement should have about the same degree of delicacy or massiveness. If more than one kind of flower is used, both kinds should be found in both parts, not segregated into just one area.

A low rectangular container is appropriate for an L-pattern arrangement. The foam may be anchored off-center allowing a portion of the container to show. The mechanics can be a four-pronged plastic anchor pin stuck to the bottom of the container with floral clay. Soaked foam may then be pressed onto the prongs. Although this is not quite as secure as using waterproof tape, it does eliminate the problem of attaching tape in places where it may be hard to conceal.

L-pattern arrangement in an open mesh basket

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

L-Pattern Arrangement

Materials:

- low rectangular container
- four-pronged anchor pin
- floral clay
- huckleberry, myrtle or Scotch broom
- pompon mums
- annual statice

1. Fasten four-pronged anchor pin to the container with floral clay, positioning it slightly off to the left.

2. Cut and soak a piece of foam. Press it down over the anchor pin.

3. Establish height with a piece of foliage that is two times the width of the container. Place this toward the back left corner of the foam.

Establish height

4. Establish the horizontal line of the L with a piece of foliage about one-third the length of the tallest piece. Stand back and check to see whether the two pieces form a shape that is in good proportion with the container.

5. Establish depth and balance by bringing a short piece of foliage out toward you from the lower left corner of the foam.

6. Insert several pieces of foliage of different lengths down the vertical axis and along the horizontal axis to establish the framework of the arrangement. These placements illustrate a good rule to follow in traditional arranging: repeat materials throughout all parts of a design, not segregating any material into just one area.

Establish framework

7. Establish height with a small mum placed so that it is a couple of inches below the tip of the tallest foliage piece. Establish width with a medium-sized mum that has a stem a few inches shorter than the horizontal foliage placement. Establish depth with a large mum at the lower left corner.

7.

Establish height, width, depth

8. Develop a rhythmic trunk line of mums from the tallest placement to the focal area. Then develop a shorter horizontal trunk line from the farthest mum to the focal area.

(continued)

Develop trunk line

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

L-Pattern Arrangement *(continued)*

9. Position additional mums at the focal area to develop good balance and depth. These should smoothly blend the two major trunk lines into one total design. However, make sure you leave a distinct void in the angle formed by the two trunk lines, developing a clean **L-shape**.

Develop balance and depth

10. Fill in the arrangement lightly with foliage and statice to cover mechanics and to create additional depth.

11. Check the arrangement.

- Does the overall shape of the arrangement resemble the letter **L**?
- Is there good transition between the two sections?
- Does the arrangement have good depth?
- Is the arrangement in good size proportion to the container? Is its position well balanced with respect to the container?

Fill in arrangement

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

INVERTED-T

The inverted-T is a symmetrically balanced line-mass arrangement. It consists of a vertical axis arising from the middle of a horizontal axis. In construction it is very similar to the L-pattern except that it has a horizontal extension on both sides of the vertical axis. It looks like the letter T upside down.

The inverted-T arrangement is more stylized than a triangular mass arrangement and requires fewer flowers than a triangle of comparable size. This style can be adapted to a wide range of sizes. A low container with short sides will allow the horizontal placements to come straight out on each side.

Emphasis should be on straight angular placements rather than curves. Attention must be given to preserving the angular voids between the vertical and horizontal lines. It is important to tilt some flowers a little backward near the focal area to increase depth. However, if the focal area becomes too large or bulky, it can keep the eye from traveling freely throughout the T pattern.

DIAGONAL

The diagonal line-mass arrangement is dynamic and interesting, but it is not frequently seen by itself. It is more commonly used in combination with a strong vertical line. When used this way the diagonal line forms a line of opposition across the vertical line. An example of this is given in the suggested activity (page 232): a diagonal arrangement of flowers across a 9" x 2" candle in a pedestal candle holder.

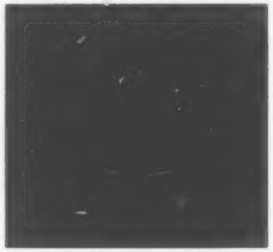
A diagonal line of bougainvillea extending from a brass mosque light

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Inverted-T

Materials:
low O-cage
small cylinder of foam
eucalyptus, euonymus, huckleberry or Scotch broom
pompon mums
sheet moss
greening pins or #20 florist wire

1. Place soaked foam in the O-cage. There are cylinders of foam available that will just fit into the plastic O-cage, leaving a small shallow reservoir for water.



2. Establish the height, width and depth of the inverted-T pattern with foliage.

3. Develop the vertical trunk line by stair-stepping foliage down the vertical line. Use a few pieces of foliage to create the horizontal line. Maintain distinct angles and open voids where the vertical and horizontal axes meet to create a clear upside-down T-shape. Cover exposed floral foam with sheet moss that was dipped in water and wrung out. Secure with greening pins or pieces of florist wire bent into U-shapes.

Develop trunk line

4. Establish the height, width and depth with mums. Gradually increase the thickness and depth of each cone-shaped segment as you get nearer to the focal area (where the vertical and horizontal lines intersect).

5. Fill toward the center of the arrangement with mums. Develop the focal area with a smooth blending of the three cones. Angle some flowers toward the back for depth.

Establish height, width, depth

6. Check the arrangement.

- Does the overall shape of the arrangement resemble an inverted T?
- Is there good transition from one section to another?
- Does the arrangement have good depth?

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Diagonal Arrangement on a Candle

Materials:

- 9" x 2" candle
- pedestal container
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- huckleberry or juniper
- carnations, mums, or other round flowers
- filler (berry clusters, baby's breath, or statice)
- #9 ribbon
- #28 wire
- wooden picks

1. Attach foam to container with waterproof tape.

2. Attach four wooden picks to the bottom of the candle by overlapping them 1 1/2 inches around the outside of the base of the candle. Secure them with waterproof tape wrapped around the candle and the stakes.

3. Insert picks into the foam so that the base of the candle sits firmly on the foam.

3.

4. Establish a strong diagonal line of foliage cutting through the center of the foam. The upper piece should be about 6 inches long and the lower piece about 3 inches long. Insert these near the back of the foam so that future placements will be in front of them.

Establish diagonal line

5. Make a bow with 2 1/2-inch loops and streamers. Attach the bow to a wooden stake and insert it in the foam at the base of the candle.

6. Place smaller flowers near the outer points of both upper and lower sections of the diagonal line. Place a third and larger flower over the bow facing directly forward. The bow area will be the focal area of the finished arrangement.

7. Establish a trunk line of flowers from both points toward the focal area. Flower spacing should become closer near the focal area.

Establish trunk line

8. Fill in with berry clusters or other filler. Bring these materials through loops of the ribbon and around the candle to conceal the foam. Avoid a heavy look around the candle which distracts from the dynamic diagonal line.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Diagonal Arrangement on a Candle

(continued)

9. Check the arrangement.
   - Is the diagonal line clean-cut and obvious?
   - Is the diagonal line of opposition well balanced and in good proportion to the candle and container?
   - Are the stakes and tape at the base of the candle covered?
   - Is the candle in good balance with the flowers, not buried in them?
   - Is the bow worked into the design?
   - Do the candles, flowers and ribbon coordinate with each other?

CURVED LINE VARIATIONS

SPIRAL ARRANGEMENTS

The spiral design shape is a simple line of flowers that curves downward and around like a drawn-out stripe on a barber's pole. With as few as five flowers the eye can be led along one spiral rotation around a central vertical axis. In a spiral arrangement the central column around which the flowers are placed is kept open and is therefore a void.

Flowers must be rhythmically placed with closer spacing of larger flowers at the base of the arrangement. The focal point is at the rim of the container where the largest flower should be faced directly forward. As the lower edge of the spiral begins to curve backward, the spacing of flowers should gradually increase and their size should gradually decrease.

Line material in spiral designs must be slender and must conform to the curvature of the spiral. Some branches curve naturally, while others (like eucalyptus and Scotch broom) can be made to curve by shaping them with your fingers (Fig. 10-3). Foliages and filler materials are used sparingly in spiral arrangements so that they do not detract from the slender curving line.

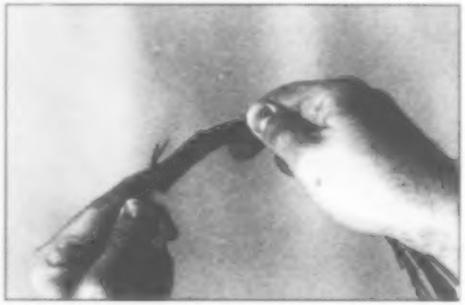


Figure 10-3

A simple spiral is a good way to begin practicing curved line arrangements. Establishing a pleasantly curved trunk line is the first step in creating more complex curved line-mass arrangements like crescents and Hogarth curves. The spiral is also a good arrangement to demonstrate the ways of creating rhythmic visual flow in a design.

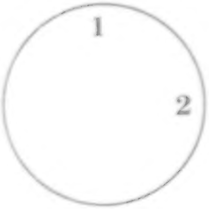
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Spiral

Materials:
O-cage
floral foam cylinder
Scotch broom
miniature carnations
annual statice
sheet moss
greening pins and #22 wire

1. Place foam cylinder into the plastic O-cage.

2. Select a slender piece of Scotch broom about 10 inches long. Insert this piece into the foam toward the back in the "12-o'clock" position in the circle of foam (**#1**).



3. Insert a very short curved piece of Scotch broom in the side of the foam at the "3-o'clock" position (**#2**). Angle this curved piece toward the back. This piece and the taller placement establish the upper and lower extremities of the spiral.

4. Begin to establish the spiral trunk line by placing a smaller carnation toward the top of the design facing toward the upper point of the curved line (Fig. 10-4). If a wire is needed to control placement of the flower and cause the stem to flow with the curve of the foliage, attach it to the flower before inserting in the foam. Insert a #22 wire up into the calyx of the flower and bring it spiraling down the flower stem. If either flower or foliage piece is not firmly anchored in the foam, attach a wooden pick to the lower 2 inches of the stem. Join pick and stem by wrapping together with waterproof tape.

Figure 10-4

5. Place the next flower in right side of floral foam facing backward toward the point of the lower piece of Scotch broom. This flower should be partially open.

6. Visualize a curved, spiraling line connecting upper and lower flowers. This will become the trunk line of the design. Begin to form it by adding a flower lower than the first. If necessary, wire the stem so that it flows along the same curve as the Scotch broom (Fig. 10-4).

7. Finish the trunk line by adding gradually larger carnations with closer spacing until you are low in the design, directly over the floral foam. Then begin gradually increasing distance and flower size until you join up with the bottom flower that is pointing backward (Fig. 10-5). Be careful to change facing gradually to lead the eye smoothly along the spiral line.

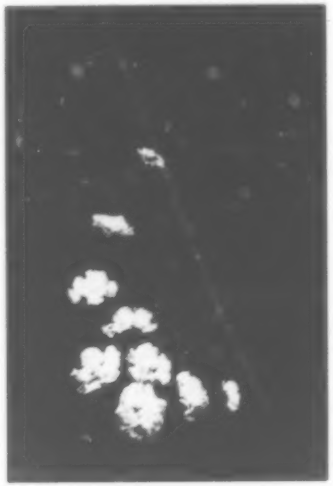


Figure 10-5

8. Use pieces of statice as filler between the flowers. Use the filler to smooth out the silhouette and create added depth. Add it along the entire trunk line, not just in certain areas (Fig. 10-6).

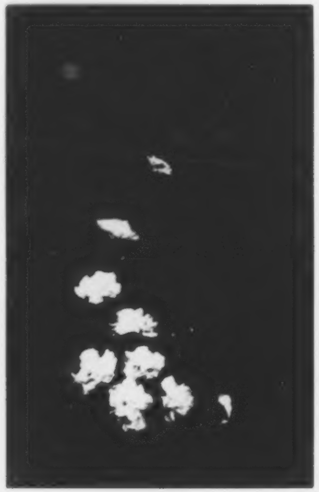
(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Spiral *(continued)*

9. Use greening pins or bent pieces of wire to pin on pieces of damp moss over exposed areas of floral foam. These will cover the mechanics without adding extra bulk to the design (Fig. 10-6).

Figure 10-6



10. Check the arrangement.

    - Do the flowers form a pleasantly curving line around an imaginary central axis?
    - Is the arrangement free of all sharp angular sections to the curved line?
    - Did you avoid having any materials appear to be shooting straight off from the basic line, forming distracting tangential lines?
    - Is the base in good proportion to the rest of the arrangement, not appearing heavy and overdeveloped?
    - Does the lower part of the arrangement lead the eye backward from the focal point along a line that appears to be a continuation of the upper part of the curve?

CRESCENT ARRANGEMENTS

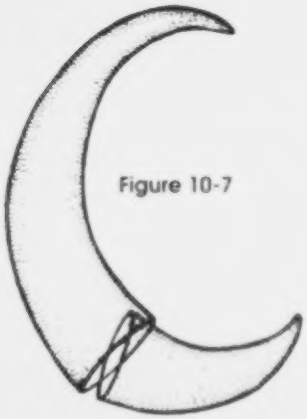


Figure 10-7

A crescent arrangement is a curved line-mass arrangement which resembles the crescent moon in silhouette. From a design standpoint, the crescent resembles two animal horns fastened together base to base (Fig. 10-7). The upper part is twice as long as the lower part. The area where they meet is the focal area. Thus, two-thirds of the line is above the focal area and one-third below it.

The trunk line follows a circular or oval curve. If the upper and lower points of the trunk line were extended, they would meet. Neither the ends of the trunk line nor any sections of it should be straight. Straight sections would produce a rough feeling that could lead the eye along a disturbing tangential line away from the curve.

The horn analogy is useful because the arrangement also has mass, which gradually increases as you approach the focal area. Within this mass some of the flowers should face toward the back to keep the crescent from appearing flat.

The crescent should be built so that its curving line cuts diagonally across the foam. To achieve this, the taller placements of the upper curve will be in a back corner of the foam; the shorter placements of the lower curve will arise from the opposite front corner. The entire block of foam will thus be used, and the arrangement is less likely to appear flat. The focal area should be cradled in the crescent directly over the center of the foam.

Both low and pedestal containers are suitable for crescent designs. The foam may be placed off-center if an oblong container is used. The foam should not be unnecessarily large or it may become too massive when it is greened in or covered with moss. Crescent arrangements may curve either to the right or to the left. Greater depth may be achieved if the design is slightly angled across the container when viewed from the front, so that one looks *into* the crescent instead of just at its side silhouette.

Crescent design of roses and eucalyptus

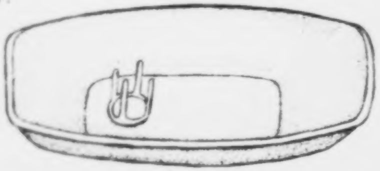
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Crescent Design

Materials:

- low oblong container
- four-pronged anchor pin
- floral clay or hot glue gun/pan
- floral foam
- eucalyptus or Scotch broom
- carnations or pompon mums
- annual statice
- #20 or #22 wire
- wooden picks

1. Fasten the anchor pin left of center with floral clay.



Place a medium-sized piece of foam over the anchor pin.

2. Select a slender piece of eucalyptus about 12 inches long (Fig. 10-8). Work it between your fingers to produce a gentle curve. Insert it in the back left-hand corner of the foam so that even though the center part of the stem arches out away from the arrangement, its tip comes back in directly over the center of the foam. The curved portion of the stem should also be angled slightly toward the back, not straight out to the side, in order to begin building a crescent line that will cut diagonally across the foam.

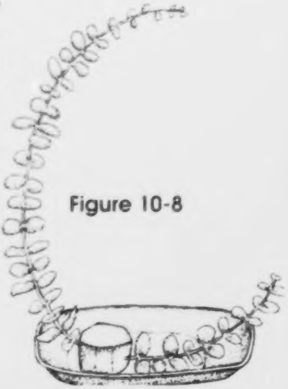


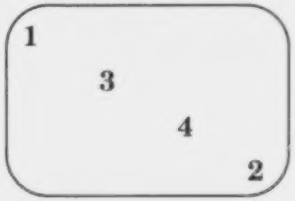
Figure 10-8

3. Select another piece of eucalyptus and cut it to a length of about 5 inches. Shape into a curve and insert it at the front right corner of the foam (Fig. 10-8). This piece should be angled slightly forward. Its curvature should match that of the upper piece so that if both pieces were extended from the tips, they would meet.

These are the two most important placements because they establish the major line of the arrangement. Stand back and see if you have established a curve that resembles the crescent moon.

4. Add a few more pieces of eucalyptus between the first placements to further establish the crescent line.

4. *(continued)* These placements should come diagonally across the foam.



5. Establish a trunk line down the upper part of the crescent by starting with the smaller flowers and gradually increasing size and decreasing spacing as you come down the line to the focal area. Face some flowers toward the back on both the inside and outside edges of the crescent to lead the eye around a three-dimensional horn shape. If all the flowers are in the same plane, the crescent will lack depth and appear flat.

(continued)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

Crescent Design *(continued)*

5. *(continued)* Straight stems can be overcome by inserting a #20 wire up into the flower head and then spiraling it down the stem. This will allow you to bend the stem into a curve that will stay that way. No taping of the stems is necessary as the green wire is fairly inconspicuous.

6. Establish a trunk line from the lower point in toward the focal area. Blend the two trunk lines together. The largest flowers should be placed where the two trunk lines meet right over the center of the foam in the focal area. The finished design should lead the eye into the arrangement, then up, over and back to the focal area.

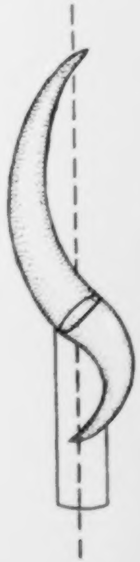
7. Fill in the arrangement lightly with statice (and another foliage or moss, if needed). Use these placements to smooth out the curve, develop depth, and cover the foam.

8. Check the arrangement.

- Is the eye led along a curved line that resembles a crescent moon?
- Did you avoid any obvious straight lines of material, either on the inside or the outside of the crescent?
- Are the line and focal area well developed so that the eye is led over and back to this area?
- Is the focal area "right" for the arrangement (not too heavy)?
- Has depth been developed so that the crescent does not appear flat?
- Does the main trunk line come diagonally across the foam so that the arrangement appears set well in the container?

HOGARTH CURVE ARRANGEMENTS

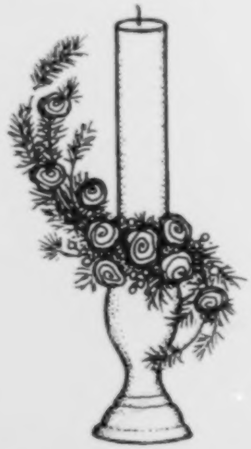
The Hogarth curve is a curved line-mass arrangement that resembles the letter S. It is quite similar to a crescent except that the lower trunk line is curved forward and down. Two-thirds of the total length of a Hogarth curve is above the focal area and one-third is below.



A tall container is necessary for a Hogarth curve arrangement since the lower part of the design must be curved down. Containers with pedestals, cherub vases, cylindrical containers, and tall oval vases are all good choices if they have enough room to hold a piece of foam large enough for the many placements that are necessary.

Curved flowering shrub branches like forsythia and cherry are nice for establishing the line. Eucalyptus and Scotch broom work well and are available to the florist year-round. Taller flowers may require a wire so that they can be bent to conform to the required curves.

The Hogarth curve can be used by itself as an elegant design style or in combination with a vertical line to form a line of opposition. For example, a Hogarth curve could be substituted for the diagonal line used in combination with the 9" x 2" candle in the previous exercise (page 232).



The Hogarth curve may also be found as a visual pattern within a larger mass arrangement. For example, you might create an S-curve of yellow roses within a larger oval mass design of mixed flowers.

Hogarth curve in a cherub vase

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Hogarth Curve Design

Materials:

- tall pedestal container
- floral foam
- waterproof tape
- wooden picks
- eucalyptus
- pittosporum
- carnations

1. Place foam in the container and tape with waterproof tape.

2. Select a piece of eucalyptus that is two times the height of the container. Cut off any side shoots. Work the piece between your fingers, especially at the lower end, so that a gentle curvature is evident. Place it in the back left corner of the foam so that the tip is directly over the center of the foam.

2. *(continued)*
If the thin stem of this tall foliage piece does not hold the branch securely in position, it can be more firmly anchored in the foam by using waterproof tape to attach two wooden stakes about 3 inches long to the bottom of the stem. Insert these stakes into the foam. Other flower or foliage stems may be substituted for the wooden stakes if they are not available.

3. Select a second piece of eucalyptus a little less than half the length of the first. Work a curve into the piece. Insert it in the front right corner of the foam so it comes forward and down. This lower foliage piece should curve enough to bring the tip in below the center of the foam, in line with the center of the foam and with the upper tip when looking at the arrangement from the front.

4. Add several other curved pieces of eucalyptus to establish the S line. The line should swing diagonally across the piece of foam to ensure that the arrangement has depth and is well situated on the container. Use the pittosporum closer to the floral foam to cover the foam. Keep the pittosporum within the boundary of the S shape. Do not develop a heavy mass at the rim of the container that will stop the eye at that area.

4.

5. Establish the upper trunk line with carnations in the same way as with the upper part of the crescent.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY *(continued)*

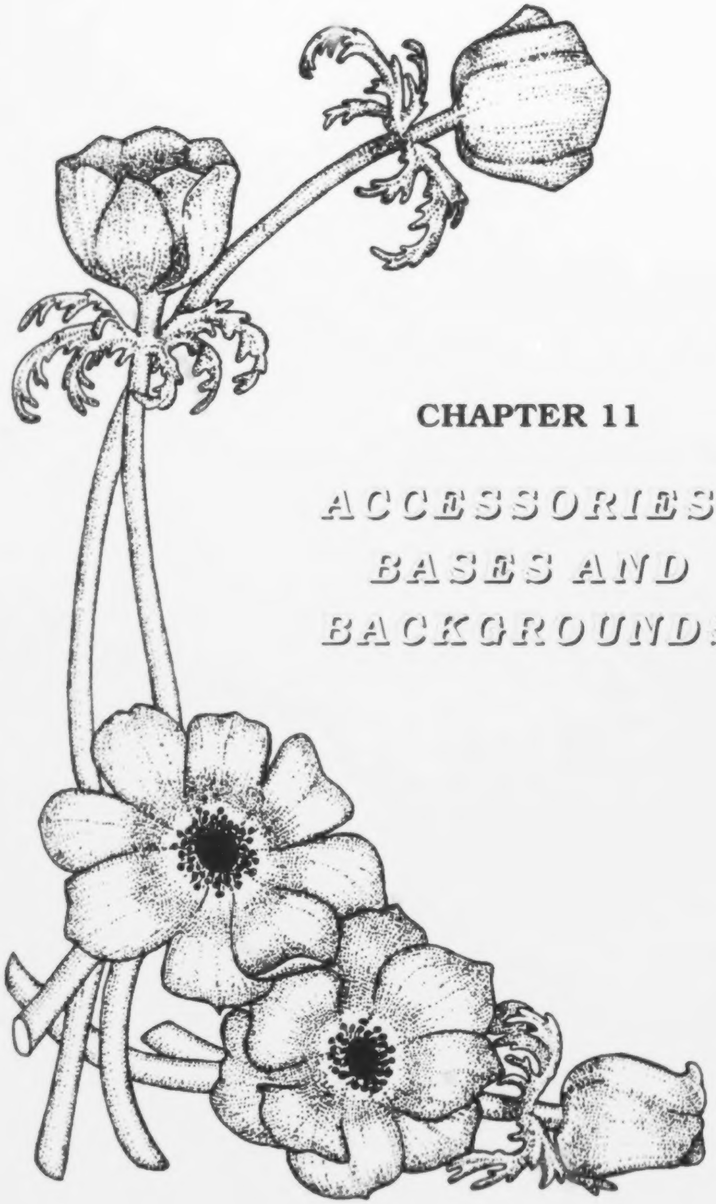
Hogarth Curve Design *(continued)*

6. Establish the lower portion of the trunk line, starting out near the tip and working back to the focal area. The focal area should be over the center of the foam. It should have good depth without being unnecessarily heavy in appearance.

Remember to increase flower size and decrease spacing near the focal area. Also turn some flowers to the side and back on both edges of the curve to give the design shape a three-dimensional mass instead of a flat appearance.

7. Check the arrangement.

- Does the major trunk line resemble the letter S?
- Is the arrangement free of any straight lines of material that distract from the flowing curve?
- Is there smooth transition between the upper and lower parts of the arrangement?
- Does the eye travel freely along the length of the curve, not stopped by an overly heavy focal area?
- Is the design well balanced, with upper and lower points in line with the focal area?
- Is there good depth rather than a flat look?
- Does the arrangement have an elegant appearance?



CHAPTER 11

ACCESSORIES, BASES AND BACKGROUNDS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Arrangements in Unusual Containers

Roses and carnations in a seashell

Design with university theme around a tin canister with OSU logo. Buckeye branches form line of design; buckeye fruit are accessories.

ACCESSORIES, BASES, AND BACKGROUNDS

The character of an arrangement can be developed and often made more interesting by incorporating an accessory like a figurine, bow, candle or piece of driftwood into the design. Selecting from a vast choice of accessories, the floral designer is able to set a theme, create a mood, or suggest a holiday. The accessory may be a large dominant feature around which the arrangement is built, or it may be a subtle addition to the design. Examples of the latter might be a bow at the handle of a basket or artificial fruit clusters worked through the arrangement as additional placements.

Arrangements are sometimes set on bases. Oriental arrangements are often displayed on black lacquered bases. Wicker mats, wood or styrofoam, used as bases for a traditional design, also serve to anchor the container and accessories. The base may give stability to an arrangement and tie together the various units of a multi-parted arrangement.

The background against which an arrangement is seen is an important factor in the total impact of the arrangement on the viewer. A certain floral arrangement may have detail and beauty that can be appreciated when placed against a plain bone-colored wall. But the same arrangement may appear busy and unappealing in front of a heavily patterned wallpaper. If an arrangement is being made for a display, such as a shop window or flower show, the designer can select a background which shows the arrangement to its best advantage. In other cases where the background has been established first, the arrangement should be made with this in mind so that the design chosen will suit the background.

Accessories, bases, and backgrounds should harmonize with the flowers, foliage and container in color, texture, size and degree of formality. A total impression should be created that can be visually communicated to anyone who views the arrangement. For example, an elegant formal feeling will be conveyed by a classical bronze statue, marble vase, and velvet background, while a cheerful, informal mood is created by a wicker picnic basket, loaf of French bread, and gingham table cloth.

The accessories, base, and background should not overpower the rest of the arrangement in size. Neither should any one of the three be so small that they appear weak and insignificant. The use of small animal figurines dwarfed by large arrangements creates an unnatural picture because the proportions are so unbelievable.

A good test of the successful use of an accessory, base or background is to visualize the arrangement with that unit removed. If the arrangement appears lacking, that particular unit is probably an important part of the design. If the arrangement looks as good without it, or if a better alternative comes to mind, a change should be made.

ACCESSORIES

FIGURINES

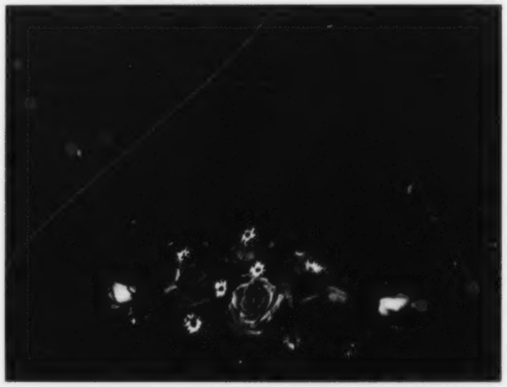
A figurine is a molded or carved likeness of a person, bird or animal. Sometimes a figurine is merely placed next to an arrangement to complement the color and style of the design or to create a certain mood. Oriental, religious, brass, and fine porcelain figures are often used this way. It is usually more successful to create the arrangement with the figurine in mind so that its overall size and style will appropriately feature the figure.

The base of a figurine is usually placed near the focal area of the design. The lines of the design should repeat any dominant lines of the figurine. A tall slender figurine could be complemented by a narrow vertical arrangement. A cherub figure posed in an S-shaped position could be enhanced by a Hogarth curve with the same degree of curvature.

Some figurines suggest motion. A running figure or a windswept girl holding on to her hat can be complemented by an arrangement which develops visual motion in the same direction. Possibilities include a creative crescent with sweeping lines or a dynamic diagonal line.

The arrangement must not overpower the figure by appearing to bury it. This can happen if the lines of the arrangement are too heavy or the figure appears crowded. If the figure appears to be getting buried, move it out slightly from the arrangement. Turn it to show its most interesting side so that its lines and the lines of the arrangement effectively complement each other.

In traditional arranging, religious figurines such as Madonnas are given special prominence. Be careful never to rest flowers or foliage on the head. Also do not let any part of the design appear to crowd the figurine.



Madonna stands well above a horizontal arrangement of roses. Notice the inverted-T formed by the figure and the line of flowers.

The figure of St. Francis is a key element in this line-mass design, unified by the cork base.

Design of stylized simplicity features a pair of birds. Base is a cross section of cedar.

Holding a Figurine in Place

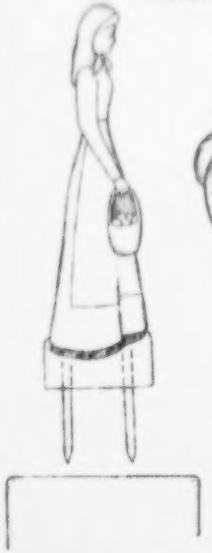


Figure 11-1
With wooden stakes

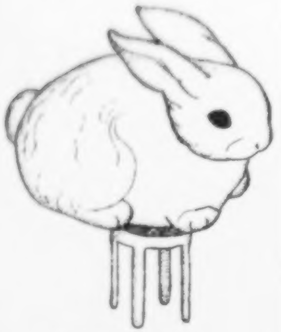


Figure 11-2
With four-pronged plastic anchor pins

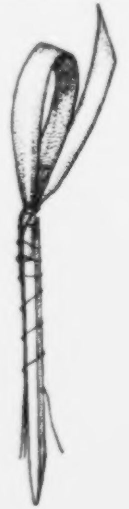


Figure 11-3
Ribbon loop attached to wooden stake

ATTACHING ACCESSORIES

Figurines can be attached directly to a base or the bottom of a container with floral clay, floral adhesive or hot glue. Mechanics for the arrangement (usually a small container holding floral foam) can be attached to a base in the same way or wired on with chenille stems if the base is wicker or bamboo.

The mechanics for attaching figurines to floral foam involve first attaching a piece of styrofoam to the bottom of the figurine with floral clay, adhesive or hot glue. Insert wooden stakes into the bottom of the styrofoam, leaving two or three inches of the stake extending out from the bottom. Then push the figurine with its attached styrofoam and extended stakes down into the floral foam (Fig. 11-1). The height of the styrofoam can be adjusted to raise the figurine to whatever position is desired. The styrofoam will also protect the figurine from moisture that is in the floral foam. Four-pronged plastic anchor pins can be used for smaller figurines (Fig. 11-2). Attach them with floral clay and push the prongs into the foam.

Accessories that are intended to be used throughout an arrangement (like hearts, clusters of artificial candy or fruit, or shiny Christmas balls) may come on wire picks that can be inserted directly into floral foam or styrofoam. Often these accessories will need to be wired to wooden stakes or heavy wire to extend their length for some of the placements. Floratape can be used to cover the wire. Or the wire can be replaced with waterproof tape to attach the picks to wooden stakes.

Ribbon, ribbon loops (Fig. 11-3), and net tufts are usually secured by a wire. This wire can be inserted directly into floral foam or attached to a heavier wire or wooden stake if more strength and length are needed. When ribbon is used on a basket handle, it can be wired directly to the handle.

Driftwood requires more sturdy anchoring because of its weight. Heavier pieces need to be secured to bases large enough or heavy enough to support them by means of screws or dowel rods. Lighter branches may be inserted directly into floral foam. If added support is needed, use styrofoam in the bottom of the container and place soaked foam on top. Use waterproof tape to fasten two wooden stakes to the base of the branch. Then insert the branch down through the soaked foam until it is firmly anchored in the styrofoam.

Plastic candle holders with winged points are available for holding candles in floral foam. If these cannot be obtained, attach wooden stakes to the candle base with waterproof tape (Fig. 11-4). The stakes are necessary to anchor any tall candle firmly in foam. Even a regular 12-inch dinner taper should not be inserted directly into floral foam, since even slight movements will enlarge its hole, causing the candle to tip.

Two wooden stakes are sufficient for regular dinner tapers; for larger diameter candles, attach three or more wooden stakes with waterproof tape.

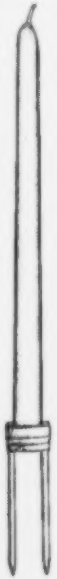


Figure 11-4 Candle with wooden stakes attached

Grooves can be cut with a knife in the candle base for the stakes to fit into. Both stakes and waterproof tape should not extend up the candle more than an inch. If they do, they will be difficult to conceal, and the candle will end up buried in floral material. Push stakes down into the floral foam until the candle base rests firmly on the foam.

Votive lights containing candles can be attached in the same way as porcelain figurines. Stick a circular piece of styrofoam to the base of the votive with floral clay (Fig. 11-5). Insert wooden stakes in the styrofoam and push the whole unit into the floral foam. The candle can be raised higher by lengthening the stakes.

Plastic or glass rods are available to extend votives above the flowers in an arrangement. Bases made especially for these rods are glued to the bottom of the container for support. When using new votive cups, it is a good idea to spray the inside with a nonstick vegetable oil. This will keep candle wax from sticking to the glass, making removal of spent candles easier.

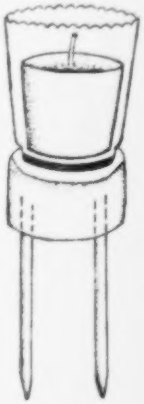


Figure 11-5
Staking a votive light

USING CANDLES IN ARRANGEMENTS

Candles add color and interest to a design even when they are not lighted. When lighted, they give a special charm and dimension to the design by creating shadows.

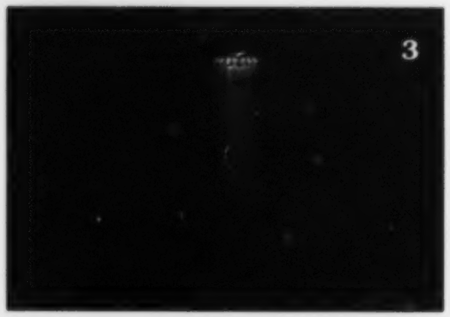
Candles must be in good proportion to the overall size of the arrangement. Both height and diameter of the candle should be great enough that it does not appear to be overpowered or buried by the flowers and foliage. While a single 9-inch taper may be

Autumn centerpiece with two tall candles and a short, wide one. Accessories are osage orange, squash, bittersweet, and a pumpkin.

Using a Large Candle in a Centerpiece

Wooden stakes are placed in grooves that have been carved at the base of the candle. They are held in place with waterproof tape.

The stakes are inserted into the floral foam until the bottom of the candle rests on the floral foam.



The diamond shape is created with greens.

The centerpiece is completed with roses placed around the candle.

Autumn centerpiece with 2"-diameter candle in the middle

Cluster of narrow tapers arises from this design featuring fruit in a basket.

Cornucopia of fruit and flowers accessorized with a bow and two candles

Using Candles in Arrangements

Candle extends the vertical line of the container. Sheaf of wheat and flowers form a diagonal line of opposition.

A table design on two overlapping mirrors. The votive candles reflect in the mirror and illuminate the flowers.

appropriate for a small centerpiece, two or more candles would be better for a larger floral piece. When more than one candle is used, consider placing them at different heights for more interest. An alternative to several narrow candles is to use a single larger one that is taller and larger in diameter.

For a special effect, very long, narrow floral tapers can be inserted at different angles in the foam. Because of their small diameter, these tapers burn completely and will not drip even if tilted. Wooden stakes taped to their bases make them more secure in the foam. Votive lights can be extended above the arrangement on rods and also scattered around it on the table top for a larger, more lavish effect. Adding mirrors or accessories that sparkle with reflected light creates a very festive mood. Always arrange the candles so that their flames do not endanger people, curtains or other furnishings, as well as the plant materials and accessories in the arrangement itself.

When candle holders or candelabras are used, the candles sometimes fit too loosely in the holders. Make them secure and straight by wrapping the candle base with floratape or waterproof tape. If neither is available, take the cellophane covering that new candles are usually wrapped in and twist it around the candle base so the candle will fit securely in the holder.

BASES

Sometimes arrangements are displayed on a special platform called a base. There is great variation among purchased or homemade bases. They can be many different shapes, colors, sizes, and textures. They can be constructed from many different materials. Whatever base is chosen, it should be harmonious with the overall theme or mood of the arrangement. It should not be so large or heavy in appearance that it overpowers the flowers and foliage.

Bases may be round, rectangular, oval, triangular or free form. They may be raised on legs or stacked off-center. Bases are commercially available in various Oriental styles, usually painted black, as well as mirrored contemporary types or natural tree trunk cross sections. Any shape can be cut from styrofoam or plywood. It can be covered with moss or painted in any color that is desired. Creative bases have been fashioned from bamboo, cinnamon sticks, and dried shelf fungi.

Arrangements are often placed off-center on bases. The exposed base on one side may be an important element in the overall balance of the design. The base may be turned at an angle to create a different and perhaps more interesting effect.

Bases are often neutral colors like black, gray and brown. These colors do not compete with flower colors. Silver may be used for a hi-tech look. Other colors are possibilities if they coordinate with the arrangement and provide visual stability to the design.

Oriental design displayed on a wooden base

Contemporary design of cockscomb and hydrangea placed on one side of a rectangular base. Base is important to balance and stability of the design.

Line-mass design of pokeweed berries, acorn squash, and privet on a natural base of woven branches. The base harmonizes with materials used and helps support the weight of the squash.

This base was made by gluing cinnamon sticks to pieces of cardboard. Two strips of raffia appear to bind them together. The design uses green zinnias, bells of Ireland, cucumbers, and yucca leaves.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Flowers can be set against a plain wall with art work.

Flowers here are shown against a mirror and patterned wallpaper.

BACKGROUNDS

Possible backgrounds for an arrangement include the wall behind a design, fabric hung behind a design in a display, the table covering under a centerpiece, or the clothing that a corsage is worn against. These backgrounds can vary in color, texture and pattern. The arrangement should harmonize with the background or provide a pleasing contrast to it.

If the background is patterned, the arrangement should have bold outlines; also one of the background colors should be very dominant in the design. Backgrounds and arrangements coordinate best when they create the same mood or express the same degree of formality. Velvet and satin are formal; burlap and gingham are informal. A brightly colored serape would make a suitable background for a Mexican design. Soft chiffon would harmonize better with a spring arrangement and a woolen blanket with an arrangement in a football motif.

Mirrored backgrounds can add depth to a design and multiply the impact of the flowers. It is especially important for arrangements placed in front of mirrors to have the back well finished off with some flowers placed there to reflect in the mirror.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Choose a figurine 6 inches or more in height. Anchor the figurine to a base or directly to foam in a container. (See page 246 for the mechanics for anchoring figurines in foam.) Study the shape and feeling of the figurine and then create an arrangement that will feature the figurine. Try one of the following:

  A. Madonna
  B. classical statue
  C. duck
  D. rabbit
  E. clown
  F. Oriental figure

2. Use a stuffed animal (like a teddy bear) as a featured accessory in an arrangement. Treat it just as you would a figurine. The stuffed animal may be wired to wooden stakes for support. Use styrofoam under it so that it will not rest on wet foam.

If the arms and legs of the stuffed animal are flexible, position them creatively to suggest animation, and try to complement these lines in your arrangement. Cover wire and other mechanics with flowers and foliage, but don't let them crowd or bury the stuffed animal.

3. Make an arrangement that features ribbon. Use a bow near the focal area or on the handle of the basket in which the arrangement has been made. Make individual ribbon loops and use them as you would a filler flower throughout the arrangement.

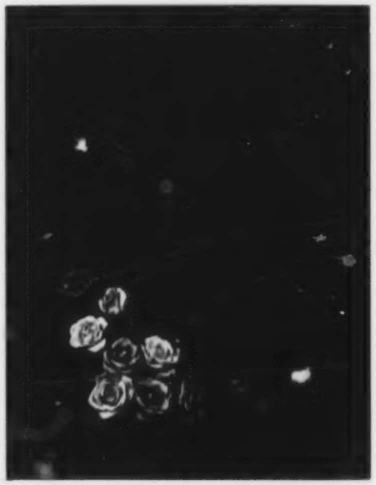
(continued)

4. Make an arrangement on a base. The arrangement should be compatible in feeling with the base, and in good size relationship to it. Decide whether to center the arrangement on the base or perhaps to achieve an effect more creative and effective off-center. Try turning the base at different angles until you are most satisfied.

Some of the following bases you may have available or may wish to make:

  A. black Oriental base
  B. bamboo mat
  C. wicker mat
  D. wood slab, cross section
  E. styrofoam, cut and painted
  F. weathered barn siding

5. Make an arrangement featuring driftwood. Anchor an interesting piece of wood on a base or in a container of foam. (See page 246 for suggestions for securing the wood more firmly.) Repeat the lines of the wood in your design. The heavier the appearance of the wood, the larger your design must be.



Driftwood positioned on an oval base suggests the size and basic line of this line-mass design of roses.

Use of such fall plants as squash, gourds, mini-pumpkins, osage orange, bittersweet, and Indian corn provides seasonal color and expresses the feeling of fall.

Two mini-bales of straw are joined together as a base for this fall design with a scarecrow used as an accessory.

This L-patterned design features a praying cherub.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

6. Make an arrangement that suggests a holiday or special occasion by using accessories to accent the design. Fasten accessories on wires or wooden picks to extend them to the lengths you need. Select one of the following:

A. candy canes (Christmas)
B. noise makers (New Year's)
C. hearts (Valentine's Day)
D. shamrocks (St. Patrick's Day)
E. baby chicks (Easter)
F. pencils (Secretary's Day)
G. stars (Fourth of July)

7. Make several arrangements featuring candles. One can be a small diamond centerpiece with one 12-inch taper. Then make a larger centerpiece with three 12-inch tapers. Position the candles at different heights for interest.

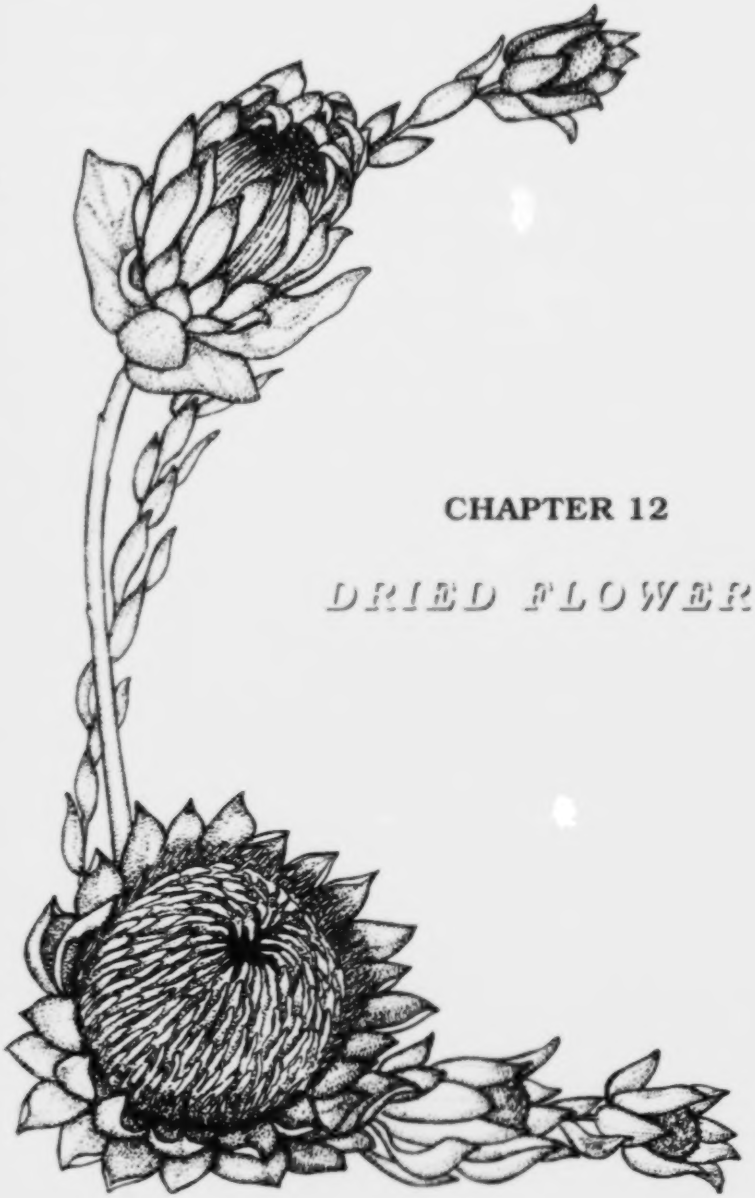
In another design use a large candle, 2 or 3 inches in diameter, and construct a circular arrangement around the base to create a candle ring effect. Or try working with the candle on a pedestal container. Either a diagonal or an S-curve line of opposition is a possible design choice for this arrangement. Accent the design with a bow if you wish.

Each student can make all these arrangements, or the different designs can be assigned so that each student will make only one. In either case, evaluate the designs upon their completion, paying special attention to the number and size of candles in relationship to the shape and size of the design.

8. Create an arrangement suitable for a festive buffet table and incorporate votive lights into the design. Try raising some up at different heights within the arrangement. If you have Lomey extenders, this will be much easier. Scatter three or more votives around the base of the arrangement to extend the boundaries of the design.

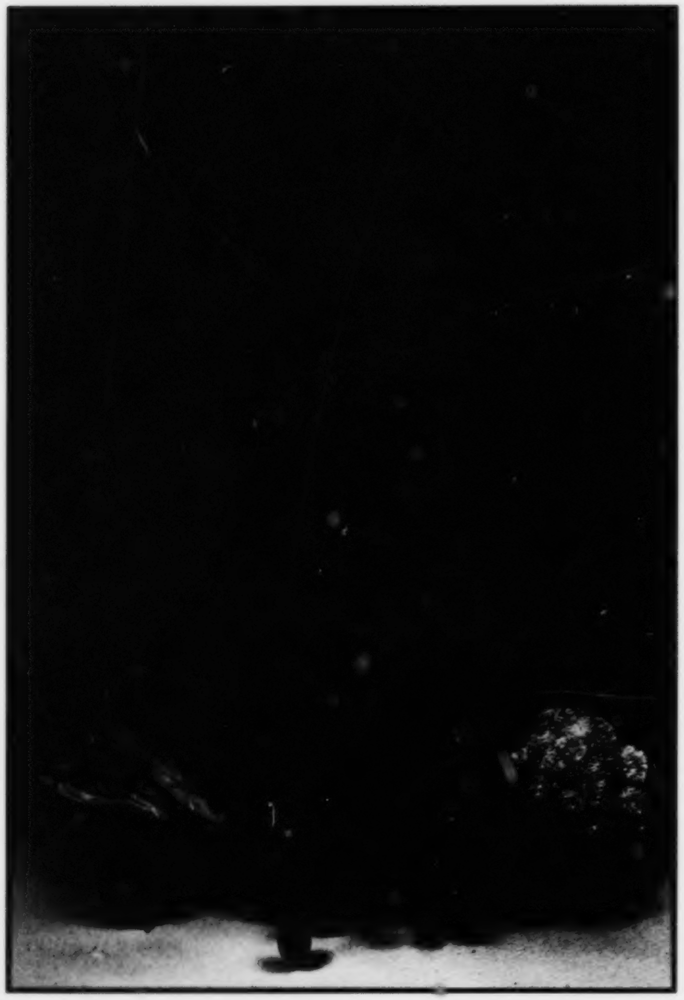
9. Design an arrangement to be shown off against a specific background that you have chosen. Identify the theme or mood that you intend to develop. See if other viewers get the same feeling you have tried to create. If they do, you have been successful.

This asymmetrical arrangement features a Madonna.



CHAPTER 12

DRIED FLOWERS



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

DRIED FLOWERS

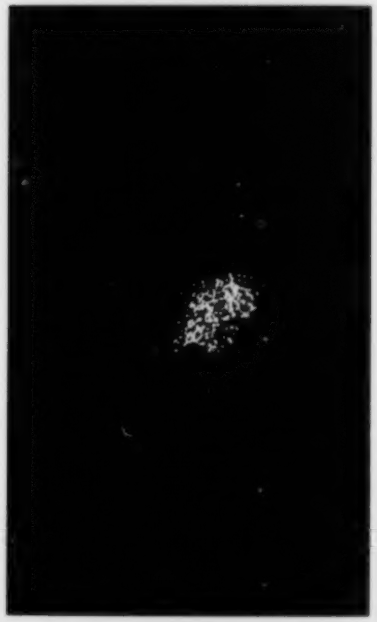
Beautiful long-lasting arrangements can be created from dried plant materials. Interest in dried flowers usually peaks during autumn and continues into the winter months. A vast array of dried flowers, foliages and pods is available commercially to satisfy every decorating need. Many are imported from various parts of the United States and from countries around the world. Some materials are natural, while others have been contorted, contrived and colored or glittered to give special effects.

Some materials, like ripened pods and cones, are naturally rigid and mostly free of moisture. They require merely gathering and storing until they are used. Other materials must be gathered at specific stages of development and require special treatment to produce satisfying results. The following sections will outline various methods for preserving plant material. If possible, try each of them. By experience you will better understand the techniques, and you will accumulate a nice collection of dried materials. These can eventually be made into arrangements and floral pictures.

Colorful wreath of dried flowers with a velvet bow

Triangular design of dried strawflowers, money plant, and amaranthus

516



Vertical line-mass design of dried materials in neutral earth-tone colors

Basket of dried flowers, pods, and fruit

517

TECHNIQUES FOR DRYING FLOWERS

PRESSING

Sometimes when leafing through a book, one finds flowers pressed between the pages where someone has tried to preserve the memory of a special event, person or place. To commemorate a wedding, flowers from the bouquet can be pressed, arranged around the wedding invitation, and then framed. A floral picture made from small pressed wildflowers seen on a vacation makes a pleasant remembrance of that experience. And of course those rare and lucky four-leaf clovers need to be pressed as keepsakes.

In addition to their sentimental value, floral pictures make beautiful accents to the interior decoration of almost any style house. The interesting shapes and subtle colors of the plant material can be combined into designs that reflect either historic, traditional or contemporary design styles.

Pressed flowers have also been used to decorate stationery, placemats and lamp shades. These gifts show a very personal touch that is appreciated by those fortunate enough to receive them.

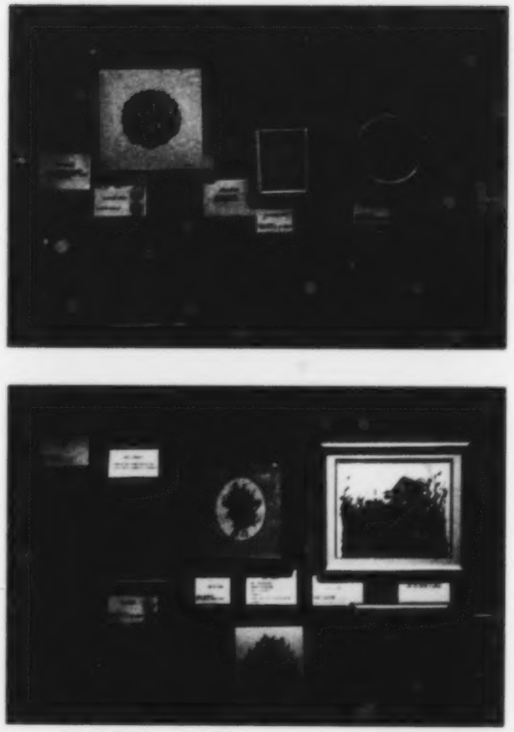
Selecting Flowers for Pressing

Flowers that press best are those that can be easily flattened and that do not have a great deal of bulk. They should not have thick, fleshy areas where the petals are attached, like a daffodil with its knobby ovary. Sometimes, however, good results can be obtained by cutting the entire flower in half right through the trumpet and ovary. It is best if the silhouette of the flower remains interesting when the flower is flattened. Flowers that contain considerable water in their petals often give disappointing results. Examples are the easily obtainable impatiens and wax begonia. Very bright or very dark colors may come out faded or almost black, and some white petals turn brown. Ideal flowers for pressing are pansies, which are naturally thin and flat, with an interesting shape and markings.

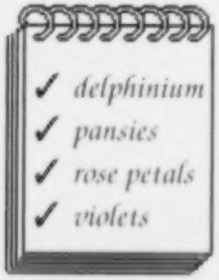
Pieces of stems and leaves should also be pressed for use with the flowers. These must be in good size relationship to the flowers. Thick woody stems are not desirable since they will prevent the uniform application of pressure on adjoining leaves during the pressing process. Leaves may be pressed separately from the stems and used either individually or matched up with lighter weight pressed stems in the final product.

Following is a list of materials that can be used for pressing:

African violets
annual statice (small pieces)
baby's breath
celosia, plumed (pieces)
daffodils (cut in half)
delphinium florets
dusty miller
leatherleaf fern
pansies
Queen Anne's lace
rose petals
snapdragon florets
violets



Pressed flower pictures exhibited at Philadelphia Flower Show



✓ *delphinium*
✓ *pansies*
✓ *rose petals*
✓ *violets*

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Pressing Flowers and Foliage

Materials:
- flowers and foliage
- newspaper
- corrugated cardboard
- blotter paper (optional)
- weights (books or blocks) or plant press

1. Take a piece of newspaper folded in half and open it up. On one side of the paper arrange flowers, foliage and stems in a single layer so they do not overlap (Fig. 12-1). Lightly press flowers with your thumb so that they will not be crushed in an unnatural position when the paper is folded over them.

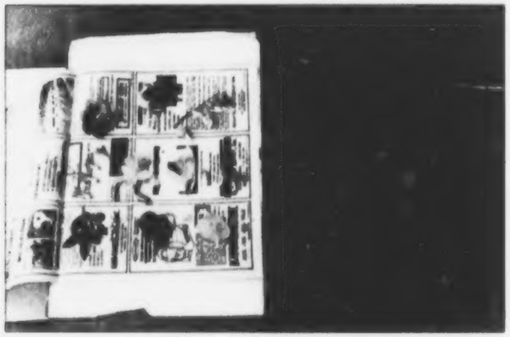
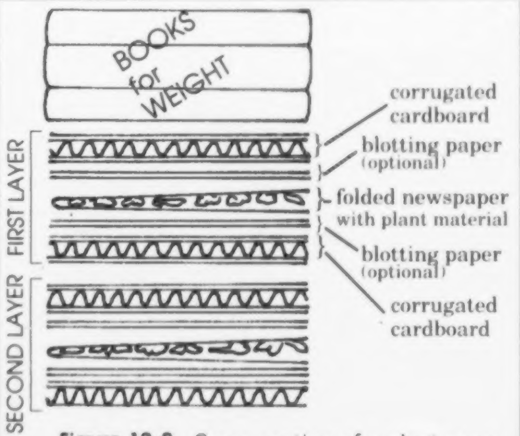


Figure 12-1 A single layer of flowers for pressing



BOOKS for WEIGHT
corrugated cardboard
blotting paper (optional)
folded newspaper with plant material
blotting paper (optional)
corrugated cardboard
FIRST LAYER
SECOND LAYER

Figure 12-2 Cross section of a plant press

2. Fold newspaper over the plant material. Place the newspaper with enclosed flowers between two layers of corrugated cardboard, with the corrugations facing inward. This "sandwich" makes up one unit. A number of additional units may be layered on top of the first (Fig. 12-2).

The corrugated cardboard lets air penetrate to the flowers so they will dry more quickly. If you have blotting paper, this can be cut to the size of the newspaper and put on either side of it between the cardboard layers. It will give even better results but is not absolutely necessary.

3. Distribute the weight uniformly over the stacked layers. This can be done with heavy books or blocks. Or you can make and use a plant press instead (Fig. 12-3). Plant presses consist of two pieces of wooden lattice work of the same size as the cardboard pieces. These lattice pieces are placed on either side of the stacked cardboard "sandwiches." Pressure is then applied by kneeling on the press while it is tightly tied with several ropes or straps. This applies uniform pressure to the plant material. Also, the pressed material is easy to carry and move.

Figure 12-3 Plant press

4. The plant material under pressure should be kept in a warm, dry location with as much air movement as possible. Under these conditions moisture will be quickly absorbed from the flowers and evaporated, resulting in nice specimens with good color. (The press can also be stood on edge over a warm - not hot - register for fast drying.) The corrugated cardboard (and blotting paper, if used) speeds up this process and will give much better results than pressing the materials between pages in a book where no air can reach them.

5. Within a week the plant material should be dry. You may check drying progress at any time. You may even wish to create some interesting curves in stems by repositioning them a day or two after you have put them in the press. Flower shapes can also be improved at the same time by straightening out folded petals. The plant materials will be limp enough to do this early in the drying process and will continue to dry in the positions you have arranged.

6. Once materials are thoroughly dry, they may be removed from the press. They do not need to be kept under pressure. It is usually convenient to store them between the sheets of newspaper placed in a box or drawer. They must be stored in a fairly dry location or they will reabsorb moisture and consequently lose color or even grow mold.

DRYING BY HANGING UPSIDE DOWN

Certain plant materials can be preserved in their three-dimensional shape simply by hanging them upside down and allowing them to air dry. Hanging is also a convenient way to store the material without getting it tangled up. If the material should become limp during the drying process, it will develop a more natural shape if dried by hanging rather than in a vase or lying on a shelf.

Many essentially dry pods, seed heads and even leaves can be found in the garden and along roadsides, needing only to be gathered. They are usually beige or brown in color, but may have interesting forms and textures. If stiff enough, they may be placed upright in containers, styrofoam or buckets of sand. Once completely dry they can be bunched and stored in boxes.

Examples of materials that require little treatment to preserve are:

cattails
dock
lotus pods
milkweed pods
pampas grass
pine cones
teasel
wheat

Cattails and dock are examples of plants that must be gathered at the correct time to prevent their shedding seeds. Cattails should be gathered in midsummer soon after they form. If collected later they will fuzz out as they dry. Dock that is gathered in late summer just as it is turning brown will not drop its seed heads as much. Also it will turn a prettier shade of cinnamon brown.

Certain aerosol surface sealers can be used to help stick delicate seeds and other plant parts together (Fig. 12-4). When sprayed on dried materials, these sprays form an inconspicuous layer over the surface. Hair spray can be used for the same purpose, but neither product can resurrect a specimen that has already started to fall apart.

Everlastings

Some flowers are known to dry well and keep their color and shape when harvested at the proper time. These plants are often referred to as *everlastings*. Strawflowers are probably the best known example. Their stiff papery bracts, which contain little moisture, retain color very well when air dried.

Following is a list of common everlastings that can be grown in the garden. All are annuals unless otherwise indicated.

annual statice
baby's breath (perennial)
bells of Ireland
blue salvia
Chinese lanterns (perennial)
cockscomb (crested and plumed types)
German statice (perennial)
globe amaranth
strawflowers
yarrow (perennial)

Everlastings should be picked when they are reaching their peak of bloom. Strawflowers dry best if picked before they are fully open. If the flowers are too mature at harvest, the colored bracts may reflex backward and show too much of the yellow center.

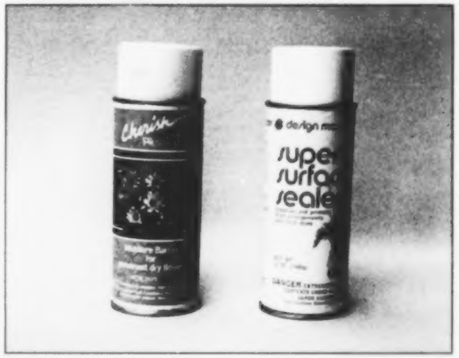
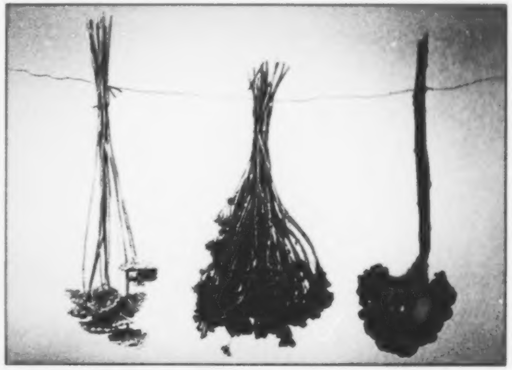


Figure 12-4



Yarrow, annual statice, and cockscomb are everlastings that are hung to dry.

Yarrow and dock are combined in this line-mass design in a metal pitcher.

Cattails, yarrow, and autumn leaves harmonize well with this duck on a natural twig base.

Some everlastings are dried on their own stems, while others are dried on a wire that is substituted for the natural stem. Strawflowers and globe amaranths are usually dried on wires. The insert method of wiring is usually adequate since the flower head shrinks upon drying and will cling to the wire. Wooden stakes or heavier wires can be attached later if longer or sturdier stems are needed.

Basket of everlastings that were air dried

Everlastings are usually bunched and hung upside down in a warm, dry place with good air circulation. Keep them out of strong light which fades their colors and very hot places which may cause the bloom to open too much.

Air Drying Other Flowers

Many flowers which are not considered everlastings may be air dried. The more delicate ones are likely to shrink and shrivel to some extent; however, the color and overall form may be retained. These dried materials can be used effectively in mass arrangements and wreaths. Some examples of non-everlastings that can be air dried by the hanging method include delphinium, larkspur, carnations and marigolds. Even air-dried roses with shriveled leaves still attached have received considerable acceptance and are commonly offered for sale by wholesale and retail florists.

Leftover scraps of foliages and flowers that have broken from their stems are common by-products in a flower shop. Instead of throwing them away, they can be spread out and air dried on newspapers or trays for later use as background filler in dried wreaths or dried topiary forms. Even individual petals can be air dried for use in a potpourri. The petals will add color and interest, and the fragrance can be added in drops of scented oil that is sold to refresh commercially produced potpourri mixtures.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Air Drying

1. If everlastings are available from the garden, cut these, strip off foliage, and bunch them together with a twistem or wire. Hang the bunches from a wire or clothesline installed in the classroom near the ceiling. If this is not possible, smaller amounts of bunched everlastings can be dried on a standing clothes-drying rack.

If strawflowers or globe amaranths are available, remove them from their natural stems. Insert a 9-inch piece of #22 wire in each flower head. As the flower dries, it will shrink firmly around the wire. Bunch the flowers loosely in groups of ten and either hang upside down or place in bud vases to dry.

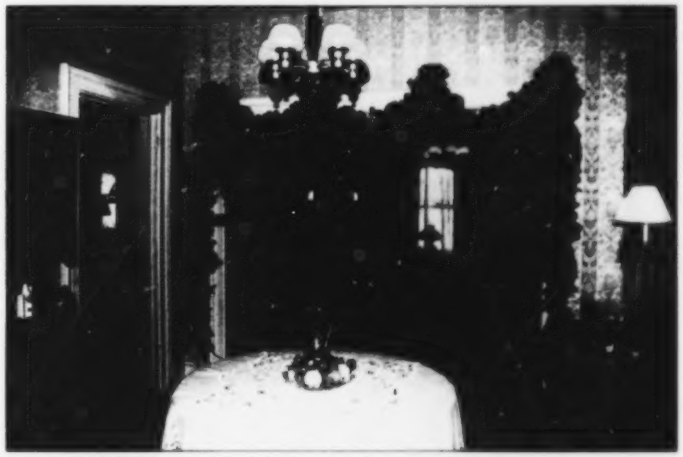
If flowers are not available from the garden, use purchased annual statice. It can be rebunched into smaller bundles and hung to dry. The colors preserve very well and the natural stems are relatively strong.

2. Air dry pieces of foliage and flowers that might otherwise be discarded. Even blossoms that are too old to sell can be dried and put to good use. Spread them out on a newspaper until they are dry. Then store them in a cardboard box until you are ready to glue them onto a wreath.

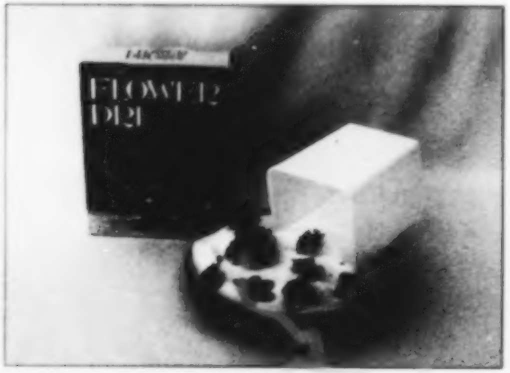
3. Air dry individual petals, like those from roses and carnations. Include small pieces of statice. After these small pieces are thoroughly dry, they can be put in a covered glass container and sprinkled with scented oil to make a charming potpourri.

Botanical wreath that gives a natural look, made from Sweet Annie with a bird and nest

Garland surrounding French doors is decorated with dried plant material, carrying out a natural feeling.



Victorian festoon across archway is decorated with dried flowers.



Silica gel used to preserve delicate flowers

BURYING FLOWERS IN SILICA GEL

Most flowers can be preserved in their three-dimensional shape if they are buried carefully in a drying compound that will remove moisture from the petals. Silica gel is the preferred choice for quality dried flowers. It is a white crystalline substance that is available under a number of trade names. Manufacturers of cameras and other equipment frequently include small packets of silica gel to absorb moisture and protect the equipment. It is also used in refrigeration units. Its absorbing and moisture-holding capabilities make silica gel an ideal flower desiccant. The fine crystals sift easily between the petals when flowers are being buried, and they do not leave a residue after the flowers are removed.

Silica gel sold as floral desiccant contains indicator crystals that are blue in color when the gel is dry. When these crystals turn pink, the silica gel should be placed in a 250°F oven for thirty minutes or up to an hour to dry it out. When the crystals turn blue again, the compound is dry. Repeated use of silica gel to dry flowers will dampen it, so the indicator crystals should be watched carefully. The gel should be dried out occasionally to continue yielding good results. The cost of this product is great enough that drying it out rather than throwing it out is likely to be well worth the effort.

Containers for drying should be big enough to get a hand inside easily. They should have lids that seal tightly. Two-quart plastic freezer cartons or small round cookie tins work well.

Flowers may be buried side by side and in layers as long as they do not crowd each other. The flower will dry in the position in which it is buried. Better results are usually obtained if you face flowers upward, gently sifting the silica gel between petals and also around the outside so the flower is not flattened or bent into an unnatural shape. They cannot be reshaped after drying as they will be quite brittle. The container should be sealed during the drying process so that the silica gel does not draw moisture from the outside air. Drying usually takes from four to ten days.

Natural stems would be awkward in the small container. These are usually removed and replaced with a wire before the flower is buried. Wires are attached as you would wire flowers for a corsage. Then roll up the loose end of the wire and tuck it under the flower so that it takes up little space. It can be carefully unrolled after the flower is dry. Wire could also be glued on after the flower is dry, but that might be more difficult since the dried flowers are so fragile.

Flowers that have been dried in silica gel are often displayed in clear glass containers with lids. A small amount of silica gel can be added to the container to keep the air dry. It is a help in preserving the color and shape of the dried flowers. If used in open-air arrangements, the flowers usually reabsorb moisture, causing drooping and loss of color. Clear acrylic sprays may help seal the flowers from surrounding air so that they will last longer in the open air, but arranging in glass containers with lids will give the longest-lasting product.

Dried flowers usually change color to some extent when they are dried. Yellow, pink and white flowers usually retain their colors quite well. Dark colors like red and purple may become very dark when dried. Color changes that can be expected when flowers are dried are as follows:

Before Drying	***After Drying***
yellow	gold
pink	rose
white	cream
green	olive
red	very dark red
purple	almost black

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Drying Flowers in Silica Gel

Materials:

2 two-quart freezer containers
2 quarts of silica gel
spoon
wire
flowers for drying

1. Select for drying five to seven small to medium size flowers from the following list: roses, pompon mums, mini-carnations, snapdragon florets. Attach wires as you would if wiring the flowers for a corsage. Roll wire around your finger, then tuck the roll of wire up near the base of the flower.

2. Pour a half-inch layer of dry silica gel into the bottom of a freezer carton.

3. Place one to three flowers on the silica gel not touching each other.

4. Use the spoon to sift silica gel gently around and between the petals. Try to preserve the flower's natural shape. Dumping the compound from the top may flatten flowers. Continue filling until the flowers are covered.

5. Add and cover more layers of flowers on top of the first one until you have buried all your flowers or until the container is full. Place lid on the container and set aside for drying.

6. After a week remove the lid and tilt container sideways as you gently tap it so that the silica gel falls away from the top layer of flowers. If the first flower exposed feels dry, continue uncovering. Allow flowers to gently flow out with the silica gel.

7. Store flowers in the second freezer carton with a little silica gel in the bottom. Keep lid on so that moisture is not absorbed from the air. Clear plastic shoe boxes are even better for storage because the flowers can be spread out more and you can see what you have in the box without removing the lid.

Cut branches preserved in a glycerin solution

GLYCERINIZING FOLIAGES

Foliages and even some flowers can be preserved in a leathery condition by treating them with glycerin. Eucalyptus, oak and magnolia leaves are the most commonly treated foliages, and baby's breath is the most commonly treated flower. The soft pliable condition of these preserved materials makes them easier to work with than other, more brittle dried materials.

Only certain plants have a structure that enables them to take up and support a glycerin solution. Even these plants must be in active growth and taking up water for the treatment to be successful. Oak and beech leaves can be glycerinized during the summer, but they will not take up the solution well in the fall when water is no longer moving up the stems in large amounts.

Glycerin is a clear viscous substance available in drug stores and chemical supply houses. The preserving solution is made from one part glycerin to two parts water. Place the lower 5 to 6 inches of the branches into the solution just as you would put them in a vase of water. The solution will gradually be taken up through the vascular system. As water evaporates from the leaves, glycerin will be drawn into the plant cells and will remain there.

Absorption of the glycerin may take two weeks or more. It is critical to a good product that the plant materials are not left in too long or too short a time. If the treatment is too long, glycerin may ooze out onto the leaf surface, making it sticky and more likely to catch and hold dust. If glycerin has not penetrated all areas of the leaf, those areas not treated will shrivel up.

Glycerin-treated materials take on various colors including olive and bronze. Results vary depending on time of year and condition of the material. Dyes are sometimes used in the solution or as a dip to produce other colors.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Glycerinizing Foliage

1. If trees in your area are in active growth, select some branches of oak or beech and cut them about 12 inches long. During other seasons use pine or purchased fresh eucalyptus or Scotch broom.

2. Mix one part of glycerin to two parts of warm water. Fill a vase with the solution to a depth of 6 inches.

3. Recut stems and crush ends with a hammer. Place cut ends of the branches in the solution.

4. Place the vase of branches in a place where there is good air circulation. Watch the level of solution in the vase and add more if the level declines.

5. Watch the movement of glycerin up through the leaves as indicated by a color change. The process will take about two weeks.

6. When most of the leaves appear to be fully penetrated by glycerin, remove branches from the solution. Hang branches upside down to encourage movement of glycerin out into the leaf tips. After a week or so the branches will be ready for immediate use, or they can be stored in boxes for future use.

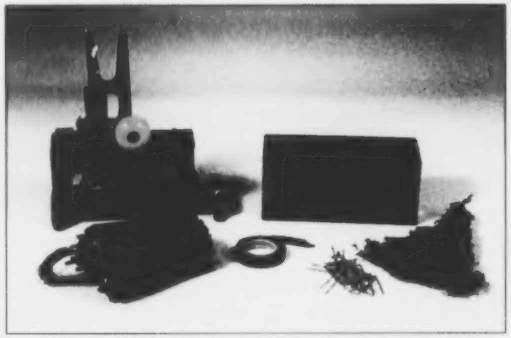
ARRANGING DRIED FLOWERS

The mechanics for arranging dried flowers can be a dry material such as styrofoam, or a product called *Sahara* developed especially for this purpose. Styrofoam is very sturdy and will hold large stems. However, it is difficult to insert delicate stems directly into styrofoam. *Sahara* is a brown foam that is easily penetrated by fine stems; however, it does not hold large branches well. *Sahara II* is a similar foam that is stronger and made to hold sturdy stems.

If these foams are wedged into deep containers, usually no additional support is required. Foam can be secured in shallow glass or plastic containers by first sticking one or more four-pronged anchor picks to the bottom. The foam is then pushed down over the prongs. Another method is to criss-cross the dry foam with waterproof tape in the same way as you would fasten soaked foam. When using baskets, it is possible to run a chenille stem or taped wire through the wicker and over the foam to fasten them together. Dry foam can be more permanently fastened to containers with hot glue from a hot glue gun or by dipping the bottom of the piece in a pan of melted glue before joining it to the container.

The foam can be hidden with dry sheet moss, sphagnum moss or Spanish moss if it will not be covered by flowers and foliage. Greening pins or "hairpins" of wire are good for holding the moss on the foam. An alternative is to use German statice massed over the foam to hide it. Statice is also a good filler material to serve as a background to the flowers.

The following activities will allow you to work with dried materials in several different situations. Pressed flowers require special handling and gluing techniques. Floral picture making is a good exercise in space relationships. Your goal is to try to create a feeling of depth while working in only two dimensions. Arranging flowers dried in silica gel in a glass apothecary jar will challenge you to create a good design with proper size relationships while working inside a small enclosed space.



Equipment and supplies used in arranging dried flowers: pick machine, wired wooden picks, floral foam for dried flowers, greening pins, sheet moss, and brown floral tape.

Promotional displays of dried flowers at an international floral exhibition

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. Floral Picture

Materials:

- pressed flowers and foliage
- picture frame at least 5" x 7" with flat glass that lifts straight out (not inserted by sliding)
- piece of fabric a little larger than the picture frame
- cardboard or heavy poster board
- scissors
- white liquid glue that dries clear
- small paint brush
- wax paper
- knife or tweezers

1. Assemble all materials. Lay flowers out so you can see what you have to work with. Lift flowers gently with the tip of a knife or tweezers to avoid damaging them.

2. Select a background fabric that will harmonize with the flowers you intend to use. You may decide on a sharp contrast (like black or white) or you may choose a more subtle color scheme.

3. Cut a piece of cardboard or poster board the same size as the picture backing that comes with the picture frame. Cut a piece of fabric that is just a little larger than the cardboard. Spread a thin layer of white glue over the cardboard and press it onto the fabric. Do not use too much glue or it will soak through the fabric.

Trim off any fabric sticking out beyond the cardboard. Do not try to overlap it to the back, as the additional thickness will make it hard to assemble the picture and frame. Place wax paper over the fabric; then, to prevent curling, weight it down with a book while it dries. The wax paper will not stick to the fabric if some glue should seep through.

4. On a piece of paper, trace the area that will show inside the picture frame. Use this as a guideline of the space to be designed in. Practice arranging the pressed flowers on this paper to achieve a satisfactory design before you do any gluing. Select a design shape that fits the shape of the frame. Shapes of basic arrangements and corsages are possibilities. See page 265 for suggestions.

5. Arrange flowers into the design you have chosen, which should fill about two-thirds of the area. NEVER crowd the edge of the frame or let the flowers disappear under it.

Try to create a feeling of depth by overlapping petals and foliage. Develop a focal area in the same way as in a flower arrangement: space larger flowers closer together near the center of interest. However, do not overlap so much that you make a thick layer of plant materials that will hold the glass away from the fabric. The floral picture will last longer in good condition if the glass presses evenly on the flowers in the completed picture.

6. After you are satisfied with your practice design, you will want to start transferring it to the cloth-covered cardboard. However, your first placements are now lying beneath all the other flowers. To get the materials in the order you need without totally destroying your tentative design, place a piece of paper or cardboard over the practice design and carefully flip it over. The flowers you need to glue on first should now be on top.

7. Apply a light layer of white glue on the back of each flower and foliage piece with a paint brush (Fig. 12-5). Place glued flowers on the background one by one. Avoid using excessive glue. Gradually recreate your planned design.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

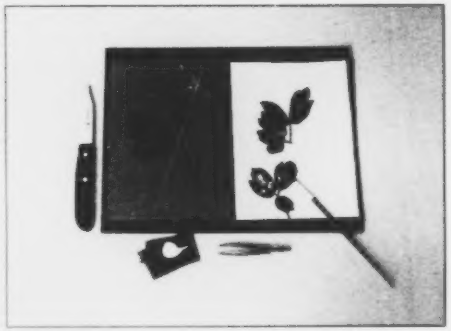


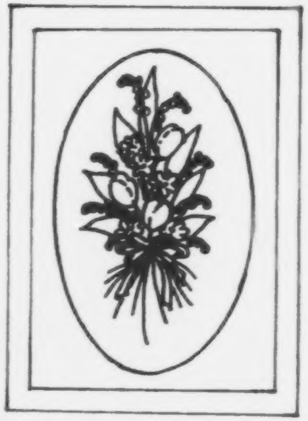
Figure 12-5

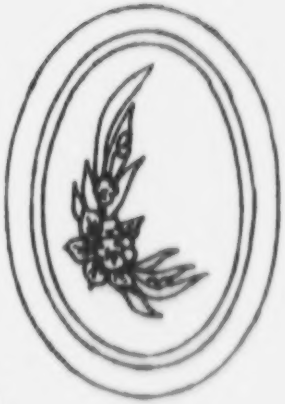
8. Place a piece of waxed paper over the finished product and weight it down until the glue dries. Drying overnight under pressure should be sufficient to keep flowers and cardboard from curling.

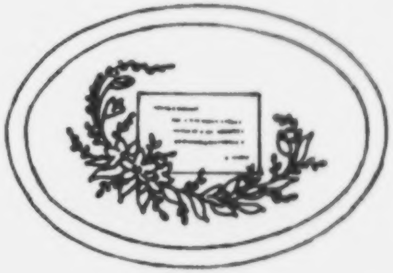
9. Place the floral picture in the frame behind the glass. Secure with picture backing or whatever mechanism is supplied with the frame.

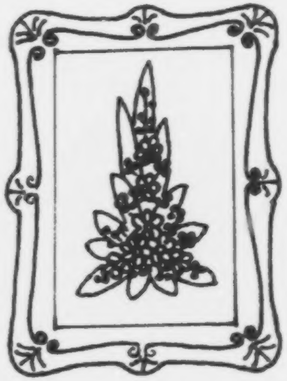
(continued)

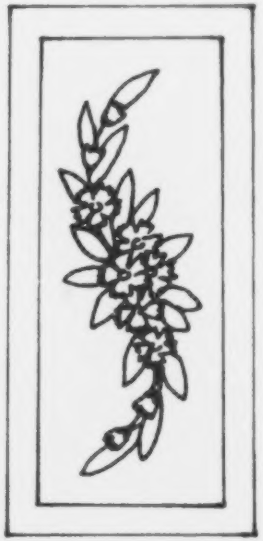
Suggested Designs for Floral Pictures

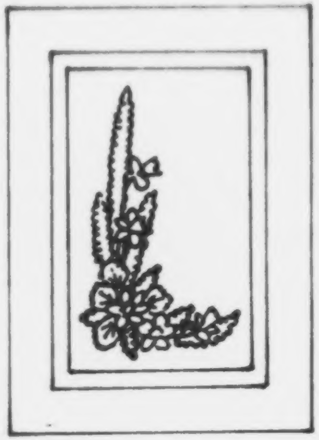












SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Dried Arrangement Inside Clear Glass Jar

Dried arrangement under a glass dome

Materials:

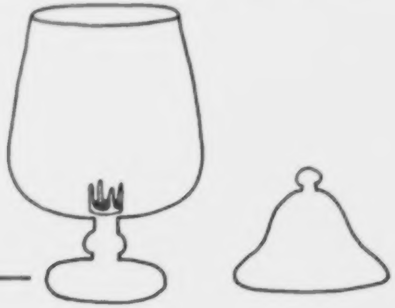
flowers and foliage dried in silica gel
silica gel
clear glass jar with lid
Sahara
four-pronged anchor pin
floral clay
dried moss

1. Wash and thoroughly dry the glass container and lid.

2. Assemble the flowers you have dried in silica gel. If you have wired the material, it should be ready to use. If it needs a longer or heavier stem, attach it to another wire or thin wooden stake.

If the flowers are not wired, you can use white glue or floral adhesive to attach a wire to them. Make a small loop in one end of the wire and bend it at a 90° angle to the wire length. Glue the flower to this loop, which will provide more points of contact between flower and wire, thus making the attachment more secure.

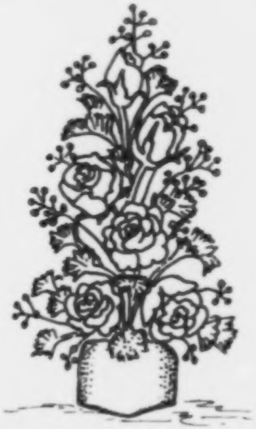
3. Attach a four-pronged anchor pin with floral clay to the bottom of the dry container.



If anchor pins are not available, a small amount of hot glue can be placed on the bottom of the *Sahara* piece before it is lowered into the container.

4. Cut a piece of *Sahara* that will eventually be placed over the anchor pin.

5. Place the piece of *Sahara* on the table in front of you and create the arrangement.



The design should be made to be viewed from all sides. It is very important that the arrangement does not crowd the sides or top of the container. Check its sides by lowering the arrangement into the container after you have established the first few placements. Use a pencil stuck in the *Sahara* to lower it. After checking size, again place the arrangement in front of you on the table and finish it outside the jar.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

Arrangement - Clear Glass Jar *(continued)*

6. Continue filling in the arrangement. The overall shape will conform to the shape of the container - basically oval or conical.

Work for in-and-out placing of materials to create depth. Keep it light and airy to harmonize with the delicate clear glass of the container.

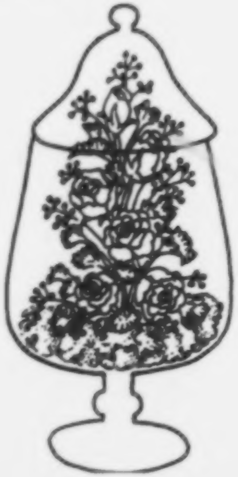
7. Again using a pencil stuck into the *Sahara*, lift the completed arrangement off the table and lower it into the jar. Since materials are delicate and brittle, they must be handled gently as they are passed through the mouth of the container.

8. With the eraser end of the pencil, push the *Sahara* down over the anchor pin. Repair any damage that occurred during the move. Add more placements if necessary.

9. Use a funnel or rolled paper to direct a small amount of silica gel under the arrangement. The silica gel will help keep the inside air dry, extending the attractive life of the arrangement.

10. Place small pieces of moss around the base of the arrangement to conceal the *Sahara* and silica gel.

11. Place the lid on the container. Your finished product is ready to enjoy for months or even years. Avoid placing the arrangement in bright light, where the flowers will quickly lose their color.



(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

C. Small Dried Arrangement In a Basket

Materials:
small wicker basket with handle
Sahara
German statice
assorted small everlastings

1. Cut and wedge a piece of *Sahara* down into the basket.

2. Create a low bed of German statice over the *Sahara*. This will be an all-around mass arrangement that fits comfortably under the handle of the basket. German statice will form a background to the more brightly colored everlastings. Place this material so that it appears to radiate out from a common point inside the basket and arch gently over the side of the basket. The German statice should mostly conceal the *Sahara* without looking overly crowded.

3. Insert everlastings over the German statice in a uniform manner. They should be brought out from the statice, which forms a background to the flowers, rather than being embedded within the statice. Start with larger flowers and end with the smaller ones just as you did in the basic circular mound design.

Create a feeling of depth as you distribute each type of flower. The shape of the arrangement should conform to the shape of the basket without crowding the handle.

(continued)

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

D. Dried Arrangement On a Broom

Materials:
small straw broom
styrofoam
chenille stems
colored wheat
mini oak leaves
strawflowers or other dried flowers
burlap ribbon
wire

1. Cut a small piece of styrofoam and attach at the base of the broom handle with chenille stems.

2. Make a bow with streamers from the burlap ribbon. Ribbon width and bow size should be appropriate for size of the broom. The ribbon can be cut lengthwise to make it narrower, if necessary. Wire bow and streamers to the middle of the piece of styrofoam.

3. Establish a diagonal line with the wheat. This diagonal trunk line should cut through the center of the bow. A line of opposition is evident in this design, since the diagonal floral line cuts across the vertical line of the broom.

4. Fill and develop the diagonal line with mini oak leaves. Use the leaves to cover mechanics and establish depth.

5. Repeat the diagonal line with strawflowers or other dried flowers and pods. Develop a focal area around the bow just as you do when making a corsage.

E. Dried Arrangement with a Bird

Materials:
small wicker mat or low container
bird figurine about 4" long
small cattails
small yarrow or strawflowers
dock or other dried linear filler
Sahara II or styrofoam
hot glue gun

1. Attach the dry foam to the back left quadrant of the mat or container. Hot glue the bird to the foam near the front right corner. The head of the bird should be pointed toward the front right corner of the mat.

2. Establish an L-pattern arrangement around the bird. Use the cattails to establish the vertical axis. Use dock or similar linear dried material to fill in the vertical line and establish the horizontal line. This lower line should come from behind the bird and extend to the edge of the mat to complete the L-pattern.

3. Repeat the L-pattern with yarrow or strawflowers. Since the arrangement features the bird, it should not be buried in flowers but blended into the arrangement by the flower placements. Although this arrangement is designed to be viewed from the front, it should be finished to look attractive from all angles.

A quail is nestled in this dried L-pattern design featuring cattails, strawflowers, and canella berries.

DRIED FLOWER ARRANGEMENTS

A

Open mass design of grasses and herbs in a basket

B

Triangular design of dried strawflowers and artemisia in a mug

C

Asymmetrical design in a wooden basket with grapevine handle. Bittersweet used with dock, artemisia, and branches.

D

Dried topiary design. Flowers are hot glued to styrofoam topiary form.

E

Dried wedding bouquet created in a bouquet holder containing floral foam for dried flowers.

F

Natural beauty of pods, wood, flowers, and lichens featured in a contemporary grouped design.

DRIED WREATHS AND WALL PIECES

G

Mosaic of dried native yarrow inserted in a foam wreath ring. Decorative crescent of strawflowers formed by inserting wires and flower stems through the yarrow into the foam.

H

Fan-shaped wall piece made by inserting dried materials in a piece of foam. Bow and gold cord are attached at focal area.

I

Twig wreath wound with gold cord. Dried gourds, hydrangea, and strawflowers are grouped at focal area and in three other points of interest.

J

Bold grapevine wreath decorated in natural hunt theme using pheasant feathers, bird pelt, bigleaf magnolia, and three silk lilies.

K

German statice wreath accented with lavender and pink dried flowers and coordinating bow.

L

Wall piece made on a horizontal grapevine frame. Dried materials and artificial fruit attached with hot glue.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

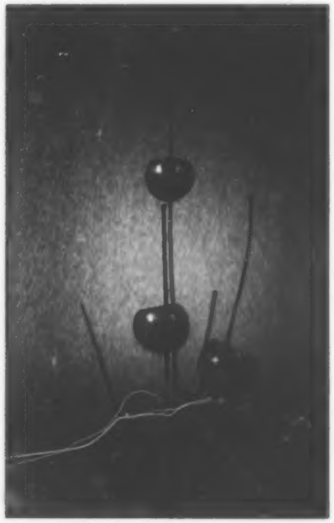
DRIED MATERIALS

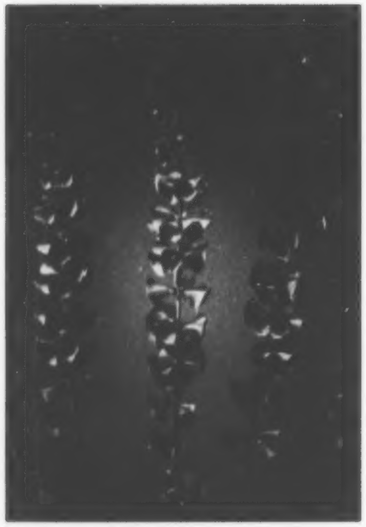
Annual Statice 1

Artichoke 2

Baby's Breath (Gypsophila) 3

Bamboo 4


Bell Cups 5

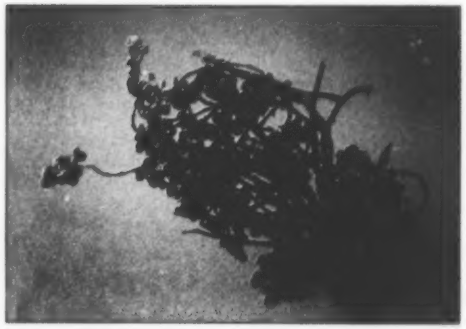

Bells of Ireland 6

Birch Branches 7

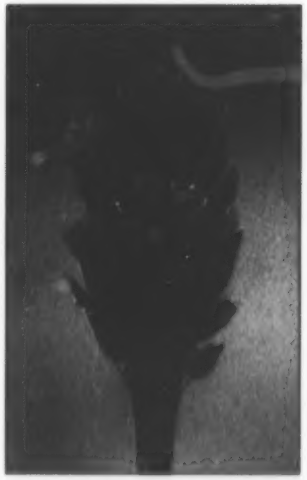
Blackberry Lily 8

552

553

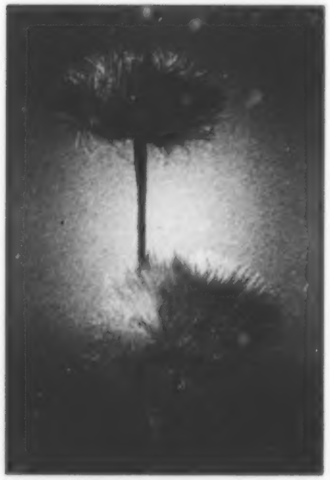


Bittersweet 9

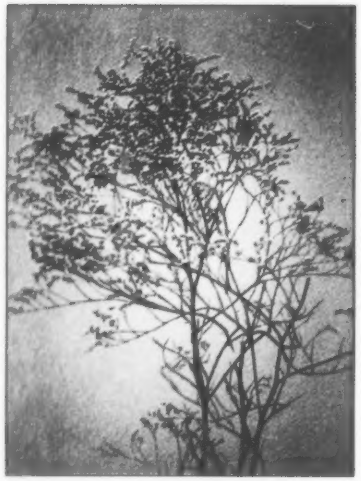


Bunnytails 10

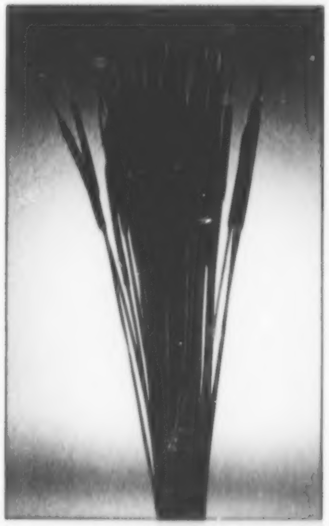
Canella Berries 11



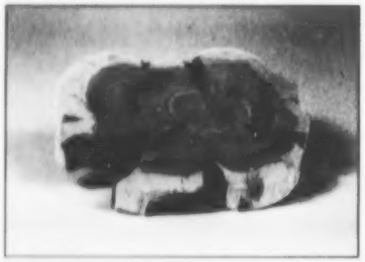
Cardone Puffs 12



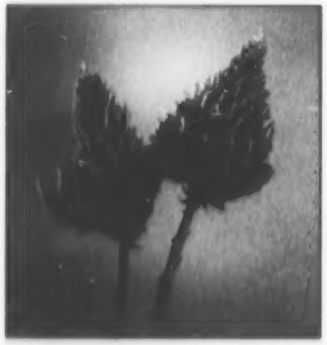
Caspia 13



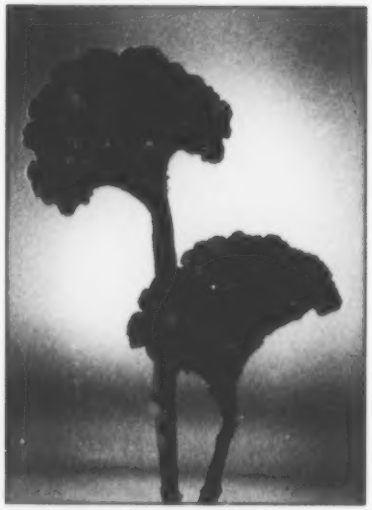
Cattails 14



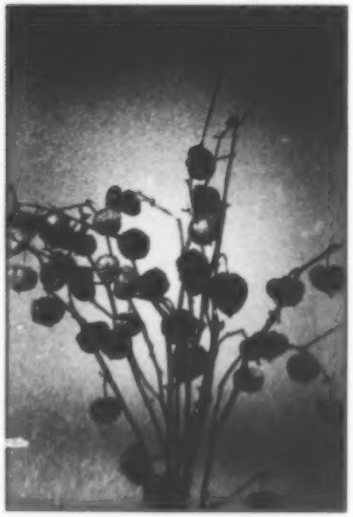
Cedar - Cross Section 15



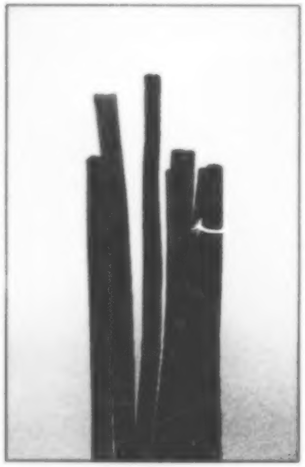
Celosia (Plumed) 16



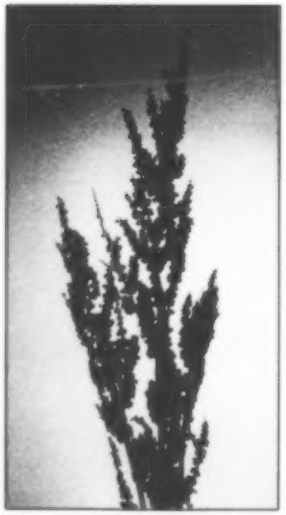
Celosia (Cockscomb) 17



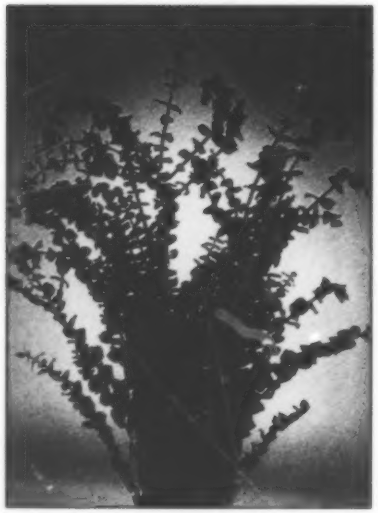
Chinese Lantern **18**



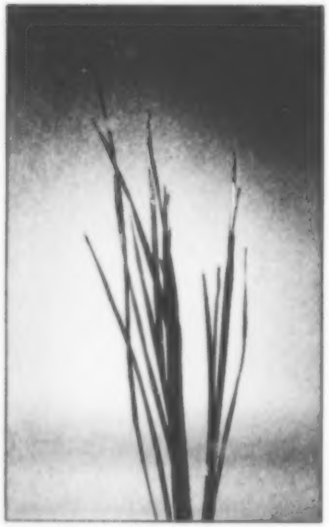
Cinnamon Stick **19**



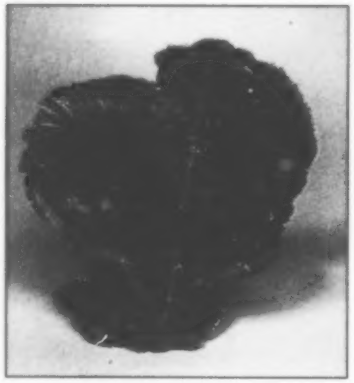
Dock **20**



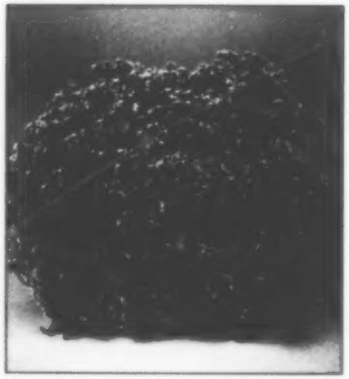
Eucalyptus **21**



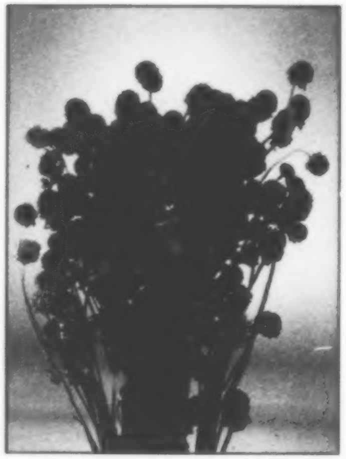
Flax **22**



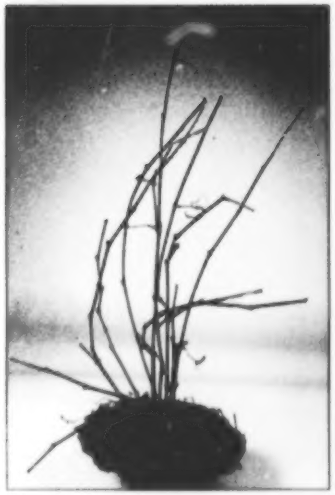
Fungus **23**



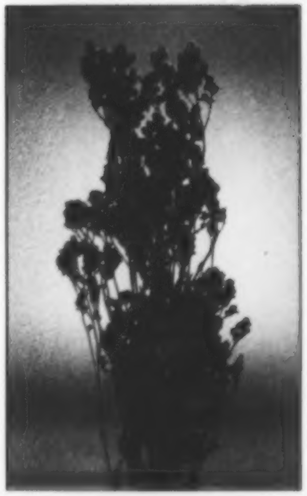
German Statice **24**



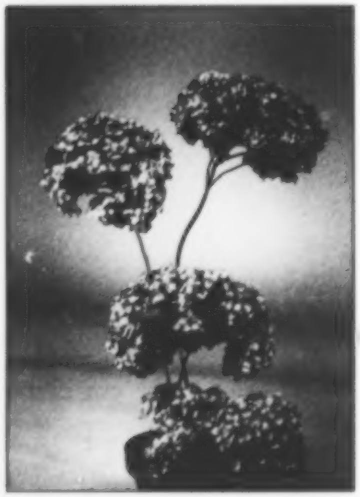
Globe Amaranth **25**



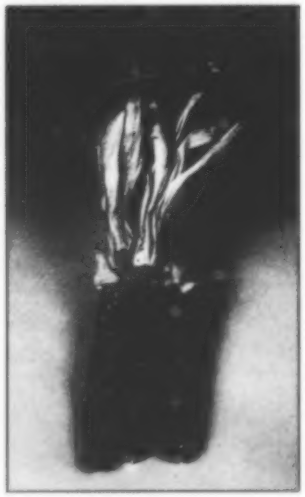
Grapevine 26



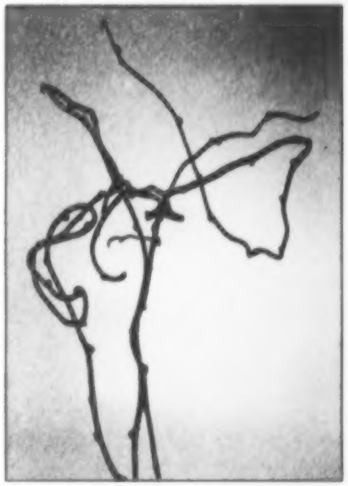
Gypsy Grass 27



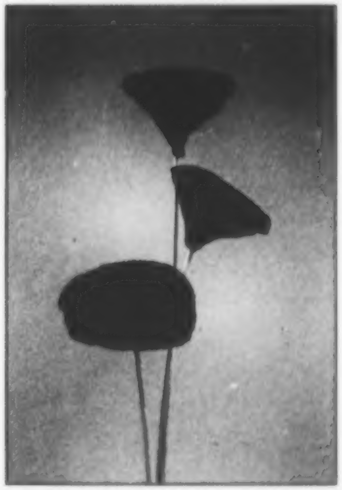
Hydrangea 28



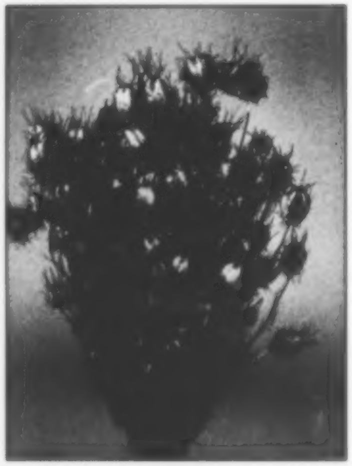
Indian Corn 29



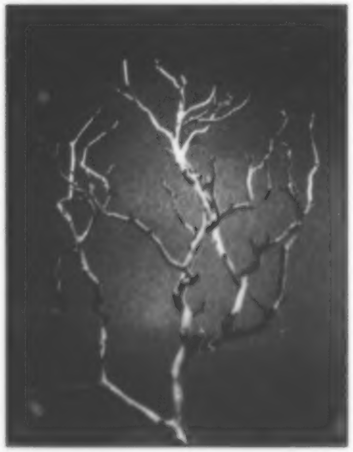
Kiwi Vine 30



Lotus Pods 31



Love-in-a-Mist (Nigella) 32



Manzanita 33

Money Plant 34

Oak Leaves 35

Okra Pods 36

Palm Spears 37

Pine Cones 38

Pomegranate 39

Poppy 40

Raffia 41

Reindeer Moss **42**

Rose **43**

River Cane **44**

Safflower **45**

Sea Grape **46**

Sheet Moss **47**

Spanish Moss **48**

Starflowers **49**

Strawflowers **50**

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Strelitzia 51

Sweet Annie 52

Teasel 53

Ting-ting 54

Yarrow 55

Weathered Wood 56

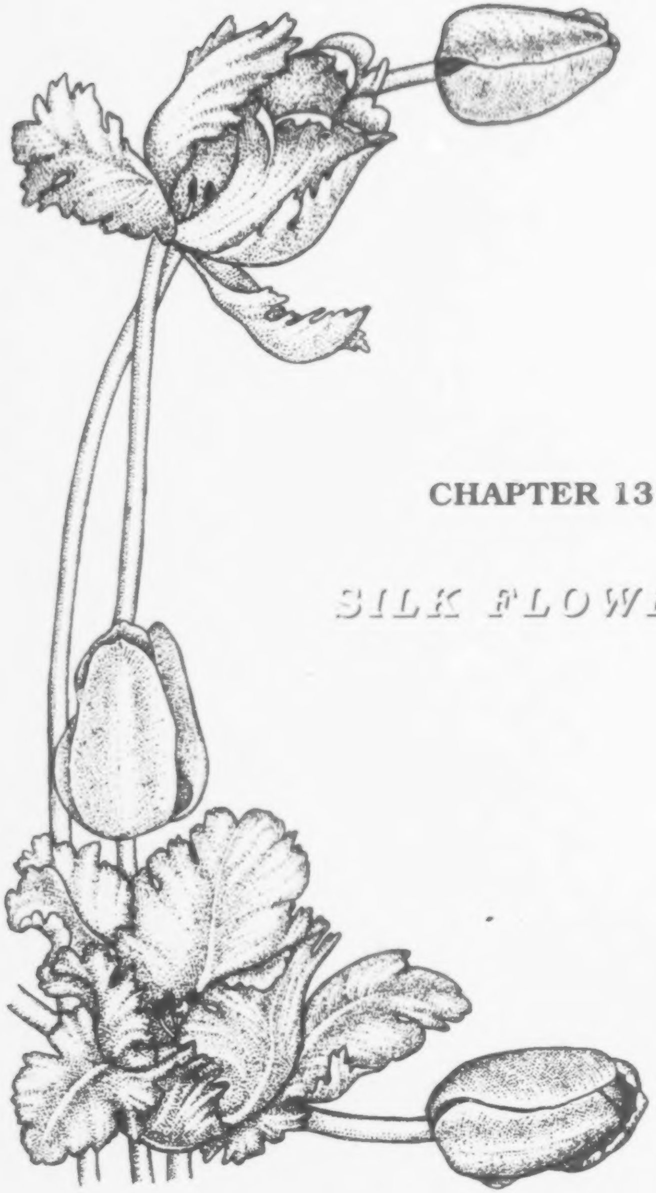
Wheat 57

Willow (Fantail and Curly) 58

Wisteria 59

561

565



CHAPTER 13

SILK FLOWERS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Bouquet of silk flowers arranged with stems showing. The clear base that looks like water is a product that solidifies, holding the stems in place.

Silk flowers are used to create this elongated design with individual types of flowers and foliage grouped together.

SILK FLOWERS

Artificial flowers and foliages are most commonly made from silk. They can be used to create any design that can be made with fresh flowers. Their advantages are that they last indefinitely even under harsh conditions and they do not require all the special care and handling that fresh plant material does. On the other hand, they cannot completely replace the special beauty of living plants and flowers.

Silk flowers are available in a wide selection of colors and styles. The close-up beauty of silk flowers and their enormous range of decorator colors have found widespread appeal. There are silk flowers and foliages that simulate nearly every living flower, plus many additional specimens that have no counterpart in the real world.

Silk flowers come in a wide range of quality and price. Higher-quality flowers have more detailed features and are usually easier to shape into realistic positions. Before making a selection of silk material, the designer should consider both its quality and how readily it can be shaped into realistic forms.

Interior decorators like to use silk materials for residential and commercial customers. Long-lasting silk arrangements can be an important part of the total interior design and color scheme, making it much more effective. The only disadvantage of using silk flowers in this way is that the people who see these arrangements frequently may tire of them. Changing or replacing the arrangements periodically is the remedy. Silk flowers still can be used for longer periods of time than fresh flowers and will be easier and less expensive to replace than most other parts of the interior decoration. Occasional changes in the silk flowers can also give the opportunity to introduce welcome seasonal changes.

Silk flowers are effective and practical for use in store window displays, in department stores, and on stages where relatively large displays are needed for a fairly long period of time. They also are useful in locations where conditions would be very harsh on fresh flowers or living plants, such as near heating units, near exterior doors, or in buildings that experience significant day/night or weekday/weekend fluctuations in temperature.

Artificial silk plants are being used to decorate offices, restaurants and other interiors instead of living foliage plants. While most people still prefer living plants to artificial, silk plants may be more practical where the light is too dim to maintain real plants. Silk plants do not need to be watered, fertilized or sprayed for insects, thus reducing maintenance costs. However, they do need to be dusted and replaced if their colors fade. An alternative to using all-silk or all-living foliage plants is using real plants where there is more light or where they will be seen more closely, and artificial plants in dimmer, more distant locations. If the artificial plants are of good quality, most people probably will not notice the difference. Costs may be reduced by having fewer living plants to maintain, rotate and replace as required. Silk plants are more desirable than plastic ones because they are more realistic.

Florists often use silk designs as a framework for their window and store displays. They also use silk bouquets and arrangements as samples when selling wedding work. Photographers have various styles of silk bridal bouquets for brides to pose with for pre-wedding pictures.

Christmas is a major holiday for which florists use large quantities of artificial plant materials. Customers are looking for decorative pieces that will last several weeks or more, maintaining good quality either in the warm dry air of a home or in below-freezing temperatures outdoors. Weeks in advance of the season, flower shops start creating artificial arrangements, wreaths and wall hangings for this busy time. This is one time of year when plastic is as popular as silk. There are fairly realistic plastic Christmas greens, fruits, cones and berries. Plastic items have the advantage of being able to withstand snow or rain and of crushing less during storage.

Silks are available to complement every season. Delicate pastels for spring and vibrant colors for summer are refreshing seasonal changes for interiors or door decorations. In the autumn artificial silk materials can be effectively combined with natural dried plant materials to expand the range of colors, shapes and textures available to the floral designer.

Silk flowers are sometimes used to give a color accent to living foliage plants either singly or grouped in planters. If the flowers are carefully chosen, they can appear quite natural. Corsages and hair pieces made of silk flowers can be useful accents to a wardrobe whenever a certain color or style is wanted. Since the flowers are permanent, they can be saved for future occasions.

There continues to be a steady demand for silk flowers and other permanent plant materials, giving floral designers yet another medium with which to express their creativity. Though permanent flowers will never replace fresh flowers, the popularity of permanent flowers for certain settings and occasions is great enough that every designer should learn how to work with them. Artificial materials can be used effectively and tastefully in artistic arrangements that are useful and practical. The price may initially exceed that of a comparable fresh flower arrangement, but its value may be extended over a much longer period of time.

Artificial arrangements usually lose some of their appeal if they are seen too long by the same people. They become even less desirable if they become dusty or faded. Consider rotating artificial arrangements to other locations, putting them away for a while, or taking them apart and using the flowers in new creative designs.

Silk flowers and grapes are arranged with a brocade bow in a rich basket design featuring burgundy and rose color harmony

A spring feeling with this porcelain cat featured in a line-mass design

A silk bridal bouquet

A silk basket design

A seaside feeling from combining silk and dried materials with seagull figurines

Suggestions for Working with Silk Flowers

1. Heavy-duty wire cutters may be needed to cut through sturdy wire-reinforced stems on silk flowers.
2. Cut multi-flowered stems apart to produce the size of flower clusters you need for the arrangement you are making.
3. Single silk blossoms can be glued onto natural bare branches with floral adhesive or hot glue to give the feeling of early spring.
4. Flowers that need longer or sturdier stems can be attached to a heavy wire or wooden stake. Floratape will hold small, light-weight flowers to wires, while waterproof tape will hold heavier flowers to stakes. If the wooden stakes already have wires attached to them, the flower stem and stake can be bound together by the wire.
5. Flowers with short stems that are going to be used in wreaths can be attached to a metal pick using a pick machine. Metal picks are good for inserting into straw or styrofoam forms.
6. Silk flowers used in corsages or bouquets should have a small length of the artificial stem left on. Then a fine wire can be attached by the wrap-around method. This wire will be more flexible than the stem of the flower itself and will give you more control in positioning the flower. If a sturdier stem is needed, start with the fine wire as described and then attach it to a heavier wire with floratape.
7. Silk flowers that need to be revitalized or altered in appearance can be tinted with spray paint. If edges are frayed, singe and remove the loose threads with a lighter.
8. In a flower shop where many silk arrangements are being made, hang one of each type of silk flower from a wire above the design table with a price tag in large numbers so the designers can more easily estimate the cost as they are working.
9. Display silk flowers upright in a display unit or flower cart in the shop. Many customers like to buy these individually to arrange themselves or for craft work.

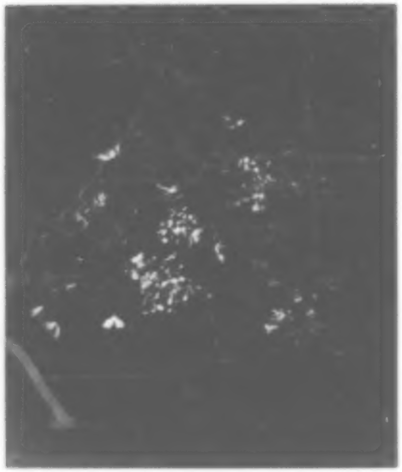
Wall decoration using two partially overlapping hearts made from natural vines. S-shaped curve of silk flowers is accented with gingham bow.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. All-around Mass Arrangement of Silk Flowers

Select an opaque pottery container that is cylindrical or oval. Fill the container with *Sahara* so that the foam sticks up about 2 inches above the rim of the container. Cover the *Sahara* with dry sheet moss.

Use a mixture of silk flowers to create a mass arrangement that can be viewed from all sides. Refer to Chapter 9 for information on mass arrangements.

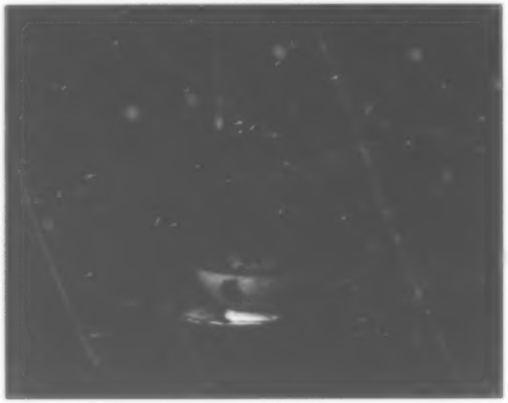


B. Line-Mass Arrangement in a Wicker Basket

Using chenille stems, attach a piece of *Sahara* foam to a wicker basket. Create a line-mass design that is compatible with the basket in size and shape. If the basket has a handle, be sure to let it show in the finished arrangement. Refer to Chapter 10 for details on line-mass design.

C. Teacup Arrangement with Silk and Baby's Breath

Fill a china teacup with *Sahara*. Create a cloud of dried or glycerinized baby's breath over the cup to a height of 1 1/2 to 2 1/2 inches. Arrange seven to nine small silk flowers in a circular mound design so they stand out above the baby's breath.



(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

D. Line Arrangement with Silk Flowers on Branches

Select an interesting leafless branch that is 10 to 15 inches tall. Choose a base or a container that is in good proportion to the branch and capable of supporting it.

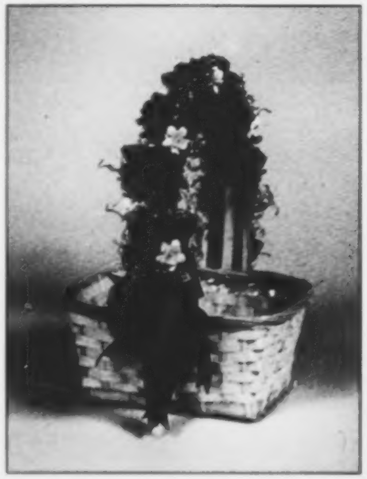
Attach styrofoam to the base (or fill the vase with it) and insert the branch firmly into the styrofoam. Cover the styrofoam with dry sheet moss.

Hot-glue silk flowers sparingly onto the branch to give it the look of a tree starting to bloom in spring. Arrange compatible silk flowers in the styrofoam to follow the line of the branch and give the total arrangement stability. Emphasize the line effect with considerable space around each flower.

E. Decorated Basket

Select a wicker basket with a handle. Hot glue a strand of Spanish moss on the handle to serve as a base for silk flowers. Make a ribbon bow and wire it to the base of the handle where it joins the basket. Select silk flowers and pieces of silk foliage that create a pleasing color scheme. Hot glue these pieces to the Spanish moss and the handle of the basket.

You could decorate the rim of the basket in the same way. Or hot glue some flowers into the bow. The basket could be filled with fragrant potpourri.



F. Basic Shapes in Silk

Create any of the basic design shapes like those below that were presented in Chapters 9 and 10. Use silk flowers. These designs could be created for specified locations, taking into consideration specific colors and themes. (See Chapter 2 for color schemes.)

Each student could be given a piece of wallpaper, a fabric swatch, or a picture of a room as the inspiration for this custom design.

Hogarth curve

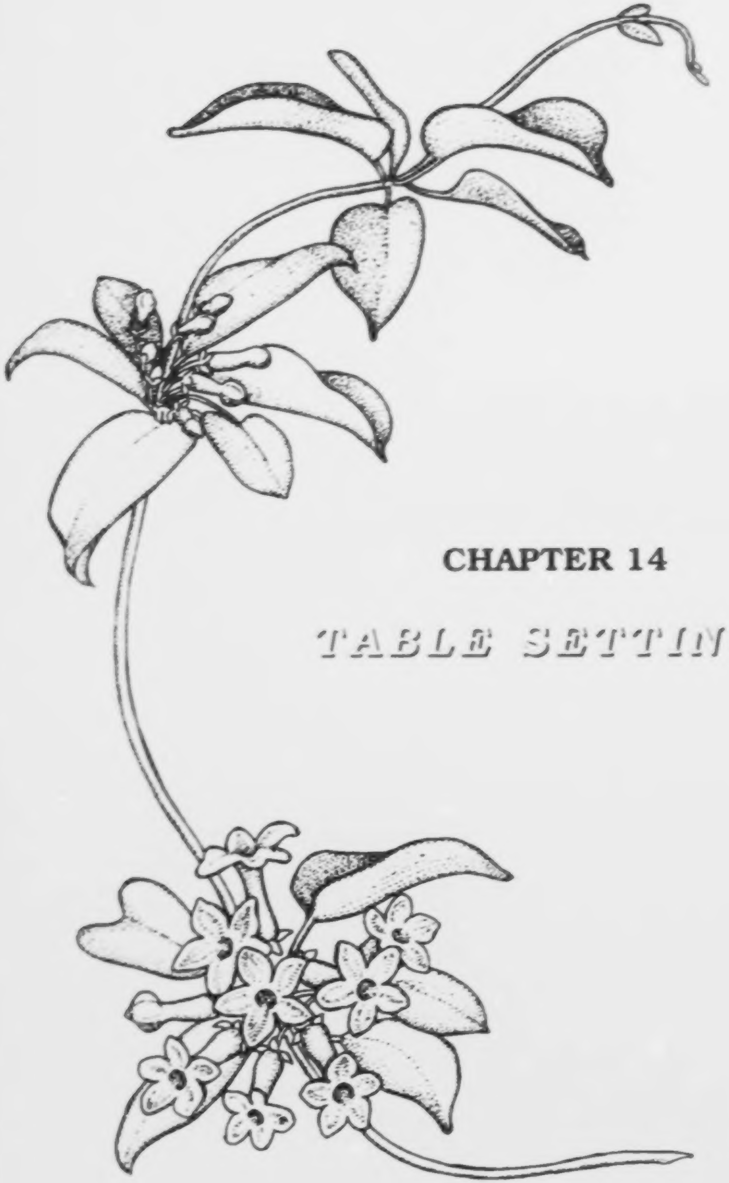
Symmetrical triangle

Horizontal

576

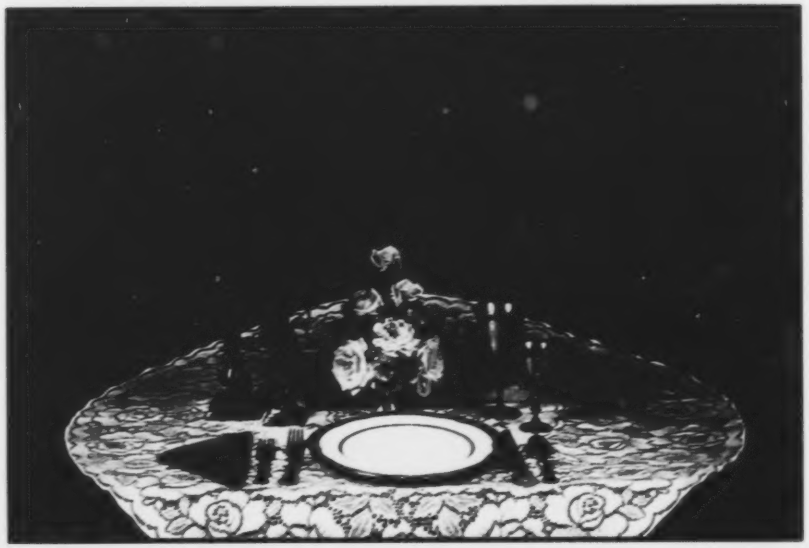
577

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



CHAPTER 14

TABLE SETTINGS



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Informal

Brunch in the garden room

Formal

Dinner with linen tablecloth, crystal and silver

TABLE SETTINGS

A well-appointed table includes a floral piece that coordinates with the dishes, tablecloth, flatware and napkins, creating a pleasant environment for dining. Harmony between the flowers and their setting is very important in creating a total unified look. Experimenting with different table settings is an excellent way to explore the importance of coordinating floral designs with the environment in which they will be used.

This exercise is designed to help you create a single place setting, complete with flowers, dishes, flatware, napkin and table covering, that artistically and creatively establishes a mood suitable for a specific occasion. Size relationships, color, texture, design pattern, and accessories are all elements that you should consider carefully for a successful result. The degree of formality, season of the year, time of day, and location of the table will affect the choices you make.

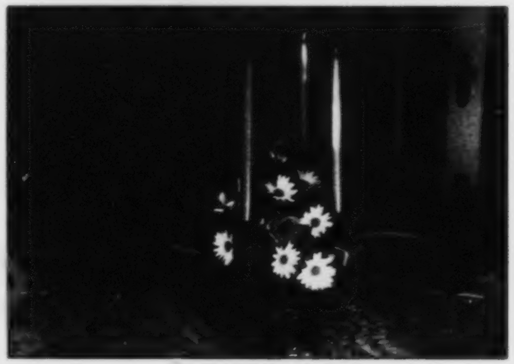
THE OCCASION

One must first identify whether the meal is a breakfast, brunch, lunch, afternoon tea, dinner, or evening meal. In most situations the evening meal is more formal than those earlier in the day, but this can vary, depending on the circumstances. For example, is this a quiet family gathering or is it a special event with invited guests? The number of people being served and their relationship to the host or hostess will also help establish the degree of formality of the table setting.

Determine the reason for the occasion. Is it centered around a special holiday or a particular theme? Is it a child's birthday, Easter brunch, graduation luncheon, or retirement party? Have any of the participants expressed a preference for certain colors, accessories or flowers? All of this must be considered in determining possible choices of materials.

SIZE AND SHAPE OF THE TABLE

What are the dimensions of the table and how many people are going to be seated at it? For a sit-down meal at least two feet should be allowed for each guest. A buffet table, of course, would not involve seating people. The size of the table should be determined by the amount of food, floral pieces, dishes and other items it is to hold. This should be carefully planned in advance. A buffet table should not look crowded. Also at a buffet table the arrangement may be off-center and taller than it would be on a table where guests are seated, since at a buffet the arrangement will not interfere with conversation.



A four-branched candelabra holds the flowers on an oval table with a lace cloth.

A large table will require a larger centerpiece than a small table. If the table is longer than 8 feet, it may be best to use two or more arrangements. The arrangement (or sum of the arrangements) should not take up more than one-third the length of the table. The width of the arrangement should be such that it doesn't crowd the place settings.

A round table will generally call for an arrangement that is rounded or tri-symmetrical in overhead view (Fig. 14-1, 14-2). The diamond centerpiece works well on a rectangular table (Fig. 14-3) and an oval design on an oval table (Fig. 14-4).

CHINA AND FLATWARE

The choice of china and flatware is usually limited to what is available and therefore must be considered early in the decision-making process. High quality china like Wedgewood, Haviland, Limoge and Rosenthal is suitable for very formal occasions. White china with a simple gold band is versatile, easy to work with, and always in good taste. Interesting patterns in the china may impose some restrictions on the choice of floral materials and designs, but they can also be worked with in creative ways. Pattern, color and quality of the china must all be considered in order to make harmonious flower decisions.

Ironstone and stoneware are less formal, but they have a wide range of possible uses. Corningware and plastic are even more informal. A creative setting may be done even with paper plates. A table setting is not successful or unsuccessful because of its degree of formality. Each situation can be

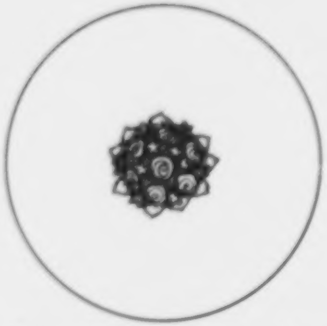


Figure 14-1 Round mound design

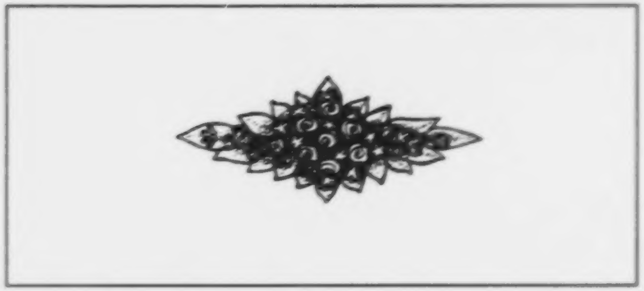


Figure 14-3 Diamond centerpiece

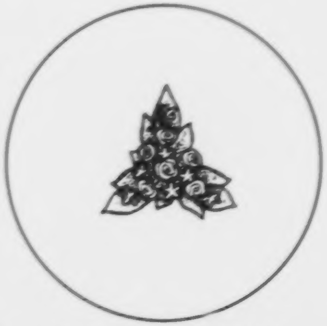


Figure 14-2 Tri-symmetrical arrangement

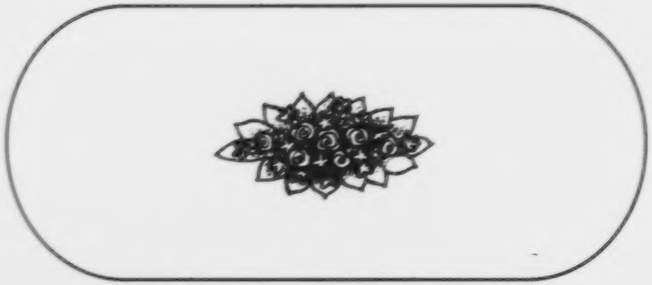
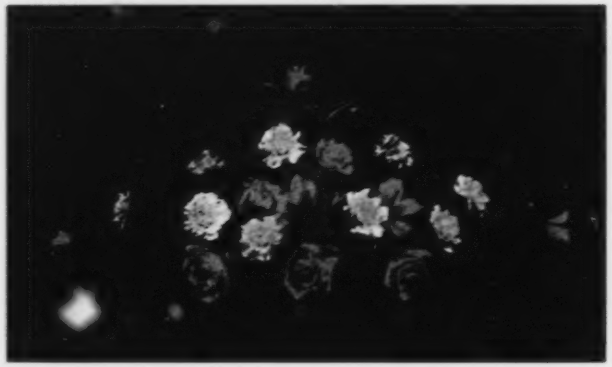


Figure 14-4 Oval centerpiece



Diamond centerpiece of roses and carnations often used on a rectangular table

Oblong diamond centerpiece of lilies, carnations and kalanchoe

artistically developed if all elements are well coordinated.

Flatware should be compatible with the china. Silver or goldware is appropriate for formal settings, stainless for less formal, and plastic for least formal occasions. Bone, wood or colored plastic handles are found in some flatware and are good for special effects when combined with appropriate dishes and flowers.

TABLE COVERINGS AND NAPKINS

If a table covering is used, it should be a good background for the dishes. White linen and lace are formal. Colored cloths should repeat a color in the china or provide a pleasing contrast. Off-white china may appear discolored on a pure white cloth.

Napkins may match the cloth or be of another compatible color in the overall scheme. Changing the napkins is a relatively easy and inexpensive way to vary the color scheme or pick up a secondary color in the china or in the arrangement. Napkins are usually placed to the left of the fork with the folded side on the outside so they can be picked up and unfolded easily at the beginning of the meal. For special effects napkins can also be folded into many interesting shapes.

Place mats may be used at the individual place settings either with or without a tablecloth. The outside edge of the place mat should be one inch from the edge of the table. The guidelines previously described for selecting tablecloths also apply to place mats. Those that are made of wicker or woven fiber have an interesting texture and can create a natural effect. Table runners or ribbons can be used instead of place mats to add a festive note, either with or without tablecloths. They can extend the length of the table or be criss-crossed to run under each place setting.

Occasionally napkin rings are used to add yet another dimension to the setting. A single blossom or small cluster of flowers may be attached to the napkin ring for a special occasion.

Napkin rings made by wrapping floratape rings with satin ribbon. Dried flowers and silk leaves are hot glued into position.

FLOWERS FOR THE TABLE

The size and shape of the design will be largely determined by the size and shape of the table. This was discussed in a previous section, but some additional guidelines on the **height** of the arrangement will be given here. In general, the overall height of a table arrangement should be less than 12 inches so it does not interfere with conversation. An exception would be the use of very wispy materials that extend higher than 12 inches but can still be easily seen through. Other exceptions include two-parted arrangements where the top part is elevated above eye level on slender rods, tall-pedestaled candelabras, and hanging arrangements suspended from the ceiling. On buffet tables, of course, the height of the arrangement is not as important since people will not be seated.

A designer will also take into consideration the china, flatware, table covering, napkins, and reason for the occasion when deciding on the flowers, design style and accessories. Containers may match or coordinate with the dishes. A very close match is achieved when a serving piece from the set of dishes is used to hold the flowers. Often very plain, inexpensive containers are sufficient, because many centerpiece designs have low flower placements that largely conceal the container. If the container shows and does not match the dishes, it should still be harmonious in color and formality.

Several historic styles of centerpieces for tables are of interest. One of these is the epergne (e-purn´) (Fig. 14-5), an ornate silver, porcelain or glass container composed of a number of joined parts, each of which can hold flowers or fruit. Epergnes were popular during different eras, including Williamsburg and Victorian times. Another typically Williamsburg centerpiece can be constructed from a wooden cone from which nails project. Apples and other fruits are pushed onto the nails, and the area between the fruit is filled in with greens such as boxwood.

Flowers are selected on the basis of their color, texture, shape, degree of formality, and, of course, availability. Roses, orchids, lilies, carnations and snapdragons are suitable for formal settings, but can also be adapted to less formal situations. Daisy and pompon mums and garden flowers like zinnias or geraniums are good choices for the informal table. Actually, the degree of formality for most flowers is determined by the way they are used rather than any inherent quality.

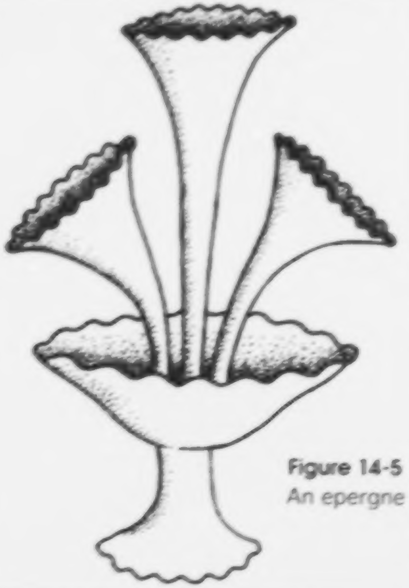


Figure 14-5
An epergne

The geometric design styles (diamond centerpiece, mound, tri-symmetrical and inverted-T) are most commonly used in the floral piece for a table. However, a number of alternatives are available, some of which are discussed here.

Ideas for Table Decorations

1. Use a small collection of bud vases of different heights. Fill each with flowers. The collection could be "tied together" more by placing all of them on the same base like a mirror. Votive candles can be used between and around the vases if desired. This makes a quick and economical centerpiece.

2. For a casual centerpiece, use a collection of potted plants in a basket. Both blooming plants like African violets, and foliage plants like ivy are good choices. First line the basket with foil or plastic. Sheet moss can be used to hide the pots if necessary.

3. Lay greens down the middle of the table in a linear or serpentine pattern. Accent the greens with votive candles or candles in holders, fruit, nuts, and/or fresh flowers like chrysanthemums or carnations that hold up well out of water.

For a very personalized effect, include items of special significance to the person being honored:- items such as photocubes, awards, and small figurines or toys that represent the person's interests. If the occasion is a birthday or anniversary party for which a special cake has been prepared, place the cake in the center of the greens and flowers so it can be enjoyed longer before being served.

4. Try a hanging arrangement for an unusual effect, if there is a way to suspend it. Keep it above eye level.

Four-branched silver candelabra with roses and carnations

Collection of bud vases on a mirror - a simple but effective centerpiece. Votive candles illuminate the flowers and reflect in the mirror.

CANDLES

Candles are appropriate any time the area is dark enough for them to be effective. Traditionally they were reserved for evening and more formal affairs. Candles create a soft glow and interesting shadows. Colors in the room as well as flower colors are subdued in candlelight. Dark flowers, especially purple and dark red, may appear black in dim light. Pastel colors and white are more easily seen under low light conditions.

Candles should be placed above or below eye level so the guests are not looking directly into the flame. When several candles are used, they may look more interesting if they are set at different heights. Votive lights can be placed down the table to extend the impact of a design. A different use of votive lights is to elevate them on glass, plastic or wooden rods above eye level.

The larger the table, the more candles should be used. A centerpiece built around a single taper may be adequate for a small table for two, but a table for twelve should have more candles - perhaps three on each side of the centerpiece. Votive lights can be used in combination with tapers to increase the overall effect of candlelight.

For safety, plant materials should be kept away from the flame. Candles should never be left unattended. When they burn low, they should be extinguished. Drafts on candles will cause them to burn rapidly and may result in wax dripped onto the tablecloth.

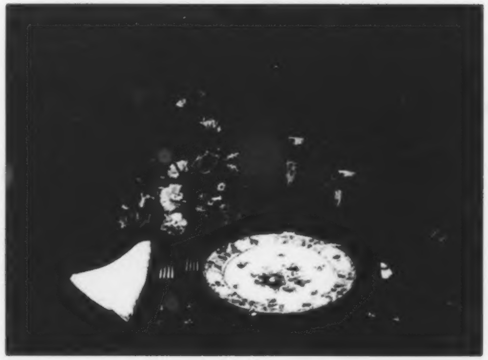
OTHER ACCESSORIES

Table arrangements can be accented with a wide variety of accessories including fruit, nuts, sea shells, decorative rocks and figurines. Decorative birds are a favorite of many people. Seasonal holidays like Christmas and Easter suggest a wealth of accessory materials. Whatever the occasion, it is considered inappropriate to use Madonna figurines or the American flag on food tables.

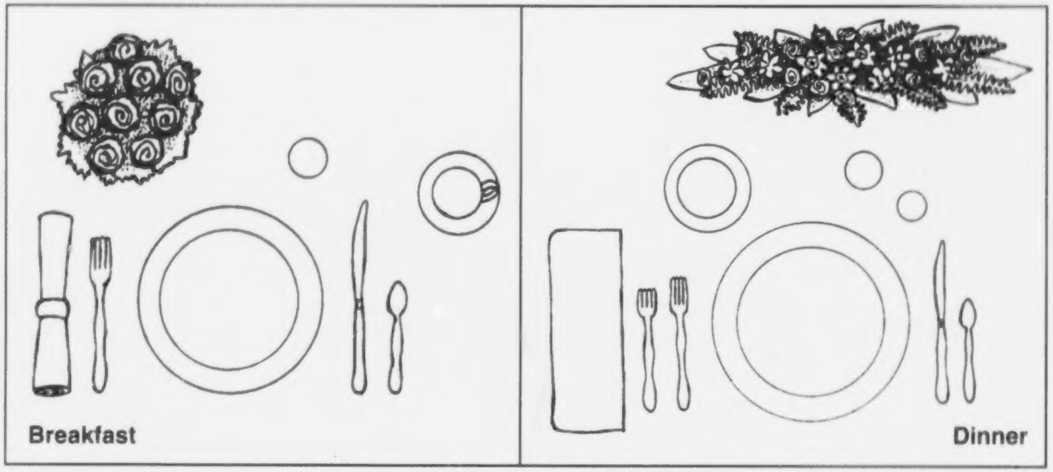
Cherubs bearing candles are used as accessories in this seasonal setting. The pieces of lycopodium resemble small Christmas trees.

Suggestions for Setting a Table

There are several different ways of setting a "correct" table. These will vary depending on the type of occasion, time of day when the meal is served, number of pieces of china and flatware to be used, and degree of formality. Note the suggestions below for place settings for different meals of the day.



Place setting with a formal, baroque look includes Dresden china, goldware, and an arrangement of roses and carnations.



Spring breakfast

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. Individualized Table Settings

Each student will create one place setting complete with a floral design that is in scale with the setting. Students should bring in the dishes, flatware, napkins and table covering (or place mat) that they will need for their single place setting.

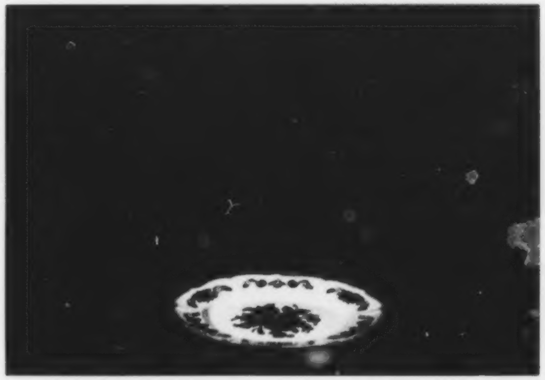
Identify the occasion the setting is for. Be rather specific. Design an arrangement that creates the mood you have envisioned. Use accessories if they will help establish the feeling without causing a cluttered look.

Be especially conscious of color, texture and pattern coordination. Repeat these wherever possible for a unified look. Use spray paint on flowers or dried materials if you cannot obtain the color you want in fresh flowers.

As part of evaluating the table settings, bring in several people who are not trained in floral design. Have them pick two or three favorites. Ask them to explain why they chose the ones they did. This will give you some insight into preferences of the general flower-buying public.

(continued)

Summer brunch



Autumn luncheon

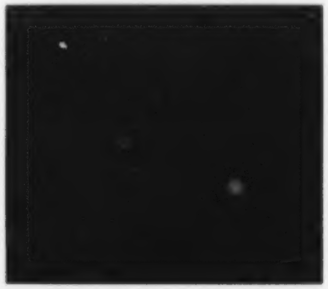
Winter dinner

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

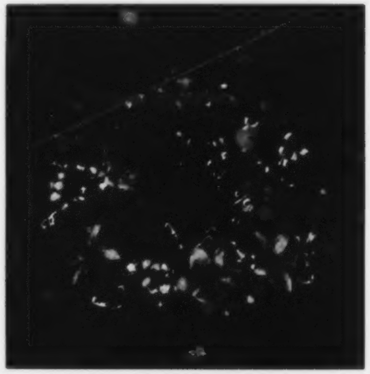
B. Centerpiece Using Oasis Wreath Ring

An Oasis wreath ring can be used to create an interesting table centerpiece.

1. Attach the floral foam to a plastic base which is set on the table. Soak the ring in water using the free-float method used for blocks of floral foam. Allow the ring to drain for several minutes.

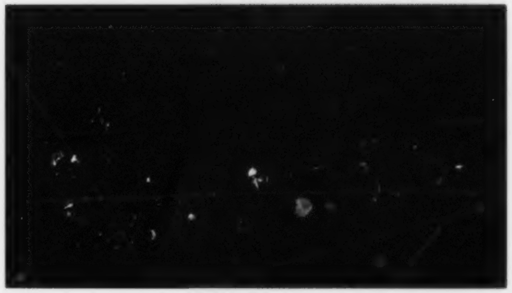


2. Insert a collection of short-stemmed flowers and foliage to create a full but controlled wreath-like appearance.

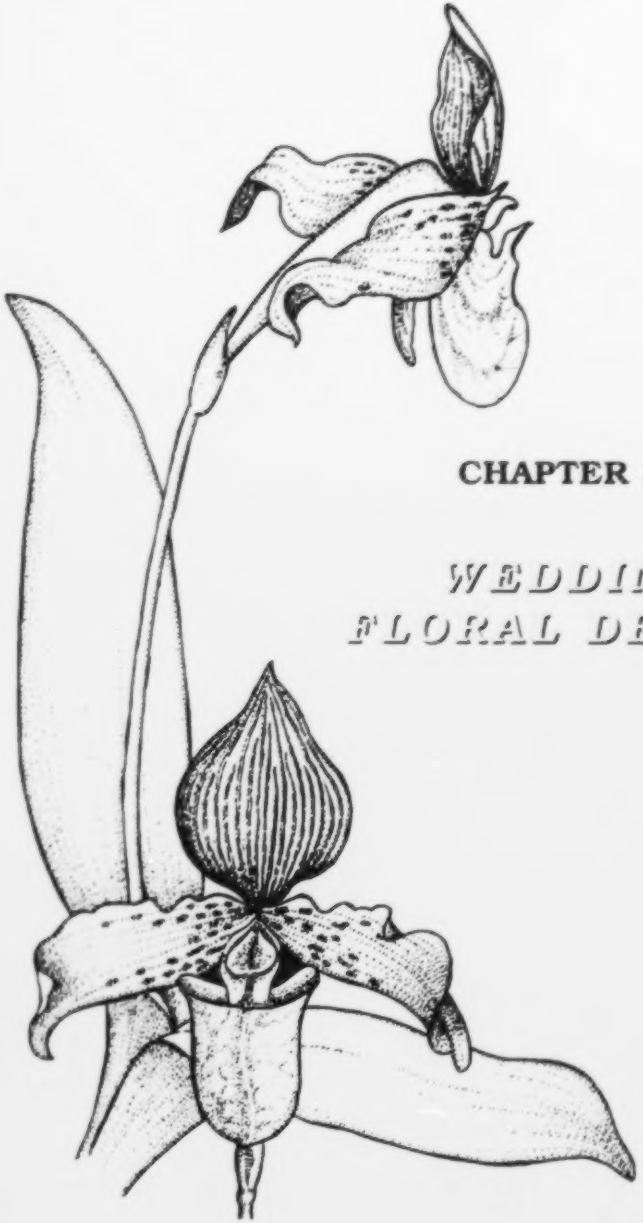


3. Add three or more candles as desired by taping short wooden picks to the base of the candles. Place the candles asymmetrically. Make sure you allow the centerpiece to drain thoroughly before placing it on the table.

4. You can design a variation of this centerpiece by cutting the ring into halves. Add flowers and foliage to each half. One such pattern is an S-shaped configuration on each side of a candle like this Hogarth curve. Ball-shaped candles have been added as accessories.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE



CHAPTER 15

WEDDING FLORAL DESIGN

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Decorations for a large church wedding

WEDDING FLORAL DESIGN

Brides-to-be want their wedding flowers to be special and to reflect their image of the perfect wedding. That image may be the most traditional round colonial bouquet, or it may be a unique hi-tech contemporary design. Successful florists need to be skilled in designing a wide range of styles, so that each individual wedding can be dealt with in a creative way appropriate to the situation, budget and preferences of the bride-to-be.

Wedding floral design involves arrangements, body flowers and bouquets. Many arrangements are basic design shapes with variations in the types of flowers used, accessories chosen, and color scheme selected. Bouquets may be thought of either as corsages scaled up in size or arrangements modified so that they can be held comfortably.

The basic design principles apply to all wedding work. Likewise, all proper care and handling techniques should be carefully observed, since flowers must be in prime condition on this special day.

Considerations When Planning a Wedding

A florist must assess a number of factors concerning the wedding in order to assist the bride-to-be in the selection of suitable flowers that will enhance her wedding. Some of those considerations are:

1. *Location of the wedding*

Is the wedding to be held in a church, synagogue, home or outdoors? What is the denomination of the church? Does it have any particular rules about the use or

A church altar decorated with a large mass arrangement and framed by two palm buckets

Wedding party posing beside a pond after a garden wedding placement of flowers? What is the size, style and color scheme of the building or the character of the outdoor location?

2. *Size of the wedding*

Is this a small wedding with only the attendants and the immediate family, or is it a large one with 500 guests expected?

3. *Formality of the wedding*

Is it a formal church wedding with all the embellishments, or is it a small ceremony in a country church?

4. *Time of year*

Will the theme of the wedding be influenced by the season or nearby holidays, like Christmas, Valentine's Day or autumn? What flowers are available at a reasonable cost at this time of year?

5. *Customs and traditions in the area*

What has the bride seen at other recent weddings? Are there certain styles or customs that are currently popular in the area?

6. *Budget range of the wedding*

This is a sensitive subject that must be handled tactfully. The florist must assess the situation and sell within a price range that is reasonable for the individuals involved. It will also affect whether the wedding is serviced by the florist or the flowers are simply delivered.

Staircase decorated with garland for a home wedding

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Whether the bride prefers a romantic look in soft pastels or selects a daring combination of bold colors, the goal should be to create a total image with every detail conforming to the overall style of the wedding. Some possible wedding styles are listed below as examples. Try to imagine what the other details might be and what types of flowers and arrangements would be appropriate for the setting.

- A formal Catholic church wedding held during the Christmas season. 750 invited guests with a sit-down dinner to follow at the country club.
- A Protestant ceremony in the afternoon with family and friends in a medium-sized traditional church. Reception in the church basement.
- A Jewish wedding in June in the synagogue for 500 guests. Tent reception to follow on the lawn of the bride's parents.
- A September garden wedding in an arboretum. Reception in an enclosed picnic pavilion.
- An August wedding in the parents' home. Poolside party to follow in the back yard.

The rich tones of this church arrangement repeat the colors in the stained glass.

Flowers for the Wedding of

The Bride ______________________ **The Groom** ______________________
Address ______________________ Address ______________________
Phones ____________ or ____________ Phones ____________ or ____________

Ceremony Location ______________________ **Date** ____________ **Time** ____________
Reception Location ______________________ **Date** ____________ **Time** ____________
Rehearsal Dinner Location ______________________ **Date** ____________ **Time** ____________

	EXPENSES of the	
	BRIDE	GROOM
The Bride		
Color & style of gown		
Style of bouquet & flowers		
		$
Floral headpiece		$
The Bridal Party		
"Honor Attendant"		
Color & style of gown		
Style of bouquet & flowers	$	
"Bridesmaids" . . . Number:		
Color & style of gowns		
Style of bouquets & flowers	$	
"Flower Girl"		
Color & style of gown		
Style of bouquet & flowers	$	
Floral headpieces	$	
Boutonnieres		
Groom	$	
Best Man / Father		$
Groomsmen, Ushers . . . Number: / Grandfathers		$
Ring Bearer / Other		$
Corsages		
Bride's mother		$
Groom's mother		$
Grandmothers . . . Number:		$
Others . . . Number:	$	
Decorations for the Ceremony		
Main altar	$	
Aisle & pew decorations	$	
Foliage (agmts., rental greens, etc.) Canopy ☐ Candelabra . . . Altar ☐ Candelabra . . . Aisle ☐	$	
Kneeling bench Aisle runner . . . 50 ft. ☐ 75 ft. ☐ 100 ft. ☐ 125 ft. ☐ 150 ft. ☐	$	
Other	$	
Reception		
Cake & cake table	$	
Centerpieces	$	
Other	$	
Rehearsal Dinner		
Centerpieces		$
Other		$
Subtotal	$	$
Sales tax	$	$
TOTAL	$	$
Deposit	$	$
Balance	$	$

ACCEPTANCE BY: ______________________ DATE: ____________

602

[redacted]

Bridal Interview

When the bride-to-be is ready to discuss her wedding flowers with the florist, she comes to the shop for a consultation. Ideally, the florist has a separate area in which to conduct the interview, with comfortable furniture and decorations in a bridal motif. This area should allow the florist to be free of interruptions while showing the bride-to-be pictures and sample silk designs as examples of what is available at that shop.

A **wedding order form**, such as the one shown on the opposite page, sold by the John Henry Company, is an efficient and organized way to determine the flower needs for the wedding. The more information the bride can supply regarding the wedding, the better the florist can serve her. Swatches of fabric taken from inside seams of the gowns should be brought to the florist and stapled to the wedding order form.

The discussion of flower needs should start with the bride's bouquet and progress in the following order:

- bride's flowers
- honor attendant's flowers
- bridesmaids' flowers
- flower girl and ring bearer's flowers
- boutonnieres
- corsages
- decorations for the ceremony
- reception flowers
- rehearsal dinner flowers

Expenses

It is customary for the groom to pay for the bride's bouquet, the bride's going-away corsage, corsages for the mothers and grandmothers, and all boutonnieres. The groom's parents sponsor the rehearsal dinner and pay for the flowers used at this event.

The bride's parents typically pay for all the other bouquets, corsages and flower arrangements at the church and reception.

FLOWERS FOR THE WEDDING PARTY

The Bride's Flowers

The bride's flowers set the style for the other floral selections. Her bouquet should complement the style of the gown and figure of the bride. Bouquets which are commonly used can be placed in the following groups:

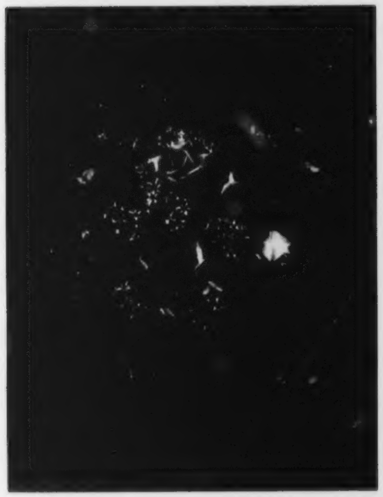
1. Colonial bouquets *(page 300)*
   - round
   - oval
2. Cascade bouquets *(page 301)*
   - single slim cascade
   - full cascade
3. Arm bouquets *(page 302)*
   - diagonal
   - crescent
   - S-curve
4. Specialty bouquets - those using a prop *(page 303)*
5. Contemporary bouquets *(page 304)*

(text continued page 305)

Florists meet with prospective brides to help them plan the flowers for their wedding.

A formal theme in both clothing and flowers

COLONIAL BOUQUETS


Teardrop

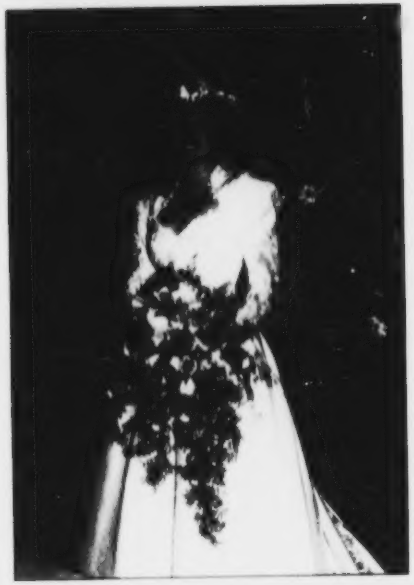
Starburst

Colonial with ribbon and ivy extension

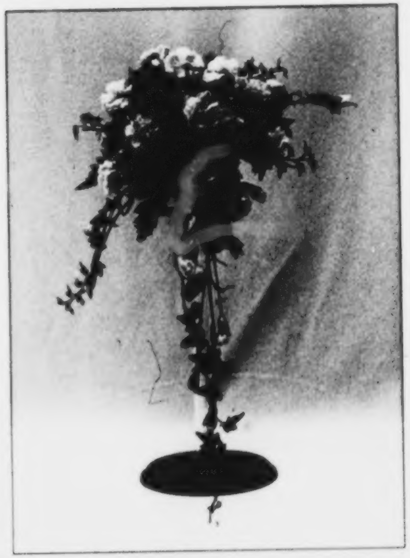
Colonial with concentric rings of flowers

Colonial with mixed blossoms

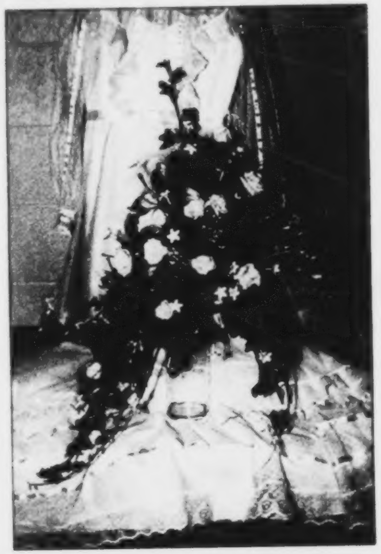
CASCADE BOUQUETS



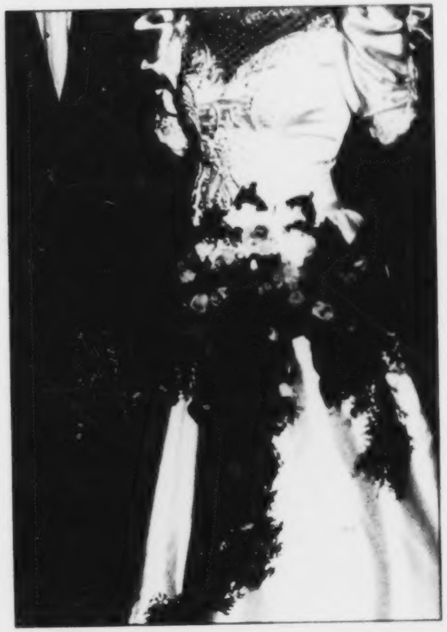
Full cascade



Slim cascade



Multiple cascade



Triple cascade

Airy rose cascade

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

ARM BOUQUETS

Botanical

Dramatic

609

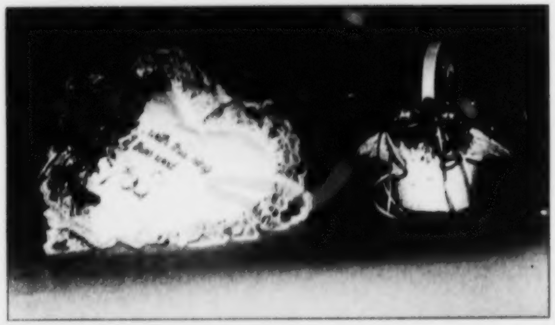
Classic calla sheaf

Dynamic

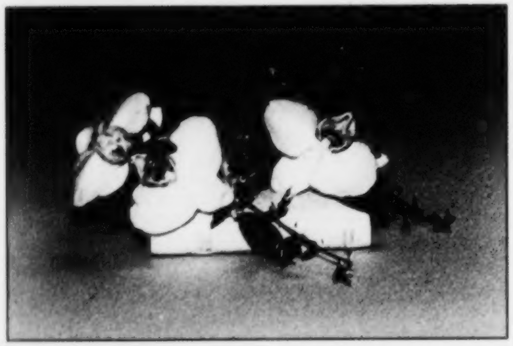
Flowing

610

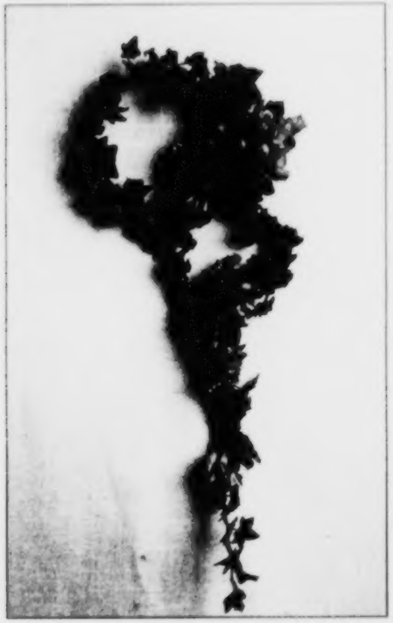
SPECIALTY BOUQUETS



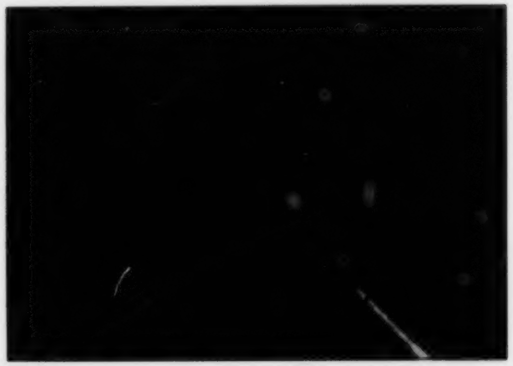
Ring bearer's pillow and flower girl's basket with rose petals



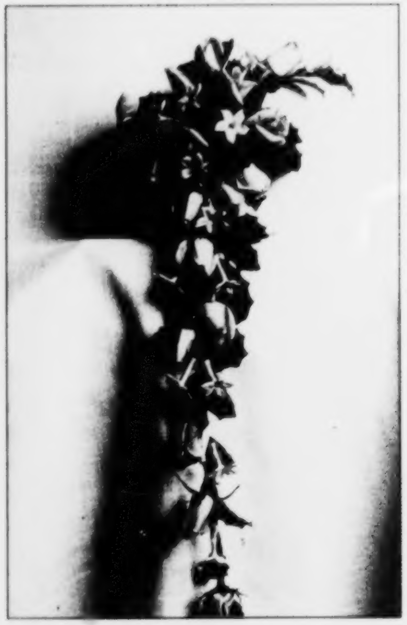
Orchids on a Bible



Double wedding ring



Parasol



Slim cascade on a muff

611

612

CONTEMPORARY BOUQUETS

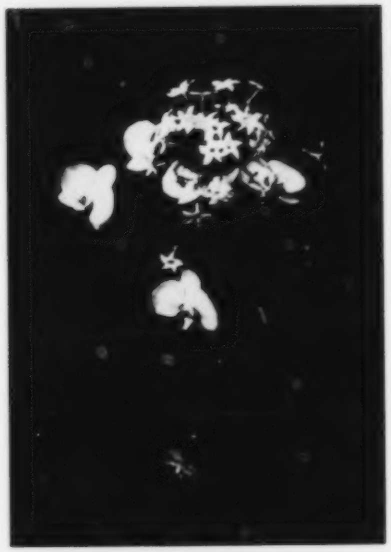
Starburst

Regal sceptre

613

Dynamic diagonal line-of-opposition

614



Controlled cascade

Romantic bouquet with bundles of potpourri

Suggestions for Selecting the Style of Bouquet:

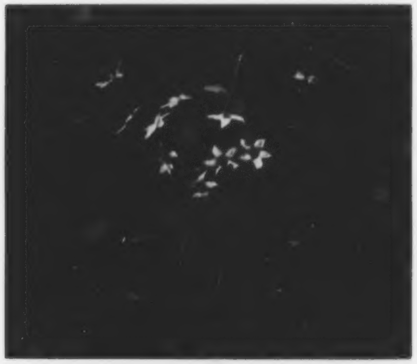
1. The bouquet should emphasize the best features of the dress and the bride, not stopping at a dominant place on either the dress or the figure.

2. The size of the bouquet should not overpower the bride or hide the features of the dress.

3. The bouquet should not be stiff and rigid. It should flow visually and also have some physical motion when carried.

4. The bouquet should be comfortable to carry. It should be light and should fit securely into the hand.

5. Graceful extensions of the line up the arm or downward in a cascade should be used, rather than tightly packed shapes that draw attention to one small area.



Fresh hairpiece of dendrobium orchids and stephanotis

Additional Body Flowers for the Bride

The bride may elect to wear additional flowers that complement the bouquet and create a unified total look. Flowers attached to the hair or on headpieces, hats or veils are the most common. Such flowers add visual interest during the ceremony when the bride has her back to the guests.

The going-away corsage should coordinate with the dress the bride will wear after the wedding. It can be made as a detachable part of the bridal bouquet.

Bridal bouquet held in a good position

Wedding gown, bouquet, and headpiece coordinate well to give this bride the total look she has chosen for her special day.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Attendants' flowers

Attendants' Flowers

The attendants' flowers should not compete with those of the bride. They should be harmonious with the style and formality of those selected for the bridal bouquet. The attendants' gowns and bouquets are usually the most colorful part of the wedding party; they carry out the color scheme that has been selected for the wedding.

The attendants' flowers may include hairpieces and other body flowers. The flower girl will have a smaller bouquet - perhaps an arrangement in a basket. Each of the men in the wedding party will have a boutonniere and sometimes other "fashion flowers" that coordinate with the other wedding flowers. If there is a ring bearer, there may be flowers on the pillow he carries.

Corsages and Boutonnieres for Special Guests

Corsages are selected for mothers, grandmothers and other close female relatives and friends. Close male relatives and special guests are given boutonnieres. Those assisting with the ceremony or reception are also given flowers. These may include the organist, soloist and hostesses. Flowers may coordinate with the colors of their dresses if they are known. If not, the corsage color should be neutral, like white or ivory, or it can include colors from the wedding color scheme.

Ringbearer with decorated pillow

Groomsmen wearing boutonnieres

617

618

If the wedding is to be held in a church, the customs of the congregation and style of that particular church should be taken into consideration. The arrangements should not clash with the colors and architecture of the building, although there is a great deal of latitude in the simplicity or elaborateness that is possible within each setting.

Some churches have altar guilds that can assist florists in knowing what props are available at the church and whether the church has any special rules regarding the use of flowers. Candelabras, aisle posts and kneeling benches are props available at many churches. If these props are not available, most florists commonly have them for rent along with materials like palm buckets and foliage plants.

Props and Floral Decorations for Weddings

1. *Altar flowers*

These can consist of one large arrangement or two smaller arrangements, either in concealed plastic containers or in altar vases that belong to the church.

A unity candle is sometimes used in a wedding ceremony. It often becomes part of the altar decoration. A large candle may be featured in an arrangement with flowers at its base.

2. *Candelabra flowers*

Branched candelabras are often decorated simply with bows, or bows combined with flowers and greens. Be very careful not to scratch or otherwise damage the metal of the candelabra.

Candelabra with long satin streamers

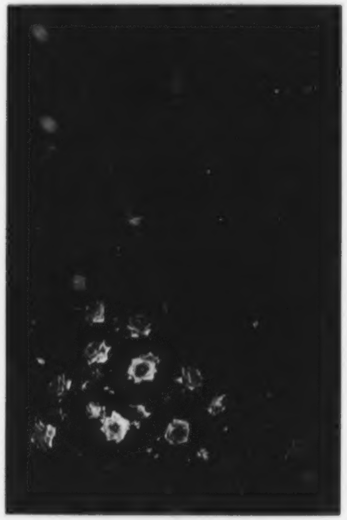
ALTAR FLOWERS

Large open mass of all white flowers

Rich mass of pink flowers with cascade of ivy

Unity candle used as an altar decoration for a wedding

Colorful line-mass design in a wicker basket placed on a pedestal in front of the altar.



Design featuring roses and liatris is used on a piano.

621

3. *Arrangements*

Flower arrangements can be placed on pedestals, in front of lecterns, or in windows.

4. *Foliage*

Living potted foliage plants can be used, or cut greens can be placed in palm buckets or styrofoam. Palm buckets are designed to have emerald leaf inserted in the wire holders to simulate a living plant. These are easier to transport than living plants and make a good show with height that can be seen from a distance.

5. *Flowering potted plants*

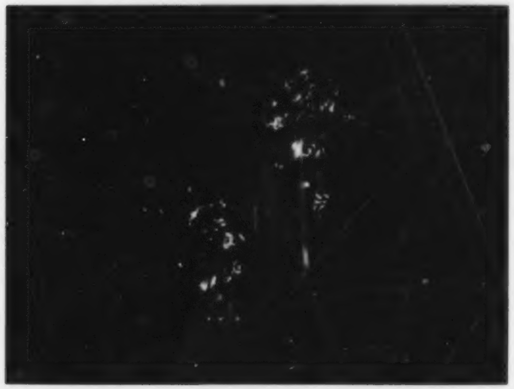
Foiled flowering plants decorated with bows are often used in various locations, either singly or grouped.

Flowers on a guest book pedestal

6. *Pew bows*

Bows alone or with flowers and greens may be attached to the pews down the center aisle. Sometimes they are used only to mark the family pews.

An open gathered bouquet on a pew



Two-part floral pew decoration

622

7. *Aisle posts*

Posts that clamp onto the pews and hold a candle at the top add a special touch to the church decorations. An arrangement of flowers and/or foliage may be attached to the base of the candle. Ribbon or greens may be spiraled down the post.

8. *Kneeling bench*

For some ceremonies a kneeling bench is used. It can be decorated with clusters of flowers and ribbons, with ribbons or greens swagged between the clusters.

9. *Flowers for the Blessed Virgin*

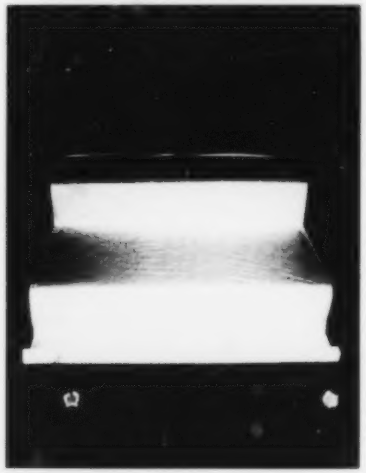
A single flower or a presentation arm bouquet may be placed at the feet of the Virgin Mary in a Roman Catholic ceremony.

10. *Canopy*

A wooden canopy called a *chuppah* is used for Jewish wedding ceremonies. The canopy can be decorated with greens and flowers.

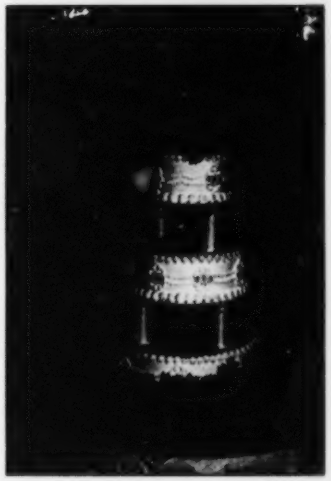
11. *Aisle runner*

Florists often provide the aisle runner. They pin or tape it in place so it can be pulled easily at the proper time. Most aisle runners now used are plastic.



Decorated gazebo

Punch table



Wedding cake decorated with flowers

The nature and extent of the reception flowers will depend on the location of the reception, the theme of the wedding, and the degree to which the bride's family wishes to decorate. Obviously, the decorations for a country club dinner, a reception in the church basement, and a poolside party will differ. The object is to create a festive atmosphere for a joyous occasion.

Uses of Flowers at the Reception

1. *Serving table*

The buffet table may have one or more arrangements. Candles may be used in or with the designs, or the arrangements may be made in pedestaled candelabras so that they show well without taking up much table space.

2. *Centerpieces*

Individual table centerpieces where guests are to be seated are effective in repeating the color and romance of flowers throughout the room.

3. *Cake table*

Greens and flowers laid around the base of the cake help set it off. Use only unblemished materials near food. The cake table can also be decorated with festoons of ribbon, cloth or fresh green roping like smilax or sprengeri. Fresh flowers for the top of the cake are an attractive alternative to traditional plastic tops. A cluster of fresh flowers can also be attached to the serving knife used to cut the first slice of cake.

4. *Guest book*

The guest book is usually positioned by the entrance to the reception hall. A small arrangement of flowers may be placed near it, or a mini-corsage could be attached to a ribbon to use as a bookmark.

5. *Punch table*

Laying greens or flowers around the punch bowl is a simple way to extend floral decorations to this area. If there is room on the table, a flower arrangement can also be used there.

6. *Room decorations*

Additional flowers may be placed in windows or on walls, hung from the ceiling, or used to accent special features like balconies, staircases, pianos or stages.

7. *Rehearsal dinner*

Flowers for the rehearsal dinner usually consist of one or more centerpieces. There may be corsages and boutonnieres requested for the bride, groom and some family members. The groom's family typically hosts the rehearsal dinner and makes flower selections.

COUNTRY CLUB WEDDING RECEPTION

Two-tiered arrangement on guest table

Guest book table with design featuring candles and votive lights, displayed on a mirror

Arrangement on small table in foyer where guests arrive

Buffet table

[redacted]

1. Mist flowers and keep them cool so they will remain fresh and in top condition.

Keep flowers in the cooler as much as possible. After they have been wired and taped, return them to the cooler.

Mist the flowers with water as you work with them. Use a mist bottle to spray a fine layer of water on the wired and taped flowers as well as the made-up bouquet.

Work over a layer of moist paper towels or newspapers. The paper will cushion flower petals, and the moisture evaporating from the paper will reduce water loss by the flowers.

2. Have all supplies and equipment in close proximity to the work area.

Wire holders are convenient for storing various gauges of wire in a vertical position. Shorter lengths of wire can be kept in bud vases that are labeled with the number gauge of the wire.

Scissors, wire cutters, floratape and corsage pins are frequently used and should be kept within reach.

A heavy-duty counter mounted wire cutter is useful for cutting the thick stem of a finished bouquet.

Ribbon should be displayed on a ribbon rack so that it can be easily seen and removed when needed.

3. Set up an assembly line procedure for efficiency.

Wire and tape all of one kind of flower or foliage at a time. Cut all the flowers from the stem at one time, wire them all, and then tape.

Place wired and taped flowers and foliage upright in the bud vases, mist the material, and cover with a plastic bag before returning them to the cooler. A hyacinth stake that is taller than the flowers may be placed in with them to keep the bag from resting on the flowers.

4. Use a bouquet stand to anchor bouquet holders while you are working on them.

A heavy pottery vase filled with styrofoam can accomplish the same purpose.

5. Use mists, dips and adhesives to make flowers look their best and preserve their quality.

Flowers that turn brown easily, like lily-of-the-valley, can be dipped in a half water-half white glue mixture to form a transparent barrier to air over the flower. Delicate foliage like ivy and fern tips can be dipped in the same solution to reduce water loss and slow wilting.

There are aerosol and mist products that form an invisible layer over flowers and help keep them fresh longer. *Green-Glo* and other plant shine compounds are suitable for use on foliage. They give foliage a glossy appearance and keep it fresh longer.

White spray paint can be used lightly over flowers like gardenias, stephanotis and orchids that may have a slightly browned area.

Adhesives can be used to repair broken petals or to keep petals from falling off or bending back. Lily petals often need the extra support of an adhesive. *Mum Mist* prevents mum shattering. A couple of drops of candle wax low on the backs of the petals can be used to prevent the reflexed action of anemone flowers.

6. Store finished bouquets carefully in the cooler.

Cushion the bouquet on a layer of crumpled or shredded waxed tissue.

Cover the bouquet with a thin plastic bag. It is important not to crush the flowers with a heavy covering.

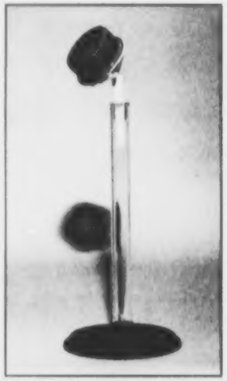
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. Colonial Bouquet in Bouquet Holder

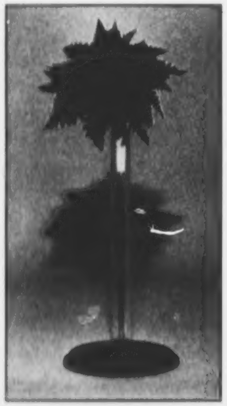
Materials:

- bouquet holder
- 1/3 bunch mini-carnations
- 1/3 bunch daisy pompon mums
- 5-7 stems statice
- 5-7 stems leatherleaf fern

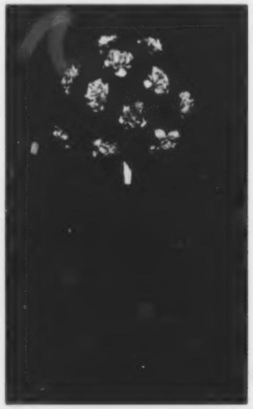
1. Soak a bouquet holder in preservative water for at least 5 minutes. Place the bouquet holder in a stand and position it at a 45° angle. This imitates the angle at which the bouquet will be held and makes flower insertion easier.



2. Use small to medium pieces of leatherleaf fern to cover the bouquet holder in a rounded form. Begin by creating a circle of fern around the edge and work in toward the center. At this stage, as it covers the bouquet holder frame, the foliage should resemble a small woodland fern.



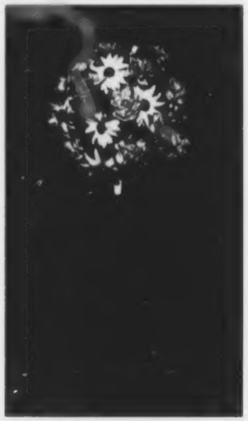
3. Create a circular pattern of mini-carnations extending slightly beyond the tips of the fern. Begin with a ring of mini-carnations around the edge. Next, position one or more carnations near the center at a height that creates a globular form. (Note that positioning these flowers too high will create an oval form; pushing them in too far will cause a flattened appearance.) Complete the circular form by placing mini-carnations between the center flowers and the edge. Avoid crowding the mini-carnations; leave space for the mums and statice.



4. Add mums between the mini-carnations to maintain the rounded form. Avoid crowding the flowers. Allow enough space so that each blossom can maintain its individual identity.

5. Distribute small pieces of statice throughout the bouquet just beyond the level of the flowers. Additional statice may be positioned slightly below or underneath the mums and mini-carnations to fill in gaps and create depth.

6. Ribbons of various lengths may be bound together using a piece of florist wire. The wire may be attached to the cage of the bouquet holder.



The completed colonial bouquet exhibits the desired globular form. A unified look is created by the color harmony of the flowers and accompanying ribbon.

This bouquet style can be duplicated without a bouquet holder and can be done with individually wired and taped flowers and foliage.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Cascade Bouquet

1. Construction of this bouquet begins with the wired and taped cascade. First, wire and tape a few pieces of each kind of fresh material. The pierce method is shown being used to wire a mini-carnation and can also be used on the roses and lilies.

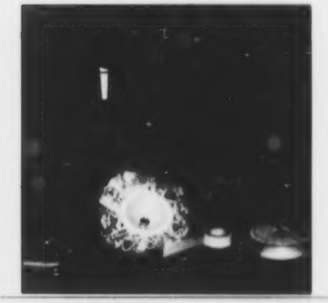
2. Construction of a cascade bouquet is quite similar to that of a corsage. Begin by creating the tip of the cascade. Hold a small wired flower in a vertical position and then tape a second flower below it and to the left. Add a third flower to the stem slightly lower and to the right. Continue adding flowers back and forth, left to right. Incorporate filler materials such as the solidaster or sprengeri between the flower placements. Also add foliage behind the flowers during construction.

3. Flower size should **increase** as the cascade gets longer. Taper the cascade from tip to end by continually angling flower placements farther off the stem to the left and right. Length of the cascade is typically determined by height of the bride or extravagance of the wedding, but should be at least 12 inches. When the cascade is completed, tape wires of the finished cascade to the end.

MATERIALS

Supplies

- #9 satin ribbon
- sheet moss
- 1/2-inch green floral tape
- 1 inch white floral tape
- #24 & #26 florist wire
- poly/lace bouquet backing
- foam bouquet holder and stand
- knife
- ribbon shears
- wire cutters



Flowers and Foliage

- 2-3 long stems sprengeri fern
- 5-6 stems solidaster
- 3 stems lilies
- 1-2 stems salal
- 12 roses
- 1/2 bunch mini-carnations

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Cascade Bouquet *(continued)*

4. Insert the stem of the cascade into the base of a foam bouquet holder. Push it through the foam from the bottom until the cascade is 2 inches from the bouquet holder. The stem of the cascade should protrude through the top of the bouquet holder. Bend the stem end sideways over a plastic rib of the bouquet holder; insert the end back into the foam.

5. Cover the foam of the bouquet holder with dampened sheet moss. Pin the moss into the foam with 2-inch pieces of 24 gauge wire bent into hairpins.

6. Create a focal point in the center of the bouquet holder with three large flowers grouped together. These flowers should extend 2 to 2 1/2 inches above the moss.

7. Using small flowers or buds, create a circular outline around the mossed bouquet holder. Taper the lower flowers into the cascade so that the two parts blend together. Then insert the placements along the sides of the foam at a slightly backward angle to create depth.

8. Add the remaining flowers one kind at a time. Plan ahead on quantities of each kind to allow space for the addition of other flowers and filler. Space the flowers so that each flower maintains its individual identity. Once the rounded form is established, sink some blossoms into the design for depth.

Each flower placement is done for a reason: to smooth out the shape, further blend the two parts of the design, and create depth within the bouquet.

9. An optional method of finishing the back of the bouquet is to add a commercial lace collar to the holder. If the lace collar has broad, thread-like, plastic projections at the base of the funnel, clip them off with wire cutters. Insert the handle of the bouquet holder through the hole in the funnel-shaped center of the lace collar. Push the collar up the handle until it snaps into place.

10. Use #9 satin ribbon to tie a simple bow around the handle at the point where the bouquet holder and collar meet.

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

C. Crescent Bouquet (wired and taped)

Materials:
12 roses
1/3 to 1/2 bunch mini-carnations
2-3 stems baby's breath
5-7 stems ivy
2-3 stems pittosporum
#24 & #26 florist wire
1/2-inch green floral tape

1. Wire and tape the following quantities of flowers and foliage:
12 roses
15 mini-carnations
15 sprigs of baby's breath (various sizes)
7 strands of ivy (various lengths)
20 pittosporum leaves

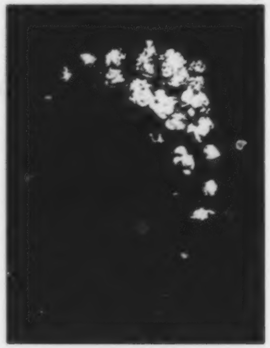
Construct two narrow cascades, one 9 inches long and the other 6 inches long, alternating all materials except the ivy. (See page 314, Cascade Bouquet construction, step 2.)

2. Bend the cascades in opposite directions and join the stem ends with floral tape. This will begin to form the handle of the bouquet. Leave a 3-inch gap between the sections. The two cascades should visually connect into a crescent shape.

3. Fill in the center of the bouquet by adding and taping individual flowers between the two cascades. Each flower should be taped at the top of the handle. The center section should become the focal point of the bouquet. Use larger flowers here with closer spacing.

4. As you add flowers to the center, keep them within the outline of the crescent shape. Create depth in the design by extending some flowers beyond the flat plane of the bouquet. Here, roses and baby's breath are used to create depth.

5. Add the ivy strands to extend the flowing lines of the crescent. Use the longer strands at the extremities and the shorter strands at the center of the bouquet as a backing. The finishing touch is to wrap the taped handle with #9 satin ribbon.



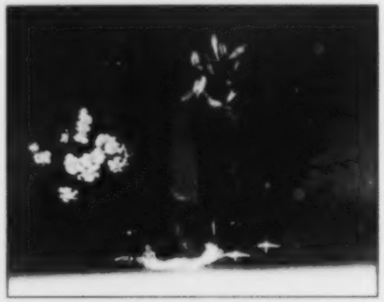
(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

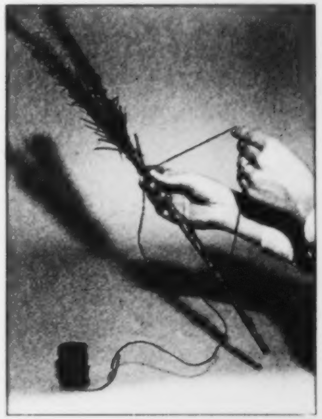
D. Arm Bouquet

Materials:

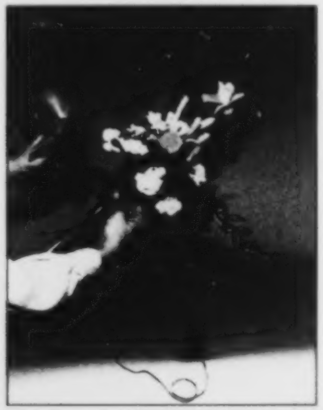
- 1/2 bunch mini-carnations
- 5 liatris
- 5 Dutch iris
- 1/3 bunch plumosus fern
- 5 galax
- 1 cattleya orchid
- 4 dendrobium orchids
- waxed florist cord



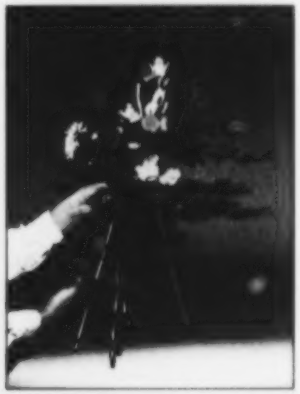
1. Position the liatris at varying lengths and angles to form a linear grouping. The ends of the liatris should be arranged rhythmically like stair steps down to the point where the stems are tied. Tie the stems together at the halfway point with waxed florist cord. Wrap the cord tightly around the stems three times. Leave a long end on the cord for later use.



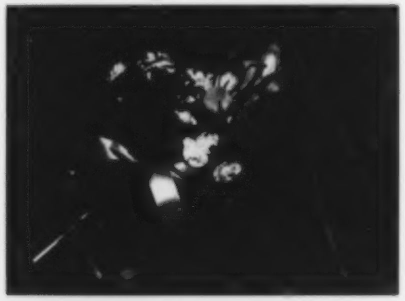
2. Add the remaining flowers in groups, working down toward the binding point. After the addition of each grouping, wrap the cord securely around the stems three times. Use iris first, followed by a cluster of mini-carnations. Next add the dendrobium orchids so that they spray out to one side. Wire and tape the cattleya orchid and add it to the bouquet near the binding point. The orchid will become the focal area of the bouquet.



3. Add a light backing of plumosus fern and wrap into place with floral cord. Group galax leaves under the orchid and around the back of the bouquet. Secure them with the cord. Pick up the original loose end of the cord and use it to tie a knot. Cut the cord ends. Trim the stem ends at angles so that the overall stem length is half of the flower length. A desirable ratio of flowers to stems is 2 to 1. Use slight variations in the individual stem lengths to give a more natural look.



4. Finish the bouquet by tying a #9 satin ribbon around the stems at the binding point. The completed bouquet looks like a collection of flowers freshly gathered in the garden.



(continued)

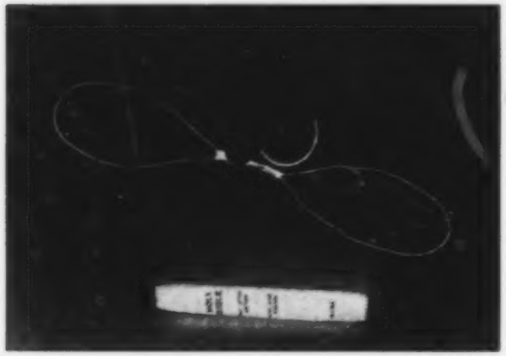
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

E. Bouquet on a Bible

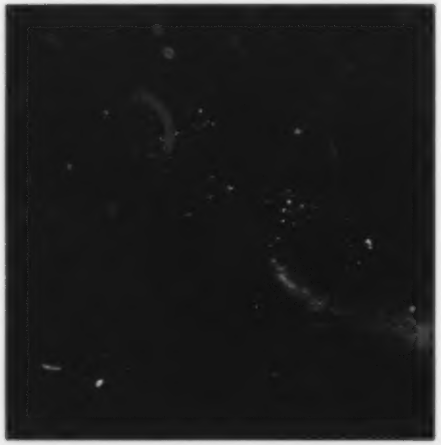
Materials:

7 sprigs sprengeri (various sizes)
9 mini-carnations
9 pittosporum leaves
9 sprigs baby's breath
1 cattleya orchid
2 #18 wires
green and white floral tape
Bible or prayer book

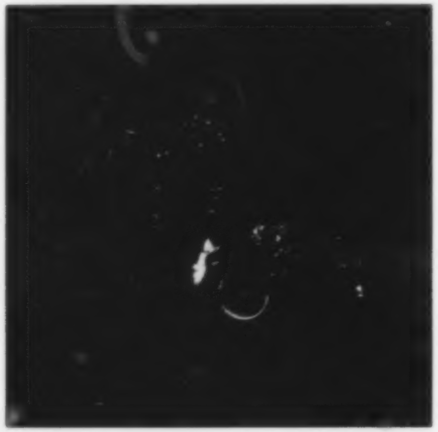
1. Begin by taping both #18 wires with white floral tape (if the Bible is *white*). (With any other color of Bible, use the least conspicuous color of tape.) Tape the overlapping ends. Then bend each wire into the loops of a figure-8 to be used as the attachment mechanism.



2. Construct a small bouquet (about 10 inches long in the example shown) in the same manner as a crescent bouquet. The bouquet length and width should be in proportion to the size of the Bible. The cattleya orchid is used at the focal point. Bend the bouquet into an S-shape (Hogarth curve).



3. Clip the wired handle to about 2 inches in length. Tape the handle to the center portion of the figure-8 with white floral tape.



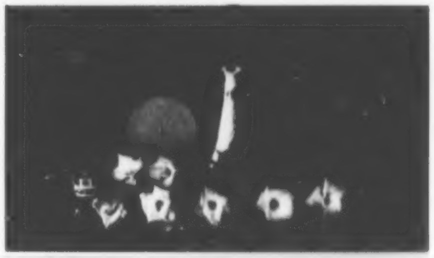
4. Bend the loops of the figure-8 under the top and bottom of the Bible cover, being careful not to damage the Bible. Position the focal point of the bouquet off-center so that at least half of the cover is visible. To finish the design, bend the flowers and foliage down against the Bible as needed to cover the mechanics.

(continued)

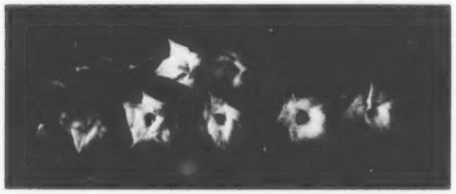
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

F. Composite Flower (Glamellia)

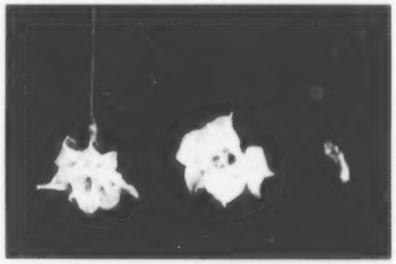
Materials:
gladiolus florets
camellia leaves
cardboard
floral adhesive
floratape
#18 and #28 wire



1. Pull off individual gladiolus florets and line up in order of size.



Begin by piercing with #28 wire a floret that is just starting to open. Bend the wires down. Open up additional florets and wrap them around the bud in concentric circles. Cross-pierce through the base of the flower to hold them in place, using #28 wires that are then bent downward. After several layers have been added, tape the base of the glamellia and continue taping on down the bunched wires.

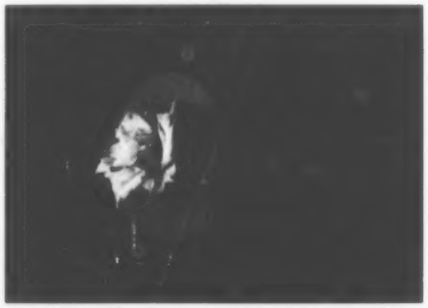


2. Cut a circle of cardboard 6 inches in diameter. Punch a hole in the center.

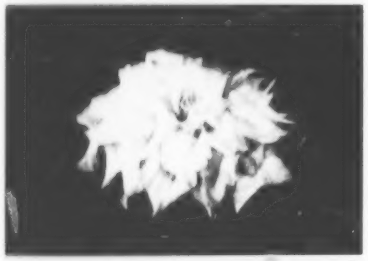
3. Spread floral adhesive around the outer edge of the cardboard circle and lay down a circle of petals.

4. Glue down three more rows of petals inside the first with each row covering the base of the petals on the previous row.

5. Insert wired part made in Step 1 through the hole in the cardboard.

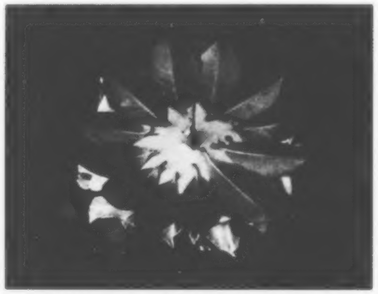


Continue adding petals outward, securing them with floral adhesive, until the composite flower is completed.

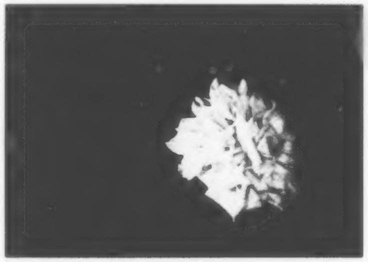


6. Add two full-length #18 wires to the stem and tape. Cut to desired length.

7. Glue camellia leaves to the back of the cardboard so that they extend only slightly beyond the edge.



Wire and tape three leaves, then attach them by taping to the stem. Bend the stem slightly for a natural appearance.



(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

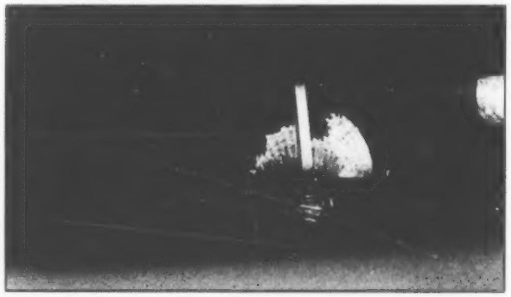
G. Basket for Flower Girl

Materials:
small basket
dianthus
delphinium
roses
mini-carnations
freesia
baby's breath
ming fern
glue pan
glue chips
satin ribbon
#28 wire

1. First you will learn how to glue on parts of the arrangement for the flower girl basket. Melt glue chips in an electric skillet at about 300 F. (Avoid overheating.) Dip the stem ends of small pieces of ming fern into the melted glue and place them along the rim of the basket. Overlap the pieces slightly to create a uniform outline.

2. Continue to decorate the basket edge by gluing individual flowers onto the ming fern. Tuck the flower stems under the fern so there are several points of contact and the glue is not so noticeable.

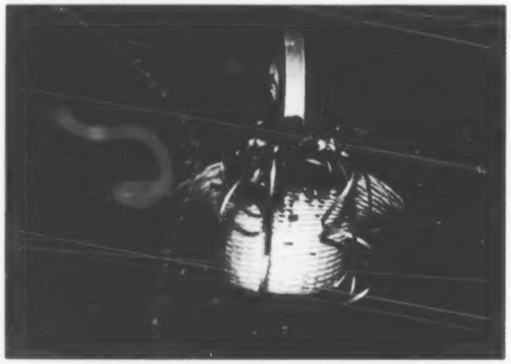
3. Scatter the flower placements around the rim of the basket. Some flowers may be grouped together, with larger groupings near the base of the handle for good balance.



4. Create a light feeling by adding small flowers and filler after the main flowers are in place. But keep the number of flowers used in proportion to the basket size. Avoid crowding them side by side along the edge of the basket.

5. The finished basket may be filled with rose petals for the flower girl to scatter on her way down the aisle. Petals should be kept in a plastic bag to insure freshness until just before the ceremony.

6. The basket can be further enhanced with ribbon or additional flowers on the outside edge of the basket. Ribbon streamers give a flowing motion to the design and add to the overall delicate feeling.



(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

H. Pillow for Ring Bearer

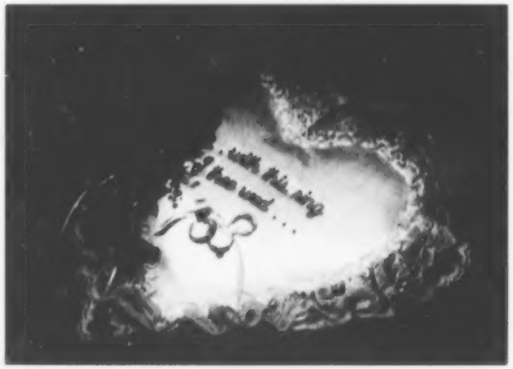
Materials:

flowers and foliage to match the flower girl's
#24 and #28 wire
floral tape
1/8 inch satin ribbon
safety pins

1. The ring bearer's pillow may be decorated with a modified corsage. Begin by designing a wired and taped double spray corsage that is in proportion to the size of the pillow.

2. Make a bow from the satin ribbon and add it to the corsage. The bow shown here is made from two colors of 1/8-inch satin ribbon.

3. Attach the finished corsage to the pillow with safety pins. Insert the pins through the wired stem of the corsage. The flowers shown here were designed around the decorative script and wedding rings.



(continued)

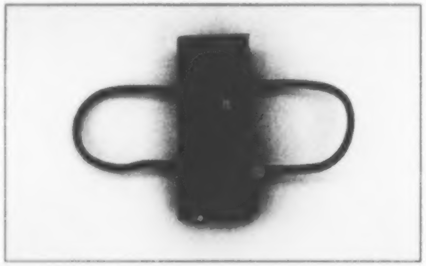
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

I. Pew Decoration

Materials:

- #40 white satin ribbon
- salal
- leatherleaf fern
- 2" x 4" piece of 2-inch-thick styrofoam
- #18 wire
- floratape

1. Tape two 9-inch lengths of #18 wire with floratape. Bend each piece into a U and insert into long sides of the styrofoam.



The styrofoam will sit on top of the pew with the taped wire loops bent down on either side to hold it in position. They can be taped to the pew for extra support.

2. Make a bow and two 12-inch streamers. Insert these into the styrofoam.

3. Insert salal leaves and leatherleaf around the bow to cover the styrofoam. Arch some greens over the wire loops to cover them and extend some branches downward to follow the streamers.

(continued)

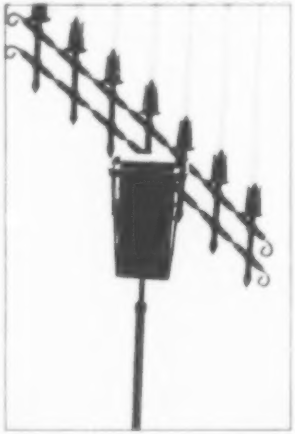
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

J. Candelabra Decoration

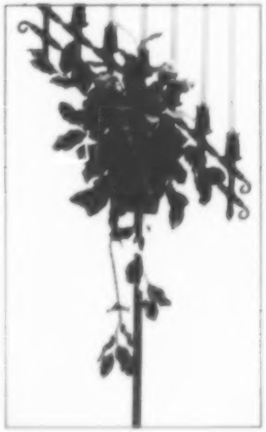
Materials:

plastic floracage containing soaked foam
salal
huckleberry
5 gladioli
1 bunch of pompon mums
#40 satin ribbon
chenille stems
wooden pick

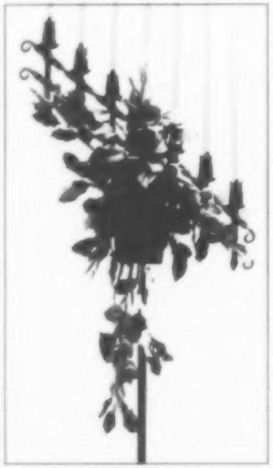
1. Use chenille stems to hang the floracage containing soaked foam on the candelabra where upright post and crossbar meet.



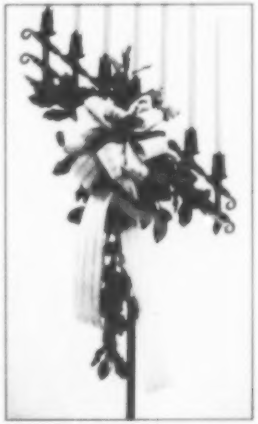
2. Use salal to form a vertical line which extends about 6 inches above the cage and 12 inches below the cage.



Then establish a diagonal line of salal that cuts across the center of the foam and follows the line of the candle-holding crossbar. Repeat the shape with gladioli.

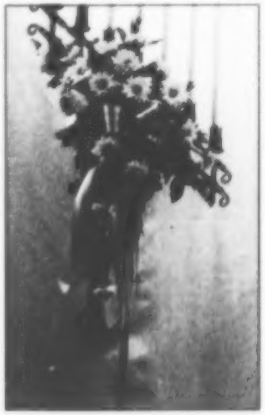


3. Make a bow with #40 satin ribbon. Then make a pair of streamers that are 15 inches long. Attach the bow and streamers to wooden picks and insert in the middle of the foam.

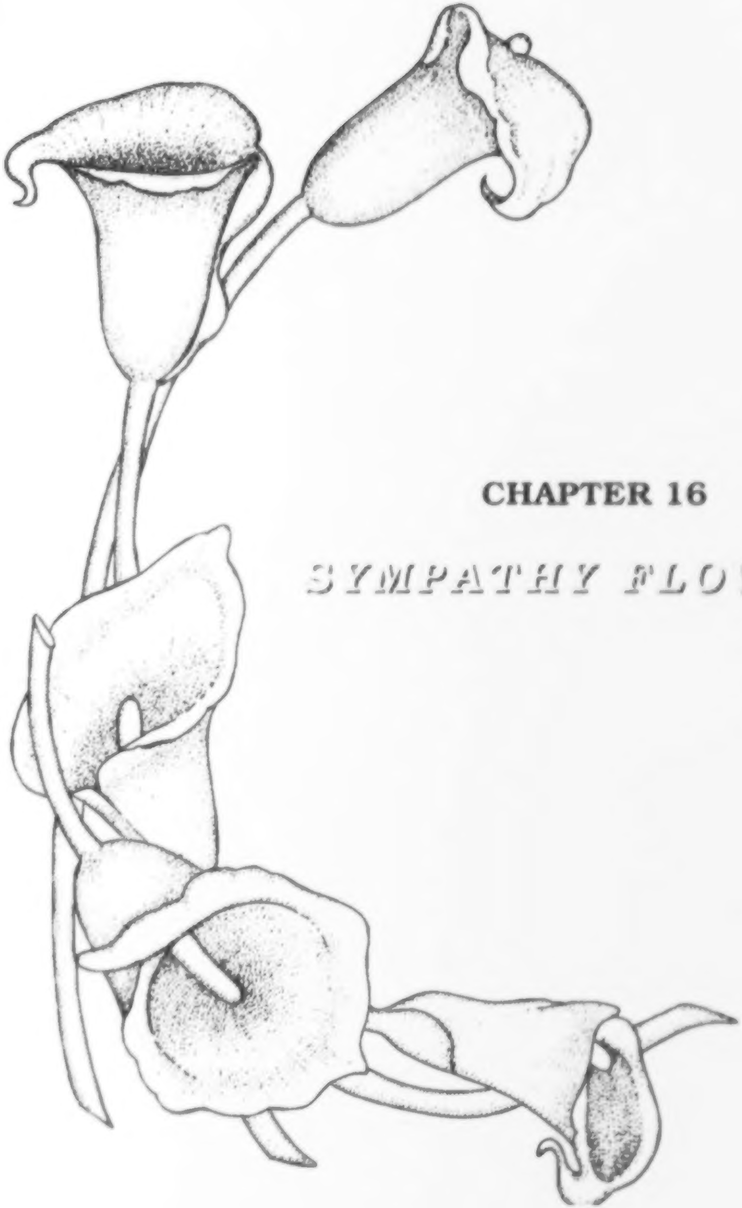


4. Work some of the gladioli through the bow. The spikes may be cut into sections to obtain shorter lengths.

5. Fill in the arrangement with salal, huckleberry and pompon mums. Work the greens and flowers through the bow.



6. The streamers may be rolled up and pinned so they will not wrinkle when the arrangement is transported.



CHAPTER 16

SYMPATHY FLOWERS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Figure 16-1 Casket with lid fully open

Figure 16-2 Casket with upper half of lid open

SYMPATHY FLOWERS

Sending flowers at the time of death is not only a tradition, but also a tangible way of showing respect for the deceased and expressing sympathy to the family. Flowers can powerfully convey feelings that people are unable to express in other ways. Sympathy flowers fill a very real need for relatives and friends to express love and caring for the family. Also, through their selection of floral pieces for the casket, the family is better able to show their feelings for the one who has died.

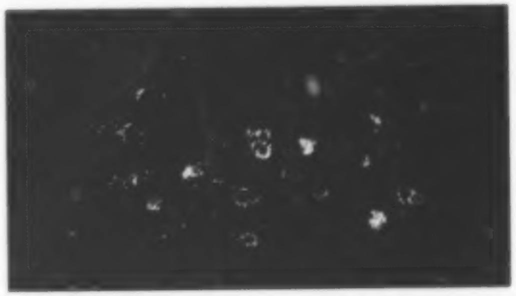
Florists who prepare flowers for a funeral have as great an obligation to send out quality work for their customers on a sad occasion as they do for a happy occasion like a wedding. Even though the flowers may not last a long time, they will be displayed next to the work of other florists, and are almost certain to be noticed by many people.

Sympathy flowers often comprise a significant part of the business of a flower shop. It is important for a new business to learn the traditions of the local area, which can vary significantly from region to region. These traditions may influence not only the style of the floral pieces but also the mechanics. Florists must cooperate with funeral directors to satisfy their preferences as well as the preferences of the customers.

A major variation in practice between regions involves the opening of the casket. In some areas the entire lid is typically open (Fig. 16-1). In others, only the top half is open (Fig. 16-2), showing only the upper half of the body. In still other situations the lid is closed. An arrangement of flowers designed for the top of a closed casket or to be hung above the lid of a fully open casket is called a **full couch spray**. Funeral homes provide a wire rack above the lid of a fully opened casket. The spray can be attached to this rack. If only the upper half of the casket is to be opened, a smaller arrangement called a **half couch spray** can be designed for the closed end.

The casket spray is ordered by those closest in relationship to the deceased. They may also choose to order one or more companion pieces that coordinate with the casket spray. These may be standing sprays, symbols, or arrangements in vases or baskets.

Other relatives, friends and associates select floral tributes of their choice. These can be arrangements, baskets, vases, set pieces (flowers worked into different shapes, like a cross, supported by a wire stand), potted plants, dish gardens and terrariums. These are usually displayed on stands and pedestals on either side of the casket or on tables throughout the funeral home.

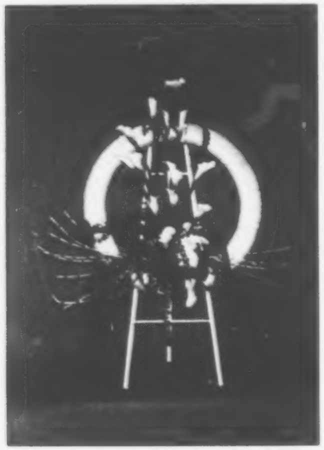


Full couch casket spray using gladioli, mums, carnations, and emerald

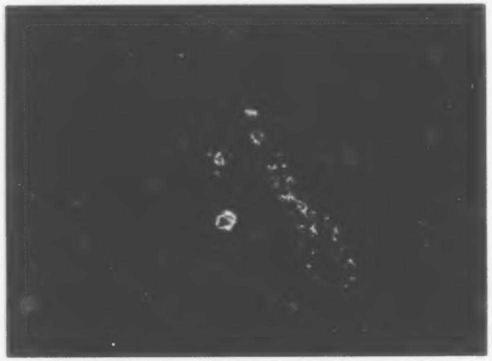
Floral tributes frequently provided for funerals:

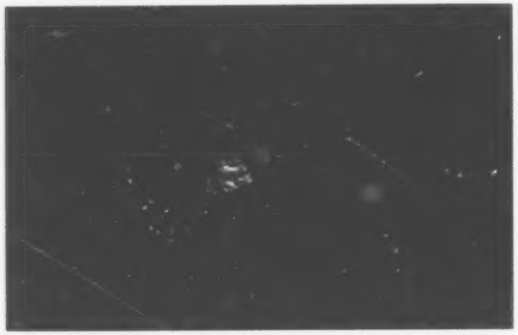
- Casket sprays
- Flowers for inside the casket (pillows, hearts, Bible, rosary, corsage, boutonniere)
- Standing sprays
- Baskets
- Vases
- Arrangements (which can include candles, driftwood or other meaningful accessories)
- Set pieces (wreaths, pillows, crosses, hearts and emblems)
- Decorated potted plants
- Dish gardens and terrariums

Design principles and techniques for arranging funeral flowers are the same as for any other type of design. Florists should select their mechanics from the large assortment of modern and convenient devices that save time and allow for creativity in design.


Easel piece featuring satin ribbon-wrapped wreath

Tropical easel piece featuring protea, birds of paradise, and orchids


Contemporary tropical casket piece


Colorful casket spray with stems of oncidium orchids cascading down the front

Funeral Tributes

by Perry Walston, AIFD

Casket piece using grouping technique for a garden look

Special Considerations When Working for a Funeral

1. Casket sprays must be constructed on mechanics that will not scratch or otherwise damage the casket.

2. The floral foam must be well drained so that it has finished dripping before it is delivered to the funeral home.

3. Each funeral piece should be tagged with the name of the person it is for and the name of the sender. A card that also includes on it a brief description of the arrangement will help the family remember it when they send out acknowledgements. The card should be on a pick or cardholder so it can be easily removed from the arrangement. Two-parted cards are available in which the sender's name and a description of the arrangement can be separated from the name of the deceased. These can be easily removed by the funeral director to give to the family before the floral pieces are dispersed after the funeral.

Full Couch

Full couch casket sprays are usually oval or diamond-shaped. Though they should not exceed 8 or 9 inches in height, they can still exhibit depth within the design through skillful placement of flowers. When they are made to be placed on a closed casket, a gently arching silhouette from head to foot and side to side should be evident (Fig. 16-3). The design may extend the length of the casket and arch down over the front side. A bow may be used in the design but is not necessary.

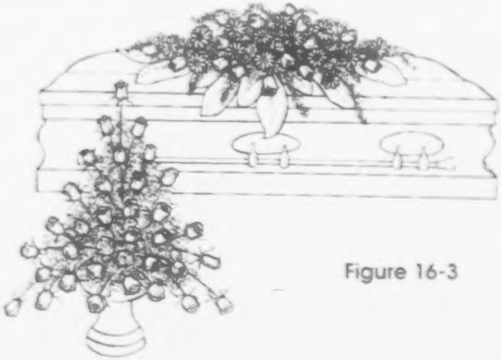
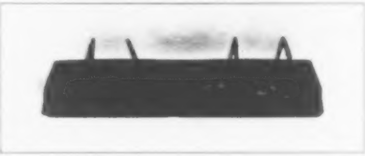


Figure 16-3

The mechanics for a full couch casket spray commonly consist of a saddle that will hold two blocks of floral foam and which can be set without slipping on the arched lid of the casket. These are available in plastic with a slight water reservoir to catch drips of water. Other casket saddles are made of wire with plastic protectors over the legs. Styrofoam, floral foam or soaked sphagnum moss can be wired to the saddle to serve as the foundation of the arrangement. Another technique is to carve a piece of styrofoam to fit the curvature of the casket. This will then serve as the base into which foliage and flowers in water picks can be inserted.



Placing water-picked flowers and foliage in styrofoam eliminates the danger of the finished piece dripping. This is especially important when it is displayed above the lid of a fully opened casket (Fig. 16-4).

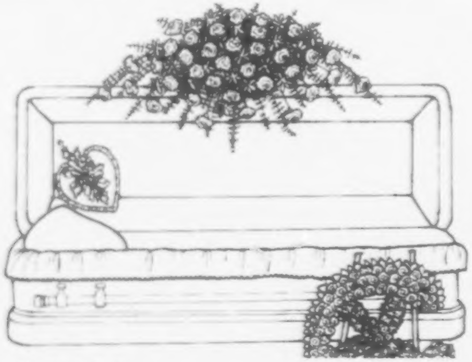


Figure 16-4

Styrofoam is also lighter than soaked floral foam. Since the arrangement has to last only a few days, most of the foliage can be inserted directly into the styrofoam without any serious decline in quality. Some disadvantages of using styrofoam are the added time and expense of placing flowers in water picks, and limitations on the ease with which placements can be made.

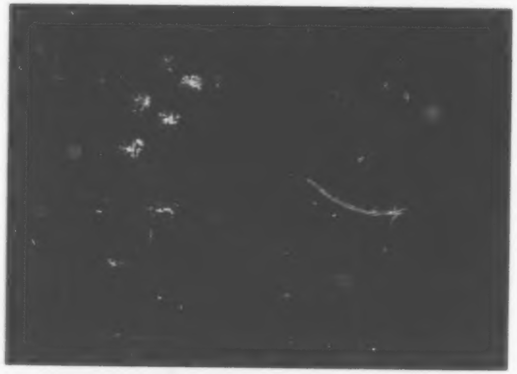
The suggested activities which follow include different combinations of mechanics so that you can gain some experience with each kind and evaluate their pros and cons for yourself. The goal is to be versatile and flexible enough so that you will be able to adapt to the expectations of the public, funeral directors, and flower shop owners in whatever area you may work.

Half Couch

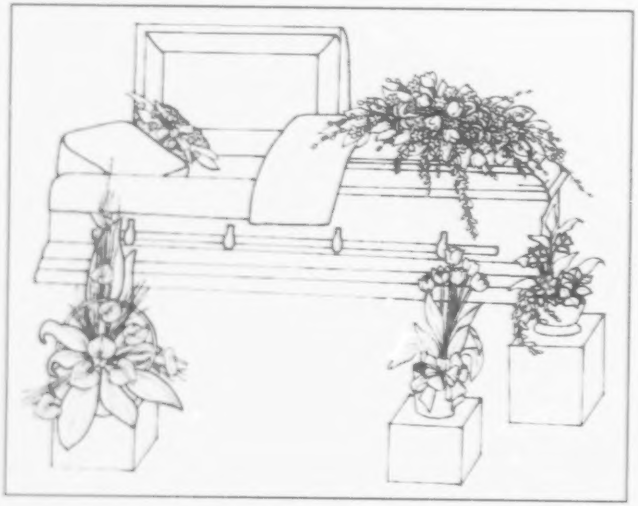
Half couch sprays are used when only the upper half of the casket is open. They rest on the lower, unopened part of the casket. Saddles for half couch sprays are therefore smaller than those used for full couch sprays, but they are made of the same kinds of materials. They usually hold only one block of floral foam instead of the two needed to make larger full couch sprays.

The design of half couch sprays is asymmetrical. Since they rest on the unopened part of the casket, their focal area is toward the opened side (usually toward the left), with a long arching line of flowers extending toward the foot of the casket. Another cascading section may extend forward from the focal area, draping down over the front of the casket. If a bow is used at the focal area, it may be enhanced by ribbon loops and streamers worked into the design, extending out from the bow.

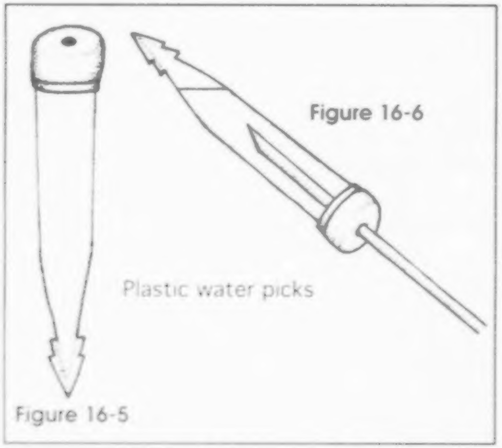
The half couch spray, like the full couch spray, should not be over 8 or 9 inches tall and should consist of gracefully flowing lines. Stiff flowers either should be avoided or should be wired and bent to conform to the arching lines. Size and space rhythm within the design and good depth created by the in-and-out placement of flowers and foliage are distinguishing characteristics of a well-designed casket spray.



Half couch casket spray with gladioli, carnations, roses, and eucalyptus



Half couch spray



Plastic water picks

Gold script on a ribbon streamer

Flowers and Foliage for Casket Sprays

A wide range of flowers and foliage is available for use in casket sprays, but some materials are used more frequently because of their availability, keeping quality, cost and preference by the customer. Chrysanthemums, carnations, roses, gladioli and baby's breath are often used. Commonly used foliages include emerald palm, salal, leatherleaf, huckleberry and sprengeri.

The foliage can be kept fresher by spraying it with *Green-Glo* or another plant shine product. This can be done after the foliage has been arranged but before flowers are added, since the framework of the design is usually created first with foliage.

Roses are usually wired by inserting a #18 wire into the ovary and spiraling it down the stem. This technique will hold the rose in position in the event that the stem becomes weak just below the flower. This situation, called **bent-neck,** is not uncommon if the water supply to the rose becomes limited.

Roses and other flowers may be placed in **water picks** (Fig. 16-5). These are green plastic tubes that are pointed on the closed end and have a rubber cap on the open end. To use them, remove the cap, fill the tube with water, and replace the cap. Then insert the stem of the flower through the small hole in the cap. Do not push the stem end to the bottom of the water tube because that area will run out of water first if the tube is slanted downward. The rubber cap will cling to the stem and keep water from running down any stems that are angled downward (Fig. 16-6). Water picks are also useful for supplying water to flowers that must be extended farther than the length of their natural stems. The water picks can be fastened with waterproof tape to one or more hyacinth stakes.

Flowers should be in good condition and in general fully opened for funeral work. Because of the short viewing time, underdeveloped blossoms may never make their maximum show during the time when most people will see them.

Ribbon for Casket Sprays

A bow of wide ribbon is often used at the focal area of a casket spray with two or more streamers radiating out from it. Number 40 satin or velvet ribbon is a popular choice for this purpose. Additional ribbon loops or streamers may be wired to wooden picks and used to extend the ribbon throughout the design.

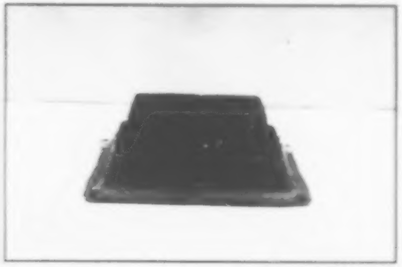
Gold letters called **script** are sometimes applied to the ribbon streamers to indicate the relationship of the deceased to the person who has provided the flowers. Script is available in individual letters or in complete names, like "Grandmother" or "Father." Some will stick to the ribbon when moistened, while others have a peel-off back which exposes a sticky surface when the back is removed. A glitter glue pen is another alternative for writing special words on ribbon.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Materials:
plastic saddle frame
1 block of floral foam
green florist foil
#24 and #18 wire
1 bunch of salal
1 bunch of leatherleaf fern
sprengeri
3 bunches of pompon mums
#40 satin ribbon
4-inch wooden picks with wires
Green-Glo

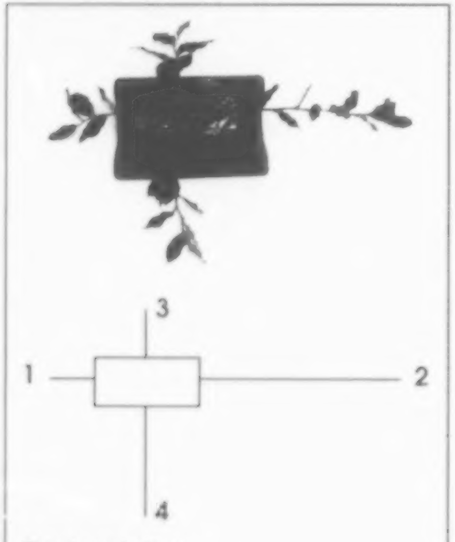
1. Soak and thoroughly drain the floral foam. Wrap it in a single layer of green florist foil. Tightly pinch shut the excess foil along the corner edges so it does not overlap on the flat sides. This is done to eliminate any double layers of foil that might make insertion of stems difficult.

2. Place the foiled block of foam in a plastic saddle. Securely wire the two together by passing #24 wire through the holes of the saddle, wrapping the ends together on top of the block of foam. The wire may first be wrapped with floral tape to help keep it from cutting through the foam.



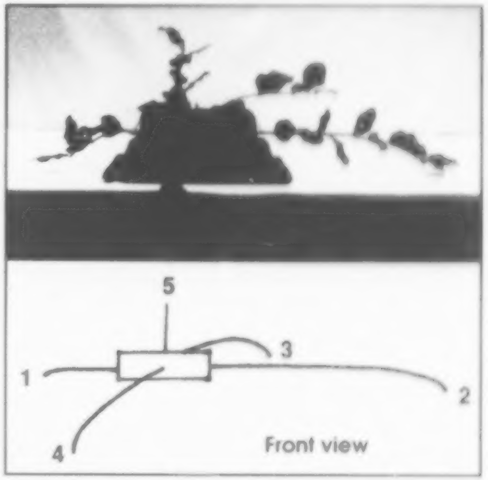
A. Half Couch Casket Spray

3. Use salal to establish the foliage background. First place the horizontal branches that will run parallel to the flat surface of the casket, from the open side to the foot end. One branch should extend about 6 inches to the left (placement 1) and another branch about 18 inches to the right (placement 2).



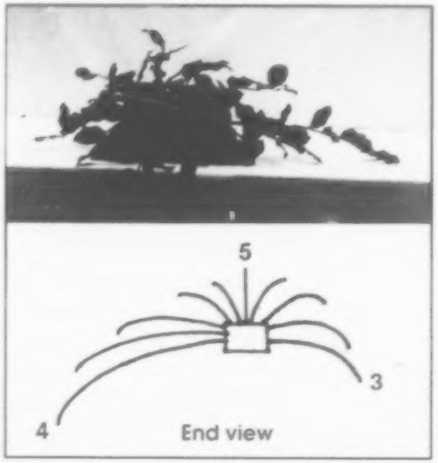
Overhead view
The first four placements of foliage

Then establish an arching line that will follow the curvature of the casket by placing two curved branches into the foam, one extending toward the back and one cascading over the front (front view). The back curving branch (placement 3) should be about 6 inches long and the front cascading branch (placement 4) about 12 inches long.



Next, establish the height by placing a 6-inch piece of salal (placement 5) upright in the foam, to the left of the center of the foam. All further placements should appear to radiate out from this point, which will be the focal area (end view).

(continued)



(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

A. Half Couch Casket Spray *(continued)*

4. Continue filling in the form with leatherleaf fern. Use leatherleaf to cover the foiled foam and create a layered look between the salal placements. Avoid making a heavy solid block of greens. The greened-in form may then be sprayed with *Green-Glo* or a similar product so that it will last longer and look shiny.

5. Make a full bow using #40 satin ribbon. The longest loops should be from 4 to 5 inches long. Wire the bow to a 4-inch wooden pick. Make a set of 12-inch streamers from the ribbon and fasten them to a separate pick. If lettering (script) is to be used, it should be applied at this time.

Place the bow at the focal area (placement 5) angled slightly to the front. Insert the streamers so that they flow forward with the front cascading section of the spray (placement 4).

6. Establish the main lines (horizontal line and forward cascading line) with chrysanthemums. First divide the pompon mums by stem length into units of one to three flowers. Those with longer stems can be used for the outermost placements in the design. Those with shorter stems can be saved for use near the focal point to create depth.

As you place the stems of mums, be very conscious of developing a **gently arching silhouette** in all directions. The longer stems of mums can be made to curve by attaching a #18 wire near the end and spiraling it down the stem. When using roses or carnations, insert the wire into the ovary of the flower. This method of wiring has the added benefit of helping prevent the snapping off of flower heads when the piece is transported.

Stagger flower clusters in the main trunk lines with a gradual (rhythmic) increase in spacing as you approach the focal area. Placements at the focal area should extend up through and above the bow. Incorporate the bow into the design, just as you would in a well-constructed corsage.

Create depth by the in-and-out placement of flowers. Avoid a flat or crowded look. The eye should be led down into the design.

7. Fill in the design with sprengeri. Use long graceful pieces to enhance the forward cascade section and the longer horizontal section that extends toward the foot of the casket. Use shorter pieces to create depth, fill voids, and enhance the graceful arching lines of the silhouette.

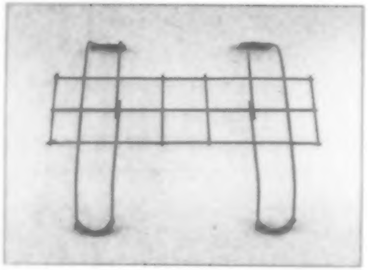
(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Full Couch Casket Spray

Materials:

wire saddle frame (for 2 blocks of foam)
2 blocks of floral foam
styrofoam, 2-inch-thick sheet
green florist foil
newspapers
green poultry netting (chicken wire)
green florists' cord
1 bunch of emerald leaf
10 ti leaves
2 bunches of leatherleaf fern
50 carnations



wire saddle frame

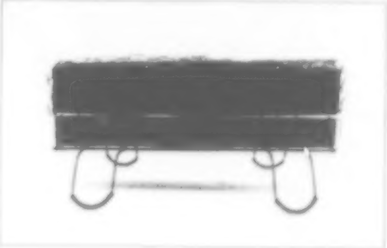
1. Cut a piece of styrofoam to fit on the platform of the wire saddle frame. Cut several thicknesses of newspaper the same size.

Foil each block of soaked, well-drained foam with a single layer of green florist foil. Completely enclose each block and place the folded seam on the bottom of the block. Pinch the corners shut so that there are no double layers of foil on the flat faces of the block that might make insertion of stems more difficult.

2. Place styrofoam, newspapers and foiled foam on the wire saddle frame in that order.

3. Cut a piece of green poultry netting to cover the foiled foam and styrofoam. Cut out the corners of the netting so that it will fit smoothly over the rectangular block.

Place the poultry netting over the layers of foam, newspaper and styrofoam. Tie green florists' cord to the saddle frame and lace the cord back and forth over the chicken wire and alternately around the wire of the saddle. The goal is to have the foam that is covered with chicken wire securely bound to the saddle.



4. Establish a foliage background with emerald leaf that will result in a symmetrical oval form (Fig. 16-7). In this design the focal area is directly in the center of the foam; all stems radiate out from this point.

The overall length may be about 5 feet and the width about 3 feet. Emerald leaf is used primarily to form the basic shape. It gently arches downward enhancing the curved lines of the oval. Bring some shorter pieces inward to begin the arch to the focal area.

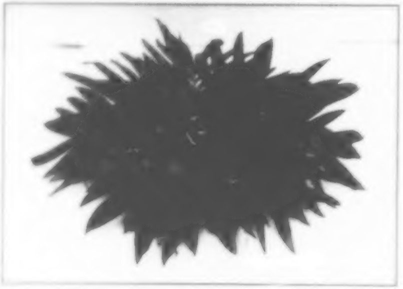
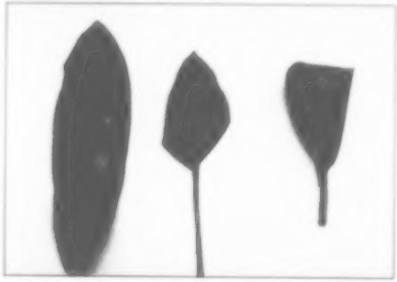


Figure 16-7

5. Use leatherleaf fern to establish more arching lines and to conceal foam and saddle. Work the leatherleaf between the emerald leaf pieces to increase interest and add depth. Create a layered look at the focal area, but do not exceed a height of about 6 inches.

6. Use ti leaves to emphasize the long horizontal lines. Shorten some leaves for placement close to the focal point by trimming them at the base. Roll some leaves over to form a loop by bringing the tip to the base. Fasten them together to a wooden stake with wire and waterproof tape.



(continued)

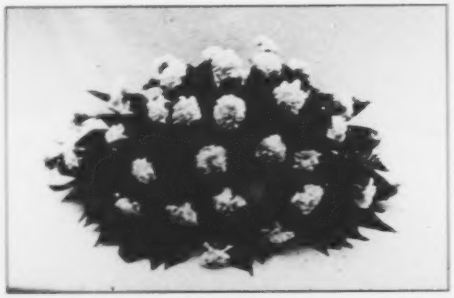
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Full Couch Casket Spray *(continued)*

6. *(continued)*
Insert the ti leaves between the other foliage pieces to give a similar effect to that of ribbon. This will serve to accent the focal area.

7. Use carnations to establish the basic oval shape. Place the flowers as you would for an oval centerpiece. Be conscious of the gently arching silhouette. Create depth while rhythmically grouping flowers closer together at the focal area.

The full couch casket spray is finished.



8. Hang the spray to drip. Some water will run down the stems after they are pushed into the foam. Water should stop dripping after an hour or two.

Full couch casket spray of carnations and chrysanthemums with a satin ribbon bow

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Standing sprays are sometimes called easel sprays because they are displayed on wire or wooden easels. They are often placed alongside the casket and may coordinate with the casket spray. Diamond, oval and triangular outlines are most common, although many creative variations are possible.

Sprays can be hand-tied with the natural stems showing. The same look can be created by placing both flowers and cut stems in floral foam, with the added benefit of staying fresh longer. The work can be made easier by using commercial products such as plastic *Oasis Floracage* holders or *John Henry* spray bars. These support the foam and can be easily attached to the easel with wire or chenille stems.

Another way to make an easel spray is to insert the greens and flowers directly into a piece of styrofoam. Water picks can be put on more sensitive flowers like roses before they are inserted into the styrofoam. You can also use soaked foam even if you do not have a *Floracage* or other commercially produced mechanics. Just wrap the soaked foam in foil and then in chicken wire for added support. Securely wire the chicken wire-enclosed foam to the easel.

Ribbons or other accessories may be added to the spray. An interesting example is the placement of a sheaf of grain or similarly bunched dried material across the spray in a diagonal line of opposition. If a bow is used, script may be added to the streamers just as it was on the casket spray.

Standing spray using gladioli, mums, lilies, and big-leaved magnolia

Full standing spray of gladioli, carnations, and mums

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Diamond Shape Standing Spray

Materials:
Oasis Floracage holder
wire easel
chenille stems
salal
huckleberry
10 gladioli
1 bunch of pompon mums
#9 satin ribbon
wooden picks

1. Thoroughly soak the *Floracage* with its enclosed foam and allow it to drain.

2. Securely attach the *Floracage* to the easel using chenille stems (Fig. 16-8).

3. Use salal to establish the diamond shape of the design (Fig. 16-9).

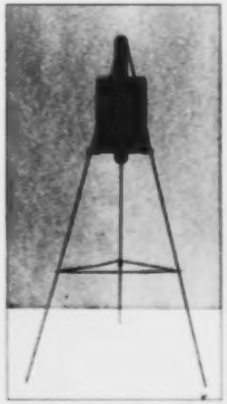


Figure 16-8

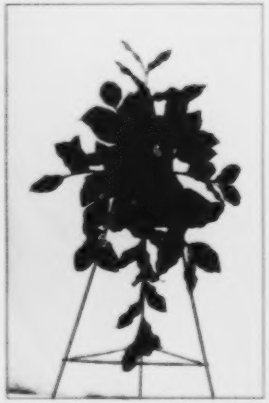
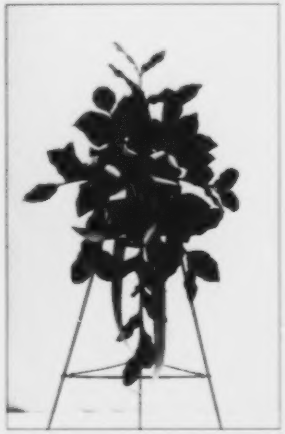


Figure 16-9

4. Make a bow using #9 satin ribbon. The longest loops should be about 3 inches long. Wire the bow to a wooden pick. Make a pair of 15-inch streamers and wire them to a wooden pick. Insert the bow and streamers at the focal area of the spray, which is at the intersection of the vertical and horizontal lines.



5. Establish the diamond shape with gladiolus spikes (Fig. 16-10). Break some gladioli into smaller sections to use closer to the focal area. The gladioli should be well opened. The design will not be attractive if long spikes of unopened buds are used.

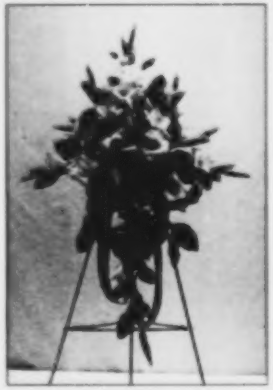
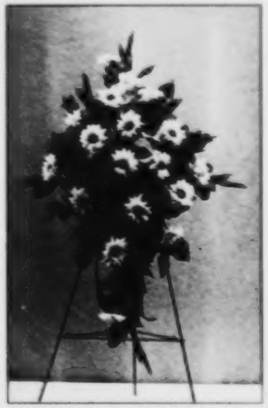


Figure 16-10

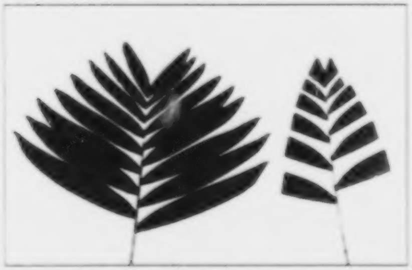
6. Fill in the design with huckleberry and pompon mums, bringing some of each through the bow. The spray should display fullness and greatest depth at the focal area. Taper the outline gradually away from the focal area toward the extremities. Also, gradually change the facing by 90° as you move from the focal area to the outer points.

7. Cut the ribbon streamers in slightly different lengths and arrange them down the vertical line. Cut each end on a sharp diagonal. The standing spray is complete.



Flowers arranged in plastic, metal or pâpier-maché baskets are traditional sympathy tributes in many areas. They can create a large, showy display using a moderate number of flowers. The design style is usually a fan or triangle. Baskets made of wicker, grapevines or twigs are alternative choices to the more traditional funeral basket.

Gladioli are often the line flowers with chrysanthemums used to enhance the focal area and fill in between the spikes. A bow may be added at the focal area. Greens commonly used include salal, emerald palm, huckleberry and leatherleaf fern.

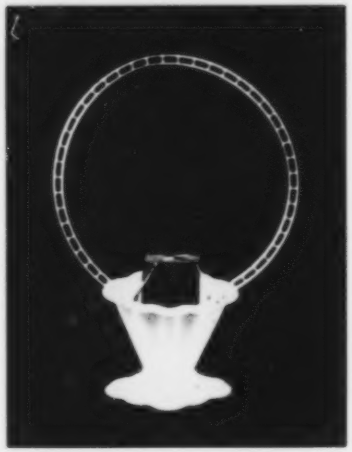


Emerald palm clipped for use in a triangular arrangement

When a basket has a handle, it should be allowed to show and not be crowded or buried. An asymmetrical design like the scalene triangle is distinctive and allows the handle to be featured. In fan and triangular designs, the outermost placements extend up behind the handle, while the shorter placements near the focal area are in front of the handle (Fig. 16-11).

Traditional plastic, metal or pâpier-maché baskets come in a variety of sizes and styles. They are presumed to be waterproof. Non-traditional wicker, twig or vine baskets will need to be securely lined with plastic. The most convenient mechanics to use are one or more blocks of soaked floral foam. Whether one or two blocks are used and whether they are placed in the basket upright or sideways will depend on the size and shape of the basket. If the foam extends a little above the rim of the basket, the designer will have more freedom of placements since this will allow some stems to be angled downward. It is not necessary to fill the entire basket with foam. Shredded styrofoam or discarded pieces of foam can be used to fill the empty spaces and help stabilize the blocks that will hold the flower stems.

The floral foam can be further secured by criss-crossing waterproof tape over it. The tape will stick to the rim of a plastic or metal basket, but usually not to pâpier-maché. In this case the ends of the tape can be stapled to the basket. Or a sharp tool can be used to make small holes in the pâpier-maché, and through them, wires can be inserted to cross over and secure the foam.



Plastic basket commonly used for sympathy arrangements

Figure 16-11

Fan-shaped sympathy arrangement

In the past other materials have been used to support stems in funeral baskets. These include rolled-up evergreens, crumpled chicken wire, sand, and shredded styrofoam.

When basket arrangements are constructed, every attempt should be made to create a good design with quality flowers. The current decrease in demand for funeral baskets may be linked to public reaction against the many baskets of less-than-top quality that have been sent to funeral homes.

Sympathy basket with mixed pink and burgundy flowers

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

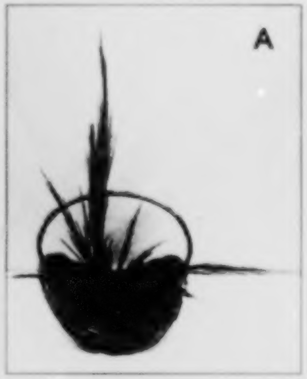
Fireside Basket with L-shaped Arrangement

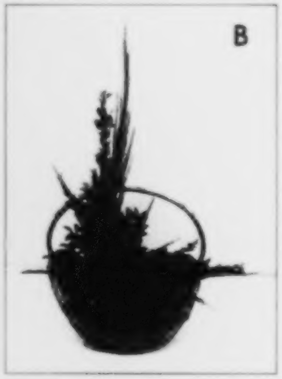
Materials:
- fireside basket
- Scotch broom
- huckleberry
- 25 standard mums
- plastic liner
- floral foam
- chenille stems

1. Place soaked foam in a plastic liner and set it on the bottom of the fireside basket.

2. Work chenille stems through the wicker and twist the ends firmly over the foam so the liner and foam are securely anchored to the basket.

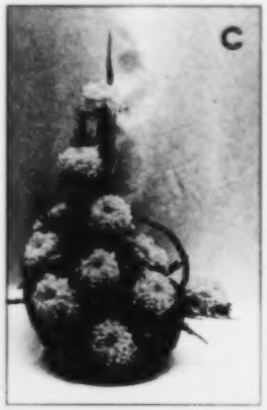
3. Establish the L-pattern with Scotch broom (**A**).





4. Lightly fill in the form with huckleberry (**B**).

5. Repeat the L-pattern with mums (**C**). Do not crowd the handle.

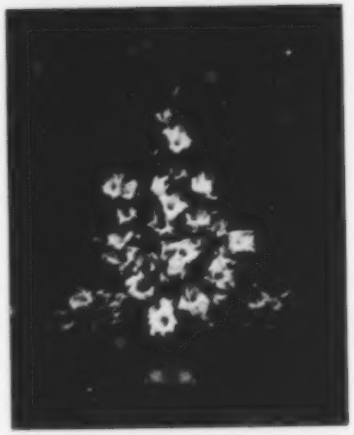


Arrangements of flowers in a variety of design shapes are appropriate to send as sympathy flowers. They can be displayed on tables at the funeral home and taken home by members of the family after the funeral.

The traditional vase arrangement is usually a triangle, fan or oval design. However, any of the basic design shapes could be used. Creative arrangements featuring special containers, accessories or seasonal flowers should be considered. Driftwood makes a nice framework for an arrangement. A candle is also an acceptable addition to a sympathy design.

Dried or silk arrangements are being selected by some people as a lasting piece that can be kept by the family. These are sometimes sent directly to the homes of the family members rather than to the funeral parlor.

Sympathy arrangements can be made in a wide range of styles and prices. To best meet the needs of the clients, the florist should be prepared to listen to their preferences, offer suggestions, and finally supply designs that are appropriate for each situation.



Gladioli in a triangular arrangement

Triangular arrangement with scarf of autumn leaves

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Sympathy Arrangement

Have each student create a different arrangement suitable for sending to a funeral home. Specify the relationship of the sender to the deceased and the time of year.

Here are some suggestions:

- arrangement with driftwood
- arrangement with a candle
- arrangement suggesting interest in nature or the outdoors
- arrangement suggesting interest in a certain animal
- arrangement in a contemporary style
- arrangement for an antique collector
- arrangement for an artist
- arrangement for a politician
- arrangement for a religious leader

Styrofoam cross covered with chrysanthemums and decorated with a Hogarth curve of carnations

Close relatives or friends of the deceased may order a small floral piece to be displayed inside the casket. This may be a corsage, boutonniere or flower held in the hand. Decorated satin pillows or hearts are sometimes pinned inside the lid. Bibles or rosaries may also be included.

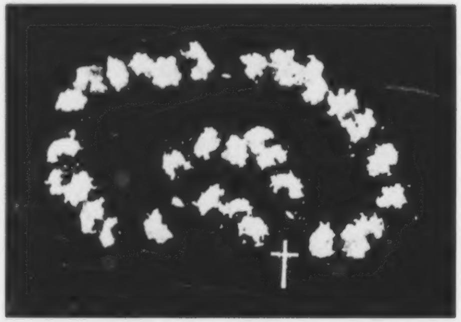
Satin pillows and hearts are most easily decorated by making a wired and taped corsage-style piece that can be pinned to the satin shape. This produces a relatively lightweight design that will not drip water. The piece can be designed so that it can be bent into a crescent or S-curve. Styrofoam Bible forms can be decorated with similar constructions or with flowers glued to a ribbon that is pinned on as a bookmark. Large rosaries are available with clamps for fastening on a single blossom at regular intervals along the chain. These can be pinned to the inside lid of the casket.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Each student will design one piece to be displayed inside the casket. Even if the same foundation is used, try to be creative in the way you treat it.

Some suggestions are:

- corsage
- boutonniere
- flower-in-hand
- pillow
- heart
- Bible
- rosary



Rosary of carnations, baby's breath, and leatherleaf

Satin pillow with corsage for inside the casket

Styrofoam Bible with sweeping crescent of roses

There are a number of different symbols and emblems of special significance that can be rendered in flowers. Wreaths, crosses, hearts and stars are the most common. Fraternal emblems like those of the Masons, Odd Fellows and Elks are examples of pieces sometimes requested for members of these organizations. The symbol of a broken wheel is sometimes used to represent the passing of one member of a group. Some unusual symbols, less commonly seen today except in certain regions where they may be popular, include the "Gates Ajar" symbol that shows a partly open gate, "Jesus Calls"-a telephone with the receiver off the hook, and the "Vacant Chair."

Styrofoam Forms and Mechanics

Some symbols can be purchased ready-made in styrofoam while others must be cut using an electric or battery-powered hot wire or a hand-held styrofoam cutter with a thin serrate blade. If the symbol is cut in several sections, the pieces can be joined using wooden stakes and glue.

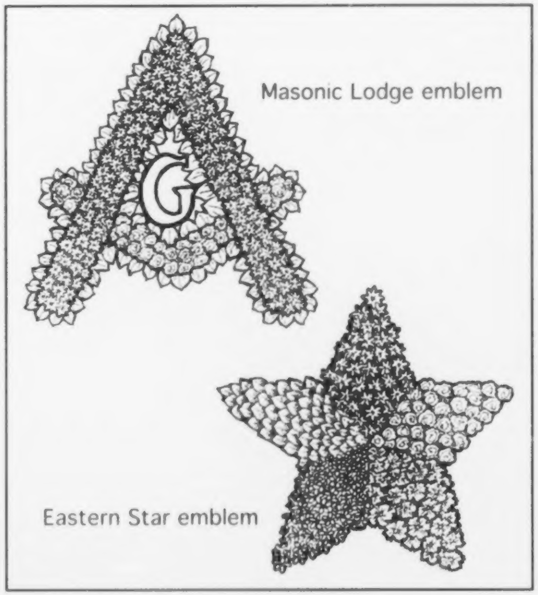
The styrofoam form may be covered entirely with flowers and foliage. Also it may be wrapped with ribbon or moss with one or more clusters of flowers attached. As an interesting variation, try using the back side of the ribbon to take advantage of the dull textural quality, which can enhance certain flowers. On wrapped wreaths, an *Oasis Iglu* is easy to attach to serve as the mechanics for holding an arrangement of flowers. A piece of floral foam, soaked and foiled, can be wired on to accomplish the same thing. If the piece of foam is large, it should be reinforced by wrapping with chicken wire before wiring it to the styrofoam form.

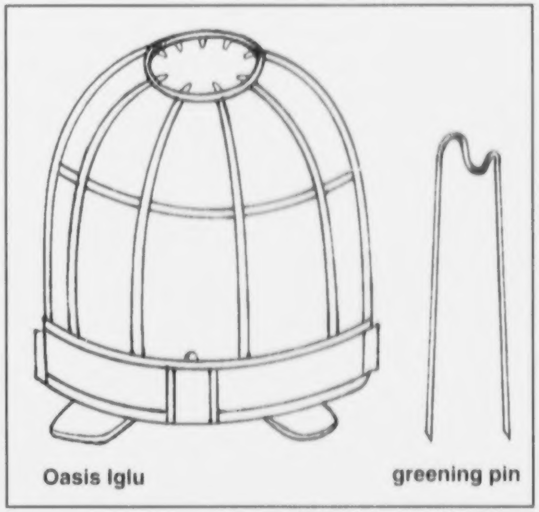
Oasis ring sets are convenient to use when a relatively small wreath of fresh material is needed. The ring is soaked and drained. The flowers and foliage are inserted directly into the *Oasis* foam and will stay fresh for several days.

Attaching Flowers and Foliage

An easy way to fasten flowers and foliage to a styrofoam form is to use floral glue. Glue such as *Oasis* floral adhesive can be brushed on the backs of flowers and will become tacky quite quickly. Another method to attach flowers is to insert a toothpick into the underside of the flower and push the other end of the toothpick into the styrofoam. This method works well on mums that have a flat bottom which makes them quite stable on the styrofoam. Flowers attached with either glue or toothpicks should be sprayed with a clear acrylic spray to increase their keeping quality. *Mum Mist* will also prevent shattering of petals.

Leaves can be added by using **greening pins**. These U-shaped pins with S-shaped heads are very good for attaching leaves like salal, camellia and galax to forms. Overlap the leaves just enough to cover up the pin used to fasten on each preceding leaf. In the finished product no pins show. Greening pins also work well to attach materials to straw wreath forms.





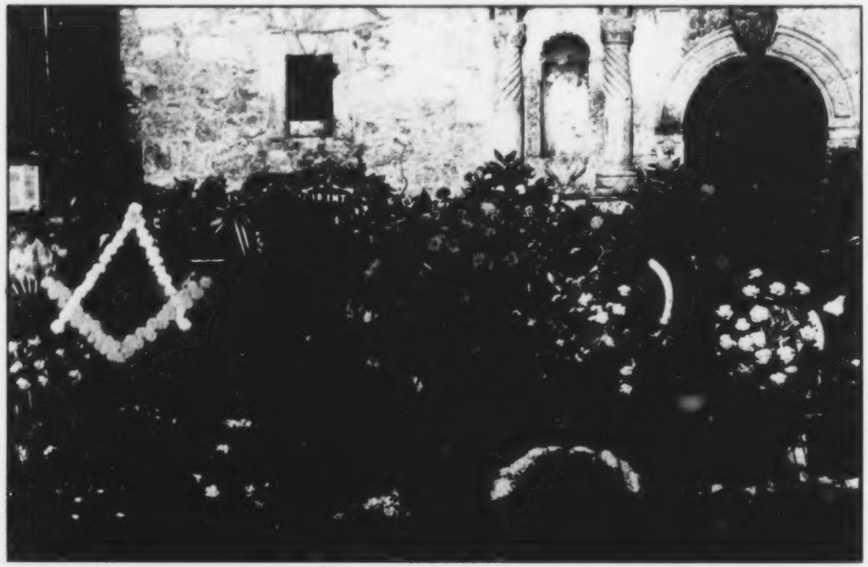
A hot glue gun is useful for attaching accessories to styrofoam. It also works well when adding dried or silk flowers to wreaths made of twigs.

Completing the Set Piece

Finishing off the edges of the shape is important. This can be done with ribbon, used either straight or ruffled, or by pinning overlapped leaves around the edge. The edge can also be beveled and filled in completely with flowers.

Bows can be used as accents where desired. Wreaths give an especially good opportunity to be creative with the placement of bows and streamers. One suggestion is to make a larger and a smaller bow. These can be placed on opposite sides of the wreath and connected with several streamers of ribbon across the wreath. Another variation is to use two different widths and colors of ribbon in a bow, with streamers of each color running to another part of the wreath.

It takes fewer flowers to place one or two flower clusters on a symbol than it does to cover the entire symbol with flowers. The flower groupings can resemble crescents, S-curves or diagonal lines. The shape chosen should complement the shape of the symbol and not be so large as to overpower it. Some suggested flower groupings on symbols are given on the next page.



Assortment of colorful set pieces and other floral tributes

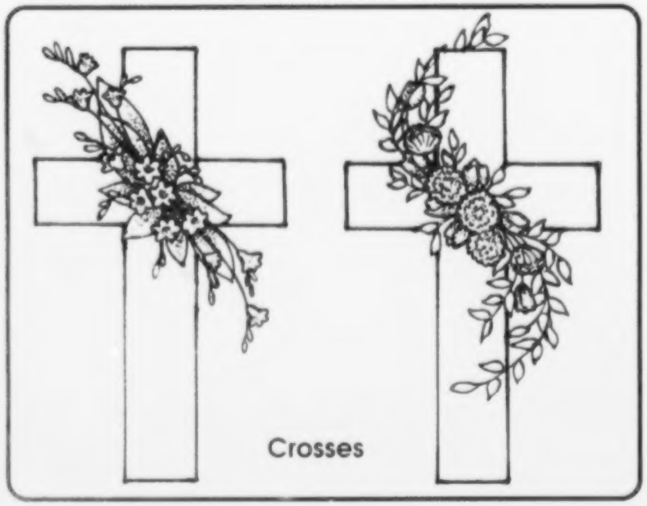
SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Each student will make one set piece. Use different methods of attaching the flowers including floral adhesive, toothpicks and hot glue. Cover some forms entirely with flowers, others with ribbon or moss accented with flowers. Be creative in the use of ribbon.

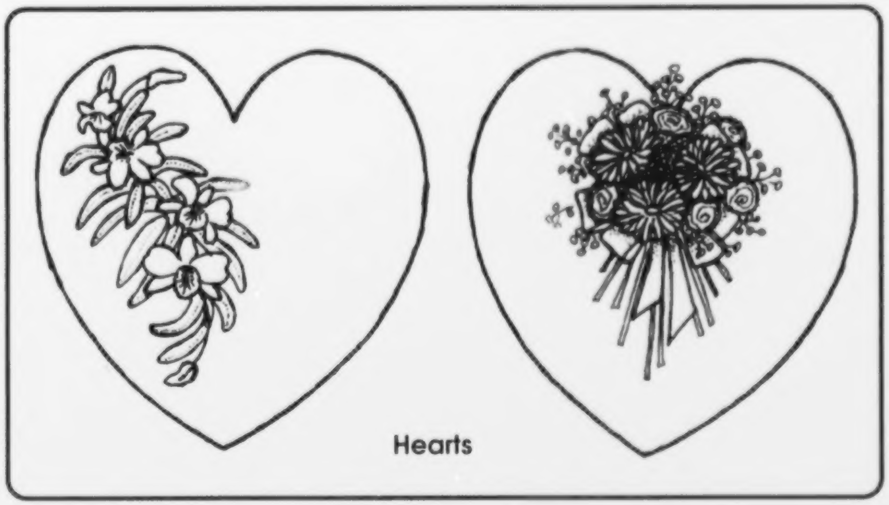
Some suggestions are:

- mixed fresh flower wreath in an Oasis ring
- foliage (salal) covered wreath with floral accent
- moss covered cross with diagonal line of opposition
- flower (mums) covered heart with S-curve of roses
- fraternal symbol (Masonic)
- satin covered straw wreath with two floral accent pieces and connecting streamers

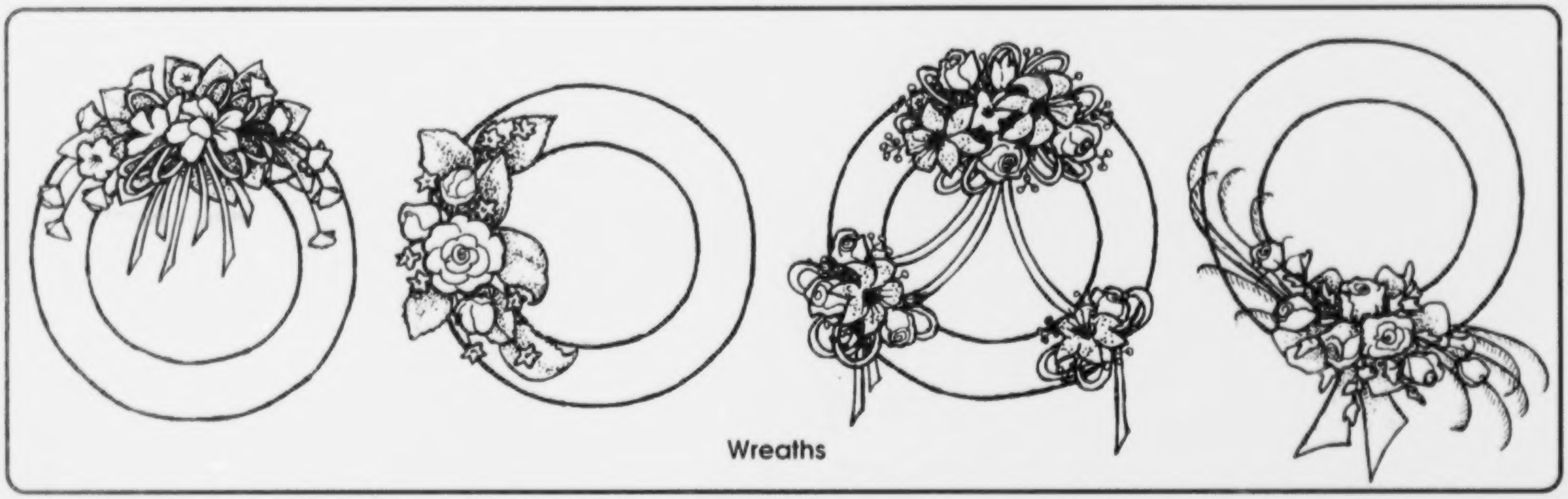
Different Floral Groupings on Symbols



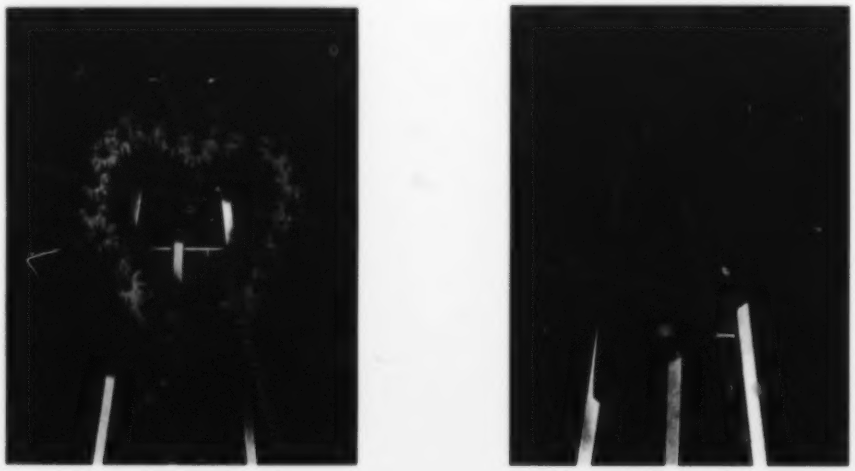
Crosses



Hearts



Wreaths



Easel Pieces

Living plants are appropriate and long-lasting sympathy tributes. The decoration of potted plants with foil and ribbon is described in another unit of this book. Dish gardens and terrariums that are being sent to a funeral may be accented with religious figurines, silk flowers, or items of special significance. Guidelines for the construction of dish gardens and terrariums are given in the next chapter, *Living Plant Groupings*.

CHAPTER 17

LIVING PLANT GROUPINGS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Theme Dish Gardens

ORIENTAL

COUNTRY

TRADITIONAL

ORIENTAL

635

636

— LIVING PLANT GROUPINGS —

Small living plants can be combined artistically in dish gardens, terrariums and hanging baskets. They are popular gift items because of their decorative value and the fact that they can be expected to last several months or more. Dish gardens and terrariums make suitable sympathy tributes and are appreciated in offices, business establishments and homes.

[redacted]

Dish gardens are shallow containers that hold two or more living plants. Sometimes they are referred to as planters. They do not have drainage holes.

Dish garden containers are made from various materials including glazed and unglazed pottery, metal, glass, wood and plastic. Wicker has become popular for dish gardens, but a plastic liner must be used inside it to keep moisture from seeping through. Unglazed clay or terra-cotta, which also may become damp on the bottom, should be set on a moisture-proof mat. Whatever the container, it should be at least 3 inches deep so that the plants' root balls can be accommodated without severely disturbing the roots.

Small flowering and foliage plants that are to be used in dish gardens should be grown, well rooted, in 2- or 3-inch pots. Plants are selected to give a full but not crowded look. There should be harmony between the container and the plants. If figurines or other accessories like driftwood, branches or ribbon are used, they should complement the total look being created. Some possible themes that dish gardens might express are:

tropical
woodland
desert
Oriental
religious

Some dish gardens are merely a collection of plants of various forms, textures and colors, like a simple combination of variegated snake plant, green emerald ripple peperomia, and trailing ivy in a green ceramic container. Alternatively, dish gardens can be made to resemble miniature landscapes or scenes. When figurines are used, they must be in good proportion to the size of the plants. For example, a miniature frog may be dwarfed by too-large plants looming over it. Sheet moss or pebbles are frequently used to cover the soil surface for a special effect.

Fresh-cut flowers can be added to dish gardens by planting in the soil a piece of soaked floral foam into which flower stems are inserted. Flowers may also be placed in waterpicks that are pushed into the soil. Silk flowers and wired bows can be anchored directly in the soil.

Soil

Soil used in dish gardens should be a sterilized potting mix that is not excessively fertile. Bagged potting mixes can easily be purchased for small projects. If you make your own, a mixture of equal parts of soil, coarse sand and peat moss is one possibility. The amount of sand should be increased for cactus and succulent dish gardens. Since the root balls of the plants frequently take up most of the space in a dish garden, you actually may not need much additional soil. The soil mix should be moist but not overly wet at the time of planting.

Gravel or small pebbles may be used in a layer on the bottom of a dish garden if there is enough depth. Since overwatering is a common problem with dish gardens, a gravel layer provides a reservoir for some of the drainage water. If the container is very shallow, the gravel can be omitted since it would take up room needed for the soil balls of the plants.

Plants

Plants for dish gardens must be grown in small pots either 2 or 3 inches in diameter.

Plants suitable for dish gardens

Aluminum Plant *(Pilea)*
Chinese Evergreen *(Aglaonema)*
Croton *(Codiaeum)*
Dracaena *(Dracaena)*
Dumbcane *(Dieffenbachia)*
English Ivy *(Hedera)*
Jade Plant *(Crassula)*
Neanthe Bella Palm *(Chamaedorea)*
Nephthytis *(Syngonium)*
Peperomia *(Peperomia)*
Philodendron *(Philodendron)*
Prayer Plant *(Maranta)*
Snake Plant *(Sansevieria)*
Ti Plant *(Cordyline)*
Wax Plant *(Hoya)*

Collection of dish garden containers

Plants suitable for dish gardens

Snake plant creates a strong vertical line

Weathered wood, used for textural contrast, adds a rhythmic line to these fleshy succulents.

Design

Here are some suggestions for combining plants in dish gardens:

1. Choose plants that are compatible with each other in cultural requirements, since the water, light, and temperature conditions will be the same for all. In general, do not mix cacti and succulents with tropical foliage plants. Use all low-light-tolerant plants for dish gardens that will be used on office desks.

2. Let one plant dominate over the others in height. This taller plant may be placed in the middle for an all-around garden or to one side for an asymmetrical look.

3. Select plants that have enough difference in form, leaf shape, color and texture to produce an interesting mixture. However, do not select too many plants with very strong features (bright colors, dominant textures or variegation) or they will compete with each other. The result may be confusing and busy. One or two of the showier plants combined with plainer ones will give more pleasing results.

4. Use one or more trailing plants to soften the rim of the container.

5. Clean the leaves of the plants with a soft damp cloth. The use of plant shine products is not necessary since clean healthy plants are attractive without it.

6. Consider using driftwood or bare branches to add height and interest to dish gardens. Vining plants can also be twined around the wood.

7. Figurines are optional; most dish gardens look attractive without them. However, if a figurine is needed to carry out a special theme, it should be used in such a way that it becomes an important part of the total design. It should be large enough so as not to be dwarfed by the plants, but not so large as to overpower them. A figurine, when used properly, is important enough that the design will appear lacking without it.

A spring feeling comes from a rabbit figurine that is in good proportion to the flowering and foliage plants in the dish garden.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Planting a Dish Garden

Materials:

shallow waterproof container
sterilized potting soil
gravel (disinfected) or perlite
small potted foliage plants
accessories of your choice

1. Assemble all materials.

2. Arrange potted plants in the empty container to get a general idea of their placement. The tallest plant can be in the center or off-center. The design can be one-sided or made to be viewed all around. However, even one-sided designs should be made interesting in the back. If they are placed near a window, they will have to be turned occasionally as the plants bend toward the light.

3. Place a thin layer of disinfected gravel or perlite in the bottom of the container. (Gravel can be disinfected by washing it in bleach water. Rinse well so that no bleach remains in the gravel.) If the container is very shallow, omit the gravel layer.

4. Remove plants from their containers by turning them upside down, holding the stem between your fingers near the soil level, and rapping the edge of the pot on the counter edge to loosen the soil ball from the pot.

5. Place plants in the container so that their soil line is about 3/4 inch below the rim of the container. You may have to place some soil in the bottom or perhaps remove a little from the soil balls, depending on the depth of the container. Do not plant level with rim of container or the dish garden will be hard to water.

6. Fill in around the plants with sterilized potting soil. Press the soil lightly around the plants to anchor them, leaving the soil level at least 1/2 inch below the rim of the container.

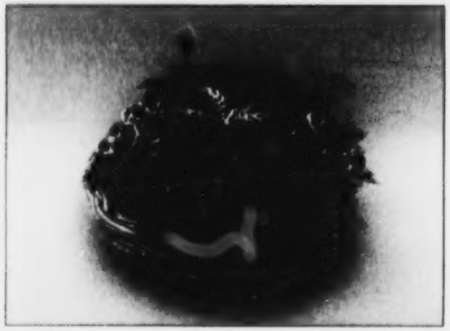
7. Water the dish garden to settle the soil around the plants. Remember that there is no drainage, so avoid overwatering.

8. Wipe the container and foliage clean with a soft damp cloth.

9. Add accessories if you desire.

Completed dish garden

Moss-lined wire planter with a mixture of flowering and foliage plants



European dish garden

Pot-et-fleur design

EUROPEAN DISH GARDENS

A European dish garden is an interesting variation on the traditional dish garden. The difference is that the plants are left in their pots, wedged in with moss or styrofoam, and then covered with sheet moss to give a planted look. Flowering plants like African violets, small kalanchoes, poinsettias or chrysanthemums are frequently added to make a colorful combination. Cut flowers can also be added by wedging in a vase or piece of floral foam among the pots. When temporary splashes of color are used to accent a collection of foliage plants, the combination can also be called a *pot-et-fleur* arrangement. The addition of branches, birds, nests, and/or figurines makes the pot-et-fleur assemblage into a true floral arrangement.

European dish gardens are often done in baskets. A plastic liner is best in the bottom. However, several layers of heavy foil are good for short-term usage, such as a table centerpiece. The liner, foil, pots and styrofoam should be covered with sheet moss after the plants are arranged.

Colorful flowers have high eye appeal and usually become the focal point of the design. Therefore, their position is important enough to be given special thought. Trailing plants are effective in softening the rim of the container and leading the eye beyond its boundaries.

Accents can be used to develop certain themes or feelings. Holly berries and glittered branches suggest Christmas, birds holding strands of raffia represent nest building in the spring, and autumn leaves or wheat are appropriate in the fall. Bows can be added for color and to help carry out the theme.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Planting a Pot-et-Fleur Design

Materials:

lined basket or shallow waterproof container
assorted foliage plants in small containers
one or more flowering plants in small containers
soaked floral foam in a small container
cut flowers (mums, carnations, etc.)
styrofoam
sheet moss
#9 ribbon for a bow

1. Arrange plants in the basket. If the basket has a handle, do not bury it in plants. Place the flowering plants and bow at the focal point of the design, usually toward the front of the basket. Use trailing plants over the edge of the basket.

2. Add a small container of soaked foam near the taller foliage plants. Wedge this container and the pots firmly into position with pieces of styrofoam.

3. Place cut flowers in the floral foam to develop a vertical line of color.

4. Cover the pots and styrofoam with sheet moss.

5. Wipe the foliage clean with a damp soft cloth.

TERRARIUMS

Terrariums are clear glass or plastic containers with plants inside them. They may have a lid or be open at the top. In either case the environment inside the container is protected and usually more humid than the surrounding air. Therefore, the terrarium is a good place to grow small plants that dry out easily or that require high humidity.

Terrariums may be made using bubble bowls, brandy snifters or rectangular aquariums. Specifically designed terrarium cases with hexagonal sides and domed tops are available. Bottles with narrow necks or small openings are a challenge to the designer, requiring special long-handled tools to carry out the planting.

If large enough, a terrarium can be designed as a miniature landscape. Very small terrariums may serve just to protect and display a single special plant. The soil should be deep enough to hold the root system without coming too far up the side of the jar. Too much soil looks heavy and unattractive and may not leave enough room inside the jar for the tops of the plants. In general, the soil should not be deeper than one quarter the height of the container. A well-drained potting mixture that has been sterilized should be used, since diseases can spread rapidly in the moist environment of a terrarium. A layer of disinfected gravel can be used in the bottom for drainage. A thin layer of charcoal (the kind used in aquariums) could be spread on top of the gravel. It will help absorb odors that may develop in damp soil. Another optional material is sheet moss used to line the bottom of the terrarium so that the gravel, charcoal and soil do not show through the glass.

Plants

Terrarium plants are usually grown in small containers, often only 2 inches across. This results in little disturbance of the root system. Transplant shock is also reduced by the humid atmosphere inside the terrarium. Plants must be small when planted. They should also be rather slow-growing so they do not overrun the terrarium in a short time.

The plants that are chosen for terrariums should thrive in moist, humid conditions and moderate to low light. In fact, terrariums are ideal for growing plants that are otherwise difficult to grow in pots in the open air, such as small ferns, fittonia and baby's tears. Cacti and succulents are poor choices for terrariums; they will grow much better in an open dish garden. Terrariums are reserved mainly for two categories of plants: 1) small tropical foliage plants and 2) native mosses, partridge berries and other plants that can be collected from the forest floor to make an attractive "winter garden."

The plants should have enough color and textural variation to be interesting. Baby's tears, selaginella and mosses can be used to simulate patches of turf. Small palms, ferns and other more upright plants serve as trees and shrubs in the mini-landscape. A few more colorful plants can be used as accents:- miniature flowering gesneriads in tropical terrariums or partridge berries and red-capped British soldier lichens in a woodland terrarium. Very special, more expensive, humidity-loving plants can be displayed individually in small terrariums. They can

Plants suitable for terrariums

Aluminum Plant *(Pilea)*
Baby's Tears *(Soleirolia)*
Creeping Fig *(Ficus)*
Fittonia *(Fittonia)*
Miniature African Violets and other small
  Gesneriads *(Saintpaulia, Sinningia,*
  Episcia, Streptocarpus)
Miniature Bromeliads
Miniature Orchids
Neanthe Bella Palm *(Chamaedorea)*
Needlepoint Ivy *(Hedera)*
Selaginella *(Selaginella)*
Small Ferns *(Pteris, Pellaea, Adiantum)*
Small Peperomias *(Peperomia)*

be left in their growing pots, which are hidden by sheet moss or Spanish moss. This will allow for easy removal from the terrarium for periodic cleaning and grooming. Miniature orchids, bromeliads or gesneriads are plants that can be grown this way.

Accessories

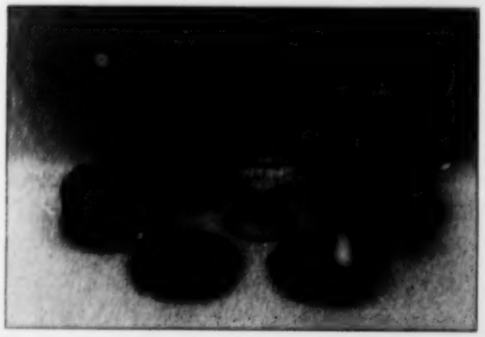
Special landscape features may be developed within the terrarium, such as buried containers for pools, stones to build ledges, caves or bridges, and pieces of branches, driftwood or bark to simulate fallen logs. Paths can be developed using fine gravel or small pebbles, but avoid gaudy, unnatural-looking colored gravel. The use of figurines is entirely optional. If used at all, they should be in scale with the surrounding plants, enhancing them rather than drawing attention away from them. Natural-looking ceramic or stoneware mushrooms, snails, frogs, rabbits, deer or other animals in earth-tone colors and non-glossy textures are examples of accessories in good taste. These can harmonize well with plants.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Planting a Terrarium

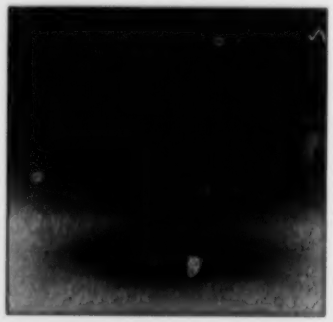
Materials:

- glass terrarium
- gravel disinfected in bleach water
- aquarium charcoal
- potting soil
- small terrarium plants
- accessories of your choice (rocks,wood, figurines)
- watering can



1. Wash and thoroughly dry the terrarium.

2. In the bottom place a layer of gravel one inch thick and top it with a shallow layer of charcoal.



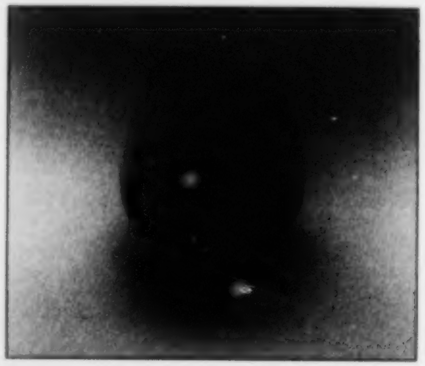
3. Add a layer of soil one inch thick. Consider sloping the soil in one direction or terracing it with stones or pieces of bark.

4. Arrange the plants to form a miniature landscape. Fill in around the plants with soil.

5. Add the accessories if they are to be a part of the design.

6. If soil has fallen on foliage or on sides of the container during planting, rinse it off with a little water from a watering can.

7. Water the planted terrarium lightly so the plants are settled in. Do not overwater and make the soil muddy.



HANGING BASKETS

Plants that are suspended have a special charm. Vining plants are effectively displayed in containers that are hanging; however, other plants with a full cloud-like growth habit can also be used in the center of a hanging basket with vining plants around the edge.

The term "hanging basket" comes from an old method of lining a wire basket with moss to hold in the soil. Many plastic, pottery and wood versions of hanging containers are now on the market. These are collectively referred to as *hanging baskets*. The hanger can be rope, wire or chain. Macrame hangers made of cord knotted into patterns are often used to suspend decorative pots.

Containers that are to be hung indoors should be waterproof or should contain a waterproof liner so that there is no dripping. A well-drained sterile soil mix should be used for planting. Often more than one plant is placed in the container to make it look more full. The plants can be angled out over the edge of the container to help them cascade more quickly.

Hanging baskets containing bedding plants are mainly used outdoors. These may hold just one kind of plant (like cascading petunias or hanging-basket tuberous begonias) or a mixture of many different kinds. Since dripping is usually not a problem outdoors, these containers commonly have drainage holes. And a container with attached saucer frequently overflows. The old-fashioned wire hanging basket lined with sheet moss is still sometimes used. It has an advantage in that some of the specimens can be planted through the moss to cover and hide the bottom of the basket. This is the part people often see, since hanging baskets are usually hung above eye level.

Plants suitable for indoor hanging baskets

Asparagus Fern *(Asparagus)*
Boston Fern *(Nephrolepis)*
English Ivy *(Hedera)*
Flame Violet *(Episcia)*
German Ivy *(Senecio)*
Inch Plant *(Tradescantia)*
Philodendron *(Philodendron)*
Piggyback Plant *(Tolmiea)*
Pothos *(Epipremnum)*
Spider Plant *(Chlorophytum)*
Strawberry Begonia *(Saxifraga)*
Velvet Plant *(Gynura)*
Wandering Jew *(Zebrina)*

Moss-lined hanging baskets containing mixture of annuals *(Victoria, British Columbia)*

Foliage hanging basket with spider plant *(Chlorophytum comosum)* which produces small plantlets at the ends of runners

Teardrop silhouette of *Callisia repens* in a hanging basket

Living plants cascade over balustrade of an office complex.

Living plants bring feeling of outdoors into a library.

LARGE PLANT GROUPINGS

Larger plants can be displayed singly or in groupings as an important element in interior design. Planter sizes range from those suitable for small foliage plants to ones for large trees. These may be made from fiberglass, terra-cotta, plastic, lined wicker or wood. Plants may be planted directly in the planters, or the growing pot is simply set inside the decorative container. The latter method gives greater ease in replacing plants.

The same technique can be used for larger planters designed to hold more than one specimen. The plants are made to look direct-planted by filling in around the pots with styrofoam or wood chips, covering the top with bark mulch. This allows you to raise the plants first to the desired level by placing other pots or saucers under them. The result is less total weight and more flexibility. The planter may even have a way to remove excess drainage water, thus reducing the chances of overwatering and development of odors from stagnant water. Colorful plants like azaleas, poinsettias, spring bulbs and chrysanthemums can be added and removed from the display as the seasons change.

Wicker has become increasingly popular as an inexpensive but attractive container for larger plants. To prevent rotting of the wicker and damage to furnishings by moisture seeping through, such containers must be thoroughly lined with a commercial liner or layers of plastic and a plastic saucer in the bottom. Plastic saucers are preferable to unglazed clay since moisture can gradually work its way through the porous clay.

Medium-sized plants in 6-inch or 8-inch pots can be placed in *jardinieres*. These decorative ceramic or metal containers, which lack drainage holes, are designed to hold a single specimen plant left in its growing pot. They are safe to use on furniture and look attractive in the home or in the office.

Following are some **general guidelines** for creating plant groupings for interior environments.

1. Foliage plants soften the rigid architectural features of modern interiors and bring a fresh, living look to the space (Fig. 17-1).

2. Use plants with large leaves and bold forms to give a contemporary look or to hold attention when the background is patterned or "busy" (Fig. 17-2).

3. Carefully select a few choice foliage plants to decorate a room or office in preference to the "jungle look" with many plants of lesser quality.

(continued)

Figure 17-1

4. When three or more plants in separate containers are used in a group, create a visual spiral from the tallest to the shortest (Fig. 17-3).

5. Use plants as room dividers or to direct foot traffic or to focus attention on a certain area.

6. Use plants near windows to take advantage of the natural light and to carry the outdoors feeling inside.

7. Suspend plants from the ceiling or mount them on walls when space is limited.

8. Do not attempt to introduce plants into areas that are too dark, cold or drafty, or they will go into rapid decline. Many tropical foliage plants need a *minimum* of 50 footcandles of light and temperatures in the 60-70°F range just to survive. Most will look much better if they receive more light and temperatures higher than this.

Figure 17-2
Wide shelves in a dining area are ideal for displaying living plants.

Figure 17-3
Foliage plants displayed on a spiral grouping of cylindrical pedestals

Grouping of foliage plants softens the corner of an office reception area.

Indoor plant display under skylights in a shopping mall

Copper container filled with foliage plants in a library

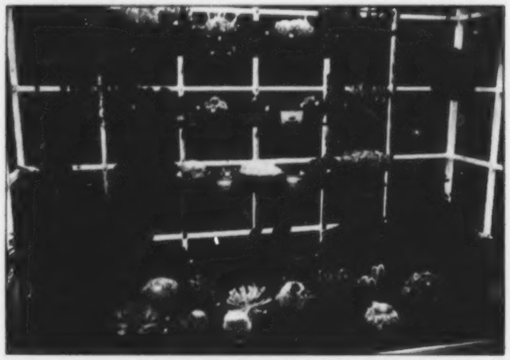
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

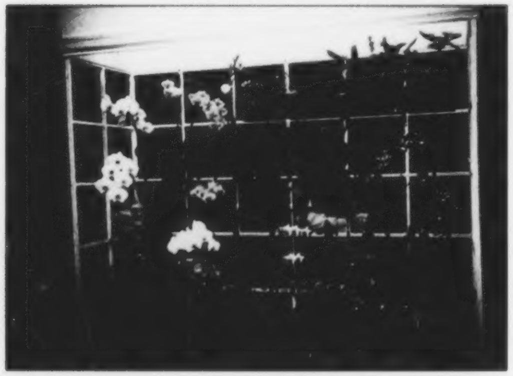
Specialty Plant Groupings

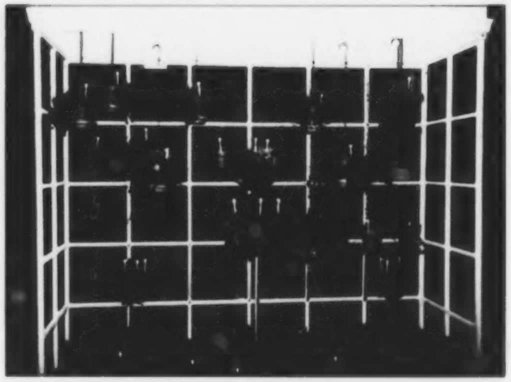
REGULATED PLANT FORMS

BONSAI

TOPIARY


CACTI AND OTHER SUCCULENTS


ORCHIDS


HERBS

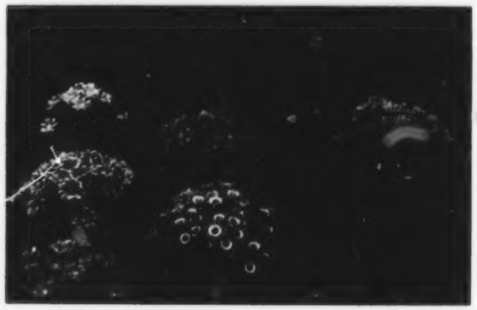
715

716

Calceolaria crenatiflora 1
POCKETBOOK PLANT
Family: Scrophulariaceae

Cattleya sp. CATTLEYA ORCHID 2
Family: Orchidaceae

INDOOR FLOWERING PLANTS



Cineraria cruentus CINERARIA 3
Family: Compositae

Clivia miniata KAFIR LILY 4
Family: Amaryllidaceae

Cyclamen persicum CYCLAMEN 5
Family: Orchidaceae

Dendranthema grandiflora 6
CHRYSANTHEMUM
Family: Compositae

717

Episcia cupreata FLAME VIOLET 7
Family: Gesneriaceae

Euphorbia pulcherrima POINSETTIA 8
Family: Euphorbiaceae

718

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Exacum affine PERSIAN VIOLET 9
Family: Solanaceae

Gardenia jasminoides
GARDENIA 10
Family: Rubiaceae

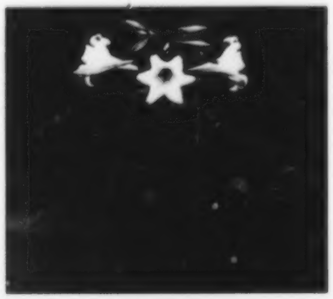
Hibiscus rosa-sinensis HIBISCUS 11
Family: Malvaceae

Hippeastrum vittatum AMARYLLIS 12
Family: Amaryllidaceae

Hyacinthus orientalis HYACINTH 13
Family: Liliaceae

Hydrangea macrophylla HYDRANGEA 14
Family: Saxifragaceae

Kalanchoe blossfeldiana KALANCHOE 15
Family: Crassulaceae



Lilium longiflorum EASTER LILY 16
Family: Liliaceae

Narcissus pseudonarcissus DAFFODIL 17
Family: Amaryllidaceae

719

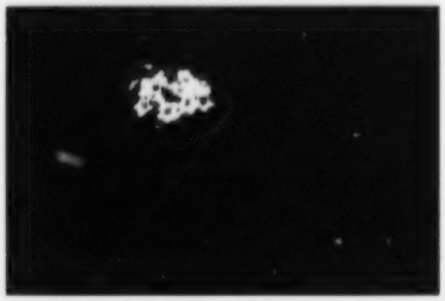
720

Narcissus tazetta 18
PAPER-WHITE NARCISSUS
Family: Amaryllidaceae

Pelargonium hortorum GERANIUM 19
Family: Geraniaceae

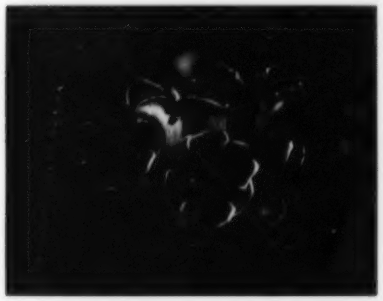
Primula malacoides PRIMROSE 20
Family: Primulaceae

Rhododendron sp. AZALEA 21
Family: Ericaceae



Saintpaulia ionantha AFRICAN VIOLET 22
Family: Gesneriaceae

Schlumbergera bridgesii 23
CHRISTMAS CACTUS
Family: Amaryllidaceae

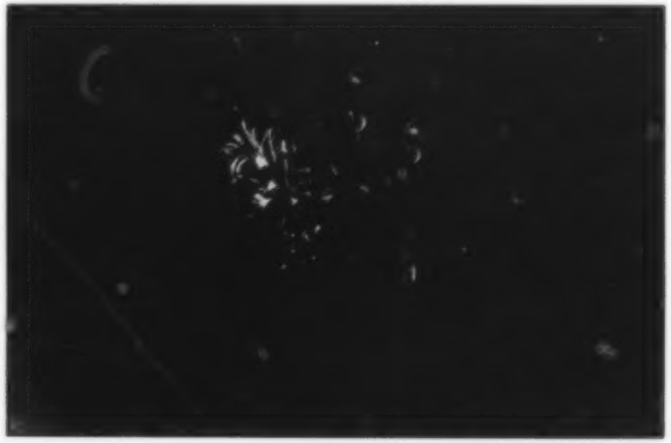


Sinningia speciosa GLOXINIA 24
Family: Gesneriaceae

Streptocarpus hybridus CAPE PRIMROSE 25
Family: Gesneriaceae

Tulipa sp.
TULIP 26
Family: Liliaceae

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



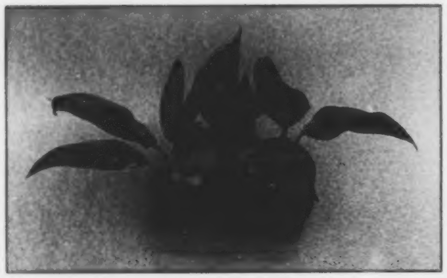
Members of the family Acanthaceae

Aphelandra squarrosa

Indoor Flowering Plants List

alphabetically by common name

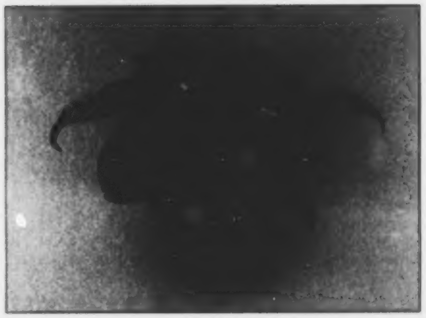
	COMMON NAME	Scientific Name
22	AFRICAN VIOLET	Saintpaulia ionantha
12	AMARYLLIS	Hippeastrum vittatum
21	AZALEA	Rhododendron *sp.*
25	CAPE PRIMROSE	Streptocarpus hybridus
2	CATTLEYA ORCHID	Cattleya *sp.*
23	CHRISTMAS CACTUS	Schlumbergera bridgesii
6	CHRYSANTHEMUM	Dendranthema grandiflora
3	CINERARIA	Cineraria cruentus
5	CYCLAMEN	Cyclamen persicum
17	DAFFODIL	Narcissus pseudonarcissus
16	EASTER LILY	Lilium longiflorum
7	FLAME VIOLET	Episcia cupreata
10	GARDENIA	Gardenia jasminoides
19	GERANIUM	Pelargonium hortorum
24	GLOXINIA	Sinningia speciosa
11	HIBISCUS	Hibiscus rosa-sinensis
13	HYACINTH	Hyacinthus orientalis
14	HYDRANGEA	Hydrangea macrophylla
4	KAFIR LILY	Clivia miniata
15	KALANCHOE	Kalanchoe blossfeldiana
18	PAPER-WHITE NARCISSUS	Narcissus tazetta
9	PERSIAN VIOLET	Exacum affine
1	POCKETBOOK PLANT	Calceolaria crenatiflora
8	POINSETTIA	Euphorbia pulcherrima
20	PRIMROSE	Primula malacoides
26	TULIP	Tulipa *sp.*



Aglaonema commutatum 27
CHINESE EVERGREEN
Family: Araceae

Aloe barbadensis ALOE, BURN PLANT 28
Family: Liliaceae

INDOOR
FOLIAGE
PLANTS



Aphelandra squarrosa ZEBRA PLANT 29
Family: Acanthaceae

Araucaria heterophylla 30
NORFOLK ISLAND PINE
Family: Araucariaceae

Aspidistra elatior CAST IRON PLANT 31
Family: Liliaceae

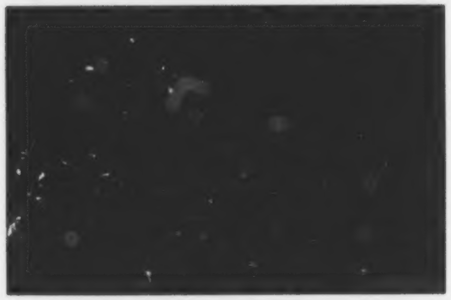
Asplenium nidus BIRDSNEST FERN 32
Family: Polypodiaceae

Beaucarnea recurvata 33
PONYTAIL PALM
Family: Agavaceae

Begonia rex REX BEGONIA 34
Family: Begoniaceae

725

726



Brassaia actinophylla 35
UMBRELLA TREE
Family: Araliaceae

Chamaedorea elegans 36
PARLOR PALM
Family: Palmae

Chlorophytum comosum 37
SPIDER PLANT
Family: Liliaceae

Cissus rhombifolia GRAPE IVY 38
Family: Vitaceae

Codiaeum variegatum CROTON 39
Family: Euphorbiaceae

Cordyline terminalis TI PLANT 40
Family: Agavaceae

Crassula argentea JADE PLANT 41
Family: Crassulaceae

Cyperus alternifolius 42
UMBRELLA PLANT
Family: Cyperaceae

Dieffenbachia amoena DUMBCANE 43
Family: Araceae

727

728

Dizygotheca elegantissima 44
FALSE ARALIA
Family: Araliaceae

Dracaena deremensis 'Warneckei' 45
WARNECKEI
Family: Agavaceae

Dracaena fragrans 46
CORN PLANT
Family: Agavaceae

Dracaena marginata MARGINATA 47
Family: Agavaceae

Dracaena sanderana RIBBON PLANT 48
Family: Agavaceae

Dracaena surculosa 49
GOLD-DUST DRACAENA
Family: Agavaceae

Epipremnum aureum POTHOS 50
Family: Araceae

Fatsia japonica FATSIA 51
Family: Araliaceae

Ficus benjamina 52
WEEPING FIG, BENJAMIN TREE
Family: Moraceae

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

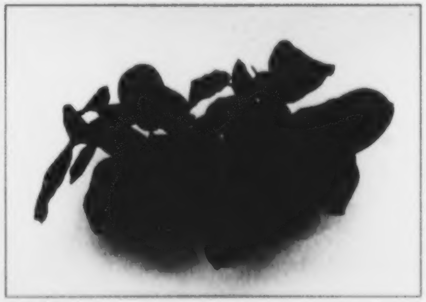
Ficus elastica RUBBER PLANT 53
Family: Moraceae

Ficus lyrata FIDDLE-LEAF FIG 54
Family: Moraceae

Gynura aurantiaca 55
VELVET PLANT
Family: Compositae

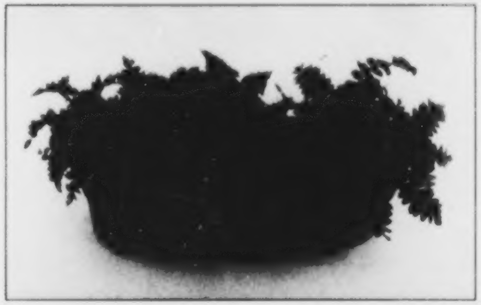
Hedera helix ENGLISH IVY 56
Family: Araliaceae

Hoya carnosa WAX PLANT 57
Family: Asclepiadaceae



Maranta leuconeura 58
PRAYER PLANT
Family: Marantaceae

Monstera deliciosa 59
SPLIT-LEAF PHILODENDRON
Family: Araceae



Nephrolepis exaltata BOSTON FERN 60
Family: Polypodiaceae

Peperomia caperata 61
EMERALD RIPPLE PEPEROMIA
Family: Piperaceae

731

732

Peperomia obtusifolia 62
VARIEGATED PEPEROMIA
Family: Piperaceae

Philodendron oxycardium 63
HEART LEAF PHILODENDRON
Family: Araceae

Philodendron selloum 64
TREE PHILODENDRON
Family: Araceae

Phoenix roebelenii 65
PYGMY DATE PALM
Family: Palmae

Pilea cadierei ALUMINUM PLANT 66
Family: Urticaceae

Platycerium bifurcatum 67
STAGHORN FERN
Family: Polypodiaceae

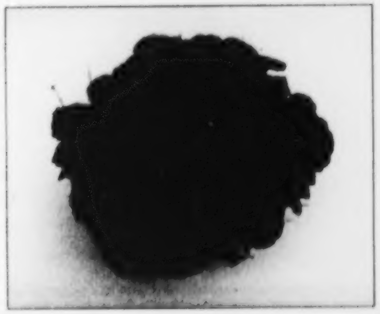
Plectranthus australis SWEDISH IVY 68
Family: Labiatae

Podocarpus macrophyllus 69
BUDDHIST PINE
Family: Podocarpaceae

Sansevieria trifasciata 70
SNAKE PLANT
Family: Agavaceae

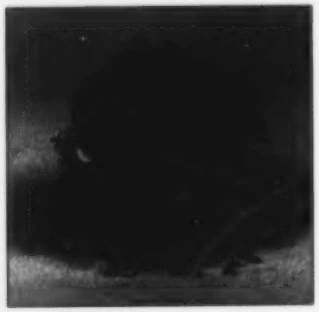
733

734



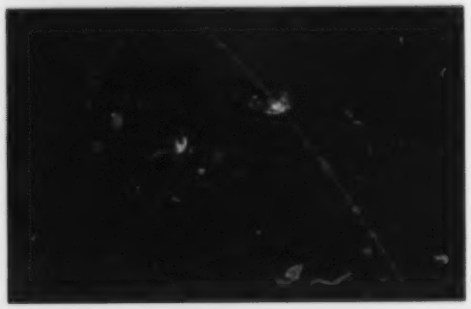
Saxifraga sarmentosa 71
STRAWBERRY BEGONIA
Family: Saxifragaceae

72
Sedum morganianum
BURRO'S TAIL
Family: Crassulaceae



Soleirolia soleirolii 73
BABY'S TEARS
Family: Urticaceae

Spathiphyllum patinii 74
PEACE LILY
Family: Araceae



Syngonium podophyllum 75
NEPHTHYTIS
Family: Araceae

Tolmiea menziesii 76
PIGGYBACK PLANT
Family: Saxifragaceae

Tradescantia albiflora INCH PLANT 77
Family: Commelinaceae

Yucca elephantipes SPINELESS YUCCA 78
Family: Agavaceae

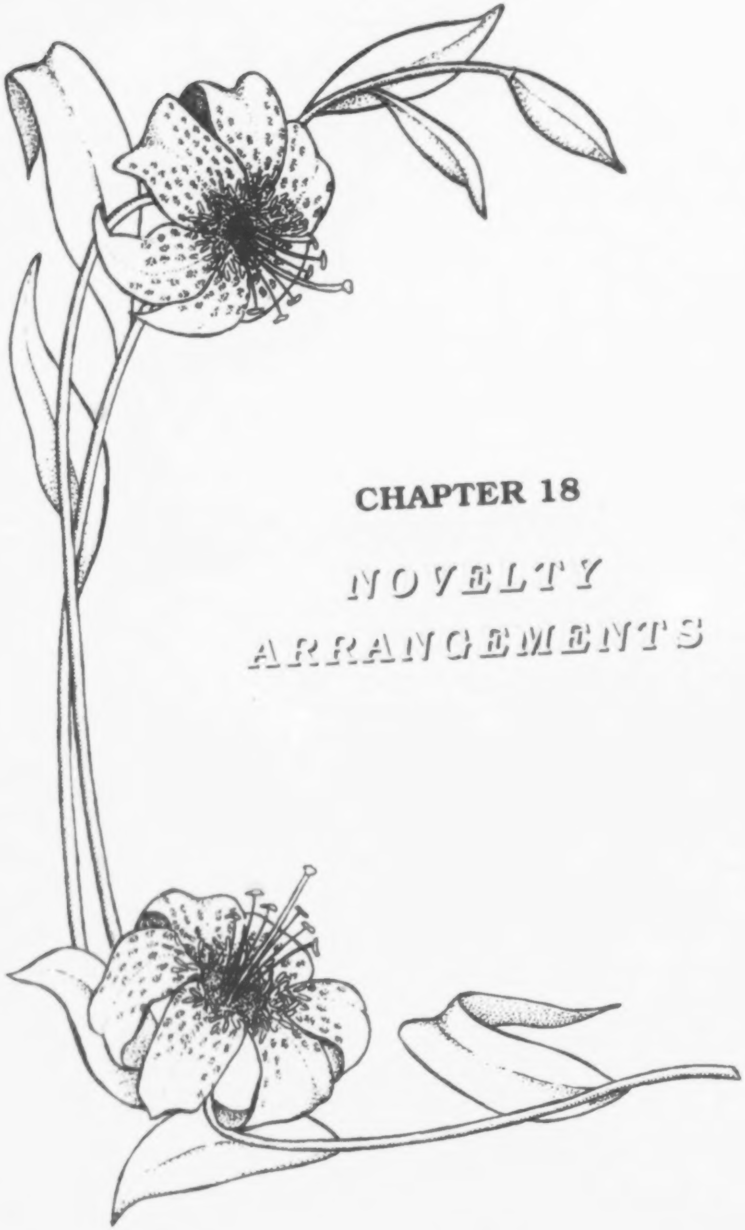
Zebrina pendula WANDERING JEW 79
Family: Commelinaceae

Homalomena sp.

Indoor Foliage Plants List

alphabetically by common name

	COMMON NAME	Scientific Name
28	ALOE	Aloe barbadensis
66	ALUMINUM PLANT	Pilea cadierei
73	BABY'S TEARS	Soleirolia soleirolii
52	BENJAMIN TREE	Ficus benjamina
32	BIRDSNEST FERN	Asplenium nidus
60	BOSTON FERN	Nephrolepis exaltata
69	BUDDHIST PINE	Podocarpus macrophyllus
28	BURN PLANT	Aloe barbadensis
72	BURRO'S TAIL	Sedum morganianum
31	CAST IRON PLANT	Aspidistra elatior
27	CHINESE EVERGREEN	Aglaonema commutatum
46	CORN PLANT	Dracaena fragrans
39	CROTON	Codiaeum variegatum
43	DUMBCANE	Dieffenbachia amoena
61	EMERALD RIPPLE PEPEROMIA	Peperomia caperata
56	ENGLISH IVY	Hedera helix
44	FALSE ARALIA	Dizygotheca elegantissima
51	FATSIA	Fatsia japonica
54	FIDDLE-LEAF FIG	Ficus lyrata
49	GOLD-DUST DRACAENA	Dracaena surculosa
38	GRAPE IVY	Cissus rhombifolia
63	HEART LEAF PHILODENDRON	Philodendron oxycardium
77	INCH PLANT	Tradescantia albiflora
41	JADE PLANT	Crassula argentea
47	MARGINATA	Dracaena marginata
75	NEPHTHYTIS	Syngonium podophyllum
30	NORFOLK ISLAND PINE	Araucaria heterophylla
36	PARLOR PALM	Chamaedorea elegans
74	PEACE LILY	Spathiphyllum patinii
76	PIGGYBACK PLANT	Tolmiea menziesii
33	PONYTAIL PALM	Beaucarnea recurvata
50	POTHOS	Epipremnum aureum
58	PRAYER PLANT	Maranta leuconeura
65	PYGMY DATE PALM	Phoenix roebelenii
34	REX BEGONIA	Begonia rex
48	RIBBON PLANT	Dracaena sanderana
53	RUBBER PLANT	Ficus elastica
70	SNAKE PLANT	Sansevieria trifasciata
37	SPIDER PLANT	Chlorophytum comosum
59	SPLIT-LEAF PHILODENDRON	Monstera deliciosa
67	STAGHORN FERN	Platycerium bifurcatum
71	STRAWBERRY BEGONIA	Saxifraga sarmentosa
68	SWEDISH IVY	Plectranthus australis
40	TI PLANT	Cordyline terminalis
64	TREE PHILODENDRON	Philodendron selloum
42	UMBRELLA PLANT	Cyperus alternifolius
35	UMBRELLA TREE	Brassaia actinophylla
62	VARIEGATED PEPEROMIA	Peperomia obtusifolia
55	VELVET PLANT	Gynura aurantiaca
79	WANDERING JEW	Zebrina pendula
45	WARNECKEI	Dracaena deremensis 'Warneckei'
57	WAX PLANT	Hoya carnosa
52	WEEPING FIG	Ficus benjamina
78	YUCCA, SPINELESS	Yucca elephantipes
29	ZEBRA PLANT	Aphelandra squarrosa



CHAPTER 18

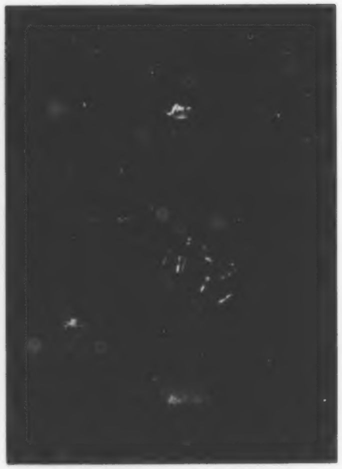
NOVELTY ARRANGEMENTS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Juvenile Theme

Bird with carnations and solidaster

Pair of rabbits



Baby bootee with theme bow

Religious Theme

Madonna with carnations

Star of David with roses and monte casino

741

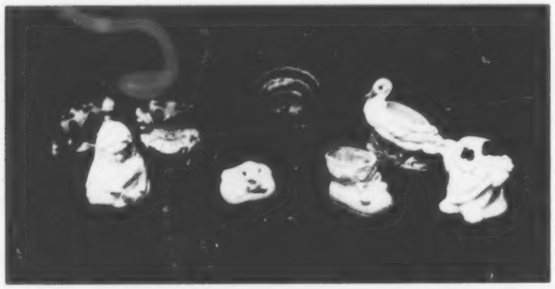
742

— NOVELTY ARRANGEMENTS —

Novelty arrangements can be created using unusual containers or planters which suggest a special theme. Another way to display flowers in a novel way is to use them to create animals, clowns, birds, snowmen, etc. There is a market for both kinds of these theme-oriented floral creations and they are fun to do.

Small ceramic containers are available in an abundance of shapes, such as baby bootees, Madonnas, birds, turkeys, rabbits and geese, to name a few. These can be used as planters to hold living plants, but they also serve equally well for small arrangements that complement the container. The planter part easily holds floral foam for fresh arrangements or styrofoam for dry or silk designs.

Since the container is to be featured, the arrangement should not overpower it in size. A general rule of thumb is to make the arrangement less than one and a half times the height of the planter. The design will also be more effective if it allows the planter to



show and does not cover up any prominent parts. If the shape and lines of the arrangement echo the dominant shape or lines of the planter, a more harmonious design will be created.

Another possibility is to plant one or more living plants in the container and then add an accent of fresh flowers in a water tube and possibly a bow. Or silk flowers could be used for a longer-lasting touch of color.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Novelty Planter Arrangement

Have each student design an arrangement in a different novelty planter. Fill the planter with soaked floral foam. Study the color, shape and lines of the container in order to select a harmonious design shape and appropriate materials. Pompon mums, statice, huckleberry and leatherleaf fern are versatile for planter arrangements.

Poodle dog made from standard chrysanthemums

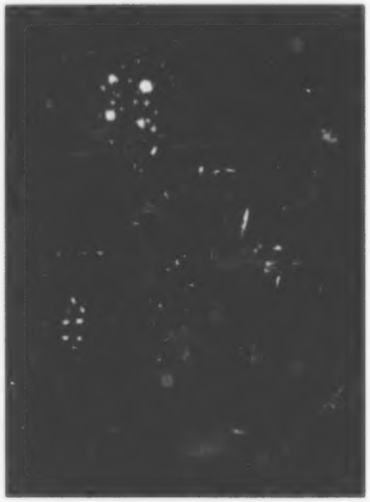
Autumn Theme

Turkey with equilateral triangle of daisy mums and solidaster

Duck with L-pattern of alstroemeria and chrysanthemums

Mug Arrangements

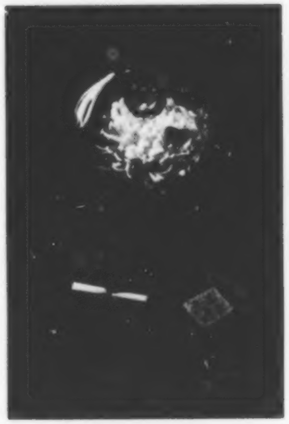
Pottery mug for Dad with contemporary grouped design featuring roses and yarrow



Festive birthday mug of yellow daisy mums and a balloon

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Fun Flowers with Personality

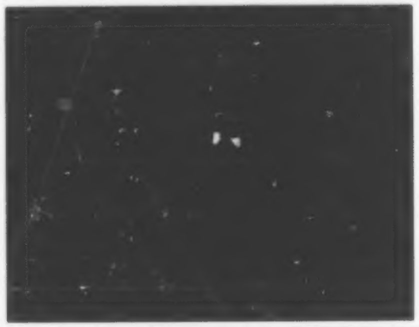


The graduate

The Easter bunny

The family

Halloween Fun Flowers



Flowers can be assembled and decorated so that they resemble people and animals. Your imagination is the only limit to what you can try in creativity. Since these designs are frequently given to children, your inventive abilities could also be used on figures like clowns, poodle dogs, caterpillars, and cartoon characters.

The simplest kind of fun flower project to make is a funny head out of a single standard mum in a bud vase. You can decorate it with eyes, nose, mouth, hat, tie, etc. These items can be made from chenille stems, ribbon and construction paper. Eyes with movable pupils can be purchased in different sizes. Spanish moss and yarn can also be useful. All these decorations can be attached to the flower with hot glue or floral adhesive.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Fun Flowers

Materials:

- bud vase
- standard mum
- leatherleaf fern
- chenille stems
- ribbon
- plastic eyes
- construction paper
- hot glue gun or floral adhesive

1. Place the mum in a bud vase with water so that it is about 3 inches above the rim of the vase. Back it with a piece of leatherleaf.

2. Create a creature of your choice using the materials available to you. Attach decorative items with hot glue or floral adhesive.

[redacted]

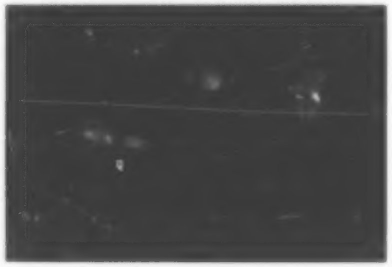
Baskets of fruit make attractive gifts and are often available at flower shops. The fruit may be packaged with other food items, nuts or small gifts. Fresh or silk flowers may also be added if a container with floral foam is wedged in with the pieces of fruit.

Select fruit that will hold up well when stored, such as apples, oranges, grapefruit, pears and grapes. Fruit should not be stored in the same cooler as cut flowers. The ripening fruit produces ethylene, which causes harmful effects on many flowers and greens.

Arrange the fruit attractively and securely in the basket. Use excelsior, shredded tissue, or crumpled cellophane to raise the fruit to the desired level. Candy and nuts may be used to fill in the holes and prevent shifting of the fruit. Sometimes a small piece of tissue paper is used to cushion each piece of fruit.

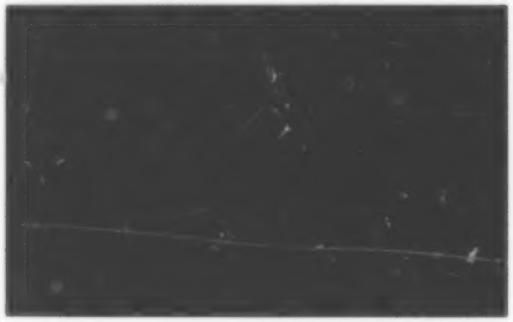
The fruit basket can be shrink-wrapped with transparent film to protect the fruit and hold it in place. The following illustrations show the steps involved in covering a basket with film.

1. Group the fruit attractively in the basket.

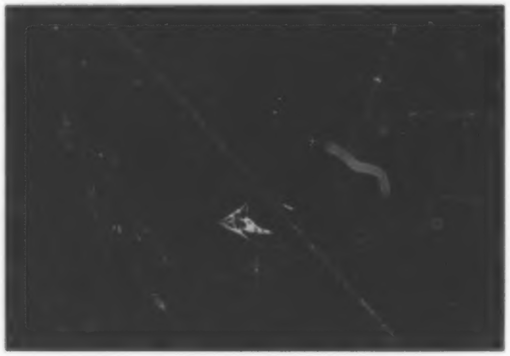


2. Cut a piece of transparent shrink-wrap a few inches longer than needed to surround the basket.
3. Wrap the film around the basket, bringing the cut edges together toward the back of the basket.
4. Crimp the film together on three sides with an electric crimper.

5. Use scissors to cut off the film that extends beyond the crimp.



6. Use an electric heat gun. Move the heat gun back and forth a few inches from the film to avoid burning a hole in it. Stop when the film neatly conforms to the shape of the fruit basket.



7. The completed fruit basket is ready for storage or transport. Add more trimming such as ribbon or floral material if desired.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Flowers can be arranged to resemble food products. These fanciful designs attract considerable attention and are fun to give and receive.

One type of flower "food" is the ice cream soda. A clear soda glass is filled with shredded white styrofoam. Water is added. "Ice cream" is created by several pink carnations with their stems down in the moist foam. A white carnation becomes the whipped cream and can be topped with an artificial cherry. The cherry in the picture is actually a crabapple. Two straws are added to complete the simulation of a soda.

Various pastries including cake can be made by gluing flowers, petals, and leaves over styrofoam forms. The illustration below shows a birthday cake made with gladioli, asters, chrysanthemums, and ivy.

Small creative arrangements can be made using flowers, fruit, candles, and ribbon. These may be used singly or in combination with larger arrangements as table decorations. They can be effective in carrying out a particular theme and are sure to be remembered.

Study the examples shown. Then create your own imaginative version of these novelty designs.

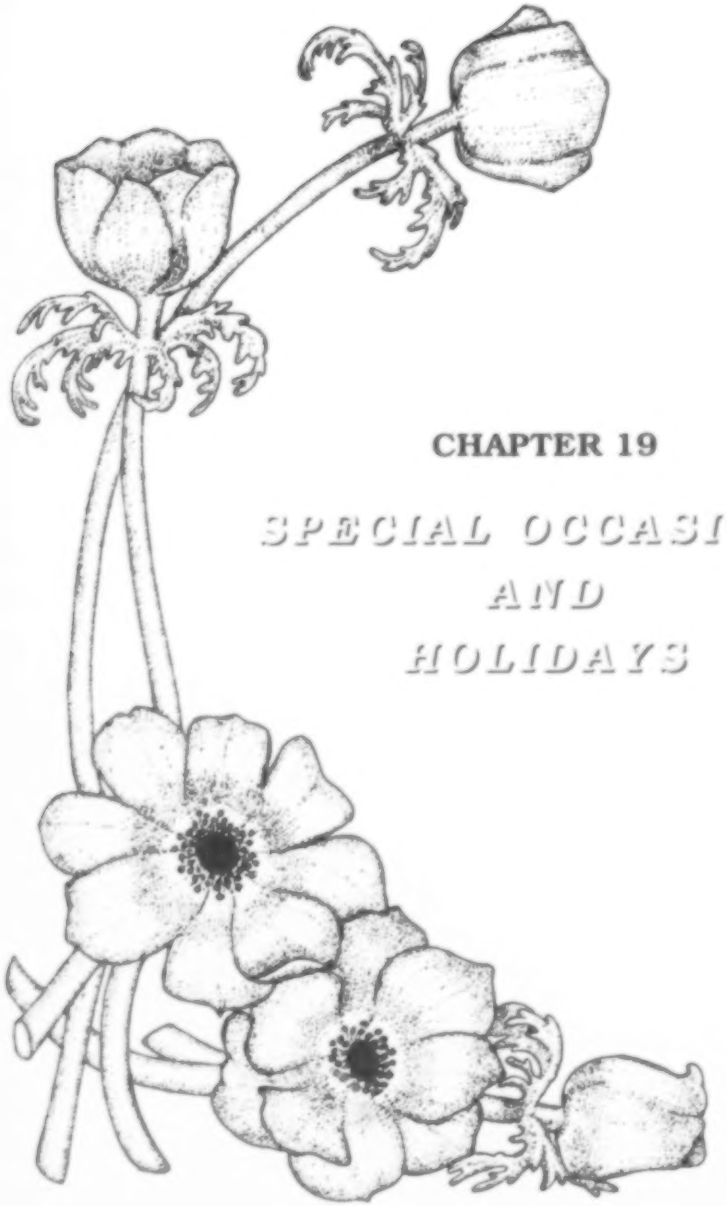
Votive candle nestled in a full-blown rose set on ivy leaves on a mirror

Novelty Designs

Single stylized ribbon flower in a clay pot sprayed pink. Styrofoam in pot covered with sheet moss; container decorated with patterned ribbon bow.

Delicate design of scabiosa in a pear

Small candle secured along with foliage in an apple resting on three galax leaves

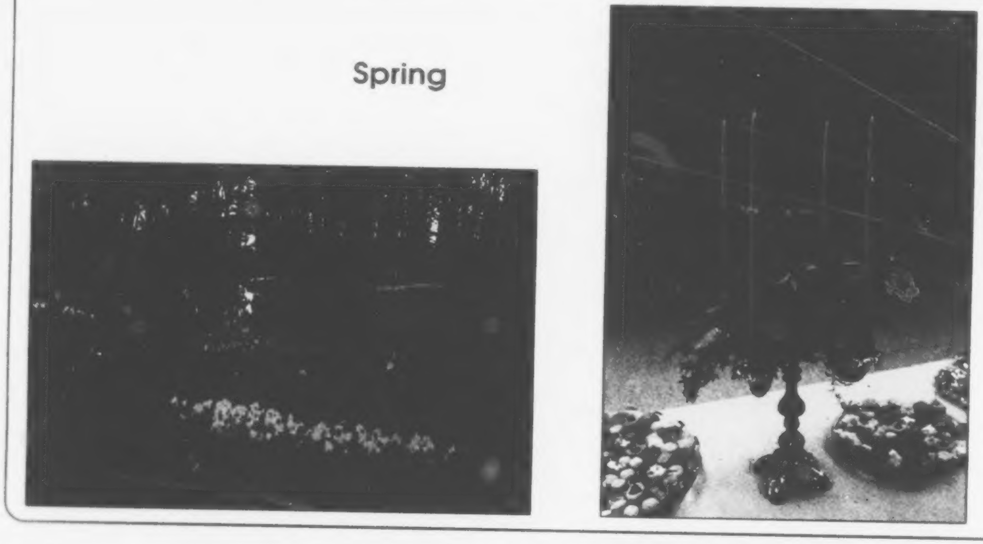


CHAPTER 19

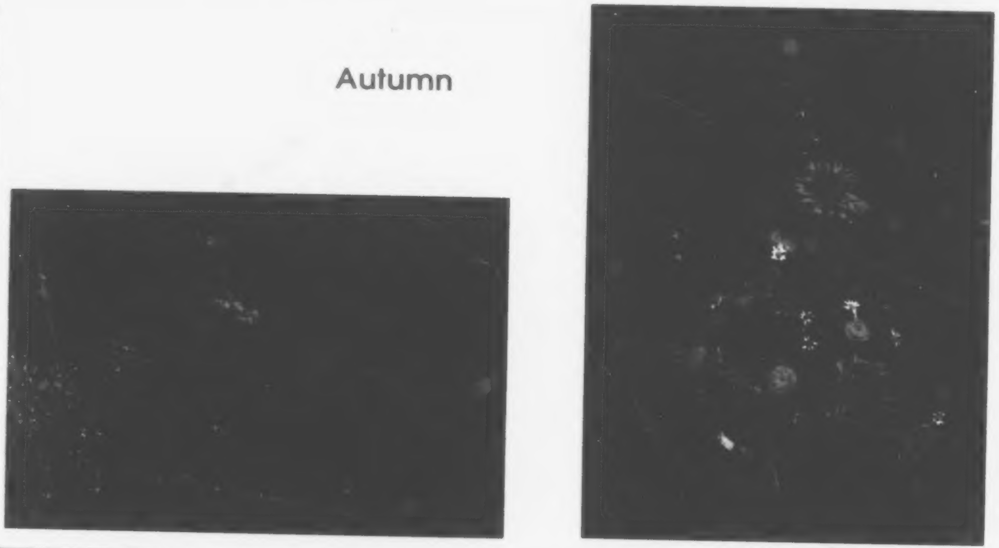
SPECIAL OCCASIONS
AND
HOLIDAYS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

As the seasons change –



Spring



Autumn

SPECIAL OCCASIONS AND HOLIDAYS

Arrangements are custom designed to be appropriate for a given special occasion. They should reflect the formality and theme of the occasion. Such special occasions as birthdays, anniversaries, parties, and business openings merit special flowers and arrangements year-round. Flowers are also sent to welcome new babies and cheer the sick.

Each season features a different set of holidays. The Christmas season is perhaps the most noteworthy, since it includes a uniqe set of decorating expectations. These decorations transform homes, businesses and churches, giving them a different look for the season. Types of flowers, color schemes, and accessories used in flower arrangements change throughout the year. This chapter will focus on arrangements that express themes suitable for these special events and holidays.

CHRISTMAS DESIGN

Christmas is a long and important season for florists. Many start creating permanent arrangements in late summer so that a good selection is ready for early sales in late November. The month-long selling season often begins with an open house at the flower shop. This features an array of designs from which customers can select for their holiday decorating.

As December approaches there is a demand for door decorations, table centerpieces, and other designs which include fresh evergreens. Pine, spruce, boxwood, juniper, fir, cedar and holly are favorite Christmas greens. Candles and bows are used abundantly along with traditional accessories like pine cones, fruit, nuts, Santas, reindeer, shiny balls, wrapped packages, and glittered branches. Figurines of angels and the nativity, together with stars, bells and miniature churches, symbolize the religious significance of Christmas.

The Christmas season also brings a demand for decorated flowering plants, especially poinsettias. Another product that sells well is plain evergreen branches, sold in bunches or made into wreaths or roping. These can be offered by flower shops but are also easy to find for sale in other businesses related to the Christmas trade. Another need that can be supplied by florists often surfaces at Christmas. This is the demand for cemetery pieces including wreaths on easels, grave blankets, pillows, stone plaques and vases.

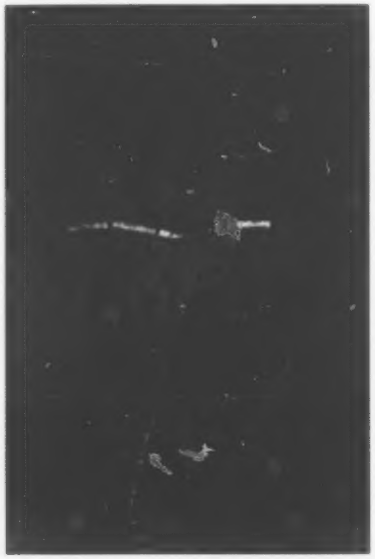
Christmas design is merely a theme variation of basic floral design. The principles of design must be followed if a good product is to be achieved. Designers can also produce more original and distinctive work if they have interesting materials to work with. Many florists visit the wholesale houses when Christmas items are first put out so they can get the best selection. Each year brings new trends in Christmas decorations. The shops that take advantage of this can offer their customers an interesting selection of items that is different from the year before.

Father Christmas with poinsettias

Vase of deciduous holly

Traditional Christmas

Mass design of mixed Christmas greens and berries



Birch basket with holly and poinsettias

Christmas Theme	***Appropriate Accessories***
Traditional	Santas, reindeer, bells, candles
Williamsburg	fruit, nuts, cones
Victorian	lace, velvet and satin ornaments; china dolls; ribbons; pearls
Country	baskets, animals (such as wooden geese, sheep, etc.), dried materials
Religious	angels, Madonnas, creche sets, Advent wreaths
International	straw ornaments, cookie molds, wooden accessories
Contemporary	mirrored or pearlized ornaments, lights in plastic tubes, stylized trees or other stylized figures
Natural	birds, branches, dried moss, berries

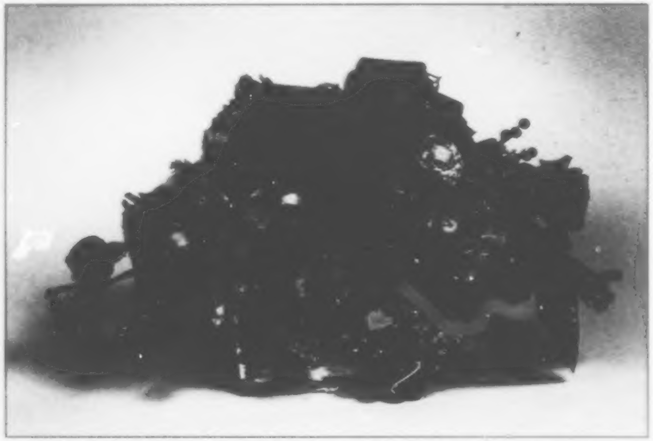
Traditional, historic, and religious styles are always popular. Contemporary and unique theme styles are introduced each year to appeal to the person looking for something different. Usually, a major factor in a person's choice of Christmas decorations is the color and style of decor in the home.

On the left is a list of Christmas themes with the accessories that can be used to develop each theme.

Victorian Christmas

Basket arrangement of roses and holiday greens

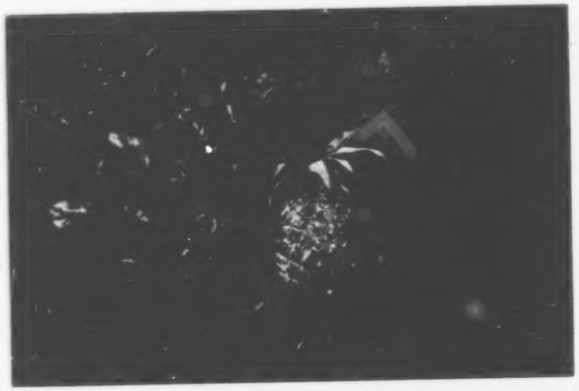
757



Rich tones of burgundy and gold combined in a lavish holiday design featuring roses, tapestry ribbon, artificial fruit, and gilded pods.

758

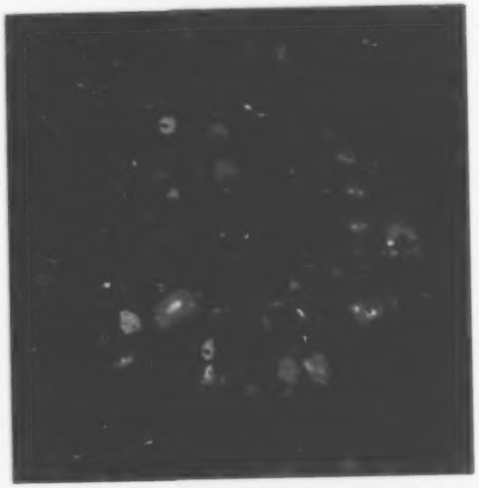
Williamsburg



Fan of apples, pineapple, magnolia, and boxwood over the door

Centerpiece of apples and boxwood on a wooden cone, topped with a pineapple and resting on a circle of magnolia leaves

Della Robia



Mixed fruit and evergreen wreath, popular for centuries

Contemporary

Grouping

Parallel systems

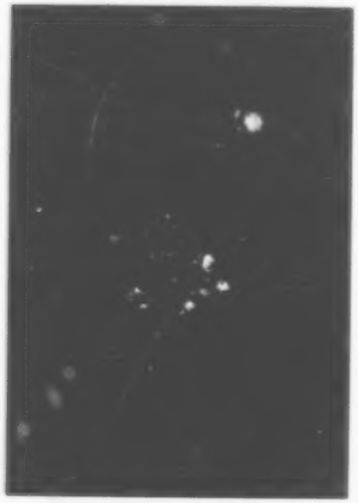
Clustering

Country Christmas

Christmas tree with country theme

Cornucopia of fruit and flowers. Greens and gold ribbon give a Christmas feeling.

Natural basket with bears, greens and holly



Lantern decorated with Hogarth curve of spruce with carnations in focal area

Father Christmas

Small decorated tree

Living plant grouping with fresh-cut flowers

Color in Christmas Design

Color combinations are important in creating a pleasing arrangement in any style. Red and green is traditional, of course, and still is widely used. A touch of red ribbon, a red candle, or a red ornament adds a bright accent to an evergreen wreath or arrangement. Objects in shiny metallic colors such as gold, silver or brass are effective in reflecting light and producing a festive feeling. Blue, pink and white are also widely used at Christmas time. Purple is the liturgical color for Advent, the church season preceding Christmas. Advent wreaths contain purple candles, and altar cloths are changed to purple for the season.

Some examples of colors appropriate for different Christmas themes are in the following list:

Christmas Theme	*Possible Color Schemes*
Traditional	red and green
Williamsburg	red, yellow and orange against a green background
Victorian	pink, rose and burgundy
Country	blue and rust
Religious	purple and gold
Foreign	beige and red
Contemporary	silver and white

A Christmas tree

Purple in Christmas Design

Advent wreath

Decorated mantel

Table-top tree

More Color in Christmas Design

Festoon decorated in aqua and burgundy with gold ribbon

Pink

Centerpiece with roses, ivy, and grapes

Asymmetrical cherub design with green and pink shaded bow

Gold

Basket design using gold

Musical wreath in variations of gold and ivory

Red and white basket design accented with gold

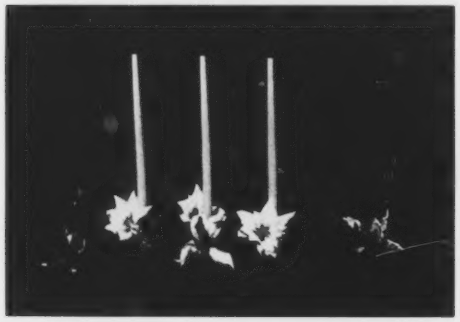
735

736

[redacted]

Christmas supplies become available at the wholesalers in the summer. Florists should make their selection of decorative items early so that they have the best choices and are aware of current trends. Supplies like wooden and metal picks, glue sticks, wire, tape and styrofoam are common items found year-round in the shop, but they are used in abundance at Christmas. Containers, ribbon, figurines and ornaments with a holiday motif, as well as glittered branches, artificial greens, flowers and fruits are more seasonal. Dried flowers such as baby's breath, German statice and starflowers are everyday items that can be combined with evergreens to carry out a Christmas theme. Flocked or glittered dried materials, however, will probably be available only for Christmas designs.

The list to the right includes items that are useful for Christmas arranging. However, each person must decide individually what will be needed for his or her project.



Centerpiece using candles, silk poinsettias and greens, and artificial fruit

SHOPPING LIST FOR CHRISTMAS SUPPLIES

artificial greens and flowers (poinsettias)

candles (tapers of various lengths and diameters, votive lights, hurricane globes)

chenille stems

decorative branches and dried materials

decorative picks and ornaments (fruit clusters, holly berries, mistletoe, strings of beads)

figurines and stuffed animals (Santas, religious figures, deer, teddy bears, birds)

glitter

glue sticks

green florists' cord

metal picks

moss (sheet moss and Spanish moss)

paddle wire

raffia

ribbon (velvet, plastic waterproof, metallic, velvet tubing, ribbon with Christmas designs)

spray glue

styrofoam

wicker (baskets, mats, sleighs)

wooden picks

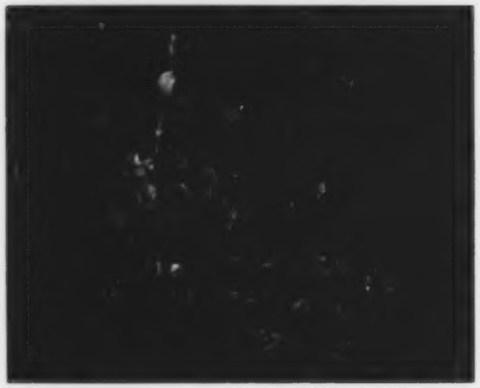
wreath forms (styrofoam, wire, straw, grapevine, Advent)

Madonna featured in a Christmas arrangement

Silk wreath with different kinds of ribbon and accessories

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Selected Evergreens and Their Characteristics



Euonymus 1

- ◆ variegated forms a good source of gold color
- ◆ some pieces useful for line material
- ◆ color affected by outside temperatures

[redacted]

Ideally fresh greens should be cut as close as possible to the time they are needed. If they are cut in advance, they should be stored in a cold place but ***not*** in a cooler with fresh flowers, as greens give off ethylene gas which causes flowers to age and die. If available, a separate cooler can be used exclusively for evergreens; if not, an unheated room should be satisfactory.

Wholesale florists have evergreens in stock starting in late November. These are sold by the bunch, bale or case. They may also be available already made into wreaths, roping or grave blankets.

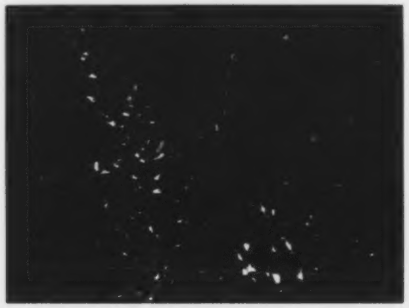
Cut branches of evergreens that are about 20 to 30 inches long are called **boughs**. Shorter end pieces are called **tips**. Buying tips will result in less waste material, but they are more expensive than the larger boughs.

The smallest unit that evergreens are available in is **bunches**. These are usually determined by weight and may be as small as 2 pounds. A **bale** is a larger unit of boughs, often around 20 pounds, that is tied together with twine or wire. A **case** is a box, either cardboard or wooden, which weighs between 20 and 40 pounds. The contents may be in bunches or loose. Boxwood sometimes comes in a burlap bag with the contents determined by weight. Holly comes in 10-pound cases which are waxed and lined with plastic, since holly is very sensitive to drying out.

Many greens can be cut locally if a source is available. Wholesalers buy greens from suppliers in the northern states and the Pacific Northwest. On this page and the next are twelve illustrations showing some of the more commonly used evergreens along with their characteristics.

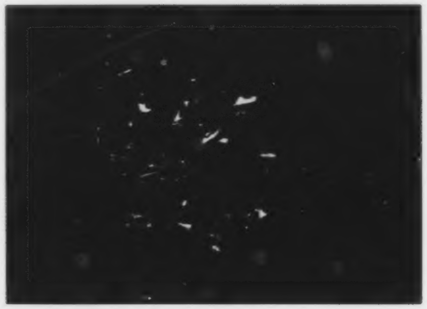
Deciduous Holly 2

- ◆ bright red berries on bare branches
- ◆ use indoors with water source to prevent shriveling and berry drop
- ◆ useful outside with evergreens in containers



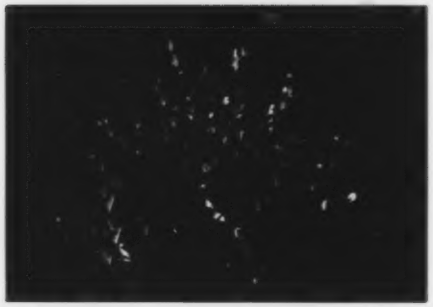
Meserve Hybrid Holly 3

- ◆ rich dark green, glossy leaves
- ◆ more linear branches than those of English holly



English Holly 4

- ◆ well known for appearance of leaf and showy fruit
- ◆ foliage dehydrates easily, becoming dull; (use water source for longer life)



Boxwood 5

- ◆ small, shiny, dark green leaves
- ◆ dries out easily, but leaves do not drop when dry
- ◆ makes a good filler

Cedar (Arborvitae) 6

- ◆ flat, scaly branches
- ◆ often yellowish green in color
- ◆ distinctive fragrance

Falsecypress (Chamaecyparis) 7

- ◆ interesting compact foliage
- ◆ holds leaves well
- ◆ nice color on some cultivars (like the yellow one pictured)

Fir 8

- ◆ soft needles that hold well
- ◆ fragrant
- ◆ species used - balsam & fraser (shortest needles), silver (needles white underneath), noble and douglas
- ◆ choice Christmas green, easy to work with

Hemlock 9

- ◆ soft, gracefully arching branches with short needles
- ◆ does not hold needles well indoors

Juniper 10

- ◆ prickly to work with
- ◆ attractive blue berries may be attached
- ◆ long pieces, interesting curves make good line material for Christmas designs

Pine 11

- ◆ holds needles well; white pine - long soft needles, used for roping and wreaths; Scotch pine - medium-length needles, may be somewhat yellowish; red pine and Austrian pine - long needles
- ◆ presence of pitch unpleasant & sticky
- ◆ widely available and inexpensive

Spruce 12

- ◆ short stiff needles
- ◆ may be quite prickly
- ◆ needles hold reasonably well, but fall when dry
- ◆ blue spruce prized for its bluish color

771

772

Pine cone wreath with gold cord bow

A circle of plant material is an age-old favorite for decorating doors, walls and tables. The wreath as a design form dates from the Roman era or even earlier. Then wreaths were fashioned of leaves and flowers and given to special heroes.

At Christmas, an evergreen wreath with a big red bow is the most traditional interpretation of this ancient design form. There are endless variations in the construction of a basic wreath and the way it is decorated.

Wreaths have been made from many different materials, such as cones, straw, grapevines, corn husks, herbs, dried flowers, bread dough and fabric. Some of these materials must be attached to wreath forms, which are commercially available in wire, styrofoam or straw. If the wreath needs to be kept fresh longer, a wire form can be filled with moist sphagnum moss. One could also use the *O-Ring* by Smithers Oasis, a piece of wettable *Oasis* fused to a plastic ring and designed to keep flowers fresh.

Mixed evergreen wreath used as a centerpiece with four candles

The following **summary** lists several forms of wreath mechanics and describes how to attach the evergreens.

Wreath Forms

Metal contour

Weave greens between wire mesh and secure by wrapping with paddle wire, florists' cord or raffia.

To keep materials fresh longer, fill form with moist sphagnum moss; insert materials in the moss as you wrap them with raffia.

Metal with clamps

Bunch evergreens and push clamps down over them to hold.

Straw

Pin on evergreens with greening pins or attach wooden or metal picks to them and insert in straw.

Styrofoam

Pin on evergreens with greening pins or attach wooden or metal picks to them and insert in styrofoam. Styrofoam wreath forms are not strong enough for large projects.

Single hoop of wire or plastic tubing

Bunch greens and secure with paddle wire. Coat hangers can be used for small wreaths. Large plastic tubing has enough strength for larger wreaths.

[redacted]

Bows are common decorations for wreaths. They should be in good proportion to the overall size of the wreath. The larger the wreath, the wider the ribbon can be to make an appropriate-size bow. Number 9 ribbon is a good choice for medium-sized wreaths ranging from 12 to 16 inches in diameter. Number 5 ribbon should be considered for smaller wreaths and #40 for larger ones.

Ribbons may be chosen from the vast array of materials, colors and patterns that are available. Velvet ribbon is a Christmas favorite, and plastic waterproof ribbon has a special use on pieces that will be used outdoors. Other types of ribbon include satin, cotton, lace, metallic and burlap. Special holiday patterns include plaid, dots and hundreds of prints.

The bow can be placed in any position around the circle. There may even be two or more bows, perhaps connected by several streamers of ribbon. There may also be no bow; not every wreath requires one. If the design is effective without one, don't use a bow. Some suggestions for placement of bows are illustrated here.

Additional decorations, in the form of lights, ornaments, fruit, nuts, figurines, stuffed animals, birds, artificial flowers or dried materials, may be added to wreaths. Following are some guidelines to consider when decorating a wreath.

Bow Placement on Wreath

At the bottom

At the top

At the upper left

[redacted]

1. Develop a focal point at the bow by clustering ornaments or plant materials in that area. Work through the bow to develop depth and a feeling of unity. This is similar to working the bow into a corsage.

2. If using a large figurine or stuffed animal, position it at the focal area, most likely over the bow. Make sure the figure is not buried and that it appears stable and well balanced. Some figures are more effective if they appear to look toward the viewer.

3. If you are extending smaller items around the wreath, consider clustering them rather than scattering them randomly.

4. Branches and twigs may be used to create a mini-arrangement attached to the wreath. These arrangements should not be so large that they overpower the wreath.

5. If no bow is used and decorations are placed all around the wreath, establish a predictable pattern of repetition. Let some materials dominate others in size and amount used. Develop a full look by placing decorations to the inside and outside edges of the wreath as well as in the middle.

6. Interest and motion can be introduced by spiraling materials around the wreath. Ribbon, strings of beads, grapevines or other flexible linear material can be used. Another variation is to spiral ribbon in both directions, resulting in a cross pattern on the front of the wreath.

7. Lights may be attached with greening pins to a styrofoam or straw wreath form before greens are added. Distribute lights evenly around the circle and from side to side. Use one greening pin for each light and leave enough cord free so the lights will not be buried by the greens. When lights are used in a wreath covered with baby's breath or other dried materials, consider spray-painting the wreath form and light cord the same color as the dried materials in order to hide them. First cover the lights with foil to protect them from the paint.

8. A wreath set on the table and used as a centerpiece is especially effective when candles are added. Advent wreaths have four candles which mark the weeks before Christmas (see page 381). It is traditional to light only one candle the first week and then to light an additional candle each week until all are lighted. Some people include a taller candle in the center to light on Christmas Eve. Advent wreaths can be used in homes. They are also found in most churches, displayed on pedestals or tables, or suspended from the ceiling by cords.

777

773

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

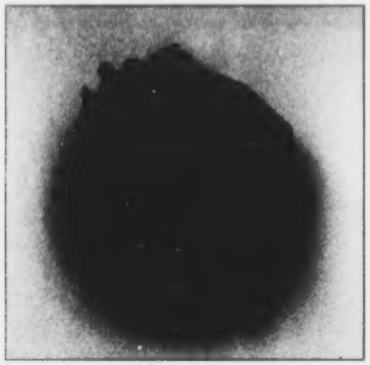
A. Christmas Wreath

Materials:

12" straw wreath form wrapped in green plastic
greening pins
assorted evergreen boughs
artificial holly berries and flocked branches
#9 red velvet ribbon
one teddy bear ornament 3" to 4" long
wooden picks

1. Place the wreath form on a table at a height that is comfortable for you. Do not unwrap the green plastic since it helps hide the straw.

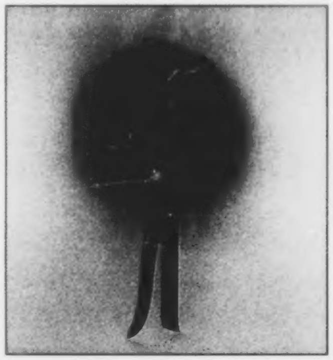
2. Cut the evergreens into pieces about 3 inches long. Group two to four pieces and hold them together on the form while securing them with a greening pin.



Continue with several more clusters in the same area. Place some to the inside edge and some to the outside edge so that the form is fully covered in that area.

3. Pin more clusters just below the first ones so that the second layer overlaps the first, hiding the greening pins. Remember to continue covering the inside and outside edges as well as the top. Continue around the wreath until it is full and round. If any pieces stick out, pin them in or cut them off so the overall look is round and neat.

4. Make a bow with 3-inch loops from the velvet ribbon. Make a pair of streamers about 12 inches long with sharply tapered points. Attach to wooden stakes and insert in the center at the bottom of the wreath.



5. Fasten the bear over the bow. If it is connected to a heavy wire, insert that into the straw wreath. If not, attach it to the bow with hot glue.

6. Develop a crescent of holly berries and flocked branches around the bow and bear. Work some pieces through the bow and around the bear. Use greening pins or hot glue to attach the holly and branches.

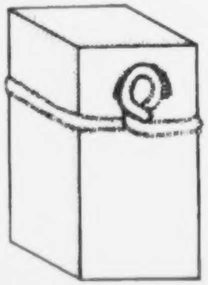
(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. *Christmas Swag*

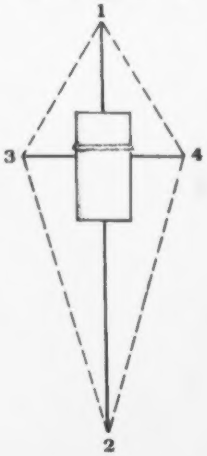
A Christmas swag usually consists of an elongated grouping of evergreen boughs designed to be hung on a wall or door. It can be decorated with a bow and accessories much as a wreath can. Several evergreen boughs tied or wired together make a simple swag. In the following exercise a diamond-shaped swag will be made on a piece of styrofoam to give more control in placement of the materials.

Materials:
6" x 3" piece of 2"-thick styrofoam
2 chenille stems
evergreens (spruce or fir and boxwood)
white glittered branches
two doves (3"-5")
#9 velvet ribbon
wooden picks



1. Twist the chenille stems together; wrap around the piece of styrofoam about two-thirds up from the bottom and form a loop on the back. The loop will be used to hang the completed swag.

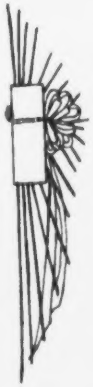
2. Lay the styrofoam on the table and use spruce or fir to establish the outline of an elongated diamond pattern. Placement 1 should extend about 5 inches above the top of the styrofoam; placement 2 about 12 inches below the bottom of the styrofoam; and placements 3 and 4 about 3 inches beyond the edges of the styrofoam. Place the branches toward the back of the styrofoam so they will lie flat against the door or wall.



3. Continue developing the diamond shape. When you are finished, you should have a diamond of greens, one-third above the center of the styrofoam and two-thirds below. Taper your filler branches in from the diamond points to avoid a rounded, bulgy look.

4. Make a bow and a pair of 12-inch streamers. Attach these to wooden picks and insert in the center of the styrofoam.

5. Develop the center part of the swag (the focal area) with additional small pieces of spruce or fir so that the greatest fullness and depth are around the bow.



(side view)

6. Repeat the design with boxwood. Its small shiny leaves are a good contrast to the evergreen needles. Check to see that the styrofoam is covered on the sides and that the bow has been incorporated into the design by working some boxwood through it.

7. Repeat the design shape with the glittered branches.

8. Attach the doves to the bow using a hot glue gun.

Christmas designs are merely theme variations of basic designs. Centerpieces, basket arrangements, and mantel pieces can be adapted to the Christmas holiday by using evergreens and adding the appropriate candles, ribbon, ornaments, figurines or a touch of glitter. Permanent arrangements made from silk, plastic or dried material are popular with some people because of their lasting quality.

Candles, as a source of color in the design, add a festive touch to arrangements and create a special atmosphere when lighted. Candles come in many lengths and diameters. Votive lights are glass cups which hold small candles. Since the flame is within the glass cup, votive lights provide a safer source of candlelight.

Ribbon, velvet tubing, gold cord and glittered branches are important elements in creating a festive holiday feeling. Shiny balls, strings of beads, fruit clusters, holly berries, and numerous decorative ornaments can instantly give an arrangement a Christmas look. The floral designer should be aware of new trends as well as old favorites and should always be ready to make new and creative combinations of materials.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

A. Christmas Centerpiece

Materials:

6" rectangular plastic container
floral foam
one 12" red candle
6 wooden picks
waterproof tape
evergreens (fir and boxwood)
#5 red velvet ribbon
3-5 wrapped package ornaments on picks
2 glittered white branches

1. Place soaked foam in the container and secure with waterproof tape.

2. Attach two wooden picks to the base of the candle with waterproof tape (**A**).

3. Insert picks and candle in middle of foam so the base of the candle rests on the surface of the foam (**B**).

A

B

4. Use the first four placements of fir to create a **diamond shape.**

5. Add more small pieces of fir to develop the diamond shape, but be careful not to crowd or bury the candle. Create the "in-outedness" necessary for depth.

6. Repeat the shape with boxwood or a second evergreen if available.

7. Make two bows from velvet ribbon and insert one on each side of the candle.

8. Repeat the diamond shape with pieces of glittered branches. Let them extend beyond the evergreens to give an airy look.

9. Insert the package ornaments on picks so that there is at least one on each of the four sides of the arrangement. The ones on the short sides should come out through the bow. **Do not sink them in too deep.**

(continued)

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

B. Cinnamon Stick Votive

Materials:

6 cinnamon sticks, each 6" long
1 votive cup with candle
holiday ribbon
evergreens (fresh or permanent)
berry clusters
hot glue gun

1. Criss-cross the cinnamon sticks and hot glue them together at the point of intersection.

2. Hot glue greens to the cinnamon sticks at the point of intersection.

3. Add the votive cup with hot glue so that it sits level on the cinnamon sticks.

4. Make a bow. Secure it at the base of the votive cup with hot glue.

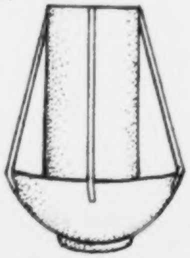
5. Add pieces of baby's breath to extend out from the bow and cinnamon sticks.

C. Boxwood Tree

Materials:

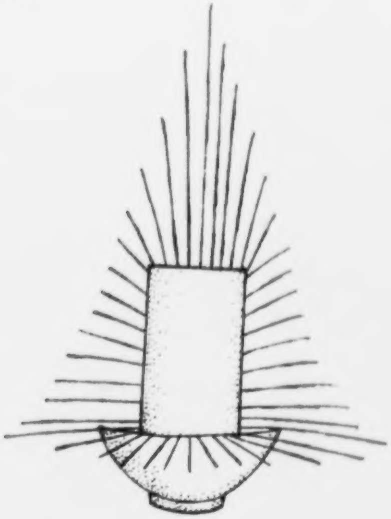
low round plastic container
floral foam
waterproof tape
boxwood
ornaments

1. Place the block of soaked foam on end in the dish. Tape foam to the bowl securely with waterproof tape.



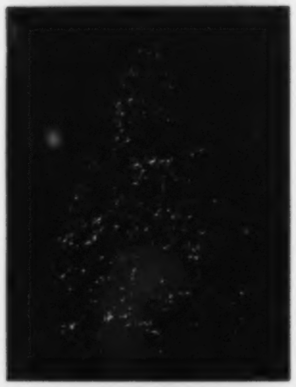
2. Establish a circle of boxwood at the base of the foam. The best way to insert the boxwood is to bunch several pieces together in your hand and push them into the foam as a unit.

3. Continue filling in, gradually tapering to a point so that an overall conical shape is formed.



4. Decorate the tree with ornaments of an appropriate small size. If water is kept in the container, the boxwood will stay fresh for several weeks.

Silk Christmas arrangement: teddy bear on a grapevine wreath



German statice Christmas tree made on grapevine cone

Poinsettias accented with gold dried materials and tubing

Christmas Cemetery Pieces

Headstone Plaques

Metal plaque with styrofoam

Ground Arrangement

Cemetery vase

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

[illegible]

A custom frequently observed at Christmas is decorating the cemetery in remembrance of those who have passed away. Often the cemetery piece is a wreath on an easel or an arrangement of greens in a metal cylinder anchored by prongs pushed into the ground (page 393). Pine cones, red ruscus and red plastic bows are common accessories that withstand the weather.

One type of decoration is made in styrofoam and attached to a metal plaque for a headstone (page 393). This will fit over the flat top of upright stones. Another piece is the grave pillow, a rectangular arrangement of greens that is supported by a wooden frame. It is placed on the ground but displayed at a 90° angle to the ground.

Another winter cemetery piece is the grave blanket. Larger than a pillow, the grave blanket is supposed to lie flat on the ground. The greens may be attached directly to chicken wire that is stretched over a wooden frame. Or they may be inserted into styrofoam that has been attached to a plywood base. The blanket is usually decorated with a #40 plastic bow, pine cones and ruscus.

Some grave blankets are very large, measuring 8 feet by 4 feet. Because of the weight of the greens in such a large piece, a strong framework is needed. A smaller, lighter version can be made directly on poultry netting without a wooden frame.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

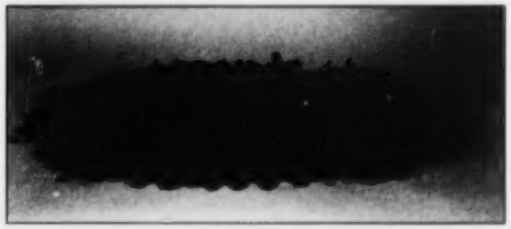
Grave Blanket

Materials:

2' x 3' piece of 2" poultry netting
evergreens
#24 florist wire on a paddle
#40 red plastic ribbon
large pine cones
red ruscus

1. Lay larger pieces of evergreen on the poultry netting with tips pointing outward along each edge. Keep tips fairly even. Make sure at least half of each branch is lying on the poultry netting for support. Fasten each branch to the poultry netting with short lengths of paddle wire.

2. Work inward by adding a second overlapping layer of evergreens to conceal the base of the outer layer. Continue until the wire is covered.



3. Make a large full bow from the #40 plastic ribbon. Make a set of streamers about 2 feet long. Wire the bow and streamers to the middle of the blanket.

4. Wire the pine cones and insert them around the bow. Wire them to the blanket.

5. Add the ruscus pieces around the bow and wire them in.

6. Wire in additional clusters of evergreens if they are needed to develop more fullness in the center.

[illegible]

There are a number of holidays throughout the year that florists are called upon to interpret with flowers. A feeling appropriate to the holiday can be attained through the designer's choice of flowers in season, colors, containers, accessories and ribbon. Consult the list of holidays on this page for suggested color schemes and accessories.

Below and on the following pages are examples of arrangements for various holidays. Look them over. Then think about other designs also suitable for the same holiday.

Holiday Color Schemes and Accessories

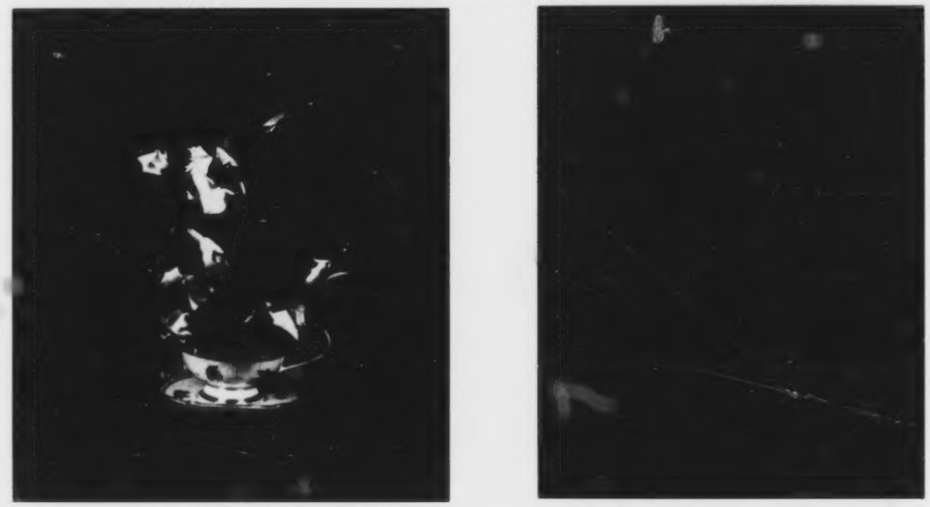
Holiday	Color Scheme	Accessories
New Year's Eve	black, white, silver, multicolor	balloons, noise makers, streamers, top hats, clock, Father Time, baby
Valentine's Day	red, white, pink	hearts, cupids, lace
Presidents' Day	red, white, blue	profiles of Washington & Lincoln, cherry tree & ax, American flag
St. Patrick's Day	green, white	shamrocks, leprechauns, pipes
Easter	yellow, purple, green, pink	Easter rabbits, chicks, ducks, baskets, colored eggs
Secretaries' Day/ Boss's Day	all colors	office supplies and equipment
Mother's Day/ Father's Day/ Grandparents' Day	all colors	items that suggest the individual
Memorial Day/ Fourth of July/ Labor Day	red, white, blue	American flag, fireworks, stars
Sweetest Day	pastel colors	candy, ribbon, cards, hearts, balloons
Halloween	orange, black	black cats, witches, brooms, jack-o'lanterns, corn shocks
Thanksgiving	yellow, brown, orange	turkey, Pilgrims, cornucopia, Indian corn, pumpkins

Easter

Valentine's Day

St. Patrick's Day

Mother's Day



793

794

ARRANGEMENTS FOR AUTUMN HOLIDAYS

Grandparents' Day

Asymmetrical Design in Wicker Tray

Sweetest Day

Turkey Motif

Thanksgiving

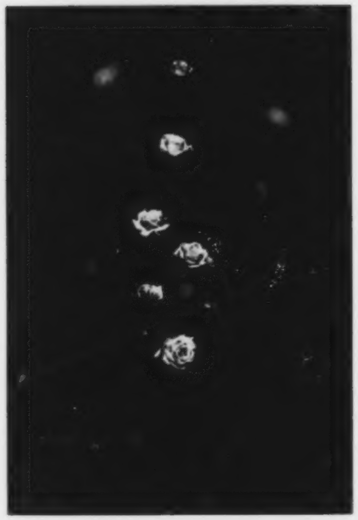
Autumn Splendor

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

During the year there are other events in people's lives for which flowers can be a symbol of happiness, sharing, love or concern. As requests for these kinds of arrangements come in, the style and flower choices will, of course, depend on preferences of the customer and also on what is available at that time of year. Flowers for parties and the office or hospital are examples. The following list includes some of the special occasions other than holidays for which flowers may be requested.

- Anniversary
- Birthday
- New baby
- Parties
- Business opening
- Get-Well
- Confirmation
- Bar Mitzvah

Business Opening

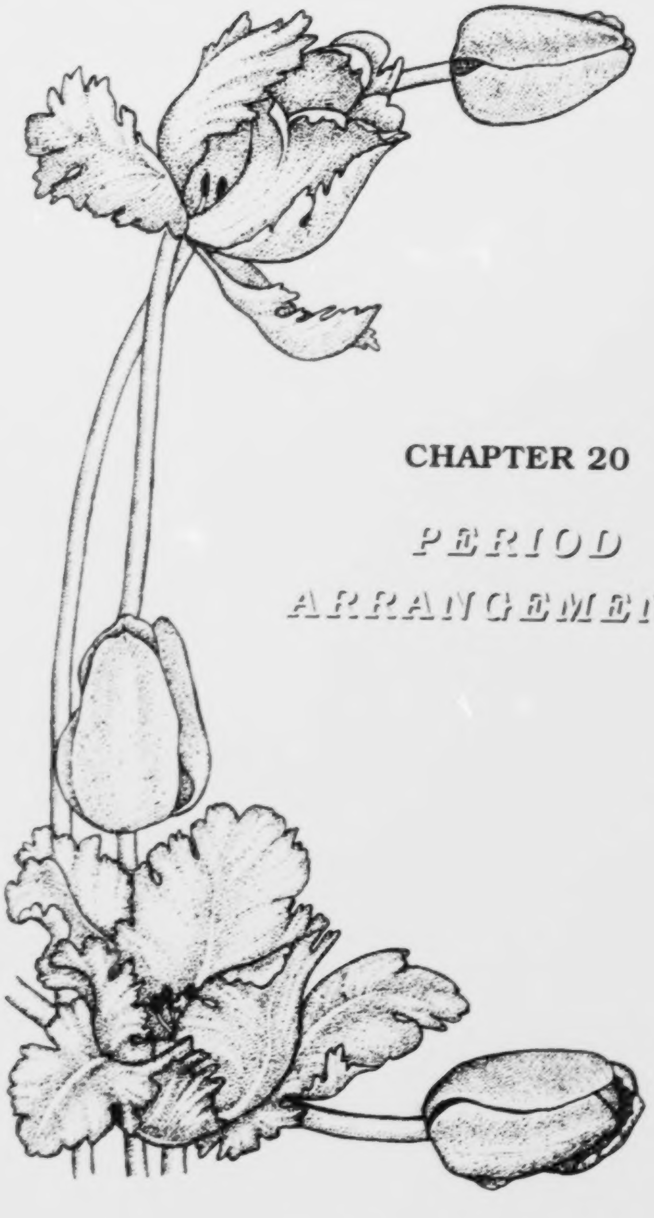


Birthday

SPECIAL OCCASION FLOWERS

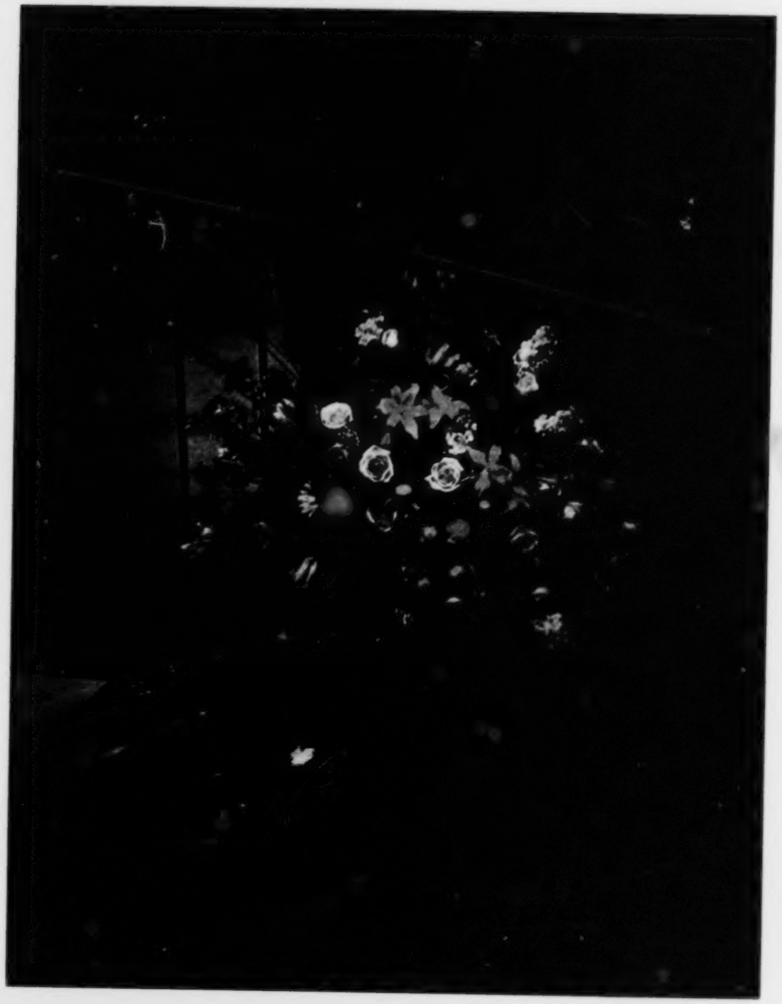
Get-Well

Anniversary

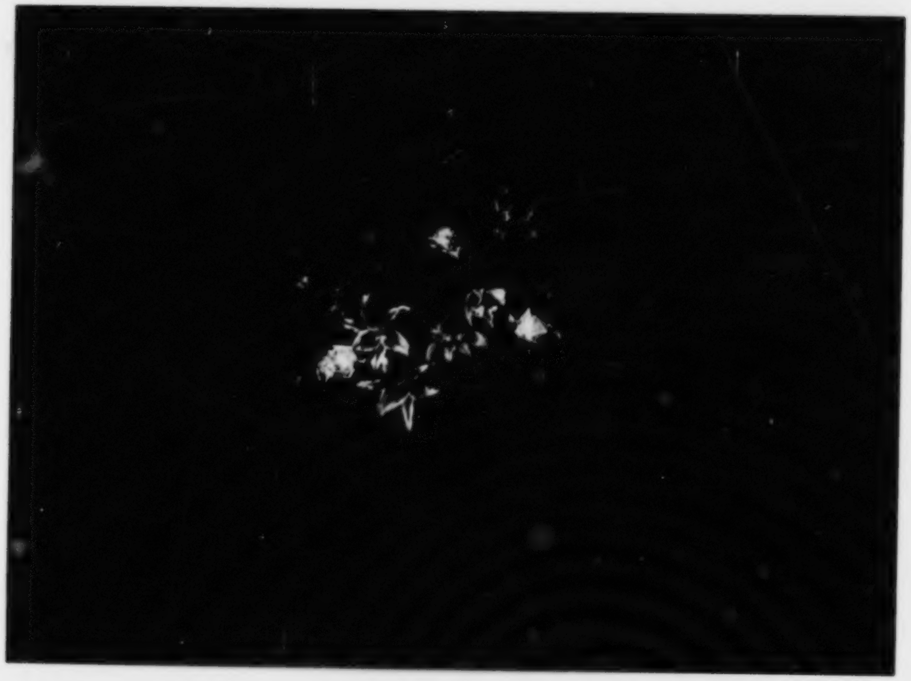


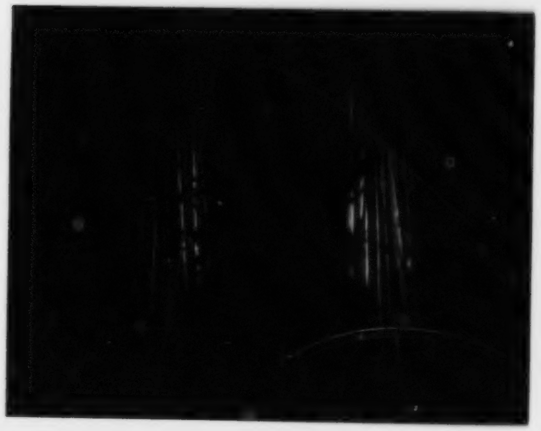
CHAPTER 20

PERIOD ARRANGEMENTS



BEST COPY AVAILABLE





— PERIOD ARRANGEMENTS —

Period flower arrangements are styles of floral design that were used during various periods in history. Some styles, such as Oriental, Williamsburg and Victorian, have continued to be popular in interior decorating and design. Other styles are seldom seen except in pictures or paintings, or when the design style is intentionally recreated.

Two very different concepts of floral design developed independently of each other.

1) ***Oriental style*** is based mostly on carefully placed branches, flowers and small amounts of foliage. Each placement has meaning, as does the angle of placement. Usually materials are used very sparingly in an Oriental arrangement and there are many voids within the design.

2) ***Occidental style*** began to develop in early Egyptian and Middle Eastern cultures. Pyramids, sheaves of grain, lotus pods, and other natural symbols of abundance were constructed. Later the Romans and Greeks used wreaths and festoons of floral materials as decorations. During the Renaissance, large vases of loosely placed flowers were used, as shown in illustrated manuscripts and paintings from that era. Ideas from each of these periods are still used today.

Starting with Dutch flower arrangements in the 1600's, definite period styles are recognized. More information is known about these later design styles because they were painted by the artists of the time. The styles changed over the years as they were developed in different countries during different periods in history.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The most dramatic change in floral design was the combining of Oriental line concepts with Occidental mass concepts. The resulting line-mass design style began to evolve in the 1920's and was especially popular in the United States for many years. Many contemporary design styles are no longer line-mass, but instead exhibit concepts that have their origins in Oriental and Occidental period designs. Good design ideas are continually being recycled and combined in exciting new ways by creative floral designers.

The major characteristics of some of the period styles are discussed in the following sections.

ORIENTAL

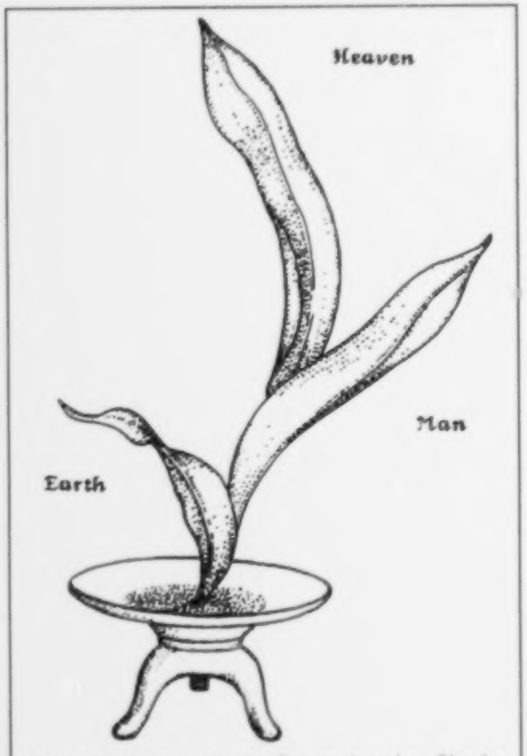
Japanese flower arranging, known in general as **Ikebana**, had its origin in China where Buddhist monks placed floral offerings on the altar. Over the years very strict rules developed regarding the placement and meaning of the flowers in arrangements. The different styles of Oriental design can be fully appreciated only by studying them in detail under a master teacher. The principles and guidelines taught for a particular style are referred to as a "school." **Ikenobo** is the school from which the others stemmed. Some other schools of Japanese design are **Nageire** (informal arrangements), **Moribana** (garden scenes), **Kabebana** (hanging designs), and **Morimono** (designs with fruit and vegetables).

Sho-ka is a classic design form which expresses the beauty of nature through three lines representing heaven (*shin*), man (*soe*) and earth (*tai*). These originate from a common trunk (*nemoto*). Other flowers or leaves called helpers may also be used in the design.

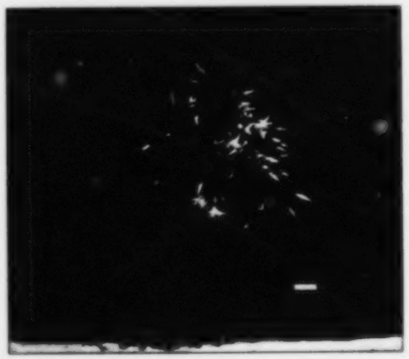
The container is an important part of an Oriental arrangement. The **usabata**, an urn-shaped container with a saucer-like top, is appropriate for Ikenobo arrangements. Low flat containers with the water showing are used for certain other styles. The container may be set on a base, often made of black lacquered wood or bamboo. Pebbles are sometimes used at the base of the flowers to hide the mechanics without adding visual weight to the design.

Some characteristics of Oriental arrangements are:

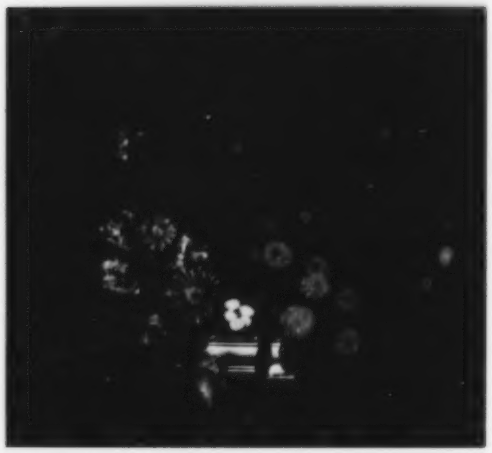
1. Restraint in the use of plant material
2. Line designs with considerable voids, which may necessitate extensive pruning of some branches
3. Emphasis on the form of the plant material
4. Creation of a natural feeling, but one that is also carefully controlled
5. Good development of the third dimension (depth)
6. Neat, well supported placements and clean-cut lines



The main lines in classic Oriental style - Sho-ka



Spring



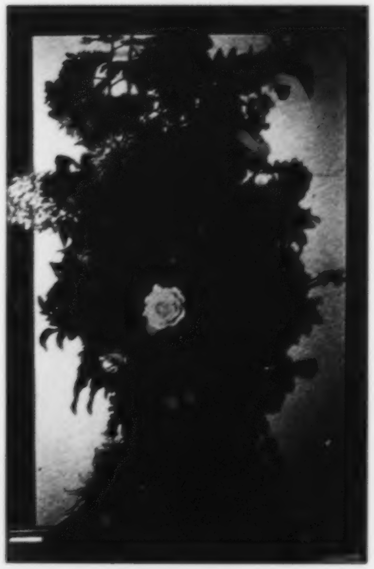
Autumn

[illegible]

The essence of Dutch and Flemish floral design was beautifully captured by the Dutch flower painters of the seventeenth century. They portrayed large lavish arrangements of mixed flowers in sturdy metal or alabaster containers. Rich colors and large amounts of varied and exotic materials were used in the designs. Examples include colorful striped Rembrandt tulips and the regal crown imperial (Fritillaria), which are frequently seen in many of the paintings. Accessories like bird nests, butterflies, fruit and shells were often used at the base of the arrangement. Rich velvet or satin cloth sometimes formed a background for the arrangement or was draped at the base of the design.

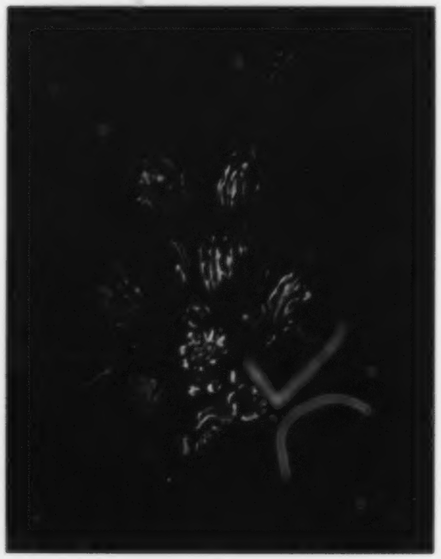
Early summer

805



Late summer

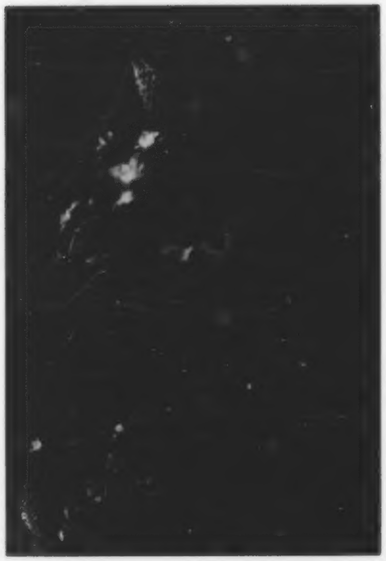
806



Painting by a Dutch artist

[illegible]

The French developed a mass arrangement which was much lighter and more airy than that of the Dutch. They used delicate flowers in pastel colors and often with long, wispy stems. The flowers were never crowded and the gently arching stems were allowed to show. The containers were delicate, either crystal or fine-painted porcelain. Figurines with intricate detail often accompanied the designs.



Pastel colors used in a two-tiered design

Motion is expressed by figurine and sweeping line of flowers.

GEORGIAN

The English favored a formal triangular style during the 1700s. This style, known as Georgian, featured formal flowers like roses and carnations. Classical urns were used as containers. Color schemes were limited to one or two colors.

An all-white design using roses, carnations, and freesia

Georgian design with blue scilla and white carnations

807

808

[illegible]

The decorative arts in colonial America were heavily influenced by the English. Arrangements containing boxwood, magnolia and ivy combined with garden flowers were made in the summer. At Christmastime native berries, pods, cones and greens were used with imported fruit to create a festive holiday mood. Designs of dried flowers from gardens and fields added charm and a warm feeling to homes during the rest of the year.

Design forms popular during this period were the fan, triangles, cones and more casual mass groupings of materials. Containers included ornate silver and porcelain pieces as well as the more utilitarian pottery, pewter and baskets.

The five-fingered vase, a typical Williamsburg container, was used to create a fan-shaped arrangement by wedging materials in the fingers. Imported Oriental porcelain and Dutch delftware in blue and white patterns were frequently used as containers to hold flowers. Wealthy homes sometimes had a beautiful silver epergne, a multi-branched composite container that could hold fruit or flowers and serve as the table centerpiece for elegant dinners.

At Christmas cones of apples and boxwood are appropriate table decorations for these homes. A fan featuring a pineapple, apples, magnolia and boxwood makes a special over-the-door holiday welcoming piece in the Williamsburg style. This can be used in any home, but is especially effective in houses with an older style of architecture. (See Chapter 19.)

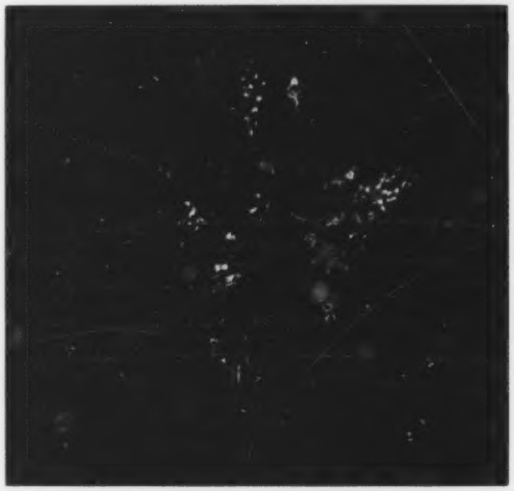
Dried flower designs were used in Williamsburg.

Five-fingered vase supports fan-shaped design of mixed flowers.

[illegible]

This English style of the 1800's developed a compact design form with a romantic feeling. Rich containers of silver and porcelain were filled abundantly with roses, carnations and lilies. Lace, velvet and satin often formed a base or background for the arrangements.

The Victorian design style is sometimes criticized as overdone and lacking in depth. Some regard it as a lavish style befitting only the era that produced it – an era of elaborate ornamentation in clothing, household furnishings and architecture. Dried flowers under glass domes, cornucopias brimming with fruit and flowers, decorated lace fans on Christmas trees, and silver-trimmed mirrors used as bases for arrangements are examples that echo the era.



Conical Biedermeir

Topiary

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

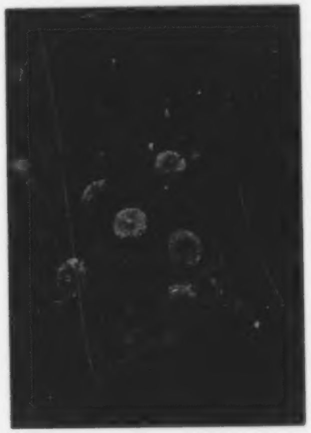
1. Investigate one of the period design styles that particularly interests you. Learn about the flowers that were used, the containers they were typically placed in, the mechanics available to support flowers, and traditional accessories often used. If appropriate materials can be obtained, make an arrangement that suggests the period style you have researched. Report back to the class on your findings so that other students can gain from your experience.

2. Invite to the class someone who has studied Japanese flower arranging. Ask that person to demonstrate the making of an Oriental arrangement and explain the meaning behind the placements.

3. Visit a museum to study decorative art that is typical of various periods in history. Discuss what kinds of flower arrangements you think would be harmonious with each style.

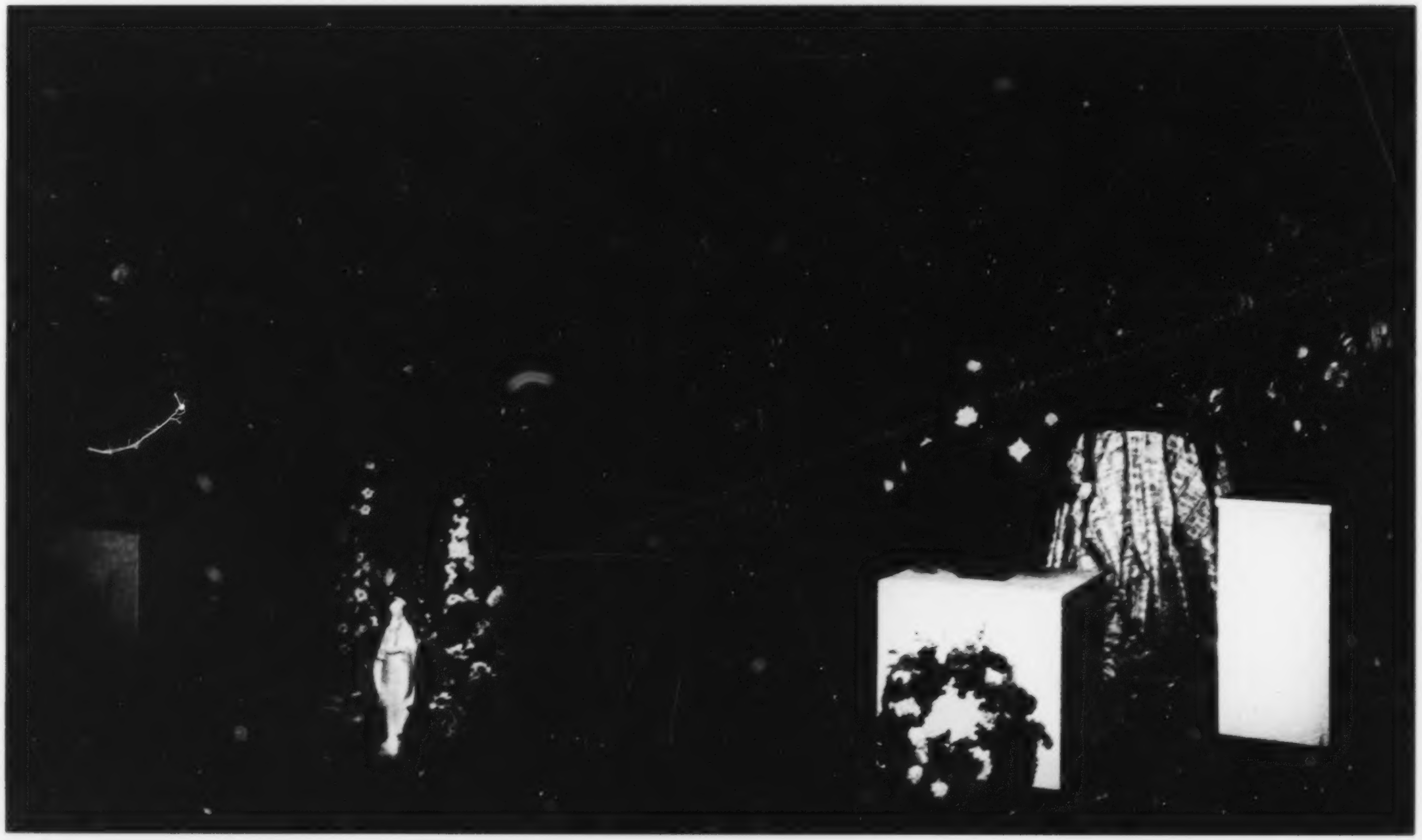
Monochromatic Dutch

Classical Hogarth curve



Neo-Classical

Display of Period Arrangements



813

814

CHAPTER 21

CONTEMPORARY ARRANGEMENTS

CONTEMPORARY ARRANGEMENTS

Floral artists are continually striving to find creative ways to display flowers. As new styles become known and accepted, they usually acquire specific names that enable people to communicate about them. Collectively, these "new" designs, which differ significantly from the traditional ways of arranging flowers, are called contemporary designs. Over time, as styles and trends change, designs that are considered contemporary also change.

A good foundation in design principles and a mastery of basic design skills should be gained before attempting to construct or evaluate contemporary designs. There are good and bad contemporary arrangements, just as there are good and bad traditional arrangements. The principles of design must be considered when judging an arrangement, along with the perceived creativity, distinction and usage of the arrangement.

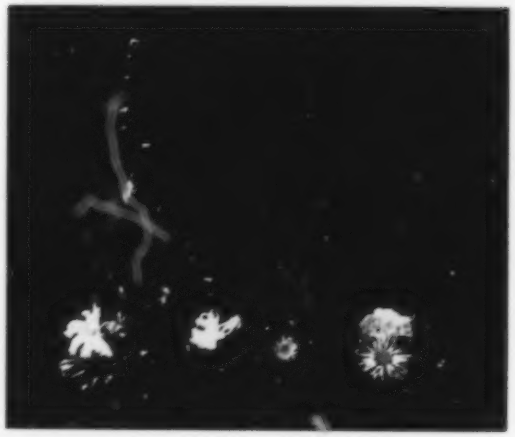
817

818

Some of the new styles suggest nature; others reflect European period designs. Some reach into the world of bizarre abstraction, where flowers are regarded as solid and textural forms rather than according to their traditional values, and where non-floral items may also be used in design.

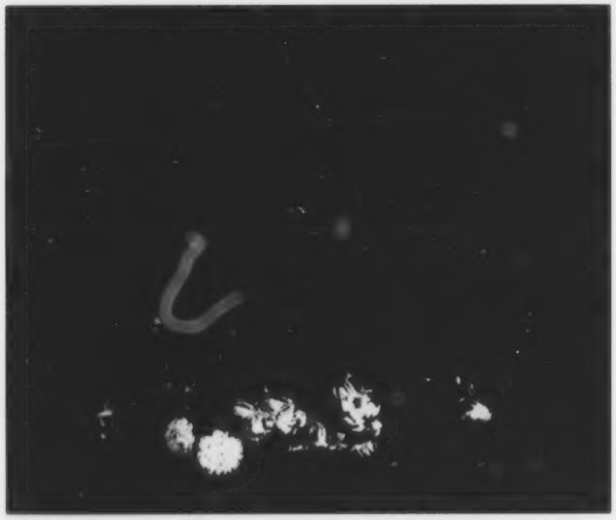
Regardless of personal preference, designers who consider themselves floral artists must keep an open mind. They need first to develop an understanding of each new style and to evaluate it on its own merit; then they can decide carefully how it can be used most appropriately.

The examples on these pages are representative of some of the contemporary styles. Look for differences from the traditional design techniques as well as similarities.



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Parallel systems



Parallel systems

In a parallel system arrangement, ninety percent of the material is parallel with respect to each other. The dominant line may be either vertical or horizontal. There is a sharp delineation between the parallel bands of materials. Liatris, gladioli, Scotch broom and other linear flowers and foliages are natural choices for parallel arrangements, but some other forms can also be lined up to create the desired effect.

Parallel arrangements are often designed in long low containers filled with floral foam. This style is suitable for any modern setting and is also equally appropriate for offices or sympathy flowers.

New Convention

New convention is an extension of parallel design in which the vertical lines are combined with strong horizontal lines. The lines meet at a 90° angle. The horizontal lines often come forward off the base of the vertical lines.

New convention arrangements have an architectural quality because of the strong lines and sharp angles. They are suitable for the ***hi-tech*** look in a contemporary setting.

821

822

[illegible]

Many styles of arrangement take on a new look when colors are grouped within the design. In contemporary design, short-stemmed material may be grouped at the base of an arrangement using a clustering or terracing technique. In more traditional designs, the wedges or segments of color may be blended with each other for a more natural look.

Centerpiece color grouped with strong elements of parallelism

Color grouped asymmetrical triangle

VEGETATIVE ARRANGEMENT

In a vegetative arrangement the flowers are placed in groupings or patches representative of the way they might grow naturally. Segments of color, sometimes in triangular wedges, make up the design. These segments may cross at certain points, but there is no total integration of contrasting colors as found in most traditional designs.

Flowers are featured in their natural growth forms. For example, tulips are allowed to stretch upward on their stems, and snapdragons may be shown as if bending toward the light. The vegetative bouquet is a good choice for casual settings and informal entertaining.

Vegetative design with classical garden feeling

Vegetative design in natural wooden container

Botanical style

[redacted]

The botanical style emphasizes the unique qualities of each type of plant used. Materials are combined as they might be in their natural environment. Individual flowers and plants are grouped and used in a position imitating their natural growth pattern.

[redacted]

The flowing design is an extended cascade of flowers and foliage in a container. Inspiration for this is a natural waterfall. Layers of material are intermingled to create depth. All elements must appear to flow gracefully in the same direction.

[redacted]

In the Pavé style, materials are placed close together to resemble a mosaic or a cobblestone street. Short-stemmed flowers, foliage, fruit, or other plant materials are set close to the surface of underlying floral foam. Different choices of pattern and contrasting colors and textures give distinction to each design. (See illustration on opposite page.)

Waterfall

825

826

[redacted]

The goal of abstract art is to express a quality apart from any recognizable object. Abstract paintings and sculpture express various qualities but are dissociated from what is real and natural. As a result they are frequently subject to different interpretations, and most certainly they evoke different reactions in the viewers.

In floral art, abstract design has evolved as a new approach in both Oriental and Western floral design circles. In these designs plant materials are used strictly for their structural qualities and in whatever way necessary to best express the abstract quality being portrayed, without representing any real objects. As a result, the flowers and foliages are used in an unconventional manner, frequently appearing upside down, hanging from strings, glued together as part of a larger construction, or dismembered into unrecognizable pieces.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

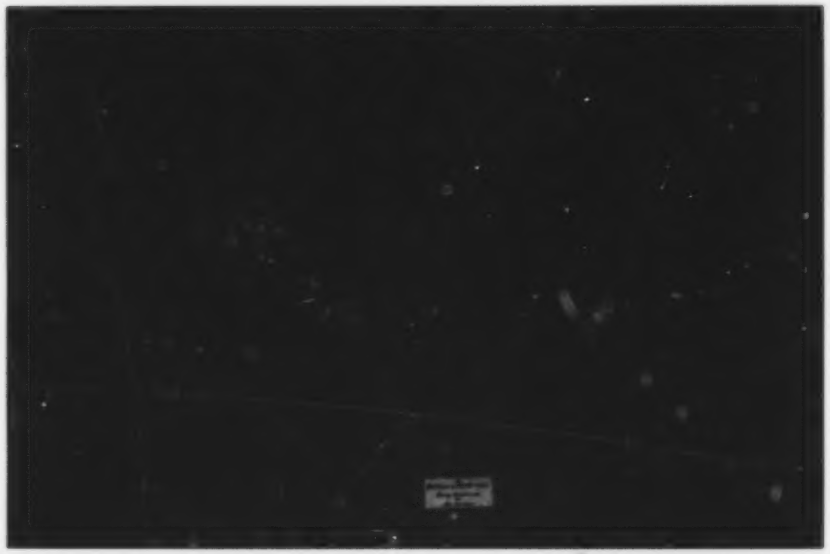
Abstract

[redacted]

New wave is a free-form style of design which enters into a creative and bizarre world. Flowers and foliages may be painted, often with bright fluorescent colors. Items like plastic and copper tubing, carved styrofoam, and clear pieces of lucite often find their way into new wave designs. Lights may be incorporated into the arrangements or used to shine onto them for special effects.

New wave designs exhibit a lot of depth and are attractive from various angles. They require a great deal of creativity in addition to a mastery of basic design principles. Just being different is not enough to make an arrangement a good new wave design.

Pavé



829

830

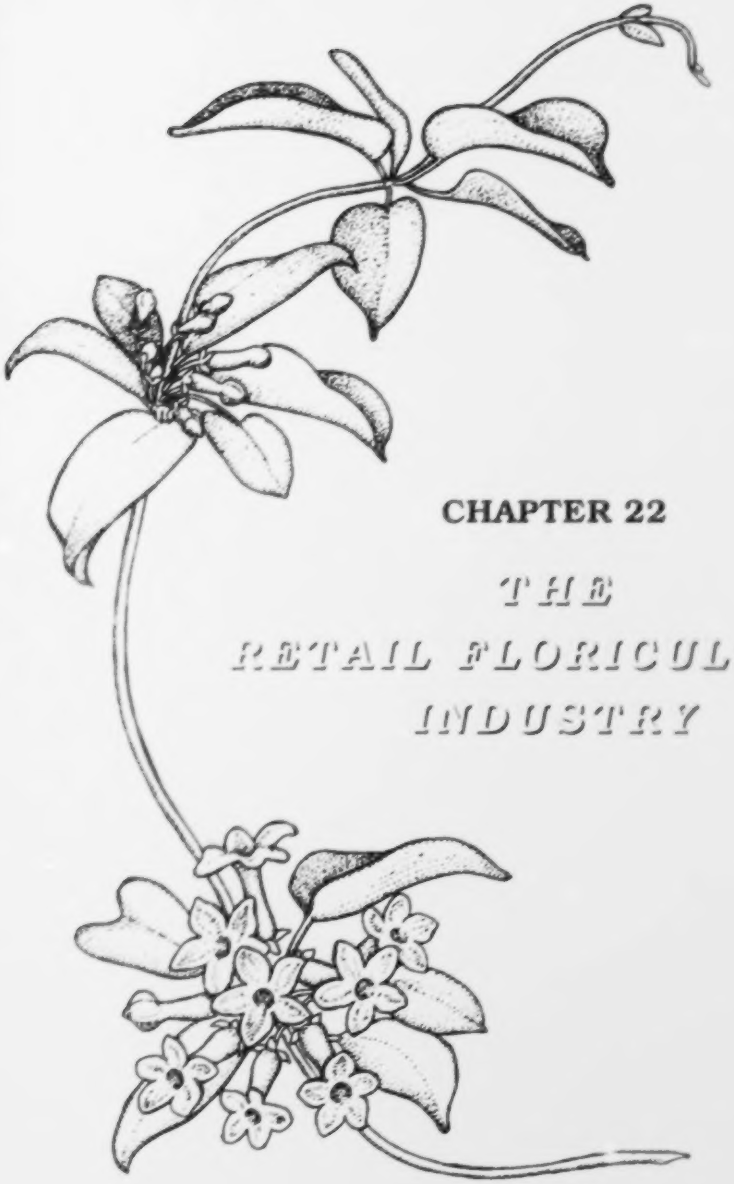
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Choose one contemporary design style and investigate it in depth using back issues of trade magazines. Describe several arrangements that fall into the classification you have chosen. List the characteristics that you believe are typical of the specific style. Share your information with the class.

2. What is your reaction to each of the contemporary design styles? Compare your reaction with that of other members of the class. Do you think these design styles would be accepted in your community? Have you seen any of these done by florists? Have you seen any at a flower show?

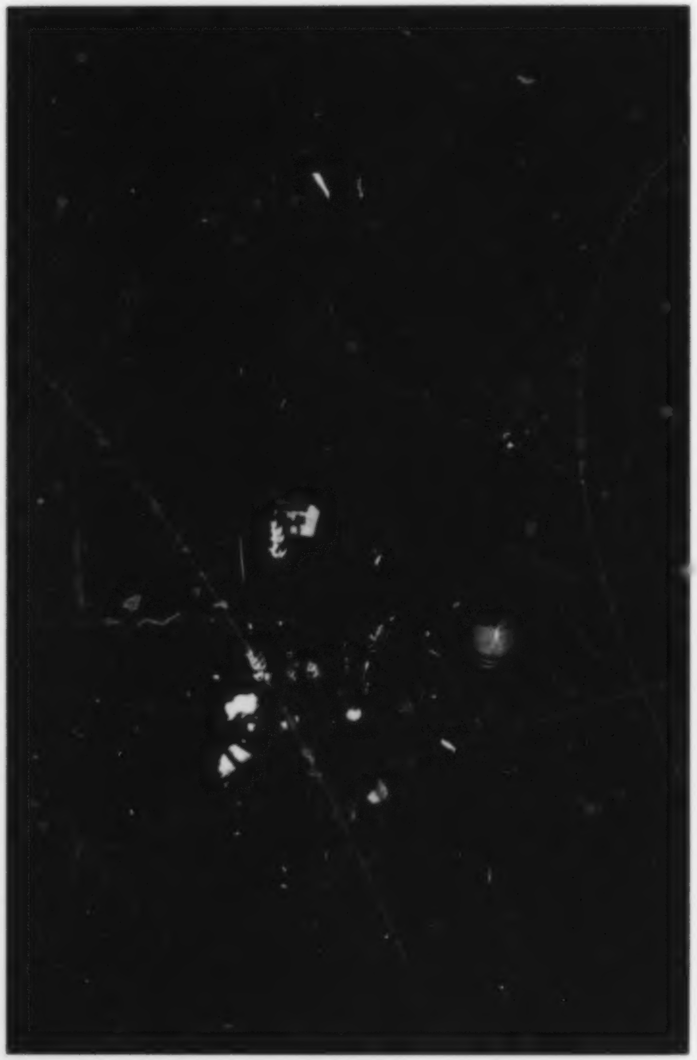
3. Imagine different situations where these designs could be used. Consider weddings, hospitals, funerals and businesses.

4. Construct a new wave design. Be as creative as possible. Use spray paint and non-floral items if they are available.



CHAPTER 22

THE RETAIL FLORICULTURE INDUSTRY



Major Reasons People Buy Flowers

- for funerals (sympathy flowers)
- for weddings
- as gifts or to decorate for seasonal holidays (Christmas, Valentine's Day, Easter, Thanksgiving)
- as gifts for special holidays (Secretary's Week, Sweetest Day, Mother-In-Law's Day)
- as get-well floral gifts
- as congratulatory gifts for new baby or other events
- as birthday and anniversary gifts
- to decorate for parties
- as business gifts

RETAIL FLORICULTURE INDUSTRY

The selling of flowers, living plants and related products is the heart of any retail floriculture business. These are aesthetic commodities that people traditionally seek to help them celebrate important events in their lives; to convey sympathy, appreciation or congratulations; and to add beauty to their environment. In many cases customers are willing to buy not only flower arrangements and plants, but also the services that go along with them. So, most retail florists offer consultation services, custom designing, delivery of floral products, and charge accounts.

DISTRIBUTION

Consumers of floral products may buy from either a typical retail florist, a garden center, or a mass marketing outlet like a discount store or grocery store. Retail florists, garden centers and mass marketers are collectively called **retailers** because they sell to the general public.

Retailers buy their flowers and supplies largely from wholesale florists(**wholesalers**). They may also buy directly from **manufacturers** of floral products and **growers** of plants and flowers (Fig. 22-1). Foreign flowers enter the market through **importers** located in key entry points to the country like Miami, New York and Los Angeles.

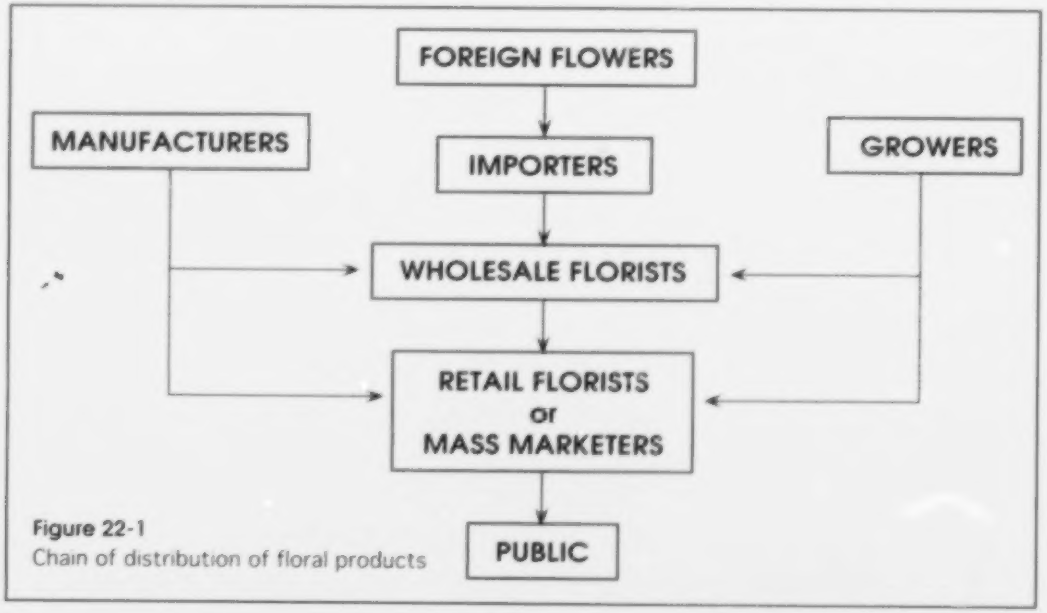


Figure 22-1
Chain of distribution of floral products

WORLD FLOWER MARKET

Over half of the cut flowers sold in the United States are imported from other countries (Fig. 22-2). Some key exporters of flowers to the U.S.A. are Colombia, Netherlands (Holland), Mexico, Thailand, Israel, Costa Rica, Guatemala, Peru, Kenya, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, South Africa, Australia and New Zealand.

The rapid transportation of a quality floral product to U.S. markets has resulted in an increasingly large assortment of flowers available to American consumers. Aggressive marketing campaigns and responsiveness to U.S. demand for flowers have resulted in foreign flowers accounting for an increasingly larger share of the market. The price, quality, availability and novelty of the product are factors that have caused Americans to buy more foreign flowers. Consequently, floral customers in the U.S. have become more dependent upon world markets. Therefore, a weather disturbance in Africa, political unrest in Central America, or an economic trade war with Southeast Asia may affect the price or availability of flowers in a local flower shop.

Floral products that are imported in large quantities include carnations, roses, chrysanthemums, statice, tulips, freesia, alstroemeria, gerbera daisies, gypsophila, orchids, lilies and chamaedorea.

Holland is estimated to have 65 percent of the world market in flowers. Many flowers produced in the Netherlands and other parts of Europe pass through the large flower auction at Aalsmeer, Holland before coming to the U.S. Part of the profit at the flower auction is used to market flowers worldwide. The Flower Council of Holland is effective in promoting Dutch flowers.

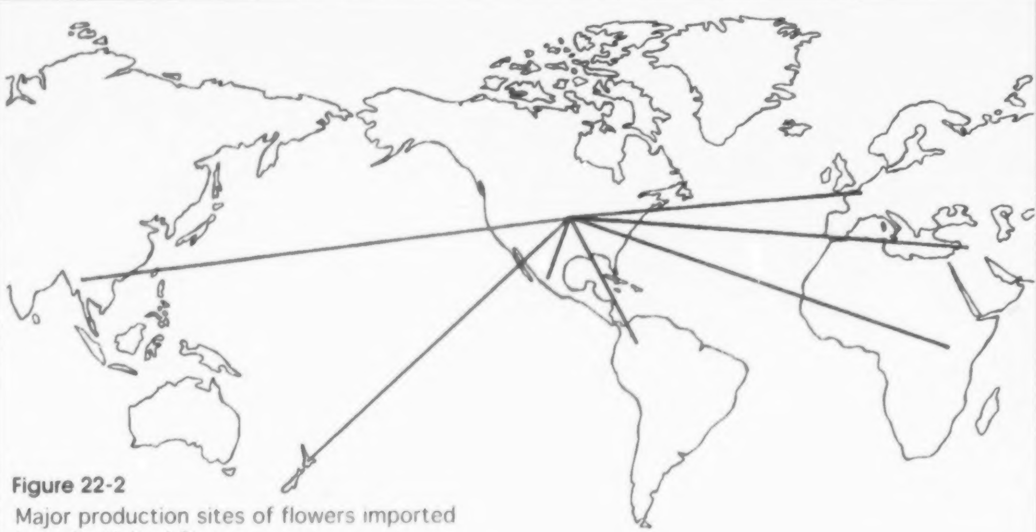


Figure 22-2
Major production sites of flowers imported into the United States

DOMESTIC FLOWER MARKET

The leading states in cut flower production are California, Florida, Colorado, Hawaii, and New York. The United States is the largest per capita buyer of flowers in the world. Yet, almost half of all households do not buy any kind of floral product. Greater marketing efforts are still needed to increase the total amount of flowers sold.

International marketing display in the Netherlands

FLORAL PRODUCTS

Fresh-cut flowers

Silk and dried flowers

Green and blooming plants

Custom designs

[illegible]

Though again broad generalizations are difficult, there are different categories of retail floral businesses that can be identified and recognized. These categories differ from one another not only in size and location, but also in their type of clientele, services available, merchandise offered for sale, and display techniques. Following are brief sketches of the different kinds of retail flower shops.

Average Retail Flower Shop

This kind of flower shop traditionally provides a wide range of floral products and services. Its retail sales area showcases seasonal merchandise and fresh flowers. Most retail flower shops are affiliated with one or more wire service organizations and do a considerable amount of telephone sales. Services typically include delivery, credit and consultation.

High Style Flower Shop

These flower shops are located in the suburbs of large urban areas. In general they cater to higher-income customers who are willing to pay for exceptional and unique designs. Special attention is given to service and to custom designing for special occasions.

Shopping Center Shop

Small retail shops, often branches of larger area shops, are located in the high-traffic areas of a mall or shopping center. Because of the greater number of walk-in sales, more attention is given to giftware and small decorative items.

Grocery Store Flower Shop

Flower shops in grocery stores have the advantage of a large number of walk-through customers. The focus is on impulse buying and small easy-to-carry items. Larger shops of this type may have a full range of services.

Discount Store - Flower Department

The emphasis is on potted plants, silk flowers and pre-packaged floral items. Sales are cash-and-carry, with competitive lower prices depending on a higher volume of sales to generate income and offset the lack of services.

Specialized Location

Small flower shops may be located in hospitals, hotels, department stores, college towns, apartment complexes, or even cruise ships. Their offerings vary according to the needs of their specialized clientele. Garden centers may also carry floral products.

FLORAL SERVICES

Information

Consultation

Flowers by Wire

LEASE
The Bell
Service
Credit

Delivery

MANAGER

OFFICE WORKER

DESIGNER/ SALESPERSON

841

[illegible]

Since most flower shops are quite small and do not have a large number of employees, each employee is often called upon to perform many different duties. Therefore, the more versatile and knowledgeable a person is, the more valuable an employee he or she will make. Only in very large shops is an employee allowed to be highly specialized; in smaller shops the employees usually have to share duties. Some of the duties that go with the specialized positions are as follows.

Manager

- organizes tasks and work schedules
- supervises other people
- does public relations work
- develops advertising strategies

Salesperson

- answers telephone
- waits on customers
- operates cash register
- packages and wraps purchases
- stocks shelves
- prices merchandise
- creates displays

Office Worker

- does billing and bookkeeping
- operates computer
- keeps records of supplies, sales slips, purchases and expenses
- does payroll
- types letters and reports

Designer

- selects and handles flowers and supplies
- makes arrangements, corsages, bouquets, etc.
- prices designs
- may consult and service weddings and parties
- makes terrariums and dish gardens
- cleans up work area

Delivery Person

- loads and transports arrangements
- interacts with public
- maintains delivery vehicle
- performs custodial duties
- stocks supplies

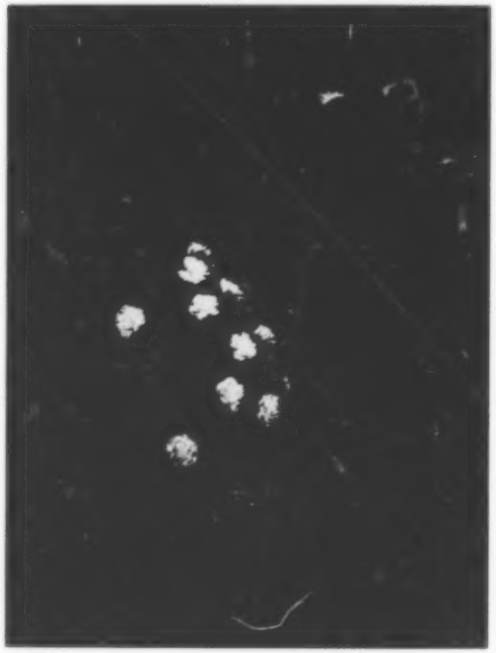
842

[illegible]

The success of a retail flower shop employee in getting, keeping and advancing in a job depends on the individual's ability to do the work well. Education and experience are the two best ways to broaden horizons, learn skills, experience personal growth, and learn to accept more responsibility.

Training may begin during high school in a vocational program or in a part-time job in a flower shop. However, if you lack the initial work experience, a good way to gain entrance into the industry or to advance in a job already held is to attend a technical school offering a two-year associate degree program in floriculture on the college level. Not only will you receive specialized training in basic horticulture, floral design and retail marketing, but you will also develop necessary skills from general education courses in communications, math and business. Technical education at this level has the advantages of targeting skills needed for entry into the business and teaching them in two years. The internship requirement found in many technical programs will give you a chance to gain experience, find out what the job is really like, and meet people in the industry.

People who view their education as a lifelong process, not completed with the first degree they receive, are those who have a real opportunity to improve their skills, professional growth, and job satisfaction. Some may find themselves on a path that leads to higher education and a bachelor's, master's, or even a doctor's degree. Their goal may be to teach floriculture in high school or college or to become involved with research in one of the floral products industries. Others may simply want to keep current and sharpen skills by attending one or more design schools, short courses or workshops. They can also keep current by regular reading of trade magazines and literature produced by various floral organizations. In this industry many avenues lead to self-improvement, but the individual must take the initiative in seeking them out.



DESIGNER

OWNER

TOLEDO FLORIST EXCHANGE

WHOLESALE DELIVERY PERSON

RETAIL DELIVERY PERSON

[illegible]

Some of the skills and attitudes important to employers in the retail floriculture industry are listed below. As you read them, identify your strengths. If you have any weak areas, think of ways you might be able to improve.

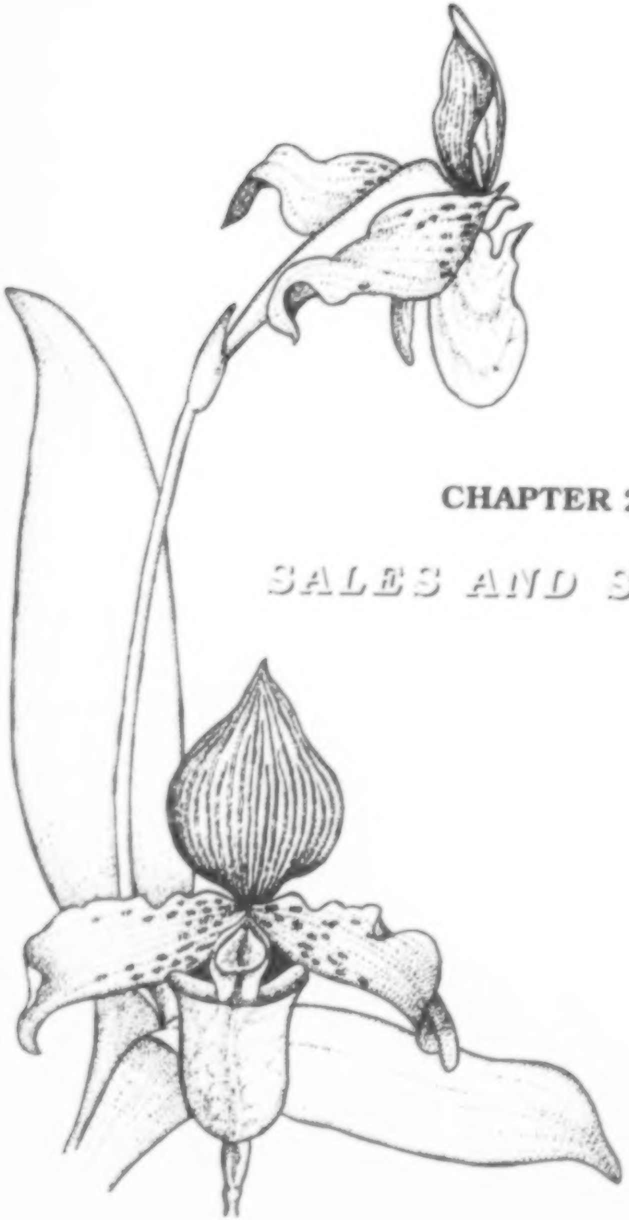
Employers look for the following in a good empoyee.

- Have a good knowledge of basic floriculture, including design, plant identification, care and handling of floral materials, and knowledge of plant culture.
- Be able to communicate well with others.
- Have good math skills and business sense.
- Be reliable and steady.
- Keep work speed good; be efficient.
- Try to do quality work.
- Cooperate and work well with other employees.
- Dress neatly and appropriately for the activities being performed.
- Be creative; look for new ideas and better ways of doing things.
- Be friendly and courteous.

Working in a retail flower shop is an interesting job that can bring a great deal of personal satisfaction. The work changes with the seasons and holidays and offers opportunities to be creative both in floral design and in helping decorate windows or arrange displays. Employees have the satisfaction of working with a beautiful product that people are pleased to give and to receive.

845

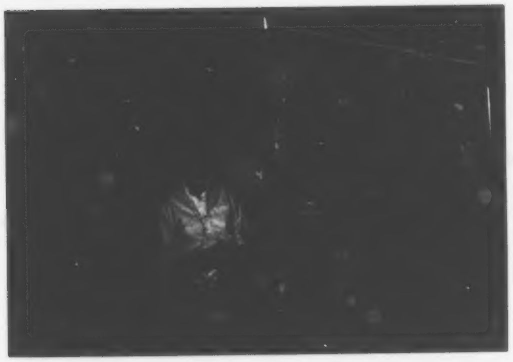
846



CHAPTER 23

SALES AND SERVICE

SALES AND SERVICE



Attractive settings are needed to showcase new styles to customers.

Good cooler displays are valuable sales tools.

The success of retail flower shops depends on their making a profit by selling to customers. In order to attract and keep customers, flower shops must:

1. offer a quality product.
2. provide services that customers want.
3. promote their products through advertising.
4. charge fair prices.
5. be accessible and responsive to customers.

Retail florists should research the buying habits of customers in the area. Products and design styles that are popular in one area or neighborhood may be poorly received in another. Wedding traditions, funeral practices, and customs for decorating cemeteries vary from place to place. Florists need to understand these preferences and cater to them.

Even so, new and potentially profitable items and styles should be introduced periodically to give the shop a new look and dispel a tired, old-fashioned look. New introductions may attract new customers and also help project the image of a shop that keeps current with modern trends.

The florist business is typically seasonal because of the high volume of sales during holidays like Christmas, Easter, Valentine's Day and Mother's Day. The chart which follows indicates the percentage of yearly sales that might be expected each month in a shop. What holidays occur in the months with the higher sales volumes?

PERCENTAGE OF YEARLY SALES EXPECTED EACH MONTH

January	6%	July	6%
February	9%	August	6%
March	7%	September	6%
April	11%	October	8%
May	12%	November	7%
June	8%	December	14%

Observations and Trends in Customer Buying Habits

- Customers are increasingly more value-conscious. They are more willing to buy if convinced they are getting their money's worth. Product quality and keeping quality of flowers are factors they seriously consider.

- Flowers are often purchased as gifts for sentimental reasons - to celebrate a special occasion or to express love and caring. Examples are wedding anniversaries and birthdays, Valentine's Day, Mother's Day.

- Flowers are an appropriate way to express sorrow and concern for the bereaved at the time of death.

- Flowers create a beautiful setting for special occasions like weddings and parties. In many cases they are expected and even regarded as status symbols.

- Flowers are appropriate business gifts which can beautify the work place and project a positive image.

- People are increasingly buying flowers for themselves just for enjoyment, to enhance their living environment.

IN-STORE SALES

Customers entering a flower shop will form an impression of the business during their first moments inside. They will be influenced by the appearance of the shop and the displays as well as any sales personnel they encounter. Customers should be greeted in a friendly and courteous manner. Many customers do not visit flower shops often. They may be somewhat unfamiliar with where things are and the proper procedure for getting what they want. Their needs should be handled in a way that will make them feel comfortable.

There are several possible types of customers who may enter a flower shop. Here are some characteristics of each type and suggestions for how they may be most effectively served.

Decided Customer

The customer has come for a specific purpose. Usually this person has done business with the shop before and is familiar with the set-up and procedures. Deal with this customer as efficiently as possible, determining his or her needs, suggesting alternatives, if necessary, and closing the sale.

Undecided Customer

These customers have only a vague idea of what they want. They are not sure what alternatives there are and how the shop might meet their needs. Sometimes they feel a bit uncomfortable in the shop. The salesperson needs to work with these customers, making each one feel that there is a personal interest in his or her situation and suggesting possible choices. Showing made-up arrangements, priced merchandise, and pictures in selection guides will help guide undecided customers toward a purchase.

Browser

This customer is "just looking around." A friendly greeting, with the assurance that the salesperson is available if needed, may be all that is required. Well displayed and priced merchandise will speak for itself. Even if the customer does not buy anything, a positive image can be created. Hopefully, that will lead to a return visit and a sale in the future.

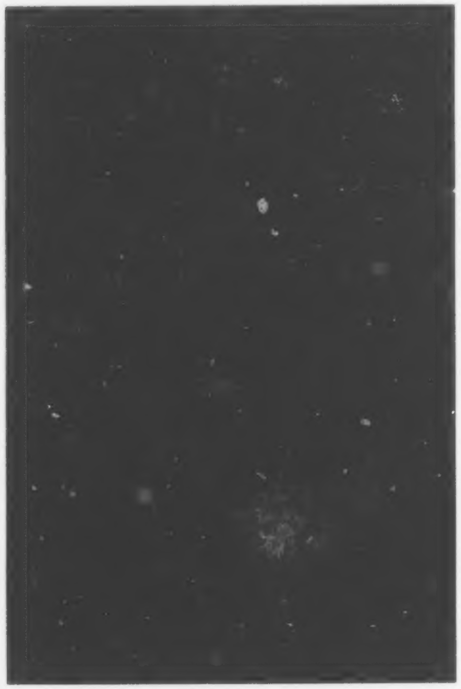
Qualities of a Good Salesperson

The employee who deals with the public as a salesperson creates an image of the shop in the customer's mind. If it is a very negative image, sales can be adversely affected even if the merchandise is good. A salesperson should project a positive image–the personality and sales techniques for stimulating sales. Some salespersons have the ability to steer a customer tactfully to a higher dollar value sale. In any case, a good salesperson is one who knows how to treat customers respectfully so they will want to return often.

In a retail flower shop, a good salesperson:

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Getting the product into the hands of the customer



Using colorful displays to attract customers

- is knowledgeable about the products and services offered by the shop.
- believes in the products and services being sold and projects a positive image of what will result from the purchase.
- knows prices of the products and is able to close the sale efficiently according to policies of the shop.
- shows a genuine interest in the customer's needs and helps the customer decide what products and services are best for the particular circumstances.
- shows enthusiasm about the merchandise that may stimulate customer interest and lead to more sales.
- is friendly and courteous and addresses the customer by name if possible.
- dresses neatly and in good taste.
- communicates effectively with the customer in a confident manner and maintains eye contact when speaking.

Selling in the Flower Shop

The three basic "**C**" aims for selling in a flower shop are to –

✓ ***create*** *an interest* and desire for the product on the part of the customer,

✓ ***convince*** *the customer* that the product is just what he or she needs, and

✓ ***close*** *the sale* with the customer buying the product.

Setting the Stage for a Successful Sale

1. Have attractive displays showing made-up products.
2. Have prices on the made-up arrangements, flowers and supplies. Many customers want to get an idea of the prices so they can think over their options privately without having to ask the price of each item that interests them.
3. Create a good shop atmosphere. Avoid all inappropriate behavior on the part of the employees, like lounging, rowdiness or misuse of the telephone.
4. Use descriptive language to explain how a certain arrangement or flower choice will meet the customer's needs. Be enthusiastic! Help build a positive picture in the customer's mind about the effect of the floral gift on the one who is to receive it, or the impact of the flowers on the situation in which they are going to be used.
5. Get the product into the hands of the customer. For example, let the customer hold a rose rather than just look at a bucketful through the glass in a cooler.
6. If a customer likes a certain arrangement but seems doubtful about it, suggest alterations that you can make in the design or materials that will better suit the person's needs or preferences.
7. Offer three prices on a given arrangement to be made (such as $15, $20, and $25), explaining (enthusiastically) the added

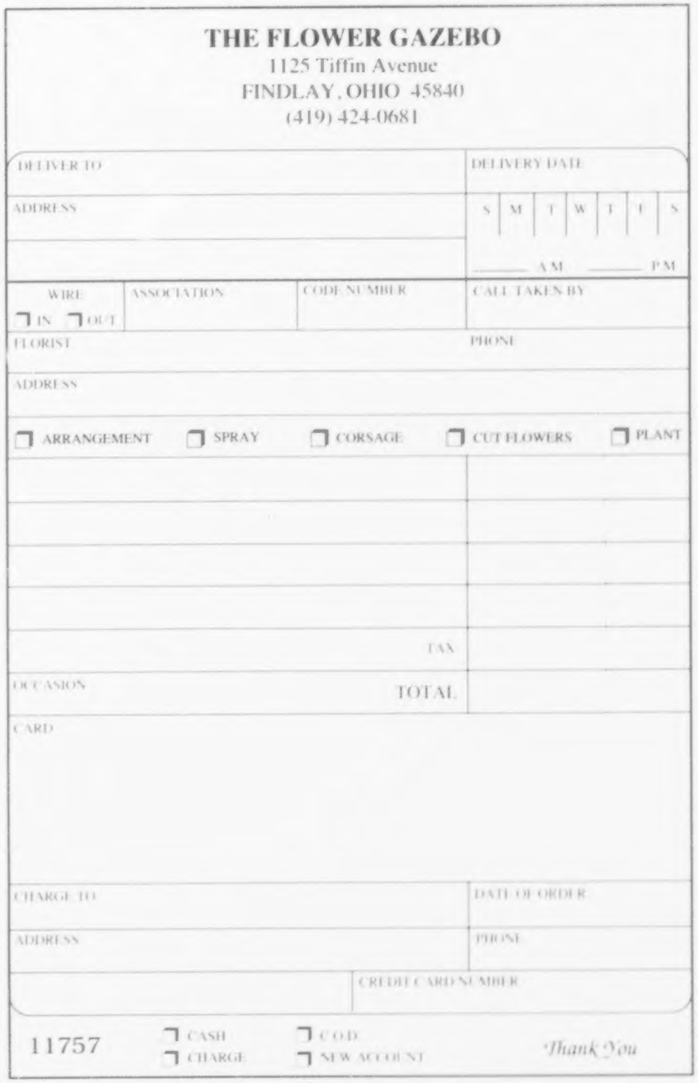
attractive features of the higher priced designs. If the customer chooses the extras, you have made a larger sale. This is called *upselling*.

8. Sell related merchandise or extra services if the opportunity arises. For example, a customer may be choosing a flower arrangement for a party. If your shop also sells candles and napkins, ask the customer if he or she would like to purchase either of these items at the same time.
9. Be efficient in your use of time with a customer. Don't ignore one customer while working with another. If you are in the middle of a sale, reassure the waiting customer, "I'll be with you in a minute." The time you spend with one customer must be shortened when there are others waiting to be served.
10. Handle objections as they arise, but never argue with customers. Suggest other alternatives in products or prices to suit the specific need.
11. Use common sense and good judgment in all dealings with customers.

Writing Up the Order

After the customer decides to make a purchase, the salesperson completes the transaction by packaging the merchandise for immediate sale or by writing up an order for future delivery or pick-up. In the latter case it is very important to write down all relevant information. There are different styles of order forms which will help standardize the collection of information.

SAMPLE ORDER FORM



THE FLOWER GAZEBO
1125 Tiffin Avenue
FINDLAY, OHIO 45840
(419) 424-0681

DELIVER TO
DELIVERY DATE
ADDRESS
S M T W T F S
_____ A.M. _____ P.M.
WIRE ☐ IN ☐ OUT
ASSOCIATION
CODE NUMBER
CALL TAKEN BY
FLORIST
PHONE
ADDRESS
☐ ARRANGEMENT ☐ SPRAY ☐ CORSAGE ☐ CUT FLOWERS ☐ PLANT
TAX
OCCASION
TOTAL
CARD
CHARGE TO
DATE OF ORDER
ADDRESS
PHONE
CREDIT CARD NUMBER
11757
☐ CASH ☐ C.O.D.
☐ CHARGE ☐ NEW ACCOUNT
Thank You

Writing up the order

OHIO'S BRACKETED TAX COLLECTION SCHEDULE SALES & USE TAX FOR STATE, COUNTY AND/OR TRANSIT TAX – TOTAL 5.75% TAX LEVY SALES 15c AND UNDER — NO TAX			
Each Sale	**Tax**	**Each Sale**	**Tax**
.16 to .17	.01	7.31 to 7.47	.43
.18 to .34	.02	7.48 to 7.65	.44
.35 to .52	.03	7.66 to 7.82	.45
.53 to .69	.04	7.83 to 8.00	.46
.70 to .86	.05	8.01 to 8.17	.47
.87 to 1.04	.06	8.18 to 8.34	.48
1.05 to 1.21	.07	8.35 to 8.52	.49
1.22 to 1.39	.08	8.53 to 8.69	.50
1.40 to 1.56	.09	8.70 to 8.86	.51
1.57 to 1.73	.10	8.87 to 9.04	.52
1.74 to 1.91	.11	9.05 to 9.21	.53
1.92 to 2.08	.12	9.22 to 9.39	.54
2.09 to 2.26	.13	9.40 to 9.56	.55
2.27 to 2.43	.14	9.57 to 9.73	.56
2.44 to 2.60	.15	9.74 to 9.91	.57
2.61 to 2.78	.16	9.92 to 10.08	.58
2.79 to 2.95	.17	10.09 to 10.26	.59
2.96 to 3.13	.18	10.27 to 10.43	.60
3.14 to 3.30	.19	10.44 to 10.60	.61
3.31 to 3.47	.20	10.61 to 10.78	.62
3.48 to 3.65	.21	10.79 to 10.95	.63
3.66 to 3.82	.22	10.96 to 11.13	.64
3.83 to 4.00	.23	11.14 to 11.30	.65
4.01 to 4.17	.24	11.31 to 11.47	.66
4.18 to 4.34	.25	11.48 to 11.65	.67
4.35 to 4.52	.26	11.66 to 11.82	.68
4.53 to 4.69	.27	11.83 to 12.00	.69
4.70 to 4.86	.28	12.01 to 12.17	.70
4.87 to 5.04	.29	12.18 to 12.34	.71
5.05 to 5.21	.30	12.35 to 12.52	.72
5.22 to 5.39	.31	12.53 to 12.69	.73
5.40 to 5.56	.32	12.70 to 12.86	.74
5.57 to 5.73	.33	12.87 to 13.04	.75
5.74 to 5.91	.34	13.05 to 13.21	.76
5.92 to 6.08	.35	13.22 to 13.39	.77
6.09 to 6.26	.36	13.40 to 13.56	.78
6.27 to 6.43	.37	13.57 to 13.73	.79
6.44 to 6.60	.38	13.74 to 13.91	.80
6.61 to 6.78	.39	13.92 to 14.08	.81
6.79 to 6.95	.40	14.09 to 14.26	.82
6.96 to 7.13	.41	14.27 to 14.43	.83
7.14 to 7.30	.42	14.44 to 14.60	.84

Figure 23-1

Ohio's Sales Tax Table (side 1)

Payment for the purchase may be made by cash, credit card or charge to the customer's account. Floral businesses differ in their credit policies, ranging from strictly cash-and-carry to "30 days same as cash." Traditionally florists have been quite liberal in extending credit to customers, billing them for later payment. Whatever the policy, it should be clearly communicated to customers to avoid misunderstanding. Other charges such as delivery fees or telephone calls should also be made known up front.

Sales Tax

Floral purchases are subject to sales tax. This must be added to the total amount of the bill. Some areas have local sales tax in addition to state sales tax. The tax is often figured automatically by the cash register. A table which gives the correct amount of tax for the amount of the purchase is available for hand calculations (Fig. 23-1). The sales tax is added to the amount of the purchase to determine the total amount the customer owes.

Cash Register

The cash register not only holds money, but often keeps a record of transactions as well. All cash registers add up the customer's total of individual prices that were entered, but some machines have additional capabilities. They keep a record of amount of merchandise sold in various categories (such as arrangements, potted plants, giftware, etc.), automatically calculate sales tax, and show the salesperson the exact amount of change to give the customer.

Making Change

Often a customer pays in cash with a bill larger than the amount of purchase. That bill should be placed on the ledge above the cash drawer until the correct change has been made. Then if there is any disagreement over the amount, the original bill given by the customer is still in view. When making change, both the customer and the salesperson can understand one another best if the salesperson counts ***up*** from the purchase amount to the payment amount given by the customer. For example, a customer pays for a $3.56 purchase with a $20 bill. When returning the change, the salesperson should count in the following order:

Salesperson gives:	Salesperson says:
________	"3.56"
4 pennies	"3.60"
1 dime	"3.70"
1 nickel	"3.75"
1 quarter	"4.00"
1 dollar	"5.00"
1 five-dollar bill	"10.00"
1 ten-dollar bill	"20.00"

Checks and Credit Cards

Checks are usually accepted the same as cash from customers who are known in the shop. The manager will set a policy for approving checks. Often this includes asking for one or more pieces of identification (such as driver's license or credit card), or listing the customer's telephone number and address.

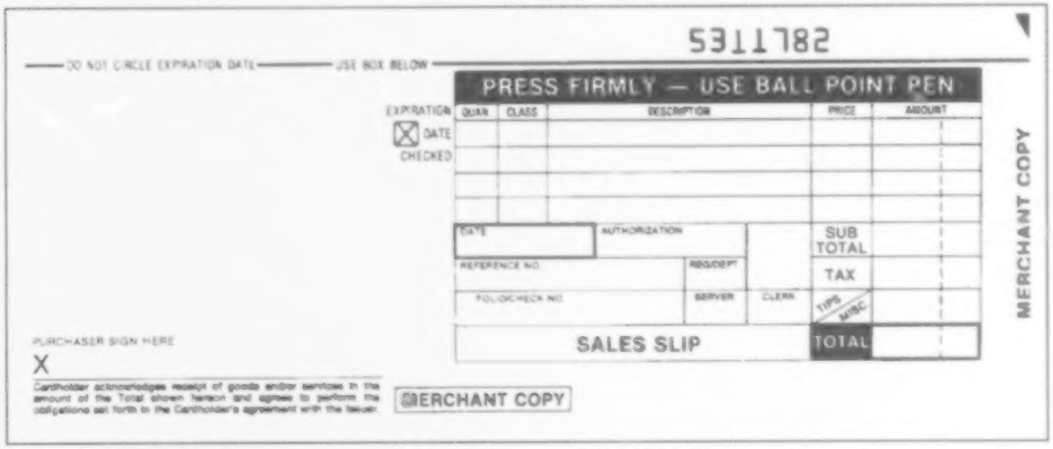
Credit cards like Visa or Master Card are accepted by many businesses. The appropriate form, along with the customer's card,

Cash registers are used to total individual orders and keep a record of sales.

VISA
FLORAFAX

Symbols of credit cards and wire services posted on a flower shop door

CREDIT CARD FORM



5311782

— DO NOT CIRCLE EXPIRATION DATE — USE BOX BELOW —

PRESS FIRMLY — USE BALL POINT PEN

EXPIRATION ☒ DATE CHECKED

QUAN	CLASS	DESCRIPTION	PRICE	AMOUNT

DATE	AUTHORIZATION		SUB TOTAL	
REFERENCE NO.	REG/DEPT		TAX	
FOLIO/CHECK NO.	SERVER	CLERK	TIPS / MISC	
SALES SLIP			TOTAL	

PURCHASER SIGN HERE
X

Cardholder acknowledges receipt of goods and/or services in the amount of the Total shown hereon and agrees to perform the obligations set forth in the Cardholder's agreement with the Issuer.

MERCHANT COPY

MERCHANT COPY

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Figure 23-2
Sample arrangements in selection guides show customers arrangements that can be wired.

Figure 23-3
The wire service selection guide is a colorful part of the store display.

is run through a machine that makes an imprint of the number on the card. The shop manager establishes the policy regarding what additional information should be requested from the customer. Some will require address or phone number on the form, while others call in for clearance or check published lists of card numbers that have been misused.

The salesperson should become familiar with the procedures for completing the sale with money, personal check or credit card, as well as the procedures for extending credit. Each transaction should be handled as smoothly and efficiently as possible.

TELEPHONE SALES

Much of the selling in a traditional retail flower shop is done over the phone. The same principles of selling apply when dealing with customers over the phone as when dealing with them in person. The major difference is that on the phone, one is limited to word descriptions of the product being offered.

The people who answer the telephone should be thoroughly knowledgeable about products, prices and services offered by the shop. They should have a pleasant and confident telephone voice. They must be able to communicate verbally with the caller to determine the customer's needs, explain alternatives, and give assurance that the shop will be able to handle the order competently. If the salesperson has any doubt that the selection can be filled with the requested style or materials, the customer should be asked to give a second choice.

Information from a telephone order must be complete and legibly recorded. It should include:

- ✓ first choice of item to be ordered; (and second choice if necessary)
- ✓ message for the enclosure card
- ✓ name and address of the person or place receiving the flowers
- ✓ date and time the item should arrive at the destination
- ✓ name and address of the customer placing the order
- ✓ terms of the billing, including total cost and who will be responsible for the bill (name and address)

FLOWERS BY WIRE

Most full-service flower shops belong to one or more wire service organizations. Customers can place an order with a member flower shop in one city that will be filled and delivered in another city by another member florist. The wire service organization provides members with ***selection guides*** which show pictures of arrangements that can be ordered. Florists use the selection guide in selling, sending and filling orders. (See Figures 23-2 and 23-3.)

The largest and best-known wire services in the U.S. are the following:

American Floral Services, Inc.
P.O. Box 12309
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma 73157-2309

afs
American Floral Services, Inc.

Carik Services, Inc.
P.O. Box 24286
Denver, Colorado 80224

Carik
Services, Inc.

Florists' Transworld Delivery Association
(FTD)
29200 Northwestern Highway
P.O. Box 2227
Southfield, Michigan 48037

FLORISTS' TRANSWORLD DELIVERY
FTD
SINCE 1910

Redbook Floral Services
3309 East Kingshighway
Paragould, Arkansas 72451

REDBOOK®
florist services

Teleflora
12233 West Olympic Boulevard
Los Angeles, California 90064

Teleflora

Florafax International, Inc.
4175 South Memorial Drive
Tulsa, Oklahoma 74145

The New
FLORAFAX™
INTERNATIONAL

The FTD organization has developed the Mercury Network which allows orders to be relayed efficiently to receiving florists through a central computer. The AFS system is called *Rosebud*.

Some non-florist organizations also provide customers an opportunity to wire flowers to other cities. Examples include Flowers by Wire - Sears, Roebuck & Co., Flowers-By-Western Union, and 1-800-FLOWERS.

Wire services act as ***clearinghouses*** for orders sent by wire. Regular statements of incoming and outgoing orders are provided by their computer networks. Each member is identified by a code number. The code numbers of both sending and receiving florists are listed on all records of an order.

Wire organizations publish membership directories which list member florists. They look similar to big telephone books. If more than one florist is listed for a city, the names are rotated each time the list is printed so the same member is not always at the top of the list.

Wire service organizations have certain standards members must meet and rules they must follow. When florists apply for membership in the organization, they are not automatically guaranteed acceptance. Inspections of the shop are conducted and test orders sent to make sure that quality products of expected value are being produced.

In addition to the potential for increased sales, there are other advantages of belonging to a wire service organization. One is their extensive advertising program, including use of prime time television. The viewer frequently sees attractive FTD promotions of their selection of everyday bouquets in addition to holiday and special occasion flowers. Wire services also wholesale merchandise used for their special bouquets as well as

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

An arrangement from a wired-in order should closely resemble the customer's choice at the local florist.

European wire service organizations are linked to U.S. organizations, sending flowers around the world by wire.

supplies, clothing (such as work smocks), signs and forms. They provide educational materials and programs for members to improve their design skills and business operations.

Magazines published by these organizations are yet another way to transfer information and stimulate florists to try new and better ways of doing things. Some of the more familiar trade magazines are:

Florist (FTD)
Flowers & (Teleflora)
Professional Floral Designer (AFS)

Processing Wire Orders

A customer who wants flowers delivered in another city can either telephone or visit a member shop to place the order. Coming into the shop in person enables the customer to choose an arrangement from the selection guide. The customer who calls will need a salesperson to suggest a selection that is both appropriate for the occasion and within the price range designated by the caller.

The salesperson should then take down the following information:

- ✓ description and price of the arrangement
- ✓ name and address of the customer
- ✓ name and address of the person who will be receiving the arrangement, including city or town and state
- ✓ when the arrangement is to be delivered
- ✓ what the enclosure card is to say

The florist then selects a receiving florist from the directory, writes down the shop code number, and places the order by telephone or enters it into the computer console (depending on the system being used). The customer's bill includes price of the arrangement plus telephone or transmittal charge.

The sending florist will receive between 10 and 20 percent of the value of the order. About 5 percent is retained by the wire service. The receiving florist must fill the order at its full value though receiving only about 75 percent of the value of the arrangement. A tally of incoming and outgoing orders for each member shop is kept by the wire service. At the end of the month the service sends the member florist either a check or a bill, depending on the transactions involved.

INTERNATIONAL FLOWERS BY WIRE

Flowers can be sent by wire to many parts of the world by the major wire service organizations. FTD's international organization is known as Interflora, Inc. Members from different countries use a common unit of value called a *fleurin* to avoid the confusion caused by the many different kinds and values of currency. Members also recognize certain standard terms and definitions as established by the organization: examples are *arrangement*, *bouquet*, and *funeral sheaf*. This reduces misunderstanding over what is asked for and what is sent. Because of these international flowers-by-wire services, customers can send flowers to other parts of the world almost as easily as within the United States.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

Selling and Taking Orders

A. Role-play situations in which one person acts as the salesperson and another person as the customer. The customer will present a certain need and the salesperson should react in an appropriate way.

Here are some suggestions:

1. A customer wants to wire flowers to an aunt's funeral in California.
2. A teenager wants to buy flowers for his girlfriend for the prom. He has never before been in the flower shop and does not know what he wants.
3. A middle-aged lady comes in to browse. She has a vague interest in some flowers for her home.
4. A garden club member comes into the store wanting supplies and some flowers for a club flower show.
5. A man comes in and wants to send a plant to a new business that is opening in town.

B. Prepare a short sales presentation to make to a customer who shows interest in a certain arrangement.

1. First make a list of descriptive words and phrases about the arrangement or flowers.
2. Think of different circumstances in which the arrangement might cheer someone up, delight someone, or make a situation more beautiful. Create word pictures to communicate these positive results.
3. Give your presentation to the class. Ask for reactions of your classmates to find out whether or not you have stimulated interest in buying the arrangement.

C. Practice answering the telephone with another student acting as the caller. Try handling some of the following situations that you might encounter.

1. A customer is ordering a centerpiece for a Saturday evening dinner he is hosting. He does not have a set price in mind.
2. A customer is complaining about an arrangement that was sent from your shop the week before. The flowers lasted only three days before they died.
3. A customer wants a dozen roses sent to his mother in New York City.
4. A lady wants to know what the store's credit policy is.
5. A man wants to have the FTD valentine special bouquet sent to his wife.

(continued)

Using the Mercury console to send FTD orders

Special theme arrangements are promoted by wire services.

SAMPLE ORDER BLANK

DATE	A.M.	P.M.	CHARGE	C.O.D.	PAID

Send to

Address

Phone

Description

Card

Charge to

Address

Phone

WIRE

☐ IN ☐ OUT ☐ FTD ☐ TF ☐ FX ☐ AFS ☐ Other

Code No.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES *(continued)*

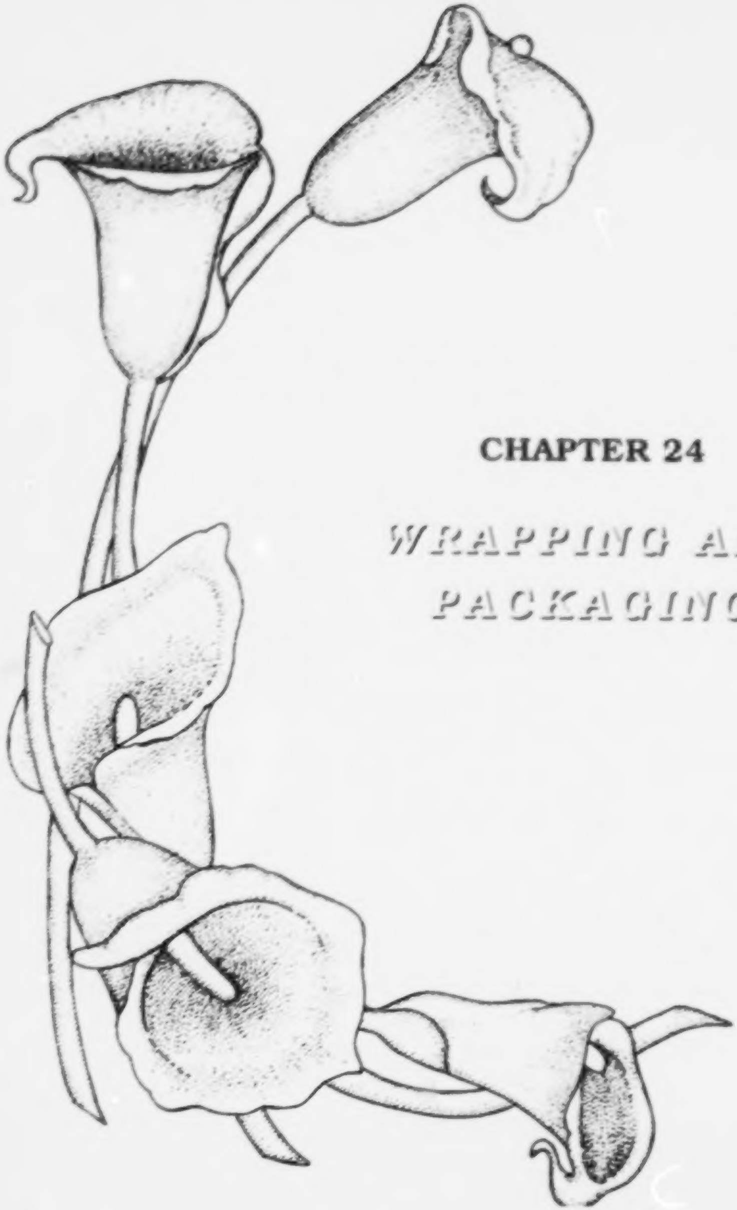
Selling and Taking Orders *(continued)*

D. Practice writing up an order on the form provided on this page, using the following information.

The order was called in by Mrs. Marjorie Harrington who lives at 310 North Rowe Street, West Salem, Ohio 44287. Her phone number is 843-8993. She has ordered a $35 centerpiece arrangement of spring flowers to be sent to her sister, Mrs. Dorothy Arnold of Route 1, Wapwallopen, Pennsylvania. The arrangement is for her birthday and should be delivered on April 4. She wants the card to read, "To a dear sister on her birthday." The arrangement is to be charged to Mrs. Harrington's account at your shop. You send the order to Teleflora shop 907 in Pennsylvania. The phone call is $1.80 and the tax on the order is $1.58.

E. Practice making change for various sales. Obtain or make paper money but use real coins. Count out the change as you give it to the customer.

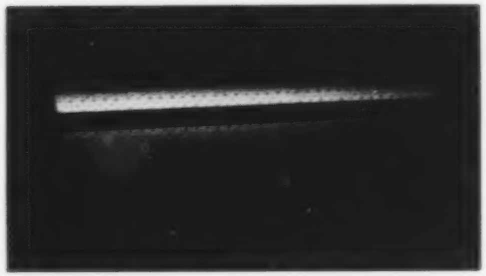
AMOUNT OF SALE	AMOUNT GIVEN
$ 1.62	$ 2.00
$ 5.37	$10.00
$ 12.15	$20.00
$ 17.02	$20.02
$ 8.44	$20.00
$ 10.97	$21.00



CHAPTER 24

WRAPPING AND PACKAGING

Figure 24-1 Sleeving stand



Wrapping paper on a roll

WRAPPING AND PACKAGING

Arrangements, bud vases, bunches of flowers, corsages and potted plants should all be wrapped neatly before they leave the shop. The wrapping will allow customers or delivery people to carry the purchases easily. It will also protect the flowers from cold temperatures, drying winds, and mechanical injury.

An enclosure card may be included if the purchase is a gift. If it is to be delivered, the name and address of the recipient should be listed on the outside of the card. Care tags for arrangements, cut flowers or potted plants can be included with the packaging. These tags will remind customers of things they can do to prolong flower life, thus lengthening the time they have to enjoy the purchase or gift.

Items commonly on hand in flower shops for wrapping and packaging are listed as follows:

Packaging Materials:

green waxed tissue paper
wrapping paper on a roll
shredded waxed tissue paper
rose boxes
corsage boxes and/or corsage bags
plastic bags in assorted sizes
plastic boxes
plant sleeves
cardboard boxes and delivery bases

Other Supplies:

cellophane tape
staples
enclosure cards
care tags
ribbon
foil

Tools:

ribbon scissors
floral shears
stapler
knife
plant sleeving stand

[illegible]

Prepare potted plants for sale by cleaning the pot and plant, wrapping the pot with decorative foil, adding a bow, and attaching a care tag to the stem of the plant. Usually this is done before the plants are placed on display in the shop.

Packaging foiled plants for removal from the shop is most easily done by using a **sleeve**, a cone-shaped piece of wrapping paper or plastic. An efficient and trouble-free way to slip on the sleeves is to use a **sleeving stand**, a vertical rod about 36 inches high with a small platform at the top (Fig. 24-1). Paper or plastic plant sleeves are put in place over the sleeving stand. Slip one sleeve on the stand at a time, or a large bunch if you will be doing a lot of sleeving. Place the potted plant on the small platform and pull a sleeve up around the plant. Then lift the sleeved plant off the stand by holding on to the sleeve. If the plant is not too heavy or fragile, it can even be carried by the sleeve. Or play it safe and carry the plant with one hand under the pot and the other holding on to the sleeve. Fold the top of the sleeve over and staple it shut. Then, if it is going to be delivered by the shop, tag the sleeved plant with gift tag and delivery instructions.

WRAPPING CUT FLOWERS

The following procedure is for packaging most kinds of cut flowers using paper. However, very special or expensive flowers, like long-stem roses, should be packaged in a box. (They will be discussed next.)

1. Tear a rather large piece of wrapping paper from the roll and lay it on the counter.
2. Lay a piece of waxed tissue paper on the wrapping paper.
3. Lay a few pieces of foliage (such as leatherleaf or huckleberry) diagonally on the paper, pointed toward one corner.
4. Lay the flowers on top of the foliage (Fig. 24-2). Spread them out a little, if necessary, so they don't lie on top of each other.
5. Fold one corner of the paper over the stem ends. Then roll or wrap the rest of the paper around the flowers so they are rolled up inside (Fig. 24-3). The paper will be cone-shaped, tighter around the stem end and flared out where the flowers are.
6. Fold the open end of the paper over the flowers, and staple (Fig. 24-4).

Figure 24-2

Figure 24-3

Figure 24-4

Wrapping cut flowers at the sales counter

876

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Figure 24-5

Figure 24-6

Figure 24-7

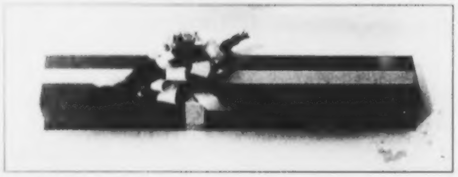


Figure 24-8

[illegible]

Rose boxes are long narrow boxes with lids that will hold a dozen roses. The boxes are sold flattened and must be bent into shape before use.

Rose thorns are usually removed with a metal stem stripper or by rubbing down the lower part of the stem with a soft cloth. Machines are available that mechanically remove the thorns without damaging the rose stem.

Since roses are quite perishable, some florists choose to include a piece of soaked, foiled floral foam in one end of the box; the stems can be inserted into this foam. Also available are small water packs containing soaked foam which can be stapled in the end of a box. Or, roses can be and frequently are packaged without soaked foam, as in the following example.

1. Shape a rose box with its accompanying lid. (See Figure 24-5 for materials needed.)
2. Line the box with waxed green tissue paper, allowing ample paper to extend beyond the edges of the box (Fig. 24-6). This will later be folded over the flowers.
3. Place a layer of foliage (leatherleaf or huckleberry) in the bottom of the box.
4. Arrange the roses in neat rows with about three roses to a row (Fig. 24-7). Each row should be slightly below the previous one so that no flower heads are hidden.
5. Place a few pieces of foliage on top of the lower part of the stems. Some baby's breath may be placed on the foliage.
6. Fold the tissue paper neatly over the flowers.
7. Place the lid on the box.
8. Wrap #9 satin ribbon around the box and attach a bow (Fig. 24-8). A few pieces of leatherleaf and baby's breath may be hot glued between the ribbon loops for a special look.
9. Place the enclosure card in an envelope. Write on it the name and address of the person to whom the flowers are to be delivered and attach it to the rose box.

Using a mechanical rose stripper

[illegible] BOUTONNIERES

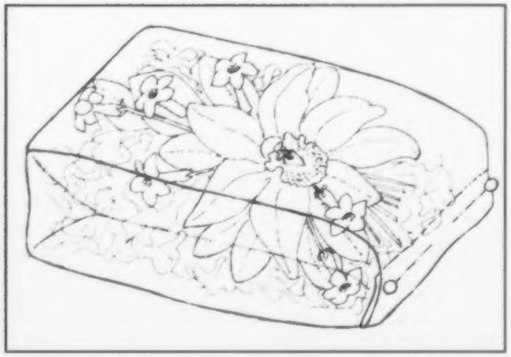
Corsages can be packaged in cardboard or plastic boxes or placed in cellophane bags. Before they are inserted, the flowers should be misted lightly with a fine spray of water to help keep them fresh.

If you use a cardboard box, first open the box and place a layer of shredded waxed tissue paper on the bottom. Lay the corsage and/or boutonniere with attached pins on the shredded paper. If there is an enclosure card, put it inside the box. Close the lid and tag the box for delivery.

A rigid plastic box, through which the corsage can be seen, may also be used. Place a layer of shredded waxed paper in the bottom to cushion the flowers. With either rigid plastic or cardboard boxes there is less danger of the flowers being crushed. The boxes can be stacked for transporting and delivery.

Using a cellophane bag also lets you see the corsage. First insert your hand in the bag to open up the end folds, making the end of the bag somewhat square. Place a layer of shredded waxed paper in the bag and lay the misted corsage on the paper. Fold over the open end of the bag twice, but make sure the cellophane is not pressing on the flowers. Secure folds with two corsage pins, one at each side of the bag.

Rigid plastic corsage box



Cellophane corsage bag secured with two corsage pins

Well organized wrapping and packaging counter

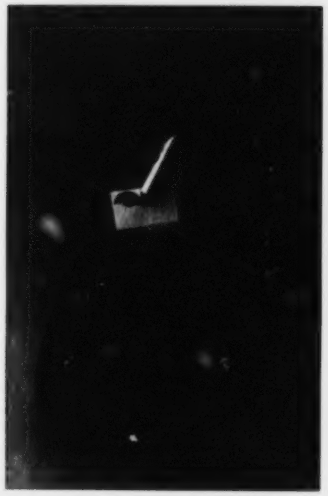


Figure 24-9 Tissue paper

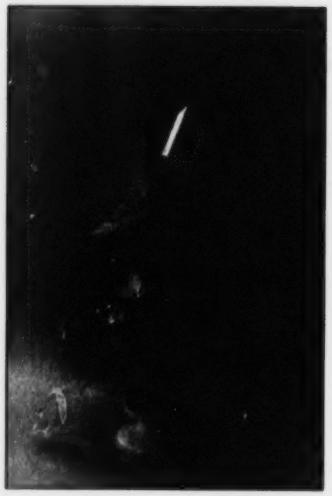
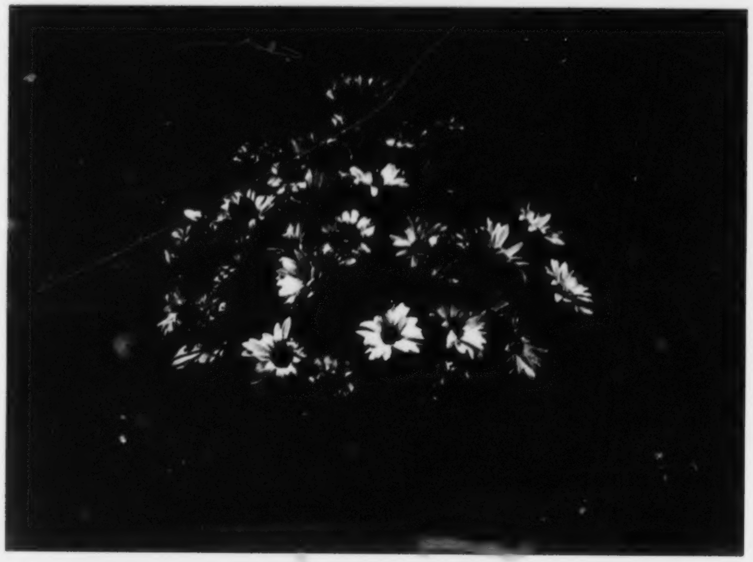


Figure 24-10 Plastic bag

Figure 24-11 Cardboard base



Arrangement cushioned in a box with tissue paper

[illegible]

A simple wrapping for arrangements that are in stable containers is to place them in the center of a large piece of tissue or wrapping paper. Bring the ends up, fold them over, and staple them (Fig. 24-9). Then fold and staple the larger pleats of paper so the wrap loosely conforms to the shape of the arrangement. Plastic sacks can be used instead, slipped over arrangements and stapled (Fig. 24-10).

When a pedestaled container needs to be packaged, a cardboard base can be stapled around it to give stability to the arrangement (Fig. 24-11). This will help keep the arrangement from tipping over when it is transported. Paper can then be wrapped around the arrangement as with any other design.

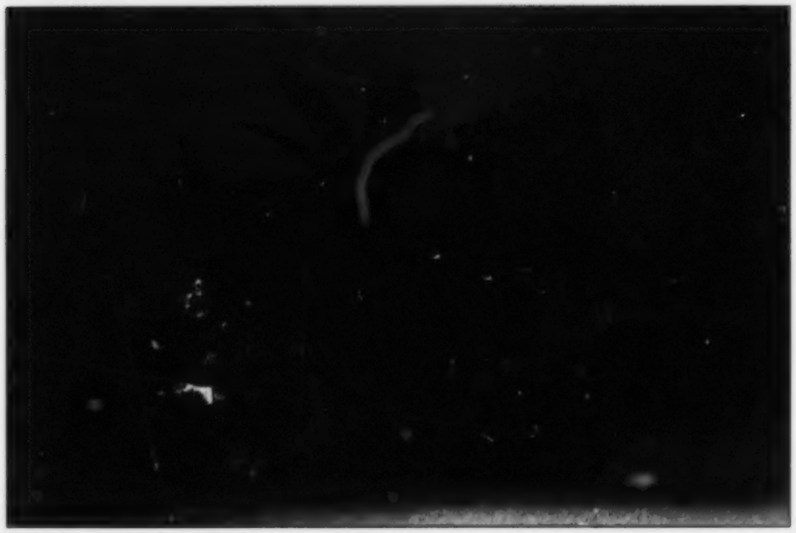
A small arrangement can be made stable by loosely wrapping its base with waxed tissue paper and placing it in a box that is slightly larger than the arrangement. Extra tissue paper carefully crumpled in the corners of the box will help keep the arrangement from shifting. If the box is tall enough, it can be closed over the arrangement. If not, in cold weather a tent of waxed tissue paper can be taped over the top. In warm weather no covering may be required.

Care tags, enclosure cards and delivery instructions should be attached to the arrangement, usually with a plastic card pick inserted into the foam. A small packet of floral preservative is often included for use when watering the arrangement.

[illegible]

Living plant groupings should be sent out with clean containers and properly watered plants. As an extra touch, plant shine is sometimes applied to the leaves of foliage plants to make them glossy. However, if too heavily applied to both upper and lower leaf surfaces, plant shine will reduce the food-making ability of the plant.

Enclosure cards can be placed in plastic card picks and inserted into the soil. Packaging consists of wrapping the dish garden with waxed tissue paper and placing it in a cardboard box.


Dish garden cushioned with tissue and placed in a cardboard box

Plastic card picks holding enclosure cards

Spring dish garden contains plants tolerant of cool temperatures.

Tropical foliage plants must be protected from cool temperatures.

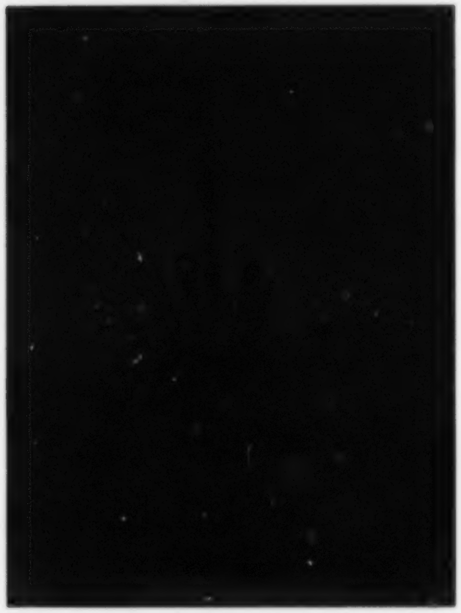
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Arrangement in a cardboard delivery box

SUGGESTED ACTIVITY

Practice wrapping and preparing for delivery as many of the following products as are available to you. Include enclosure cards, care tags, and delivery instructions. Check for neatness and attractive presentation of the product.

1. 6-inch potted chrysanthemum
2. bunch of mixed flowers and foliage
3. one dozen roses and leatherleaf
4. corsage and boutonniere
5. triangular arrangement in a pedestal container
6. small arrangement in a teacup
7. dish garden



Vase of cut flowers cushioned in tissue paper and enclosed in a colorful paper bag

Arrangement wrapped in cellophane and tied with a decorative bow

835

836

CHAPTER 25

PRICING

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Each business must determine the pricing system that will make it a profit.

The price of this food basket takes into consideration the cost of basket, food products, ribbon, and time to assemble it.

PRICING

The manager of a flower shop must determine a pricing system that will result in a profit for the business. Because the cost of running each business is different, and sales volume varies from one business to another, the same pricing policy will not work for all shops. Pricing also depends on the demand that exists for a certain item and what the competition is charging.

The wholesale cost of flowers and plants also changes with time. Flowers that are available at a reasonable cost during the season when they are most commonly produced, can be very costly out of season. Heavy demand for flowers for a holiday like Valentine's Day will also increase their wholesale cost. If a florist keeps a fairly steady price on a given arrangement, the profit will be higher at some times and lower at others.

Some arrangements can be made up quickly, while others are more time-consuming. Corsages and wedding flowers often involve a great deal of labor. Arrangements with many placements usually require more time than arrangements with fewer flowers. Gift items require only the time involved in handling them, but they may sit in the shop for a long time before being sold.

The manager must weigh all these considerations and then decide what system of pricing will work in different situations. The following sections discuss several methods that are used.

[illegible]

The easiest method of pricing is to figure the total wholesale value of the material in a product and multiply it by a certain number. Since some products require more labor than others and some items are more perishable than others, it is logical to expect the multiplying number to be different for different items.

When the value of the material is multiplied by two, the markup is said to be 2 to 1. When it is multiplied by three, it is 3 to 1, and so on. Possible **categories** of markups are:

Markup	Types of Items
2 to 1	gift items, supplies, hard-goods, cash-and-carry cut flowers and plants
3 to 1	basic arrangements, bud vases, boxed flowers, decorated plants
4 to 1	creative designs, basic corsages
5 to 1	wedding flowers, party flowers, designs requiring a great deal of time and special attention

Example:

Cost of materials for a basic round centerpiece may add up to $5.00. This would be the wholesale cost for the flowers, foliage and container.

1/2 bunch pompon mums	$1.25
1/3 bunch leatherleaf	.50
1/6 bunch statice	.50
7 carnations	1.75
1/3 block floral foam	.25
container	.75
TOTAL WHOLESALE cost of materials	$5.00

Using a 3 to 1 markup, multiply $5.00 by 3. The retail selling price will be $15.00.

$5.00 wholesale cost of materials
x 3
$15.00 retail selling price

WHOLESALE PRICING METHOD (40% of Retail Selling Price)

Another pricing method is based on the concept that 40 percent of the retail selling price should be made up of the wholesale value of the materials used, while the remaining 60 percent should cover costs of running the business and should generate a profit. This relationship is shown by the following formula:

0.4 x retail selling price =
wholesale cost of materials

This formula can be used as a guideline for a florist in planning how much material can be put into an arrangement that is to sell for a set price. For example, an arrangement that retails for $20 should have no more than $8 worth (wholesale cost) of materials, as shown by the following calculation:

0.4 x $20 = $8.00

OR

retail selling price
of arrangement — $20.00
40% x 0.4
8.000 or $8.00

The formula can also be used in another way - to determine the price of an arrangement. If you have used $10 worth of materials in an arrangement, you will find that you should charge $25 for the arrangement.

0.4 x retail selling price =
wholesale cost of materials

OR

retail selling price =
wholesale cost of materials ÷ 0.4

retail selling price = $10
0.4
retail selling price = $25.00

Consulting retail price list to figure retail values

Appropriate item for a 3:1 markup

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Baskets like the one used here are often purchased wholesale in a "nest" of three, each one a different size.

[illegible]

Sometimes a person buys wholesale for a single price a collection of items of various values. The price of **each unit** within the group must then be determined. These individual items may be packed or nested one inside the other. From this practice, the method of determining the price of each unit gets its name - **nesting pricing method.**

Problem

A nest of three baskets is purchased for a wholesale cost of $6.50. Determine the wholesale value of the small basket, the medium basket, and the large basket.

Solution

◆ Number each basket starting with 2 and add the numbers together.

small basket	2
medium basket	3
large basket	4
TOTAL	9

◆ Divide the total number into the purchase price and round off to the next highest number.

```
      .72     Round off to $ .73
  9 ) 6.50
      63
       20
       18
        2
```

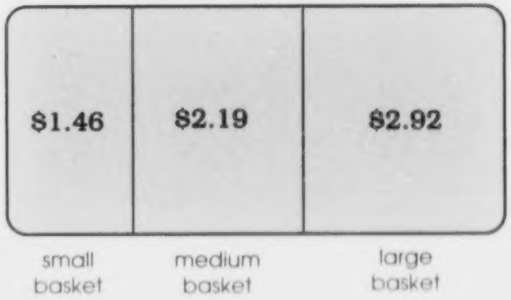
◆ Multiply the above value by the number assigned to the individual basket to get the wholesale value for that item.

```
  .73
  x 2
$1.46  wholesale value for small basket

  .73
  x 3
$2.19  wholesale value for medium basket

  .73
  x 4
$2.92  wholesale value for large basket
```

Wholesale value for the collection: $6.50



◆ The markup is added on top of the wholesale price to determine the retail price charged to the customer.

RETAIL [illegible]

A fourth method of pricing involves figuring the retail value of each part of an arrangement using the ratio markup method and then adding a percent of profit that is wanted for the business. In the following example this percent of profit is 10%. The ratio markup that will be used is 2 to 1 for the container, mechanics, greens and accessories, and 3 to 1 for the flowers.

Example:

An arrangement includes the following materials at the prices indicated:

1/2 bunch pompon mums ($2.50/bunch)
10 carnations ($0.30 each)
1/3 bunch huckleberry ($2.55/bunch)
1/3 block floral foam ($0.75/block)
1 container ($9.00/dozen)

First figure the wholesale cost for the exact amount of each material used. Then list the appropriate markup for the item (either 2 to 1 or 3 to 1). Calculate the retail cost of each item. Add the retail costs together to obtain the total retail cost of materials in the arrangement.

Wholesale Cost	Amount	Materials	Markup Ratio	Retail Cost
$1.25	1/2 bunch	pompon mums	x 3	$3.75
.85	1/3 bunch	huckleberry	x 2	1.70
3.00	10	carnations	x 3	9.00
.25	1/3 block	floral foam	x 2	.50
.75	1	container	x 2	1.50
		TOTAL RETAIL cost of materials		$16.45

Next calculate the 10% profit. Multiply the total retail cost of materials by 0.1. Then add this figure (profit) to the total retail cost of materials to get the retail selling price. The following calculations show that the retail selling price of this arrangement should be $18.10.

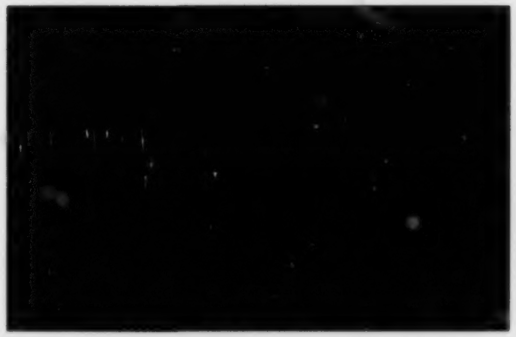
Total retail cost of materials	$16.45
10%	x 0.1
Profit	1.645

Total retail cost of materials	$16.45
Profit	+ 1.65
Retail selling price	$18.10

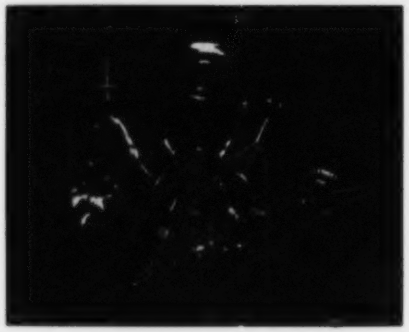
RENTALS

Florists often have for rent items that are used by customers on a one-time basis. Items such as candelabras, kneeling benches, pedestals, aisle posts, fountains, large urns, and canopies may be used for weddings or parties. They enhance the overall floral decorations by serving as props to hold or display flowers. For a one-time event, renting these

Rental items



Retail florists often rent props for weddings.



A candelabra for rent

items is less expensive for the customer than buying them. Some florists also offer for rent large living plants or palm holders (metal tree forms) which they fill with fresh cut palm foliage.

A price must be established for the rental of each item. This will depend on the initial cost of the item, its life expectancy, and the difficulty in storing the item. Living plants must be priced higher than other items because of the expense of maintaining them, the difficulty in moving them, and the rather high probability of damage or rapid decline while they are being rented.

One possible guideline for pricing supply-type rentals is 10% of *the value of the item.* In theory the initial cost would be recovered after ten rentals. However, in practice this is not the case, since an investment has also been made in upkeep and repair, transportation, set-up and take-down time, as well as storage of the item between rentals.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Use the ratio markup method to determine the retail selling price of the items in the table below. Their wholesale value is included in parentheses.

2. Use the wholesale pricing method (40% of retail selling price) to determine the following information (A and B).

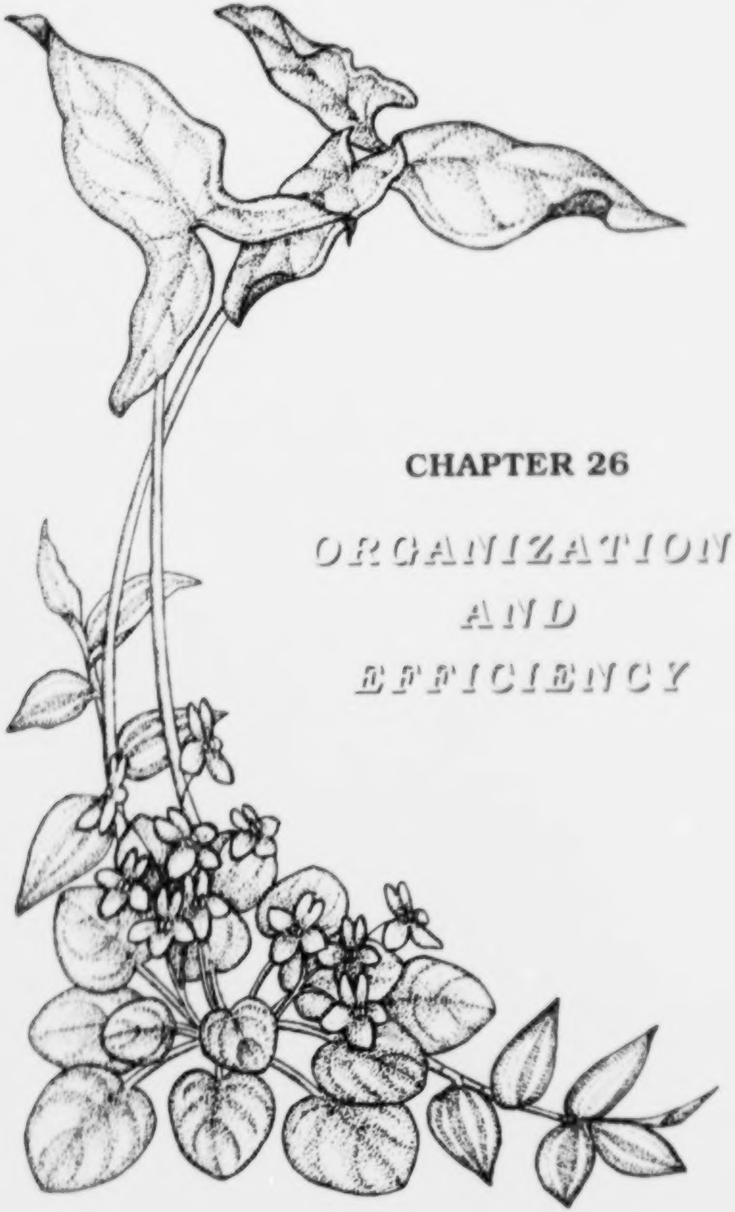
A. If a customer orders a $15 arrangement, what is the total wholesale value of the materials you can use in it?

B. If you use $6.50 worth of materials in an arrangement, what should you sell the arrangement for?

3. Use the *retail cost of goods* pricing method to calculate how much you should sell an arrangement for if it contains the following materials. Wholesale prices have been listed in parentheses. Use the same markup ratios and profit percentage that were used in the example in this chapter.

12 snapdragons ($5.00 for a bunch of 10)
1/6 bunch baby's breath ($6.00/bunch)
7 carnations ($0.30)
1/2 bunch huckleberry ($2.50/bunch)
1/2 block floral foam ($0.50/block)
1 container ($1.25 each)

	Markup Ratio	Retail Selling Price
triangular arrangement ($4.00)	______	________
Oriental vase ($7.50)	______	________
single spray corsage ($1.75)	______	________
wedding bouquet ($6.50)	______	________
cash-and-carry foliage plant ($0.75)	______	________



CHAPTER 26

ORGANIZATION AND EFFICIENCY

ORGANIZATION AND EFFICIENCY

Orders hung on a pegboard

Design area

Since a large part of the cost of operating a flower shop is in labor, everything possible should be done to maximize the efficiency with which the work can be accomplished. While some of the efficiency can be brought about by the shop layout, more can be obtained by organized methods of doing things. Keeping good records, organizing large projects, and maintaining a neat work area can all contribute to improved efficiency.

[illegible]

Designers need a work table or bench that is conveniently located near the storage cooler, supplies and sink. It is helpful if there are shelves or drawers near the work bench for storing tools and supplies that are frequently used. An alternative is to use pegboards with hooks for hanging up tools, supplies and order forms. Pegboards also offer the advantage of locating a particular item at a glance.

Design tables for making up arrangements should be at a convenient height for working while standing up. This is usually more efficient than sitting down, since the designer needs to walk around frequently to get supplies and also will be able to view the arrangement at a better angle. The design table, therefore, should be higher than a table one would sit at - usually about 40 to 42 inches high.

Corsage-making, however, involves a lot of wiring and taping that can be done just as well sitting down. A separate corsage-making center, where all the appropriate supplies are located, could be established at a lower table. To be efficient the supplies should always be within reach of the designer even when sitting down.

Separate containers for trash and scraps of floral foam will be needed near the work area. Often foam and styrofoam scraps are saved to use as filler in certain kinds of containers. Different styles of brooms and dust pans for both floor and table tops are used to keep the area neat and tidy.

An area with a deep sink and water supply is needed for receiving and processing cut flowers. Efficiency is improved if a supply of clean storage containers is kept near this sink. Also, tools like counter-mounted stem cutters, machines to strip off thorns, and floral preservative dispensers should be kept nearby. Screens to prevent clogging of the sink and a drain in the floor near the sink will help avoid time-consuming unclogging operations or mopping up of spills.

A planned receiving and storage area for non-perishable supplies and merchandise should be set up. In large shops there may be less confusion if this area is separate from the flower-receiving area. It should be conveniently located and well organized so that both designers and salespeople can find the items they need.

[illegible]

The sales area showroom is separate from the work area, but they often are connected by a large open window or door to make communication and movement of products easier between the two areas. The sales area should be neat and appealing with adequate floor space for customers to move about. Features usually found in the sales area include:

1. wrapping/sales counter with cash register
2. display refrigerator holding made-up arrangements and cut flowers for sale
3. display shelving, tables or racks holding merchandise, arrangements and plants for sale
4. consultation area with table and chairs

The arrangement of the sales area will depend on the size and configuration of each individual shop. However, a key point should be to provide a good traffic flow pattern within the area. The display cooler should be prominent, perhaps opposite the front door because of its potential value as a sales tool.

The wrapping and sales counter should be easy to access from any display area in the shop. It is usually near the back of the shop between display area and workroom. This will draw customers through the display area and give salespeople easy access to the design room and supplies. Located on or near the sales counter are items like cash register, telephone, sales tax and credit information, boxes, bags, wrapping paper, and all other tools and supplies needed to package up the merchandise. Selection guides from various wire organizations may also be placed here.

A consultation area for weddings, funerals and special events will ideally be a separate room if space permits. If this is not possible, a table and chairs for consulting can be placed in a more out-of-the-way corner of the store. Useful items to have on hand in this area are selection guides, albums of pictures showing other work done by the shop, perhaps sample bouquets made of silk flowers, and order forms.

[illegible]

Containers, foam, accessories and supplies of all types must be unpacked and stored until they are used in arrangements or put on display in the sales area. The items that are used frequently must be stored in a convenient location. Supplies that are used less often or are seasonal may be put in a less accessible place.

Sales counter

Sales area

Two well-organized storage areas

All the supplies that are on hand in a shop collectively make up its **inventory**. The faster these items can be sold or "turned over," the more profit the shop can make. Sometimes supplies are bought in advance and stored for some time before being used because they are seasonal or unique. They may not be available year-round, so must be purchased when the opportunity arises. Another reason for buying in advance or buying in larger quantities is that often items are offered at a special reduced price, or substantial savings are realized when buying in larger amounts. These opportunities, plus the amount of storage space available, will influence the amount of early buying that is possible. In any case, the buyer should have a fairly clear idea of how the items are going to be used. Bargain merchandise that nobody wants to buy will sit unused on the shelves and represents wasted money.

The method chosen for keeping track of inventory is a management decision. The larger shops use computers as a valuable and time-saving way of knowing exactly what items are on hand and the price that was paid for them. In smaller operations purchase records should be kept systematically in notebooks. Another way to help keep inventory organized is to tag each in-coming item with a price and also a code indicating the supplier and the date received.

Some items are in the shop only a few days before they are sold, while other items sit on the shelf for several months. The number of times the same item could be sold in a year is called its **turnover rate**. A higher turnover rate is desirable because it means more profit. Turnover rates in an average flower shop have been estimated as follows:

cut flowers	175
plants	90
gifts	3
other merchandise	6
TOTAL AVERAGE	23

A total accounting of inventory may be taken monthly, at the end of each season, or at the end of the year. It is important to know the total inventory for the year in figuring profit and for tax and insurance purposes. Salable items are divided into categories, listed and counted. The unit price of each item is multiplied by the number of those items in the inventory. These figures are then added together to give the total amount of money invested in the inventory.

Order clipped to a revolving order board

[illegible]

Special holidays for which flowers are traditionally purchased, or weekends with large wedding or party orders are busy times for florists. If the work is to be handled efficiently, some thoughtful planning needs to be done. Of course, florists are sometimes pressed for time if they get an unexpected large funeral order or a rush of last-minute orders. Usually, however, florists can anticipate busy times, based on past experience, and plan ahead for them.

Here are some suggestions for handling busy times in the flower shop.

- Have needed supplies on hand and organized in advance.
- Place the flower order with wholesalers at least a week in advance, and earlier if special items are requested.
- Prepare containers with soaked foam and green-in the basic shapes with foliage several days in advance of adding the flowers.
- Begin wiring long-lasting foliage for corsages or bouquets a couple of days in advance. Then wire the long-lasting flowers and leave only the very delicate ones for last.
- Even working alone, set up an assembly line procedure whenever you can. It is usually more efficient to perform the same step on all pieces before moving on to the next operation.
- If several people are working on a project, assign certain steps to each one rather than having each person do all the steps. People usually become more efficient when repeating the same task rather than switching from task to task.

Arrangements greened in and stored in a cooler

[illegible]

Once a prospective bride has chosen a color scheme, selected the dresses, and determined the size and location of the wedding, she is ready to visit a florist and place her wedding order. It works best if the bride makes an appointment with the florist for a time that is convenient for both parties.

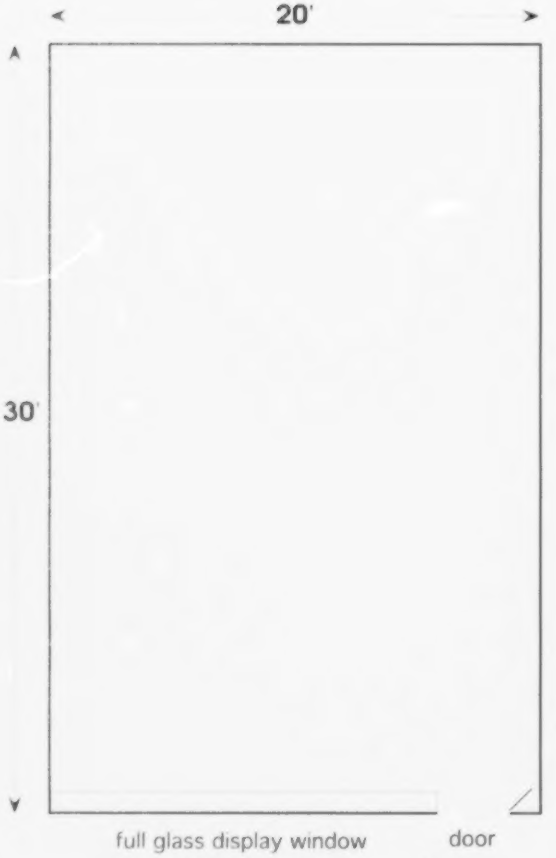
The consultation should take place wherever there is the least chance of being interrupted. A separate consultation room, if available, is ideal because it also allows the florist to display pictures, books and sample bouquets. These items create a pleasant atmosphere and help sell the wedding flowers.

A wedding order usually involves several bouquets, corsages and arrangements. If a wedding order form is used, its format will suggest all possible needs in a logical sequence. The widely-used John Henry Wedding Order Form (included on page 298) is one of these, with all the information assembled on one page. Such forms make sure that nothing is left out in the discussion.

Wedding consultation area

The florist now has an overview of the project which is useful in figuring flower orders and costs. A total cost should be figured and agreed upon. The bride's family is usually responsible for paying for most of the wedding flowers. Exceptions are the bride's bouquet and corsages for the mothers and grandmothers, which are typically paid for by the groom. Usually the total wedding is offered for a set price. The bride is often very firm about what she wants. But giving a skilled florist the opportunity to make substitutions and be more creative can often bring her even more satisfying and special results.

Terms of payment should be well understood by the customer. Usually an advance down payment is required with the balance due when the flowers are delivered.



SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Make a drawing of a work area that will include work table, storage cooler, sink and supply storage. First draw what you would consider an ideal situation. Then draw an actual situation where you have worked, either at school or on a job you had in a real flower shop. Compare the two drawings. Would it be possible to make any changes in the arrangement of the real work area to make it more efficient?

2. To the left is a sketch of a flower shop sales area that is 20 feet by 30 feet. Draw a possible layout which will include wrapping/sales counter, display refrigerator, display shelves or tables, and consultation area.

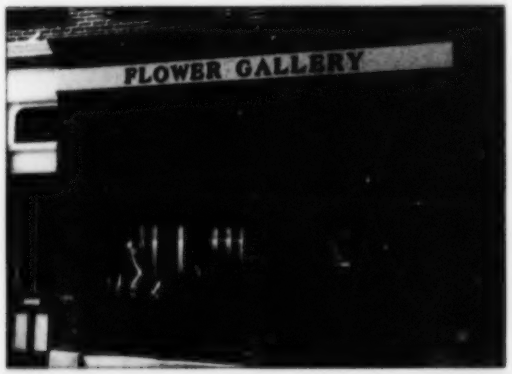
The counter, display units, refrigerator and table and chairs of the consultation area can be drawn to scale on a separate paper. Cut them out and move them around on the floor plan to visualize different possibilities.

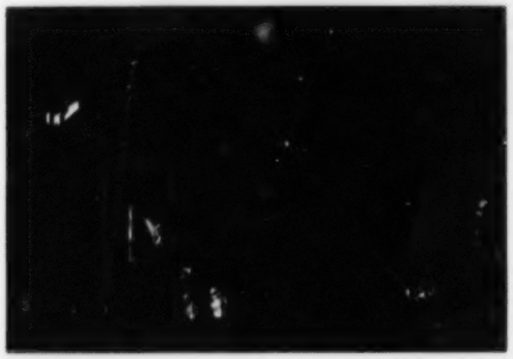
3. Think of an important decorating event you have been involved in. Make a daily calendar for the week preceding the activity. List on it what you could do each day to get ready and how you could help eliminate the last-minute rush.

4. Role-play the florist taking a wedding order. One student will be the prospective bride and another the florist. Have the florist fill out a wedding order form during the discussion. The florist should be prepared to ask the bride questions if she does not volunteer all the information needed.

CHAPTER 27

STORE DISPLAYS





913

STORE DISPLAYS

Customers judge a floral business by the attractiveness and quality of its displays. The front window is seen by many more people than will ever enter the shop. Most will get a quick impression from what they see and go on their way. But some viewers are attracted into the store by a dynamic or appealing display.

[illegible]

The exterior of a flower shop should be well maintained and have easy access from the parking area. An easy-to-read and attractive sign should be located where it can be seen easily from the street or road. This will help bring in business. If the situation permits, a well-landscaped entrance with flower beds or containers of flowering plants during the growing season is desirable. Outdoor decorations can continue into the winter, especially in December when roping, lighted trees, and door decorations create a festive Christmas mood.

[illegible]

The window is important whether or not it is complemented by a decorated exterior. Most windows are large and allow the customer to see into the shop. Window decorations that encourage this make use of displays that only partially block the view into the store. The other approach is to block the view into the store with decorations used against a solid background. This usually is fabric or other backing material which enhances the display, helping carry out the theme or color scheme.

Effective window displays require thought, planning and a degree of creativity. They are set up from one side, but will mainly be viewed from the other side. Objects that are very pretty close-up may be "lost" at a distance. Insufficient materials may make the window look bare, while too many can result in a cluttered appearance. If you are working on a window display, take time to go outdoors and look at it from the sidewalk or road so you can determine what the impact will be on potential customers. Following are some more suggestions.

Suggestions for Creating Window Displays

- Select a theme for the display. The overall message of the display should be obvious to the person driving or walking by.
- Select an overall color scheme. Examples are red and white (Valentine's Day), white and silver (winter), or a triad of bright red, yellow and blue (summer).

Valentine's Day window

914

- Select a focal area and develop the display around it. The focal area should be relatively large and well lighted. Using animation, simulated or real, is a way to draw attention to this spot.
- Display items at various levels, using pedestals or other props to raise plants and flowers to different heights.
- Create a feeling of depth by placing items both to the front and to the back. Even if the window area is narrow, a feeling of perspective can still be established by using larger objects to appear close and smaller objects to appear farther away.
- Use oversized items when necessary so they show well from a distance. Generally, the use of fewer objects of a larger size is more distinctive and impressive than the use of many small items.
- Group arrangements and objects, leaving spaces or voids between groupings.
- Frame the display on at least two sides with items like curtains, tree branches, corn shocks, etc.
- Use spot lights to feature key parts of the display. A window must be well lighted if it is to attract attention.
- Keep all cut flowers and plants watered and in good condition.

Window displays should be changed often to be current with the season and special holidays. Following is a list of seasonal and holiday themes appropriate for window displays.

SPECIAL THEMES

January	New Year's Day (1st) Winter
February	Valentine's Day (14th) Presidents' Day
March	St. Patrick's Day (17th) Spring
April	Easter (between March 22 & April 25) Passover Secretary's Week
May	Mother's Day (second Sun.) Memorial Day (last Mon.)
June	Father's Day (third Sun.) Summer
July	Independence Day (4th)
August	Summer
September	Labor Day (first Mon.) Autumn
October	Columbus Day Bosses' Day Sweetest Day Mother-in-Law's Day Halloween (31st)
November	Veteran's Day (11th) Thanksgiving (last Thurs.)
December	Christmas (25th) Hanukkah

AUTUMN DISPLAYS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

SALES AREAS

Permanent items used to create displays are called **props**. Examples include pedestals, urns, arches, benches, topiary forms and grass mats. Many of these items can be purchased from wholesale houses. Florists also usually collect and make props which suit their individual situation and style. Fireplace mantels, Oriental screens and flower carts are among the favorite props used by individual florists to develop particular themes or moods. These items are valuable, so they are usually stored in a basement or attic between seasons of use.

Other props can be created by cutting shapes from cardboard, styrofoam or other foam core. Fabric may be draped over boxes or other supports. Small trees and branches can be anchored upright and then decorated with silk flowers and leaves. Silk materials work well in window displays because they are not perishable.

Props can also be rented or borrowed if there is a convenient source. A greater variety of materials and themes can then be developed. Extra variation and creativity put into a display are more likely to attract attention to it. Besides that, it is more fun!

Displays within the sales area should be as exciting and dynamic as the window display. Featured merchandise, flowers, plants and designs will sell better if they are changed to be in harmony with the changing seasons and holidays. New merchandise should be prominently displayed in coordinated groupings with appropriate backgrounds and accessories.

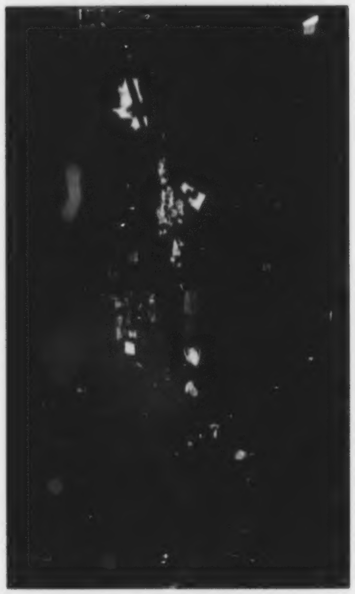
Frequent changes of the in-store displays not only create refreshing new combinations, but also result in clean, dusted merchandise. Items that have not sold well can be removed, redone or placed in new groupings where they may appear more attractive. Living plants will receive more attention. They may benefit from grooming or perhaps rotation to another area where they will get more light.

A variety of display units is preferable to just one type. A combination of shelves, round tables, flower carts, and recessed niches in the wall will add interest to a shop. Table coverings can be changed to complement the merchandise, carry out a color scheme, or reflect a particular theme. If space is limited, some items can be suspended from the ceiling or hung on walls or doors. Tiered shelving is another efficient way to display plants and other merchandise.

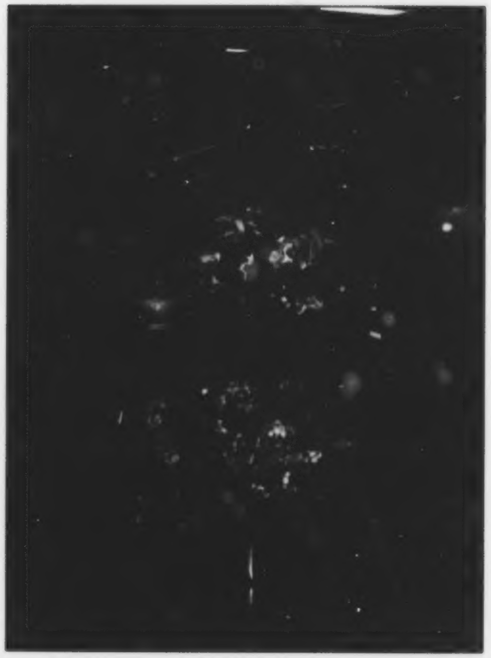
Information you want browsing customers to see should be placed on signs near the merchandise. These signs should be neat and easy to read. Larger signs look more professional if they are done with a lettering kit.

Take time occasionally to evaluate the shop's displays and traffic flow pattern. Walk through the door of the shop and view it from the customer's perspective. Does your overall impression include such thoughts as "clean", "neat", "interesting", "good smelling", and "pleasantly lighted"? Since flower shops market aesthetically pleasing products, the experience of visiting your shop should linger as a pleasant and positive memory in the minds of your customers.

PEDESTALS FOR DISPLAY



BEST COPY AVAILABLE



FLOWER SHOP DISPLAYS

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Make out a monthly schedule for changing the window display of a flower shop. List the theme for each month's display. Also list the basic color scheme and major props you would use.

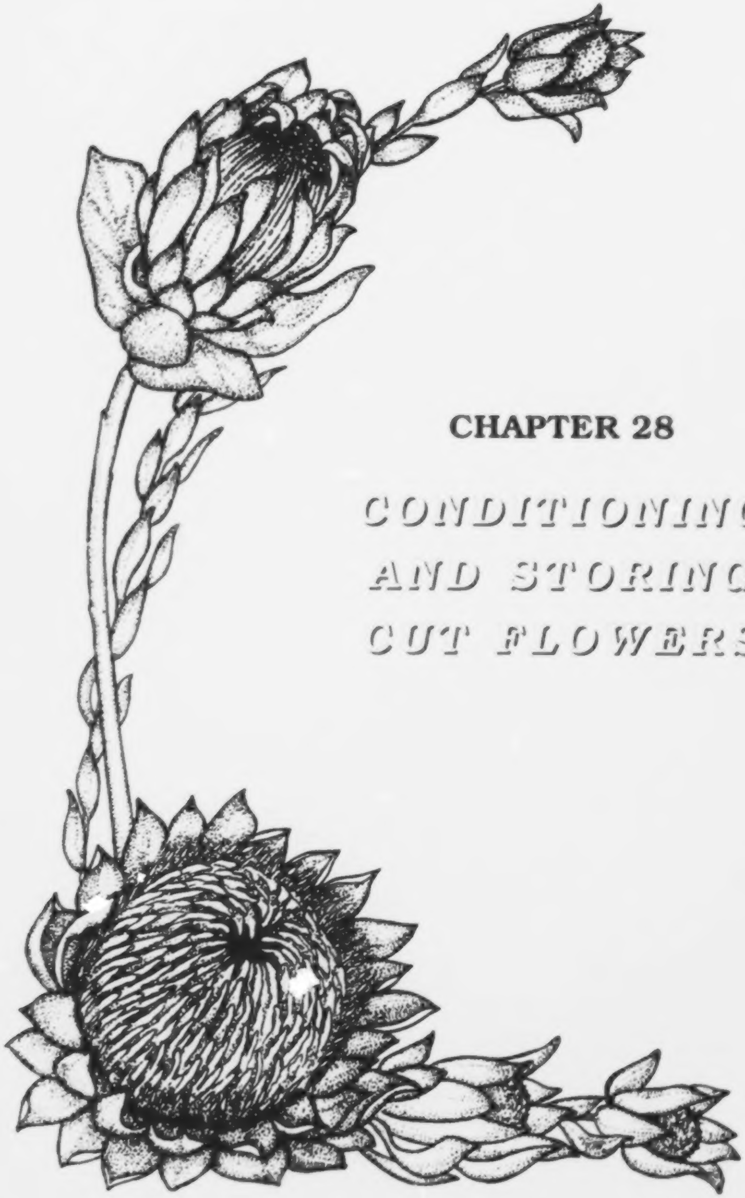
2. Sketch out a window display for one of the months. Indicate focal area and placement of the props. Make a list of all materials you would need to assemble before starting.

3. Describe the lighting of the window display you have created. What type of lights would you use? Where would they be placed, and how would you conceal them?

4. Create a shop or window display in a designated place at your school. Locate any props that are available, then decide if you need to borrow or make more. Draw up a plan for the fresh-cut flowers and potted plants you wish to use. Then assemble the display and maintain it for one week. Check with others who see your display and find out what their reactions are. Are they able to determine what the theme is? Are they interested enough to stop and examine the display in more detail?

921

922



CHAPTER 28

CONDITIONING AND STORING CUT FLOWERS

CONDITIONING AND STORING CUT FLOWERS

Recutting stems with an underwater stem cutter extends the life of flowers.

All cut flowers gradually wither and die, but their life can be extended with good handling and storage techniques. Florists have a responsibility to offer quality flowers that customers can enjoy for a reasonable length of time. Some flowers, like chrysanthemums, carnations and statice, naturally last longer than others, like roses and iris. However, all cut flowers can be enjoyed longer if proper attention is given to water supply, sanitation, refrigeration, and use of floral preservatives during their handling and storage.

To produce the highest quality cut flowers, proper care must be observed at all levels of the market chain - growers, wholesalers, retailers and customers. The Chain of Life program was developed by the Society of American Florists to make information available to all who handle cut flowers concerning lengthening the life of floral products. Their publications give accurate and extensive information on all aspects of care and handling.

chainoflife

What causes flowers to die prematurely? Here is a list of some of the more common reasons why flowers fail to last. As you read them, try to decide what role the grower, wholesaler, retailer and customer of cut flowers should play in overcoming each problem.

1. ***The flowers run out of water.***

- The flowers are allowed to dehydrate during harvesting or shipping.
- The flowers are not unpacked promptly and put in water buckets when received by wholesaler or retailer.
- The designer lets the flowers dry out or does not soak the floral foam completely.
- Customers fail to add water to bud vases or arrangements.
- Designers do not leave room in the container where water can be added.

2. ***Air temperatures are too warm.***

- The flowers are harvested in a hot greenhouse or allowed to heat up in shipping cartons while sitting too long on docks or in terminals.
- Refrigerated transit facilities or storage coolers are not used.

- The cooler breaks down and heats up.
- The design room is very warm.
- The customer places the arrangement near a hot-air register.

3. ***Stems become blocked and can not take up water.***

- No one recuts the flower stems.
- Stems are cut with blunt scissors.
- The storage water is allowed to get slimy with bacteria, which clog the cut stems.

4. ***The flowers use up their stored food.***

- Flowers are stored in the dark for a long time.
- No one adds a sugar-containing floral preservative to the water.

5. ***Ethylene gas causes flowers to deteriorate rapidly.***

- Damaged flowers and foliage are not removed.
- Lower leaves on stems decay under water.
- Fruit or cut evergreens are stored near the flowers.
- Shipping cartons containing cut flowers are subjected to exhaust fumes from delivery trucks.

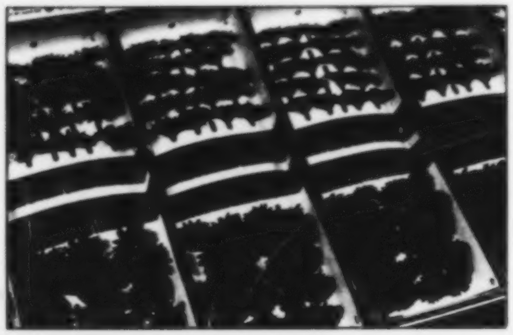
[illegible]

Proper handling and storage of plant materials will keep them in good condition for a maximum length of time. Since cut flowers and foliages are perishable, they should be processed soon after arriving at the shop. Boxes left for periods of time on loading docks or even in the store are subject to temperature extremes and exposure to harmful exhaust fumes.

Flowers are usually shipped dry in cardboard boxes lined with newspaper. When they arrive they should be immediately unpacked. If there is a plastic sleeve around the bunch, it should be removed or loosened. Flowers usually continue to open and they will need the space to do so in a natural way.

Immediately after they are unpacked, the flowers usually have their stems recut. They are then placed in warm water to which floral preservative has been added. They are allowed to stand at room temperature two hours or more before being placed in the cooler. These steps, aimed at making the flowers last longer, are called **conditioning**.

All damaged flowers and foliage should be removed. The damaged material is not usable and will give off ethylene, a gas which causes healthy flowers to age faster. The lower foliage should be stripped off the stems so none will be submerged below the water level in storage buckets. Again, foliage that is below the water will decay and give off ethylene. It will also promote the growth of bacteria which make the water slimy and block water uptake by the flower stems.



Gerbera daisies packed in cardboard shipping boxes

Roses in a storage cooler

Making a fresh sharp cut helps maximize water uptake.

Mixing floral preservatives

Liquid preservative used with a proportioner

Floral preservative in packets for customers to use

Use a sharp knife or sturdy counter-mounted stem cutter to cut an inch or two off the ends of the stems. Do not use dull equipment or blunt shears; they can do more harm than good by pinching shut the water-conducting tubes of the stem. There is no increase in water uptake through a slanted-cut stem. Underwater cutters that are now available (page 462) seem to help extend flower life by minimizing the development of stem-blocking air bubbles.

Flowers should be placed directly into plastic containers that have been filled a quarter to a half full of water to which a floral preservative has been added. Directions for the correct amounts of water and preservative to use will be found on the preservative container. Metal containers may react with acidic preservative solutions and eventually rust. It is a good idea to have a selection of container sizes that can accommodate different stem lengths and different size bunches. Flowers that hang over the sides of a container can be easily damaged or broken off.

After the flowers have been in preservative water at room temperature from thirty minutes to an hour, the bucket with flowers should be transferred to the cooler. It will be stored there until the flowers are needed.

[illegible]

Preservatives consist of two basic ingredients, a sugar and a bactericide. The sugar prolongs the life of flowers by supplying food that the living plant tissues need. The bactericide kills microorganisms that clog the vascular tubes of the stem and interfere with water uptake. Proper sanitation of the cooler and flower containers will also help keep bacterial growth to a minimum. Buckets should be washed out frequently with a disinfectant like bleach. The cooler walls and floors should also be frequently cleaned to eliminate sources of bacteria.

Floral preservatives are available as powders or liquids. They must be mixed with water according to directions given by the manufacturer. Too small a concentration can be ineffective, while too much can damage flowers. *Floralife* and *Forever* are two major brand names.

Powders mix best with warm water. Liquids can be dispensed with a hand pump that fits on the jugs of concentrated preservative. Another mixing method is to use a proportioner that attaches to the water faucet. The proportioner siphons out the proper amount of concentrate, mixing it with the water coming from the tap. The latter method is more efficient when many buckets are to be filled.

[illegible]

Some flowers, like roses and carnations, are especially sensitive to ethylene gas. Others wilt easily or are subject to stem clogging and yellowing of foliage. Silver thiosulfate is used as a pretreatment to minimize the harmful effects of ethylene. Citric acid is used as a hydrating solution to reduce water stress problems like bent neck in roses.

Large **walk-in coolers**, fully lighted, are most commonly used for storage. Some have humidity control. Cut flowers, which are still living plants, can best be maintained in good condition under lights and with moist air. The air is usually circulated by a fan, but flowers should not be placed directly in front of one in blowing air. Buckets of flowers can be placed on the floor or on large storage shelves installed around the edge of the cooler for more efficient use of space.

Temperatures inside the cooler are usually maintained at between 35° and 40°F. Flowers can be stored even longer at temperatures approaching 32°F, but that can be dangerous. The temperature in the cooler could fluctuate right down to freezing, ruining the flowers.

Tropical flowers like birds-of-paradise, anthurium, ginger and orchids should be kept in a separate cooler set with warmer temperatures (45° to 50°F). Temperatures below 40°F often cause these flowers to become limp and show signs of browning. This is called **chilling injury**. If a second cooler is not available, these sensitive flowers could be kept in a part of the shop that is not too warm.

Coolers should be cleaned regularly. Buckets should be emptied promptly after flowers have been removed and washed out with a disinfectant. Decaying plant materials should be removed from the cooler. Every week or two the cooler should be emptied so that the floor and shelves can be washed down with a detergent solution.

Display coolers have large glass doors and shelves or pedestals for displaying arrangements and cut flowers. Some display coolers are large enough to walk into. In some shops the window display has been made into a large display cooler for holding fresh flowers.

Display coolers are usually brightly lighted with fluorescent lights to attract attention and show off the flowers. A well-earned nickname for a display cooler is "the silent salesperson" because made-up arrangements and well-priced merchandise in the cooler often create impulse buying. The designs are ready for immediate sale. They can also be shown as examples to customers who are uncertain as to what they want. Also, a good salesperson, by describing additional materials that could be added to the arrangement, can "upsell" a made-to-order arrangement that costs more.

Keeping clean and organized is very important in display coolers. The glass doors especially must be kept clean so customers can see the floral products to their best advantage. As soon as arrangements are sold, others should be put in their place, or the arrangements that are left should be rearranged.

Cut flowers should be displayed in attractive containers that are in proportion to the size and stem length of the flowers. Mixed bunches of flowers, bud vases and novelty arrangements are good impulse items to include in display coolers.

Roses stored in plastic buckets in a walk-in cooler

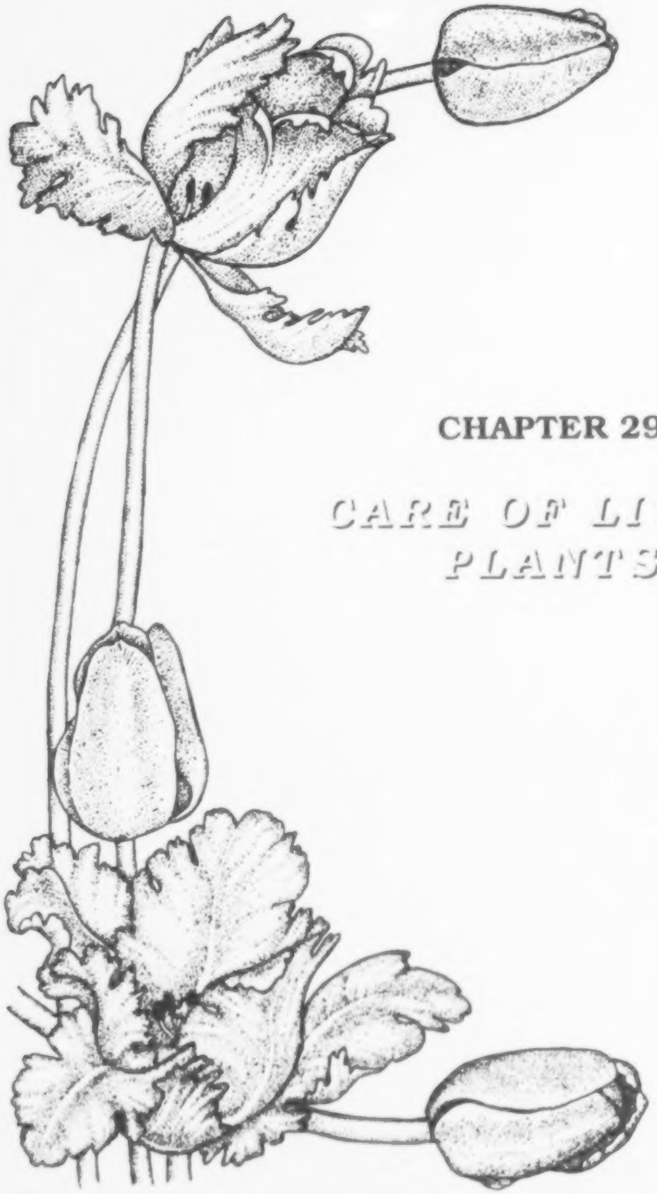
Well-organized display cooler

Tropical flowers stored at room temperature to avoid chilling injury

More specific information on coolers can be obtained by writing to manufacturers and distributors of florist coolers. Their names and addresses can be found under "Refrigerators" and "Display Fixtures" in the Florists' Review Retail Buyers' Guide.

[illegible]

The longer flowers are exposed to room temperatures (after their initial conditioning treatment) the faster they age and the shorter the time the customer has to enjoy them. However, sometimes deliberate exposure to warm temperatures is used to hasten development of flowers that are in tight bud. These flowers need to show more color if they are to be used effectively in arrangements. Gladioli and lilies are often shipped in tight bud and then forced open by keeping them at room temperature after placement in warm water containing floral preservative. In general, the warmer the temperature, the faster the opening. Flowers which open readily (like daffodils and tulips) may be put into arrangements in the partially opened stage. This will allow customers to enjoy watching them change form over several days.



CHAPTER 29

CARE OF LIVING PLANTS

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Living plant groupings are constructed so that customers can take care of them.

Retail sales area with living plants displayed in conservatory style

CARE OF LIVING PLANTS

Living plants are not usually kept long in retail florist shops. While they are there, however, it is important to care for them properly. Furthermore, employees in a flower shop should know enough about living plants so they can give useful and correct information. Customers may want to know what conditions will be best for the plant and how long the plant can reasonably be expected to live.

FLOWERING PLANT CARE

Flowering plants should be at their peak of bloom or approaching it when purchased by a customer. If the plant is not far enough along in its development, the shopper may not find it attractive enough to buy. If the plant has been in flower for some time and is starting to decline, the customer will not be able to get many days of enjoyment out of the plant.

Before being put on display, plants should be **groomed** (cleaned up) by wiping off the leaves with a damp cloth. Also, any dead (spent) blooms or damaged foliage should be removed. The best flowering plants will be symmetrically shaped and full of flowers.

The following environmental conditions will prolong the life of most flowering plants.

Cool Temperatures

Very warm temperatures cause the flowers to age more quickly. Cooler temperatures make them last longer. However, care must be taken not to chill sensitive plants like African violets, gloxinias and poinsettias. Avoid placing plants near hot air registers where they will be exposed to currents of hot dry air, or near doors where they might receive blasts of cold air.

Adequate Light

Light in a retail store or home is often below the minimum levels required for good flowering plant maintenance. In low light plants will not be able to make enough food and they will eventually decline in quality. Supplemental lighting from lamps will help overcome this problem. If plants can be displayed near windows, they may get enough natural light to sustain them.

Grooming flowering plants

Adequate Water

Both overwatering and underwatering can be a problem in keeping plants looking good. Plants set in decorative containers are often overwatered because drainage water collects inside the container. The leaves then turn yellow and drop off. Plants that receive too little water may become light green or pale yellow and also lose leaves. If not watered, they will wilt and eventually die.

FOLIAGE PLANT CARE

Foliage plants can be expected to last many months if provided with favorable conditions. Although their care requirements may vary, most foliage plants can adapt well to home conditions and remain popular with the buying public.

Unlike flowering plants, foliage plants may be kept by retail florists in the shop for at least several weeks before they are sold. When available, an attached greenhouse or conservatory is an excellent place to display and maintain foliage plants. For shops without such ideal facilities, the plants can be maintained best on a lighted cart, table or shelves. Plants that are set on waterproof trays filled with gravel will be easier to water properly. The plants also need adequate light, or they will gradually decline in quality. Fluorescent light is economical and also effective for maintaining foliage plants in a retail store.

Watering requirements vary depending on the type of plant, size of pot, and air temperature. Plants generally dry out faster in warm temperatures and will need more water then. Small pots dry out faster than large pots, especially if they are made of clay or if they contain a fairly large, leafy plant. Tropical plants offered for sale to use in terrariums or dish gardens are often in small pots. They will require careful attention and frequent watering while they are in the shop.

Plants that are too large for a light cart should be set on large plant saucers or inside waterproof containers to catch the drainage water. Watering should be thorough, so that some water comes out of the drainage holes. Then the plant is allowed to dry out before its next thorough watering. Frequent watering with small quantities of water will not reach the entire root system. However, be careful not to let plants sit in large amounts of drainage water. This can be a problem when the pot is set inside a decorative container. If you hear water sloshing inside the container when you shake it, you should take the plant out and empty the container. Overwatering will waterlog the soil, causing roots to die, and result in wilting, yellowing and dropping of leaves.

Potted plants that are wrapped in decorative foil are difficult to water properly. The plants should be given enough water to moisten all the soil, but not so much that the soil becomes waterlogged. The foil will prevent the draining of excess water out of the drainage holes.

Plants grown on window sills remain attractive due to natural light.

Watering large foliage plants

Hanging baskets in a retail display

Living plants enhance retail display areas.

9·41

[illegible]

Hanging baskets are most effectively displayed at eye level so that one can see the plants rather than the bottom of the container. Hanging baskets can be surprisingly heavy, requiring sturdy suspension mechanics. If a hanging basket has an attached saucer to catch drainage water, it may be carefully watered in place. The saucers often are quite small and can easily overflow if the basket is watered too heavily. Baskets without saucers should be taken down, watered thoroughly where they can drain, and returned to their suspended position. The baskets may need to be turned if exposed to light coming from one direction, as through a window.

[illegible]

Similar symptoms can be caused by entirely different factors. When you are trying to analyze and correct problems, consider environmental conditions and watering practices in addition to looking at the symptoms. A list of possible causes is given in the table below.

Problem	**Possible Causes**
yellow leaves	overwatering, underwatering, chilling, low soil fertility
brown leaf tips	low humidity, fluorine in water
leaf drop	low light, overwatering, underwatering, chilling
leaf wilt	underwatering, overwatering, chilling
weak growth	low light, overwatering

942

CHAPTER 30

DELIVERY

Plotting the delivery route

Delivery vehicle

DELIVERY

Delivery is a service of convenience to customers that has traditionally been offered by most retail flower shops. It is especially helpful when orders are going to hospitals or funeral homes where there are special entrances and policies for flower deliveries. Also, on other occasions the customer sending a floral gift to someone may appreciate the opportunity to have it delivered by the florist.

Many mass market floral operations establish a business policy of cash-and-carry. Those operations that do not have the expense of hiring a delivery person or maintaining a delivery vehicle can offer the product for less money. There is a place in the market for both types of operations. Full-service flower shops are not likely to go out of business because people want service and are willing to pay for it. However, florists must recover the cost of delivery either in the price charged for flowers or by adding a delivery fee. More and more florists are establishing delivery fees.

DELIVERY PERSON

The people hired to deliver flowers are important representatives of the shop. They travel about the community and are likely to interact directly with more people than do those who work only at the shop.

It is important for delivery persons to be competent in the handling of flowers, capable of driving vehicles safely, and effective in communicating with people. They should be able to work efficiently without direct supervision. They should be well groomed and appropriately dressed for the work they are doing.

DELIVERY VEHICLE

The delivery vehicle needs to be kept clean and in good operating condition. There should be an attractive and easy-to-read logo on the vehicle indicating the name of the shop. Since this vehicle circulates widely throughout the community and is seen by many people, it helps create an image for the shop. It is a valuable advertising tool that should not be ignored.

PLOTTING THE ROUTE

The delivery person should be familiar with the area being traveled. It is helpful to post a map to locate delivery sites. If the map is mounted on a cork board, pins can be inserted into the locations to be visited so the most direct route can be visualized. Another technique is to put a piece of plexiglass over the map so that a non-permanent marker can be used to plot the route.

Orders should be sorted into morning and afternoon deliveries. Those that have special delivery times must be clearly marked and must have the delivery time posted. Once the route is determined, a list of stops in proper sequence can be made out and placed on a clipboard near the driver's seat.

LOADING THE VEHICLE

The vehicle is loaded in reverse of the order that the flowers will be delivered. Those that go to the last stop are put in first, although the order may have to be altered somewhat for more efficient loading of items of different sizes. The vehicle may be equipped with rack and braces to hold baskets and sprays upright. A pole or bar may be used to suspend hanging baskets.

Cardboard delivery bases can be stapled around arrangements to give them more stability. Arrangements can also be placed in open boxes with tissue paper wedged around their base to make them more stable and easier to handle. (For more discussion of wrapping and packaging, see Chapter 24.) Sand bags, pillows and rugs are used around arrangements and boxes to keep them from shifting during transport.

Easel and candelabra sprays can be laid flat on their backs on the floor of the vehicle, since the back is not designed to show and has no flowers. Ribbon streamers are often rolled up and pinned with a corsage pin so they do not become wrinkled or soiled.

The delivery address for each piece should be clearly stated on an attached tag (Fig. 30-1). The delivery person will need to have the tags attached in a spot where they are easy to see.

MAKING THE DELIVERY

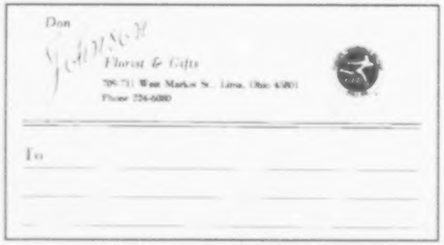
The delivery should be made to the front door unless otherwise instructed. The delivery person rings the doorbell or knocks and presents the flowers to the recipient. The delivery person should offer a friendly personal greeting and identify the name of the shop. For example: "Good afternoon, I'm Dan from the Bouquet Shop. I have a special delivery of flowers for you today."

If no one is home, the driver has three choices:

1. Leave the flowers with a neighbor. A note should be left telling the recipient where the delivery was made. Sometimes a small token floral gift like a single rose is given to the neighbor for his or her cooperation. It may spark some new business for the shop.
2. Leave the recipient a card (Fig. 30-2) saying you are returning the flowers to the shop and asking the person to call or stop by to pick them up.
3. Leave the flowers on a porch or in a protected area. Follow up with a phone call to make sure they were received satisfactorily.

The delivery person should handle arrangements gently, keeping them upright to avoid damaging them. Good packing techniques and careful driving will reduce injuries during transport. Sometimes, even when good handling techniques are practiced, flowers become disarranged. The delivery person should carry a basic florist tool kit and supplies for making minor repairs. Ideally, the delivery person should know enough about flower arranging to make any repairs blend in with the rest of the design.

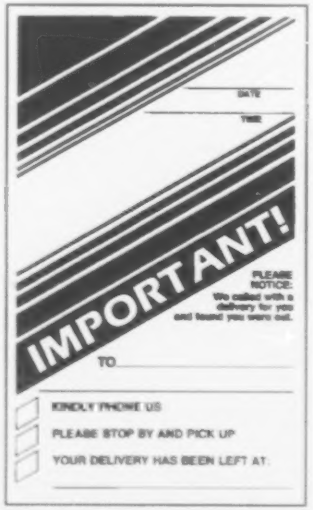
Loading the delivery vehicle



Don Johnson
Florist & Gifts

To

Figure 30-1 Delivery tag



DATE

TIME

IMPORTANT!

PLEASE NOTICE:
We called with a delivery for you and found you were out.

TO

☐ KINDLY PHONE US
☐ PLEASE STOP BY AND PICK UP
☐ YOUR DELIVERY HAS BEEN LEFT AT:

Figure 30-2

Card to leave for recipient who is not at home

SPECIALIZED DELIVERIES

Funeral Home Deliveries

The delivery person should know the location and delivery policies of each funeral home. The delivery entrance must be located. A record should be made of the times of day that each funeral home prefers to have flowers delivered. The name of the deceased must be on the delivery tag.

Hospital Deliveries

It is important to know the delivery policies of the hospital(s). Often hospital volunteers receive the flowers and deliver them to patients' rooms. The patient's full name should be clearly marked on the delivery tag.

Wedding Deliveries

The flower shop should have a clear understanding with the bride as to when and where the flowers are to be delivered. If the wedding is not going to be serviced by the shop, the bouquets, corsages and boutonnieres may be left in the back of the church or in dressing rooms, or placed in refrigerators, according to instructions given in advance by the bride. Also, as prearranged, church and reception flowers may be put in place or left for others to take care of.

C.O.D. Deliveries

"C.O.D." means *cash on delivery*. The driver is to collect payment at the time of delivery. A receipt should be made out by the driver and given when the money is received. The shop manager must decide which orders can be shipped on this basis.

Candy stripers distribute flowers to hospital patients

Cooperative Deliveries

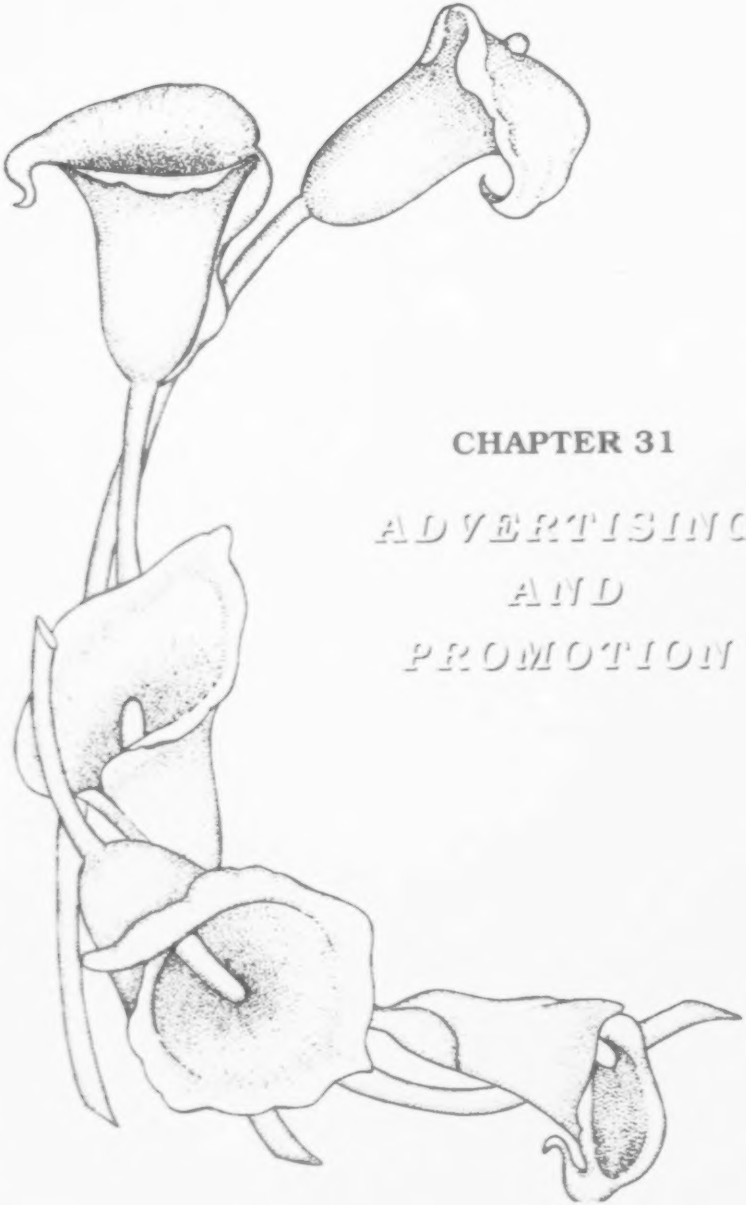
The florists within a given locality sometimes go together to support a joint delivery service. This arrangement can save money and, under some circumstances, be more efficient. However, the implementation and success of this venture will depend on the degree of cooperation that can be achieved among the florists involved.

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Obtain a county, town or city map of your local area. Pick six locations in various parts of the area and map out an efficient delivery route. Avoid backtracking when possible, but also consider driving time and condition of the roads.

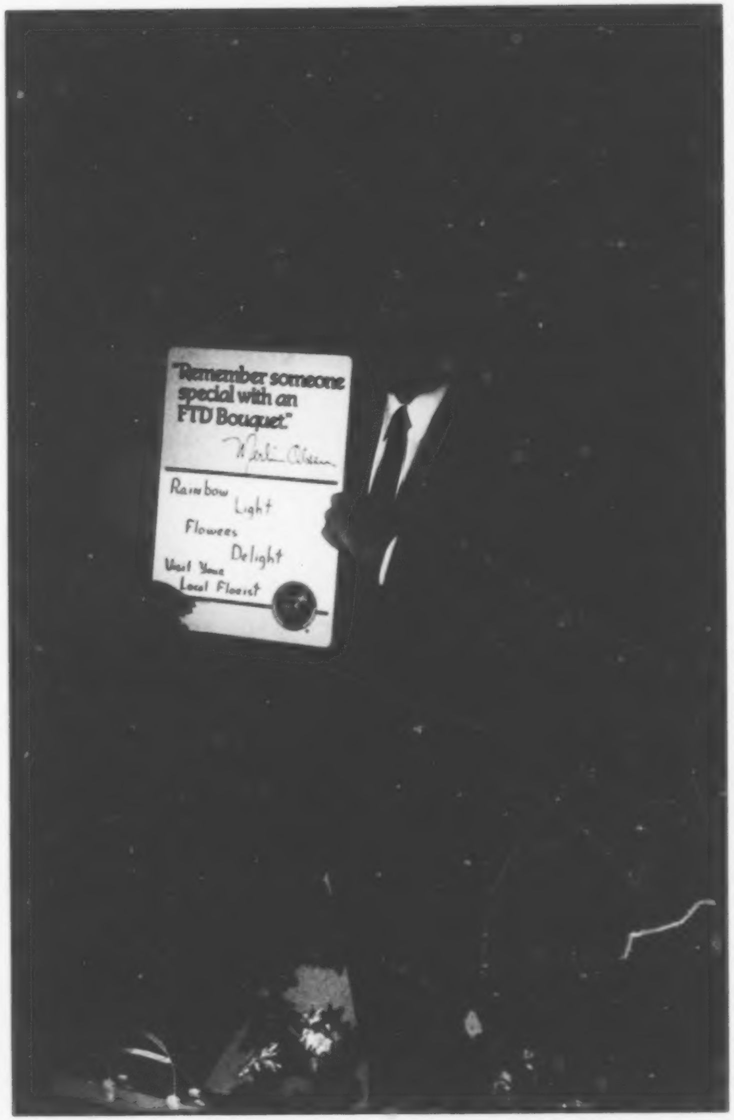
2. Practice loading a delivery vehicle with several arrangements. Label with delivery tags. Staple cardboard bases around pedestal containers and use sand bags or rugs to keep the items from shifting around.

3. Role-play making a delivery to the door of a person receiving flowers. The person playing the recipient should be behind the closed door. That person may choose to cheerfully receive the flowers, complain about some damage in transport, or simply be "not at home." The delivery person should respond in an appropriate way.

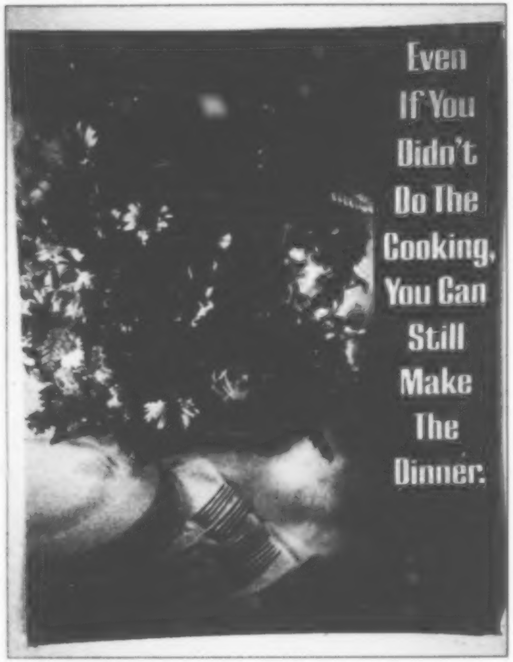


CHAPTER 31

ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION


"Remember someone special with an FTD Bouquet."
Rainbow
Light
Flowers
Delight
Visit Your
Local Florist

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



Advertising helps create a desire for flowers.

In-store display advertising wire service specials

ADVERTISING AND PROMOTION

If a business is to grow and prosper, its products and services must be made known to potential customers. A favorable reputation can be built over time as a result of quality products and good service. New shops have a special challenge to win customers and gain a share of the potential market.

[illegible]

It has been recommended that florists spend about 3 to 5 percent of their gross sales on advertising. For businesses just getting started, this percentage may need to be even higher. Each florist must consider the different types of advertising available and decide how much and what kinds will be done. Developing ahead of time a well considered advertising plan is far better than randomly acting as various opportunities arise.

Some of the ways that florists advertise are as follows:

1. newspaper ads
2. radio ads
3. window displays
4. shop sign and store exterior
5. delivery vehicle
6. direct mailings
7. yellow pages ads
8. billboards
9. community involvement

Sometimes larger organizations provide general advertising of floral products that may benefit individual florists. Such larger groups include local allied florists, wire service organizations, and national organizations such as the Society of American Florists (SAF) and American Floral Marketing Council (AFMC).

The easiest and least expensive advertising is the image projected by the store exterior, window display and delivery vehicle. All these may initially help attract customers. However, as business grows, it is the word-of-mouth reputation that is more likely to result in a valuable network that reaches more potential customers.

[illegible]

Another way to attract customers into the shop is to hold an open house. This is especially effective at the beginning of the Christmas season. By November it is time to bring out new merchandise and redecorate the showroom in a Christmas motif. Customers are preparing to decorate for the holidays and are likely to be in a shopping mood.

Spring and fall are also possible times for an open house. With the seasonal change in decor, there is a reason to invite customers in to inspect the "latest look" for the season.

Newspaper ads reach large numbers of people. For most florists, ads are the most cost-effective form of advertising.

Ads that are run regularly keep the name of the shop before the public, so that people are more likely to remember that name when they are ready to buy flowers. Holiday specials are logical subjects for a newspaper ad. Also, reminding the public of less common holidays like Secretary's Day, Grandparents' Day and Sweetest Day may create sales that would not otherwise have been made. Since flowers are especially appropriate for these and other holidays, the well-placed ad might convince customers to select flowers over other gifts like candy or perfume. Another advertising strategy is to suggest flowers as a good gift for the hard-to-please person who is thought to "have everything."

Ads should also promote everyday use of flowers. Wire service organizations offer good suggestions for both holiday specials and everyday bouquets. They help promote sales by preparing colorful posters for use in the shop and presenting attractive ads on television and in magazines.

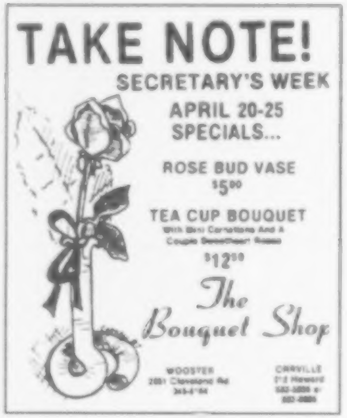
Newspaper ads should be simple and to the point. Their wording, layout and artwork can help build the image you have chosen for your shop.

Additional suggestions for newspaper ads

- Keep ads simple and easy to read. Stress one or two specials or ideas. Don't clutter the ad with too many thoughts.
- Use your logo with the shop's name clearly visible. This will establish an easy-to-identify format.
- Use good design principles just as you would in a window display. Remember that open spaces around the writing or illustrations are important in emphasizing or drawing attention to those features of the ad.
- Choose illustrations or pictures to help attract interest to the ad.
- Vary the size of the print for interest. Put main thoughts in bold print.

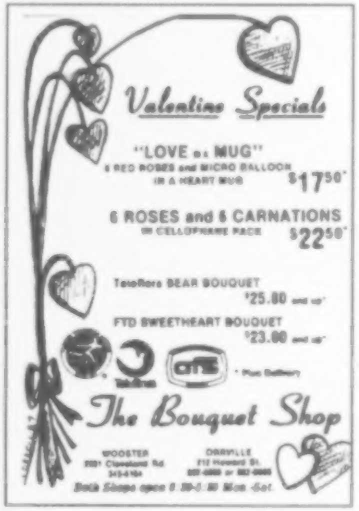
An open house shows customers what the shop has to offer.

NEWSPAPER ADS



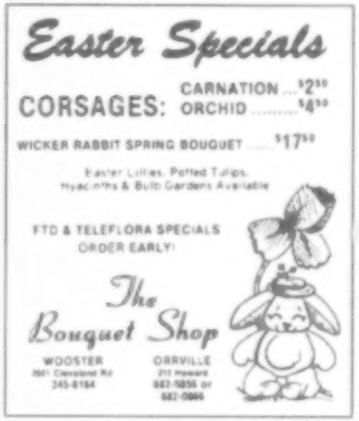
TAKE NOTE!
SECRETARY'S WEEK
APRIL 20-25
SPECIALS...
ROSE BUD VASE
$5.00
TEA CUP BOUQUET
$12.50
The Bouquet Shop
WOOSTER
ORRVILLE

Secretary's Week



Valentine Specials
"LOVE in a MUG"
IN A HEART MUG $17.50*
6 ROSES and 6 CARNATIONS
IN CELLOPHANE PACK $22.50*
Teleflora BEAR BOUQUET
$25.00 and up*
FTD SWEETHEART BOUQUET
$23.00 and up*
The Bouquet Shop
WOOSTER
ORRVILLE

Valentine's Day



Easter Specials
CORSAGES: CARNATION ... $2.50
ORCHID $4.50
WICKER RABBIT SPRING BOUQUET $17.50
Easter Lillies, Potted Tulips,
Hyacinths & Bulb Gardens Available
FTD & TELEFLORA SPECIALS
ORDER EARLY!
The Bouquet Shop
WOOSTER
345-6164
ORRVILLE
211 Howard

Easter

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Advertising poster

PUBLIC RELATIONS

Good public relations are essential if a business is to thrive. Public relations are important in creating an image, making people aware of your shop, and eventually drawing and keeping customers.

The relationship of the shop to the customers is one form of public relations. Guaranteeing flowers, educating customers about proper flower care, and employing pleasant salespeople who can effectively deal with people, along with every other service you provide, are all important forms of public relations. It can also be very valuable to reach out to the public through participation in local events, speaking engagements, and gifts of flowers, if such practices do not become too expensive or time-consuming.

Send a Celebration!

Advertising buttons worn by shop employees

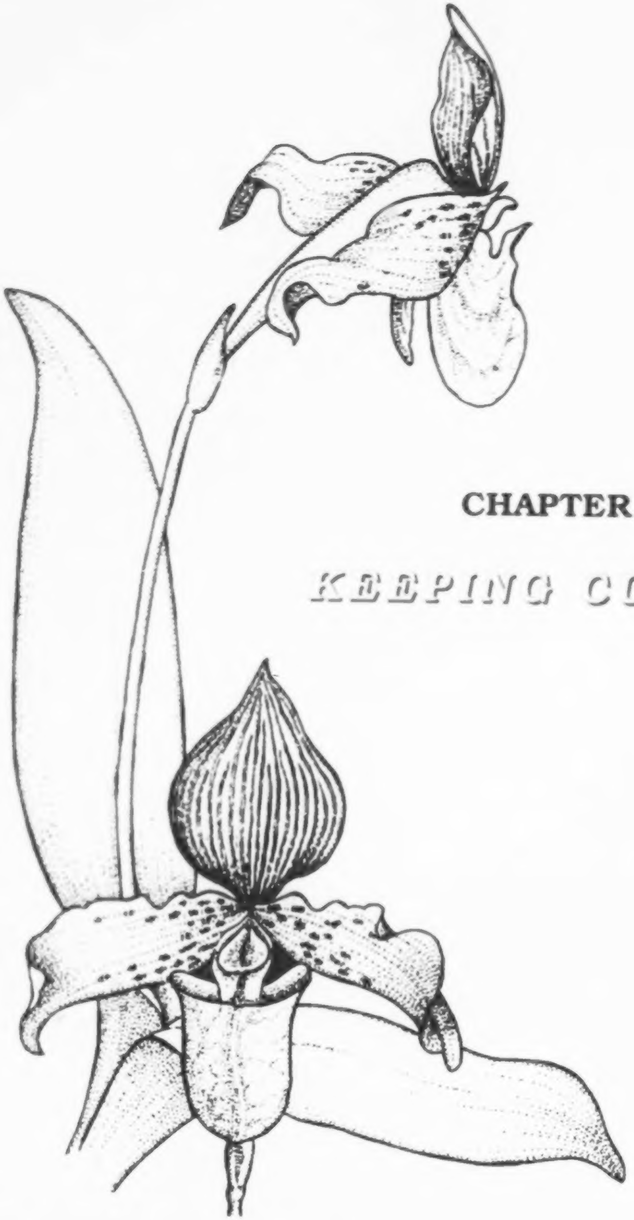
SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

1. Select a week of the year. Design a 4- by 8-inch advertisement to be placed in the newspaper on Wednesday of that week to advertise your shop. Select whatever theme or specials you wish to promote.

2. Prepare a one-minute radio advertisement that might be read over the air to promote your shop. Write out the message and read it to the class as if you were a radio announcer.

3. Prepare an advertising strategy for a school project (such as Valentine flowers or flowers for a football game or prom). Decide what you will do and make a timetable for all the tasks that need to be done. Divide up responsibility among class members and carry out the project.

4. Have each person make a poster to advertise an event that is happening at school. Use felt-tip markers and lettering sets if these are available. Discuss where the posters could be most effectively displayed.



CHAPTER 32

KEEPING CURRENT

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

AIFD
INSTITUTE OF FLORAL

Students of The Ohio State University - Agricultural Technical Institute (ATI), Anderson Chapter, SAIFD attend the national symposium each year.

KEEPING CURRENT

A person embarking on a career in retail floriculture should be prepared to continue learning throughout life and be able to adjust to change. New design styles and business practices are constantly developing. Floriculture students who are aware of changes should be able to evaluate their merits. As they incorporate the best of the new ideas into their own situations, they are more likely to be rewarded with success.

A good education will lay a sound foundation for future learning. In high school and college a student will learn basic science, math and communications skills which can be applied in various aspects of everyday life. If enrolled in a horticulture program, the student will be introduced to the basics of plant growth, plant care, floral design, and business management, along with the related practical experience and skill development.

A student wishing to further his or her education by going on to college may begin with either a two- or a four-year program. For people who want to take a concentrated course in floral design, there are design schools that offer courses lasting a few weeks.

Keeping current while on the job can be accomplished by reading books and magazines and attending short courses and special programs sponsored by various organizations. In Ohio, the Ohio Florists' Association and The Ohio State University sponsor The Ohio Florist Short Course each July. This educational event offers special programs by outstanding people in floriculture. It also includes a large trade show where vendors present their latest products. This is an excellent opportunity to meet and exchange ideas with other people in the industry from Ohio, many other states, and throughout the world.

Throughout the year local florist organizations (often called *allieds*) sponsor programs. Wire service organizations offer programs and workshops in addition to their regular publications. The prestigious American Institute of Floral Design (AIFD) has a selective membership of top designers who have gone through stringent entry requirements. They present a national symposium each year in addition to various regional events. (See opposite page.)

The Cooperative Extension Service of state land-grant institutions produces publications on a variety of topics and also hosts specialized programs. Garden clubs and horticulture centers often bring in guest designers or hold flower shows. By frequently viewing the work of other designers at these special events and shows, students can pick up new ideas and become motivated to try new approaches in their own work.

National Junior Horticulture Association (NJHA) has an organization in each state and a national convention with opportunities for displaying skills in identification, design and marketing. Future Farmers of America (FFA) also has a floriculture judging contest along with programs that encourage skill and leadership development. Pi Alpha Xi is a college-level organization which has flower judging competitions based on standards set by the organization.

The list of periodicals on the next page is intended to be a guide to current information and happenings in the area of floral design and marketing. Those involved in floriculture must evaluate for themselves which publications and activities best serve their needs and interests.

TO THE
OHIO
ASSOCIA
DISCOVERY

Professional floral designers present workshops throughout the country.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Dateline Washington (21 times a year)
Society of American Florists
1601 Duke Street
Alexandria, VA 22314

Floral Finance (monthly)
Floral Finance, Inc.
8801 S. Yale, Suite 400
Tulsa, OK 74137

Floral Management (monthly)
Society of American Florists
1601 Duke Street
Alexandria, VA 22314

Floral Mass Marketing (bimonthly)
Cenflo, Inc.
120 S. Riverside Plaza, Suite 464
Chicago, IL 60606

Florist (monthly)
Florists' Transworld Delivery Association
29200 Northwestern Highway
Southfield, MI 48037

Florists' Review (13 times a year)
Florists' Review Enterprises, Inc.
P.O. Box 4368
Topeka, KS 66604

Flower News (weekly)
Cenflo, Inc.
120 S. Riverside Plaza, Suite 464
Chicago, IL 60606

Flowers & (monthly)
Teleflora Inc.
12233 W. Olympic Blvd.
Los Angeles, CA 90064

Ohio Florists' Association Bulletin (monthly)
Ohio Florists' Association
700 Ackerman Road, Suite 230
Columbus, OH 43202

PFD - Professional Floral Designer (bimonthly)
American Floral Services, Inc.
P.O. Box 12309
Oklahoma City, OK 73157

The Retail Florist (monthly)
American Floral Services, Inc.
P.O. Box 12309
Oklahoma City, OK 73157

Supermarket Floral (monthly)
Vance Publishing
7950 College Blvd.
Overland Park, KS 66210

INDEX

- accessories 243-248, 251-252
- advertising 475-478
- backgrounds 250, 252
- bases 243-249, 251, 258
- basket arrangements 50, 216-220, 224, 227, 248, 254, 268, 281-284, 308, 337-338, 350, 378, 380, 382, 444
- boutonnieres 135-136, 158-161, 306, 439
- bows 139-140, 155-156, 185, 187, 204-205
- bud vases 176-178, 290
- candles 232-233, 239, 246-248, 252, 286, 290, 293, 307, 311, 383, 386, 388, 391, 411
- Christmas
  - arrangements 166, 281, 290, 376-394, 424
  - greens 46, 97-100, 105-114, 384-387, 390
- church arrangements 5, 49, 201, 225, 227, 307-309, 381
- color 20-42, 53, 65, 185, 405
- color wheel 31, 34
- **container identification 131-132**
- contemporary arrangements 4, 12, 49, 223, 249, 270, 327, 371, 378-381, 407-414
  - abstract 413
  - new convention 410
  - new wave 413
  - parallel systems 410
  - pave 412
  - vegetative arrangement 411
  - waterfall 412
- corsage kit 162, 168, 173
- corsages 135-157, 162-174, 282, 306, 439
  - double-spray 168-169
  - falcon 172
  - potpourri 172-173
  - single-flower 162
  - single-spray 166-167
  - two-flower 166
  - wristlets 136, 155, 170-171
- cut flower
  - conditioning 461-464
  - storing 461-466
- delivery 471-474
- design
  - circle variations 209-216
    - fan 191, 214-216, 271, 337
    - mound 16, 66, 191, 209-211, 287, 289
    - oval 16, 191, 212-213, 217, 287, 328
- design *(continued)*
  - elements 11-42
    - color *see* color
    - form 14-17
    - line (curved) 13
      - crescent 17, 55-56, 65-66, 120, 168, 222-224, 236-238, 245, 271, 340
      - Hogarth (S) curve 17, 65-66, 120, 168, 222-224, 239-241, 245, 252, 282, 284, 293, 318, 340, 380, 405
      - spiral 56, 222-224, 233-235
    - line (straight) 12-14, 66, 221-226, 284, 408-414
      - diagonal 13, 15, 17, 222, 224, 230, 232-233, 245, 248, 269
      - horizontal 13, 222, 223, 284
      - inverted-T 17, 60, 66, 222-223, 230-231, 245, 289
      - L-pattern 17, 222-223, 227-229, 252, 269, 371
      - vertical 13, 222, 225-226
      - zigzag 13
    - line-mass 14, 17, 65, 221-241, 249, 251, 258, 281, 283, 308, 401
    - mass 14-16, 189-220, 268, 270, 283, 296, 400-406
    - texture 18-20, 53
  - principles 43-68
    - accent 64
    - asymmetry 34, 48-50, 203, 216, 227, 252, 270, 411
    - balance 44-52
    - contrast 67
    - depth 50-52, 166, 191, 199-201, 218, 236, 264
    - dominance 67
    - emphasis 64
    - focal point 64-66 *see also* focal area
    - harmony 61-63
    - proportion 52
    - repetition 64
    - rhythm 56-61, 168, 209, 225, 233
    - scale 52-55
    - stability 50
    - symmetry 45-50, 52, 65, 199, 284, 287, 289
    - transition 61
    - unity 64
  - triangle variations 14-15, 34, 45, 65, 159, 190-208, 254, 270, 284
    - diamond centerpiece 55, 66, 190, 205-208, 247, 287-289, 328
- design *(continued)*
  - triangle variations *(continued)*
    - equilateral 13, 15, 45, 49, 60, 66, 190, 193-198, 205, 214, 371
    - isosceles 13, 15, 45, 55, 190, 199-201, 205
    - right 15, 49, 190, 201-203
    - scalene 15, 66, 190, 203-205
- dish garden 346-350, 441
- **dried**
  - arrangements 266-269
  - flowers 253-278, 288, 383, 404, 418
  - **materials identification 272-278**
  - wreaths 254, 259, 271
- drying flowers 257-261
- **equipment identification 133**
- evergreens 384-394
- floral
  - adhesive 154, 170-171
  - foam 117-120, 124
  - pictures 54, 255, 264-265
  - preservatives 117, 464
- flower shop
  - displays 455-460
  - organization 449-454
- **flowering plant (indoor) identification 357-360**
- focal area/point 39, 56-60, 64-66, 166, 193, 194, 199-201, 205, 209, 216, 225-233, 237-238, 241, 264, 271
- foiling pots 184-187
- **foliage plant (indoor) identification 361-367**
- **fresh cut flower identification 70-96**
- **fresh cut foliage identification 97-114**
- fruit baskets 373
- funeral flowers 325-344, 416 *see* sympathy flowers
- glycerin treatment 262
- greens, fresh 384-387 *see also* Christmas greens
- hair flowers 135-136, 141
- hand-tied bouquet 182, 192
- hanging baskets 353, 470
- holiday
  - arrangements 375-397, 453
  - color schemes 395
  - themes 457
- interior planting 354-355
- inventory 451-452
- Japanese flower arranging 12, 401, 405

INDEX *(continued)*

jardiniere 186-188, 354
living plant groupings 344-367
mechanics 115-120, 166, 246
novelty arrangements 19, 369-374
Occidental design 16-17, 49, 400-401, 413
Oriental design 3, 12, 16-17, 49, 53, 66, 223, 244-245, 249, 251, 346-347, 400-401, 405, 413
packaging floral products 435-442
packaging items identification 125-126
period arrangements 16, 399-406
periodicals of floral design, list 482
plant care 467-470
planters 346-350, 441
  novelty 370-371
potted plants 183-188
pressing flowers 255-256, 264
pricing 443-448
  markup method 444-445
  nesting method 446
  wholesale method 445
promotion 475-478
rentals 447-448
retail
  floral business 415-422
  florists 424
  positions 420-422
rose bowl 179-180
roses, boxed 438
safety caution 10, 121-122
sales and service 423-434
sales tax 428
silica gel 260-261
silk flowers 279-284
sleeving stand 436
special occasions 375-376, 395-398
storing cut flowers 461-466
  floral preservatives 117, 464
  storage coolers 465
supplies identification 123-134
sympathy flowers 325-344, 376, 410, 416
  casket spray 326-334
  cemetery pieces 393-394
  funeral arrangements 214, 216
  funeral baskets 337-338
  funeral set pieces 341-344
  grave blanket 394
  standing (easel) spray 335-336, 344
table settings 285-293
taping methods 144-146
telephone sales 430, 433
terrariums 351-352
tool identification 134
topiary design 270
vases of flowers 175, 181-182
Victorian arrangements 63, 209, 259, 289, 378, 381, 400, 404
wedding 6, 255, 281, 295-323, 416
  bouquets 270, 281, 299-319
    arm 302, 317
    bridal 192, 281
    cascade 301, 314-315
    colonial 300, 313
    contemporary 304
    crescent 316
    specialty 303, 318-321
wedding *(continued)*
  decorations 296-297, 307-312, 322-323
  order form 129, 298-299
  orders 453-454
Williamsburg arrangements 39, 45, 63, 99, 107, 119, 214, 289, 378-379, 381, 400, 404
window displays 456-458
wire/wiring techniques 121, 139-142, 146-153, 163, 171-173
  Amazon lily 150
  baby's breath 148
  camellia leaf 149
  carnation 146, 159
  carnation corsage 163
  cattleya orchid 151-152
  cymbidium orchid 146
  daffodils 147
  daisy chrysanthemums 147
  football mums 153
  gardenias 153
  hyacinth florets 151
  leatherleaf fern 148
  phalaenopsis orchid 152
  pompon chrysanthemums 147
  roses 146
  statice 148
  stephanotis 150-151
wire services 430-433
work portfolio 10
world flower market 417
wrapping floral products 435-442
wreaths 46, 254, 259, 271, 293, 342, 379, 381-383, 386-389, 393

Note: Special photo-identification sections are indicated in **boldface** type.